ACH550

User's Manual
ACH550-UH HVAC Drives (1...550 HP)
ACH550-BCR/BDR/VCR/VDR E-Clipse Bypass Drives (1...400 HP)
ACH550-PCR/PDR Packaged Drives with Disconnect (1...550 HP)

List of related manuals

GENERAL MANUALS

ACH550-UH HVAC Drives User's Manual (1...550 HP)
3AUA0000004092 (English)
- Safety
- Installation
- Control panel
- Start-up
- Application macros
- Parameters
- Embedded fieldbus
- Fieldbus adapter
- Diagnostics
- Maintenance
- Technical data

ACH550-BCR/BDR/VCR/VDR E-Clipse Bypass Drives User's Manual (1...400 HP)
3AUA0000016461 (English)
- Safety
- Installation
- Control panel
- Start-up
- Bypass functions overview
- Application macros
- Parameters
- Embedded fieldbus
- Fieldbus adapter
- Diagnostics
- Technical data

ACH550-PCR/PDR Packaged Drives with Disconnect User's Manual (1...550 HP)
3AUA0000031590 (English)
- Safety
- Installation
- Maintenance
- Technical data

OPTION MANUALS

(delivered with optional equipment)

MFDT-01 FlashDrop User's Manual
3AFE68591074 (English)

OHDI-01 115/230 V Digital Input Module User's Manual
3AUA0000003101 (English)

OREL-01 Relay Output Extension Module User's Manual
3AUA0000001935 (English)

RCNA-01 ControlNet Adapter User's Manual
3AFE64506005 (English)

RDNA-01 DeviceNet Adapter User's Manual
3AFE64504223 (English)

RETA-01 Ethernet Adapter Module User's Manual
3AFE64539736 (English)

RETA-02 Ethernet Adapter Module User's Manual
3AFE68895383 (English)

RLON-01 LONWORKS® Adapter Module User's Manual
3AFE64798693 (English)

RPBA-01 PROFIBUS DP Adapter Module User's Manual
3AFE64504215 (English)

SREA-01 Ethernet Adapter User's Manual
3AUA0000042896 (English)

Typical contents
- Safety
- Installation
- Programming/Start-up
- Diagnostics
- Technical data

MAINTENANCE MANUALS

Guide for Capacitor Reforming in ACS50, ACS55, ACS150, ACS310, ACS320, ACS350, ACS550 and ACH550
3AFE68735190 (English)

APOGEE is a registered trademark of Siemens Building Technologies Inc.

BACnet is a registered trademark of ASHRAE.

ControlNet™ is a trademark of ODVA™.

DeviceNet™ is a trademark of ODVA™.

DRIVECOM is a registered trademark of DRIVECOM User Group e.V.

EtherNet/IP™ is a trademark of ODVA™.

Interbus is a registered trademark of Interbus Club.

LONWORKS® is a registered trademark of Echelon Corporation.

Metasys is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls Inc.

Modbus and Modbus/TCP are registered trademarks of Schneider Automation Inc.

PROFIBUS, PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET IO are registered trademarks of Profibus International.

Manual contents

List of included manuals

ACH550-UH HVAC Drives
1…550 HP

User's Manual

Safety

Use of warnings and notes

There are two types of safety instructions throughout this manual:

- Notes draw attention to a particular condition or fact, or give information on a subject.
- Warnings caution you about conditions which can result in serious injury or death and/or damage to the equipment. They also tell you how to avoid the danger. The warning symbols are used as follows:

Electricity warning warns of hazards from electricity which can cause physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

General warning warns about conditions, other than those caused by electricity, which can result in physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

WARNING! The ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive should ONLY be installed by a qualified electrician.

WARNING! Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the power circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 (L1, L2, L3) and U2, V2, W2 (T1, T2 T3) and, depending on the frame size, UDC+ and UDC-, or BRK+ and BRK-.

WARNING! Dangerous voltage is present when input power is connected. After disconnecting the supply, wait at least 5 minutes (to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge) before removing the cover.

WARNING! Even when power is switched off from the input terminals of the ACH550, there may be dangerous voltage (from external sources) on the terminals of the relay outputs.

WARNING! When the control terminals of two or more drives are connected in parallel, the auxiliary voltage for these control connections must be taken from a single source which can either be one of the drives or an external supply.

WARNING! Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohm] power system).

WARNING! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive's input terminals.

WARNING! Do not control the motor with the disconnecting device (disconnecting means); instead, use the control panel keys or commands via the I/O board of the drive. The maximum allowed number of charging cycles of the DC capacitors (i.e. power-ups by applying power) is five in ten minutes.

WARNING! Never attempt to repair a malfunctioning ACH550; contact the factory or your local Authorized Service Center for repair or replacement.

WARNING! The ACH550 will start up automatically after an input voltage interruption if the external run command is on.

WARNING! The heat sink may reach a high temperature.

Note: For more technical information, contact the factory or your local ABB representative.

Table of contents

Embedded fieldbus

Fieldbus adapter

Diagnostics

Maintenance

Technical data

Index

Installation

Study these installation instructions carefully before proceeding. **Failure to observe the warnings and instructions may cause a malfunction or personal hazard.**

WARNING! Before you begin read *Safety* on page *1-3*.

Installation flow chart

The installation of the ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive follows the outline below. The steps must be carried out in the order shown. At the right of each step are references to the detailed information needed for the correct installation of the unit.

Task	See
PREPARE for installation	*Preparing for installation* on page *1-10*.
PREPARE the mounting location	*Prepare the mounting location* on page *1-14*.
REMOVE the front cover	*Remove front cover* on page *1-16*.
MOUNT the drive	*Mount the drive* on page *1-17*.
INSTALL wiring	*Wiring overview* on page *1-18* and *Install the wiring* on page *1-23*.
CHECK installation	*Check installation* on page *1-27*.
REINSTALL the cover	*Re-install cover* on page *1-27*.
APPLY power	*Apply power* on page *1-29*.
START-UP	*Start-up* on page *1-30*.

Preparing for installation

Lifting the drive

R1…R6

Lift the drive only by the metal chassis.

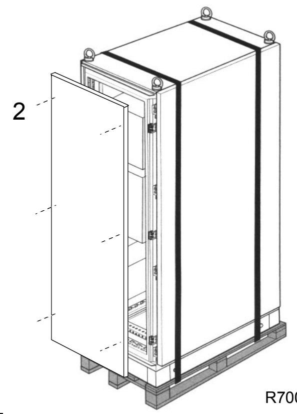
IP2040

R7…R8

PC00005

WARNING! Handle and ship floor mounted enclosures only in the upright position. These units are not designed to be laid on their backs.

1. Use a pallet truck to move the transport package/ enclosure to the installation site.
2. Remove the cabinet side panels for access to the cabinet/pallet mounting bolts. (6 torx screws hold each cabinet side panel in place. Leave the side panels off until later.)
3. Remove the 4 bolts that secure the cabinet to the shipping pallet.



R70010

PC00003

WARNING! Use the lifting lugs/bars at the top of the unit to lift R7/R8 drives.

4. Use a hoist to lift the drive. (Do not place drive in final position until mounting site is prepared.)

Unpack the drive

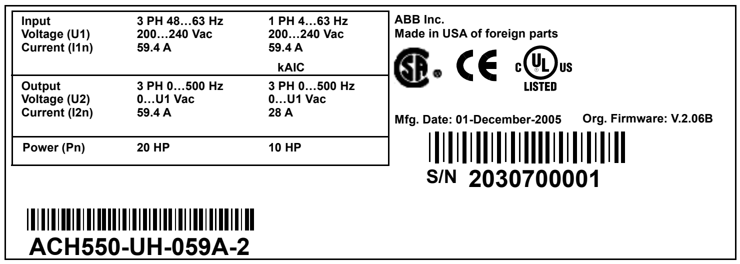
1. Unpack the drive.
2. Check for any damage and notify the shipper immediately if damaged components are found.
3. Check the contents against the order and the shipping label to verify that all parts have been received.

Drive identification

Drive labels

To determine the type of drive you are installing, refer to either:

- Serial number label attached on upper part of the chokeplate between the mounting holes.
- Type code label attached on the heat sink – on the side of the enclosure.



Type code

Use the following chart to interpret the type code found on either label.

ACH550-UH-08A8-4+...

AC, HVAC Drive – 550 product series

Construction (region specific)
UH = Setup and parts specific to US installation and NEMA compliance

Output current rating
e.g. 08A8 = 8.8A See section *Ratings* for details on page *1-297*

Voltage rating
2 = 208…240 VAC
4 = 380…480 VAC
6 = 500…600 VAC

Enclosure protection class
No specification = UL type 1 / NEMA 1 / IP 21
+B055 = UL type 12 / NEMA 12 / IP 54

Fieldbus Adapter
+K451 = DeviceNet Adapter
+K452 = LonWorks Adapter
+K454 = Profibus Adapter
+K462 = ControlNet Adapter
+K466 = EtherNet Adapter

I/O Options
+L511 = Relay Output Extension
+L512 = 115/230 V Digital Input Interface

Ratings and frame size

The chart in section *Ratings* on page *1-297* lists technical specifications, and identifies the drive's frame size. To read the Ratings table, you need the "Output current rating" entry from the type code (see above). Also, when using the Ratings tables, note that there are different tables for each drive "Voltage rating".

Motor compatibility

The motor, drive, and supply power must be compatible:

Motor Specification	Verify	Reference
Motor type	3-phase induction motor	–
Nominal current	Motor value is within this range: 0.15…1.5 * I_{2N} (I_{2N} = normal use current)	• Type code label on drive, entry for Output I_{2N}, or • Type code on drive and rating table in *Technical data* on page *1-297*.
Nominal frequency	10…500 Hz	–
Voltage range	Motor is compatible with the ACH550 voltage range.	208…240 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-2) or 380…480 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-4) 500…600 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-6)
Insulation	500…600 V drives: Either the motor complies with NEMA MG1 Part 31, or a du/dt filter is used between the motor and drive.	For ACH550-xx-xxxx-6

Tools required

To install the ACH550 you need the following:

- Screwdrivers (as appropriate for the mounting hardware used)
- Wire stripper
- Tape measure
- Drill
- Frame sizes R5…R8 with UL type 12 enclosure: Punch for conduit mounting holes
- Frame sizes R7/R8: pallet truck and hoist
- For installations involving frame size R6…R8: The appropriate crimping tool for power cable lugs. See *Power terminal considerations – R6 Frame size*.
- Mounting hardware: screws or nuts and bolts, four each. The type of hardware depends on the mounting surface and the frame size:

Frame Size	Mounting Hardware		Note
R1…R4	M5	#10	
R5	M6	1/4 in	
R6	M8	5/16 in	
R7…R8	M10	7/16	Secures free standing cabinets if required.

- For installations involving frame size R7…R8: Hoist.

Suitable environment and enclosure

Confirm that the site meets the environmental requirements. To prevent damage prior to installation, store and transport the drive according to the environmental requirements specified for storage and transportation. See *Ambient conditions* on page *1-326*.

Confirm that the enclosure is appropriate, based on the site contamination level:

- UL type 1 enclosure. The site must be free of airborne dust, corrosive gases or liquids, and conductive contaminants such as condensation, carbon dust, and metallic particles.
- UL type 12 enclosure. This enclosure provides a degree of protection against falling dirt; against circulating dust; and against dripping and light splashing of non-corrosive liquids.

Suitable mounting location

Confirm that the mounting location meets the following constraints:

- R1…R6: The drive must be mounted vertically on a smooth, solid surface, and in a suitable environment as defined above.
- The drive must be located in a suitable environment as defined above.
- The minimum space requirements for the drive are the outside dimensions (see *Outside dimensions – R1…R6* on page *1-323* or *Outside dimensions – R7…R8* on page *1-324*), plus air flow space around the unit (see *Cooling* on page *1-318*).
- The distance between the motor and the drive is limited by the maximum motor cable length. See either *Motor connection specifications* on page *1-309*, or *EN 61800-3 compliant motor cables* on page *1-312*.
- The mounting site must support the drive's weight. See *Weight* on page *1-322*.

Installing the drive

WARNING! Before installing the ACH550, ensure the input power supply to the drive is off.

WARNING! Metal shavings or debris in the enclosure can damage electrical equipment and create a hazardous condition. Where parts, such as conduit plates require cutting or drilling, first remove the part. If that is not practical, cover nearby electrical components to protect them from all shavings or debris.

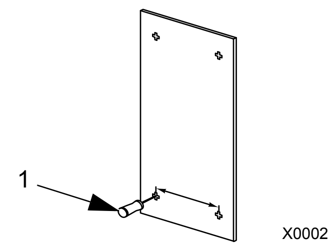
For flange mounting (mounting the drive in a cooling air duct), see the appropriate *Flange Mounting Instructions*:

Frame size	IP21 / UL type 1		IP54 / UL type 12	
	Kit	Code (English)	Kit	Code (English)
R1	FMK-A-R1	100000982	FMK-B-R1	100000990
R2	FMK-A-R2	100000984	FMK-B-R2	100000992
R3	FMK-A-R3	100000986	FMK-B-R3	100000994
R4	FMK-A-R4	100000988	FMK-B-R4	100000996
R5	AC8-FLNGMT-R5	ACS800-PNTG01U-EN	-	-
R6	AC8-FLNGMT-R6		-	-

Prepare the mounting location

The ACH550 should only be mounted where all of the requirements defined in *Preparing for installation* on page *1-10* are met.

1. Mark the position of the mounting holes.



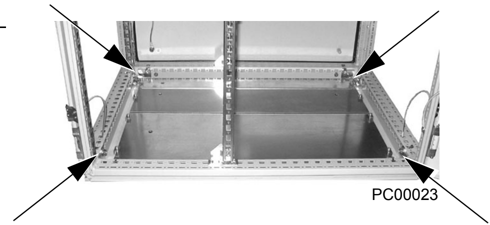
Note: Frame sizes R3 and R4 have four holes along the top. Use only two. If possible, use the two outside holes (to allow room to remove the fan for maintenance).

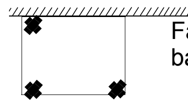
Note: ACH400 drives can be replaced using the original mounting holes. For R1 and R2 frame sizes, the mounting holes are identical. For R3 and R4 frame sizes, the inside mounting holes on the top of ACH550 drives match ACH400 mounts.

Note: Frame sizes R7 and R8 have mounting holes inside the enclosure base. See *Mounting dimensions* on page *1-321*.

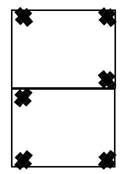
Where it is not possible to use either mounting hole at the back of the base, use an L-bracket at the top of the enclosure to secure the cabinet to a wall or to the back of another enclosure. Bolt the L-bracket to the enclosure using the lifting lug bolt hole on the top of the enclosure.

2. Drill holes of appropriate size in the mounting location.



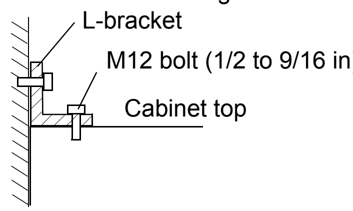


Fastening points when installed back against a wall (Top view)



Fastening points when installed back against back

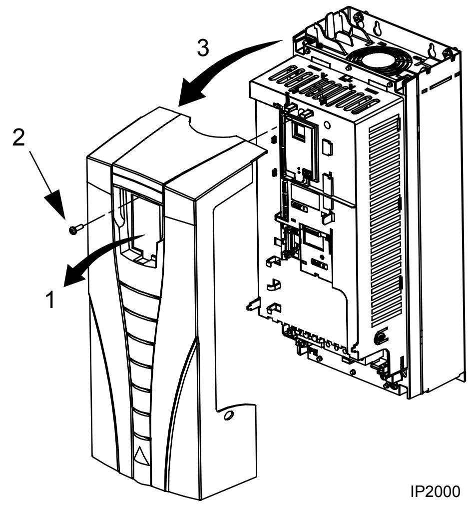
Fastening the cabinet at the top using L-brackets (side view)



Remove front cover

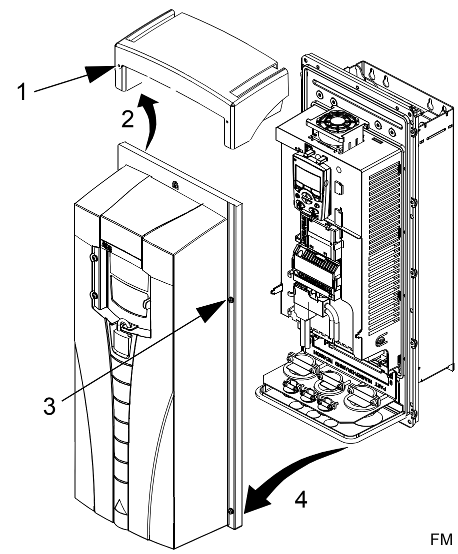
R1…R6, *UL type 1*

1. Remove the control panel, if attached.
2. Loosen the captive screw at the top.
3. Pull near the top to remove the cover.



R1…R6, *UL type 12*

1. If hood is present: Remove screws (2) holding the hood in place.
2. If hood is present: Slide hood up and off of the cover.
3. Loosen the captive screws around the edge of the cover.
4. Remove the cover.

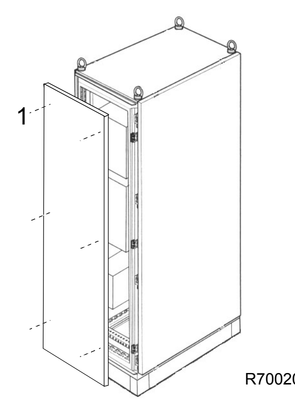


R7…R8, Cabinet Door

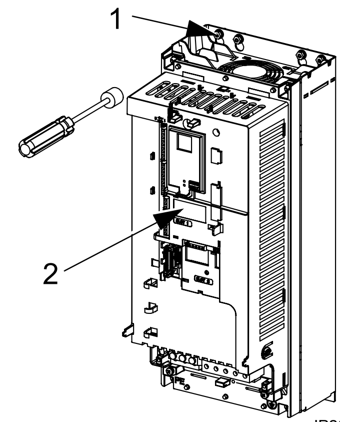
1. To open the cabinet door, loosen the quarter-turn screws that hold the cabinet door closed.

R7…R8, Side Panels

The side panels were removed to take the cabinet off the pallet. Installation access is easier if these panels are kept off throughout the installation.



Mount the drive



IP2002

R1…R6, *UL type 1*

1. Position the ACH550 onto the mounting screws or bolts and securely tighten in all four corners.

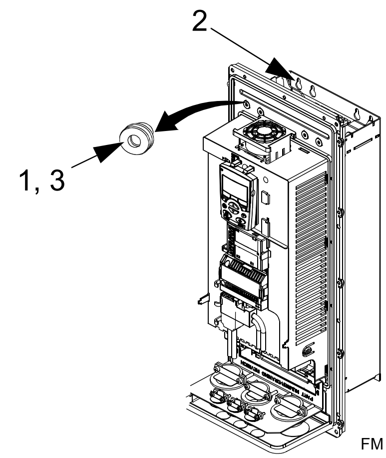
Note: Lift the ACH550 by its metal chassis.

---

2. Non-English speaking locations: Add a warning sticker in the appropriate language over the existing warning on the top of the module.

R1…R6, *UL type 12*

For the UL type 12 enclosures, rubber plugs are required in the holes provided for access to the drive mounting slots.



FM

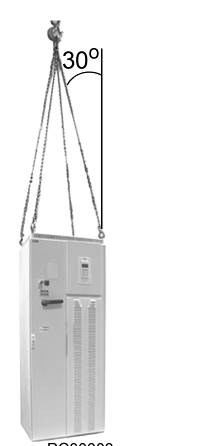
1. As required for access, remove the rubber plugs. Push plugs out from the back of the drive.
2. R5 & R6: Align the sheet metal hood (not shown) in front of the drive's top mounting holes. (Attach as part of next step.)
3. Position the ACH550 onto the mounting screws or bolts and securely tighten in all four corners.

Note: Lift the ACH550 by its metal chassis (frame size R6 by the lifting holes on both sides at the top).

---

4. Re-install the rubber plugs.
5. Non-English speaking locations: Add a warning sticker in the appropriate language over the existing warning on the top of the module.

R7…R8



PC00003

1. Use a hoist to move the cabinet into position.

Note: If the cabinet location does not provide access to the cabinet sides, be sure to re-mount side panels before positioning cabinet.

---

2. Install and tighten mounting bolts.

Wiring overview

Conduit kit

Wiring R1…R6 drives with the UL type 1 Enclosure requires a conduit kit with the following items:

- conduit box
- screws
- cover

The kit is included with UL type 1 Enclosures.

Wiring requirements

WARNING! Ensure the motor is compatible for use with the ACH550. The ACH550 must be installed by a competent person in accordance with the considerations defined in *Preparing for installation* on page *1-10*. If in doubt, contact your local ABB sales or service office.

As you install the wiring, observe the following:

- There are two sets of wiring instructions – one set for each enclosure type (UL type 1 and UL type 12). Be sure to select the appropriate procedure.
- For the power connection points on the drive see the *Connection diagrams* section below.
- Use separate, metal conduit runs to keep these three classes of wiring apart:
  - Input power wiring.
  - Motor wiring. (Use a separate, metal conduit run for each motor)
  - Control/communications wiring.
- When installing input power and motor wiring, refer to the following, as appropriate:

Terminal	Description	Specifications and Notes
U1, V1, W1*	3-phase power supply input	*Input power connections* on page *1-301*.
PE	Protective Ground	*Ground connections* on page *1-305*.
U2, V2, W2	Power output to motor	*Motor connections* on page *1-309*.

* The ACH550 -xx-xxxx-2 (208…240V series) can be used with a single phase supply, if output current is derated by 50%. For single phase supply voltage connect power at U1 and W1.

- To locate input power and motor connection terminals, see *Connection diagrams* starting on page *1-20*. For specifications on power terminals, see *Drive's power connection terminals* on page *1-307*.
- For corner grounded TN systems, see section *Unsymmetrically grounded networks* on page *1-305*.
- For IT systems, see section *Floating networks* on page *1-306*.
- For frame size R6, see *Power terminal considerations – R6 Frame size* on page *1-307* to install the appropriate cable lugs.

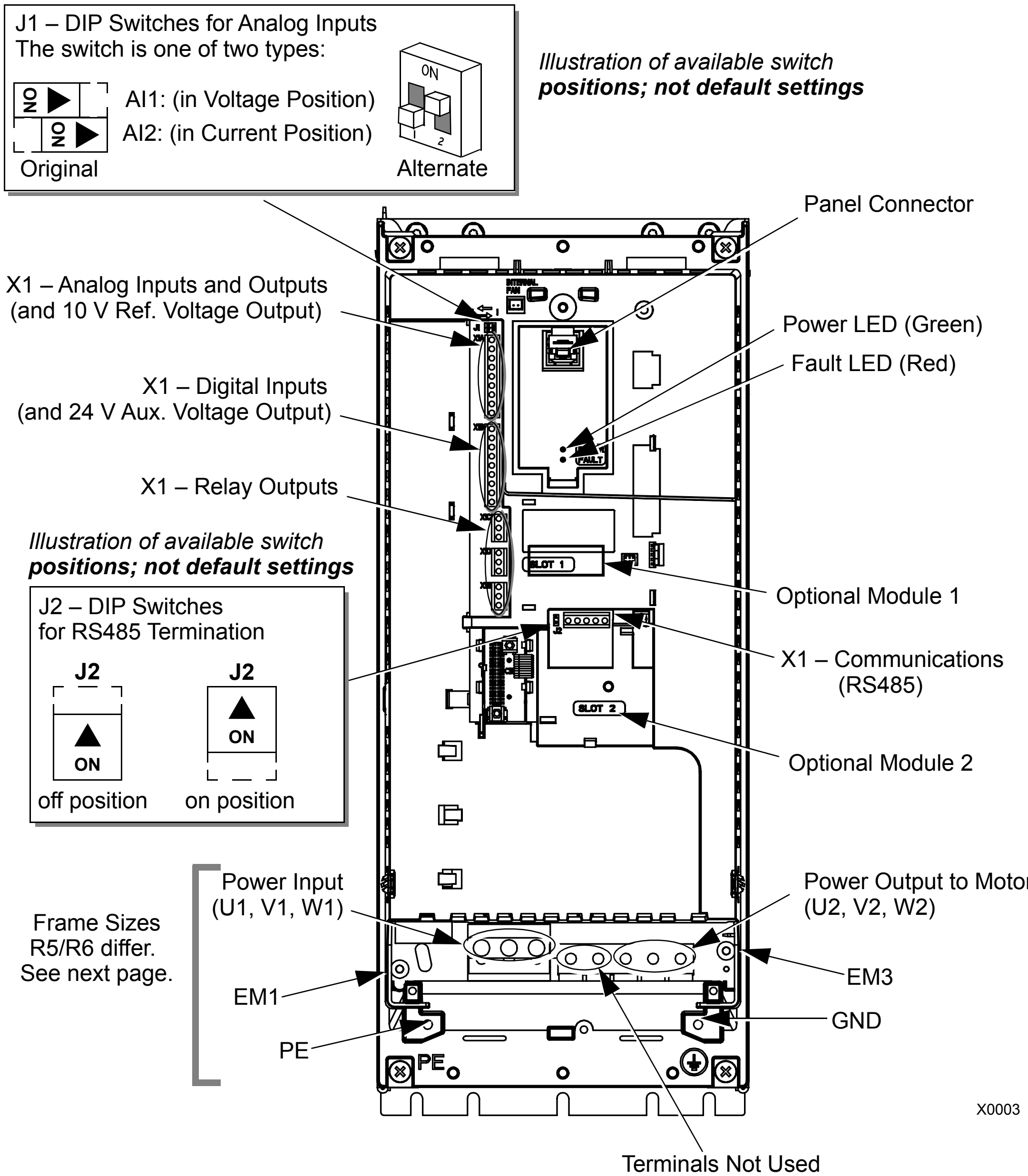
- For details on control connections, refer to the following sections:
  - *Drive's control connection terminals* on page *1-316*.
  - *Control connections* on page *1-315*.
  - *Application macros* starting on page *1-49*.
  - *Complete parameter descriptions* on page *1-80*.
  - *Embedded fieldbus* on page *1-185*.
  - *Fieldbus adapter* on page *1-259*.
- For electro-magnetic compliance (EMC), follow local codes and the requirements in *Motor cable requirements for CE & C-Tick compliance* on page *1-311*. For example:
  - Properly ground the wire screen cable shields.
  - Keep individual un-screened wires between the cable clamps and the screw terminals as short as possible.
  - Route control cables away from power cables.

Connection diagrams

The following diagrams show:

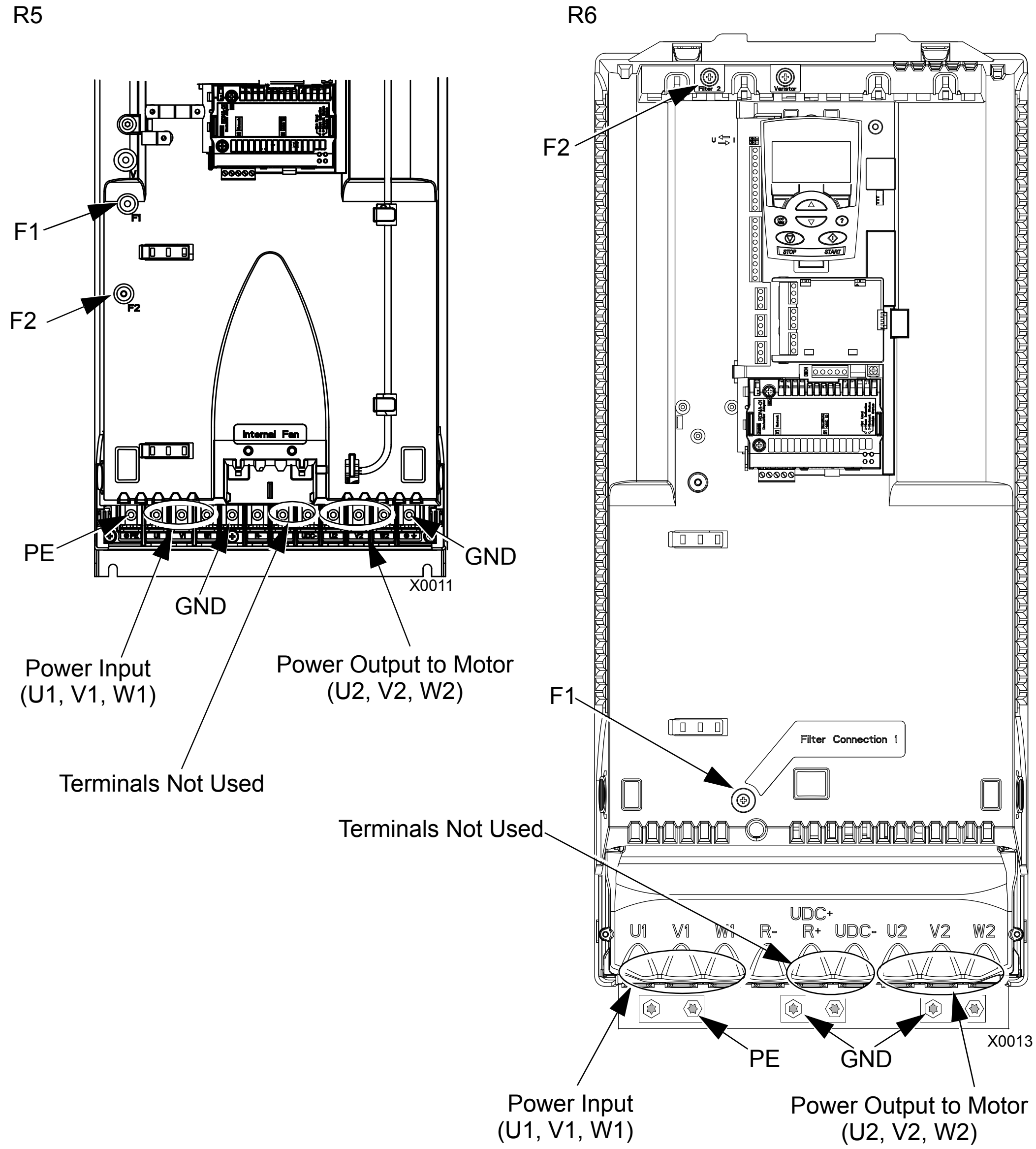
- The terminal layout for frame size R3, which, in general, applies to frame sizes R1...R6, except for the R5/R6 power and ground terminals.
- The R5/R6 power and ground terminals.
- The terminal layout for R7/R8.

R1…R4 (Diagram shows the R3 frame.)



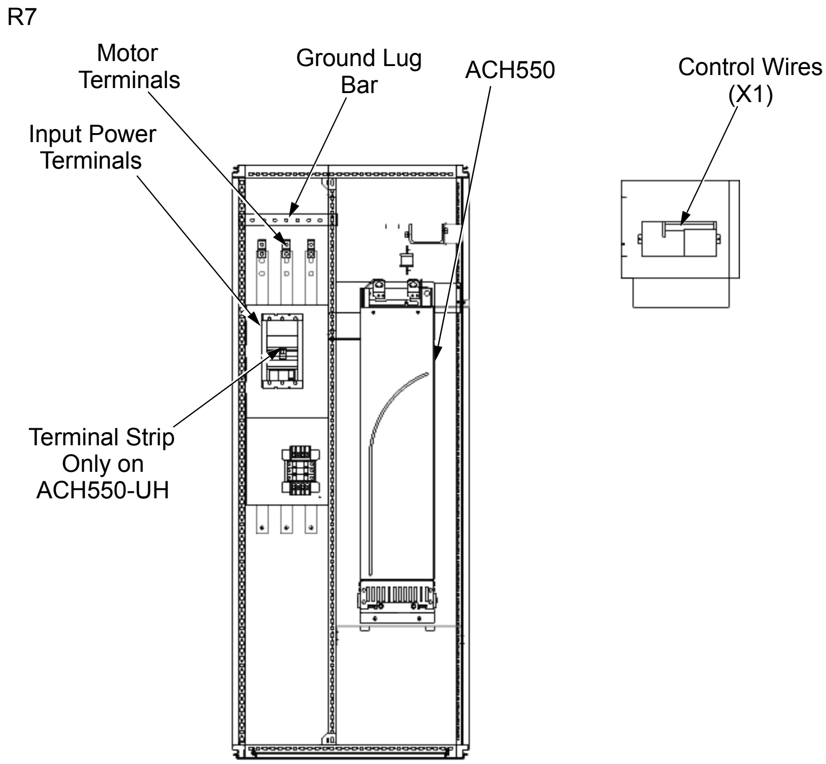
WARNING! To avoid danger, or damage to the drive, on IT systems and corner grounded TN systems, see section *Disconnecting the internal EMC filter* on page *1-22*.

The following diagram shows the power and ground terminal layout for frame sizes R5 and R6.



WARNING! To avoid danger, or damage to the drive, on IT systems and corner grounded TN systems, see section *Disconnecting the internal EMC filter* on page *1-22*.

The following diagram shows the power and ground terminal layout for frame size R7 (R8 is similar).



Disconnecting the internal EMC filter

On certain types of systems, you must disconnect the internal EMC filter, otherwise the system will be connected to ground potential through the EMC filter capacitors, which might cause danger, or damage the drive.

Note: When the internal EMC filter is disconnected, the drive is not EMC compatible.

The following table shows the installation rules for the EMC filter screws in order to connect or disconnect the filter, depending on the system type and the frame size. For more information on the different system types, see *Floating networks* on page *1-306* and *Unsymmetrically grounded networks* on page *1-305*.

The locations of screws EM1 and EM3 are shown in the diagram on page 1-20. The locations of screws F1 and F2 are shown in the diagram on page 1-21.

Frame sizes	Screw	Symmetrically grounded TN systems (TN-S systems)	Corner grounded TN systems	IT systems (ungrounded or high-resistance-grounded [> 30 ohm])
R1…R3	EM1	x	x	–
	EM3	x	•	•
R4	EM1	x	x	–
	EM3	x	•	•
R5…R6	F1	x	x	–
	F2	x	x	–

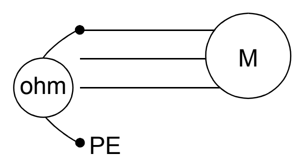
x = Use the provided metal screw which may already be installed. (EMC filter(s) will be connected.)
• = Use the installed polyamide screw. (EMC output filter will be disconnected.)
– = Remove the installed metal screw. (EMC filter(s) will be disconnected.)

Install the wiring

Checking motor and motor cable insulation

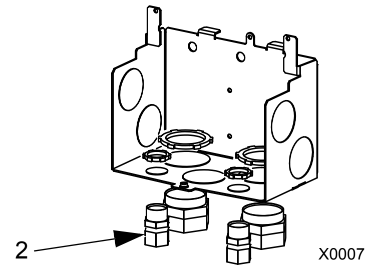
WARNING! Check the motor and motor cable insulation before connecting the drive to input power. For this test, make sure that motor cables are NOT connected to the drive.

1. Complete motor cable connections to the motor, but NOT to the drive output terminals (U2, V2, W2).
2. At the drive end of the motor cable, measure the insulation resistance between each motor cable phase and Protective Earth (PE): Apply a voltage of 1 kV DC and verify that resistance is greater than 1 Mohm.

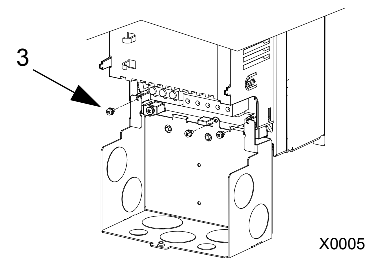


R1…R6, wiring UL type 1 enclosure

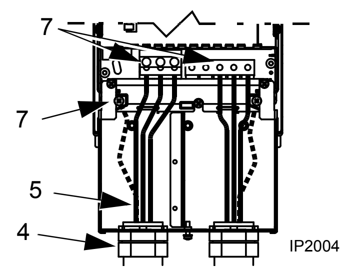
1. Open the appropriate knockouts in the conduit box. (See *Conduit kit* on page *1-18*.)
2. Install thin-wall conduit clamps (not supplied).



3. Install conduit box.
4. Connect conduit runs for input power, motor and control cables to the box.



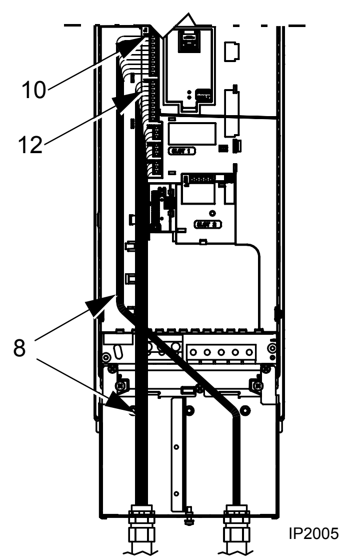
5. Route input power and motor wiring through separate conduits.
6. Strip wires.
7. Connect power, motor, and ground wires to the drive terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18* and table on the tightening torques on page *1-307*.



Note: For R5 frame size, the minimum power cable size is 25 mm^2 (4 AWG). For R6 frame size, refer to *Power terminal considerations – R6 Frame size* on page *1-307*.

---

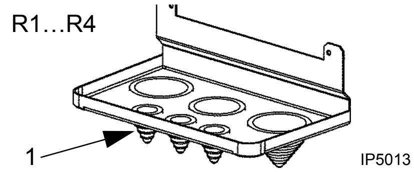
8. Route the control cables through the conduit (not the same conduit as either input power or motor wiring).
9. Use available secure points and tie strap landings to permanently secure control wiring at a minimum distance of 6 mm (1/4") from power wiring.
10. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.
11. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)
12. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)

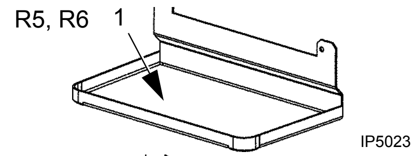


13. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18*.
14. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).

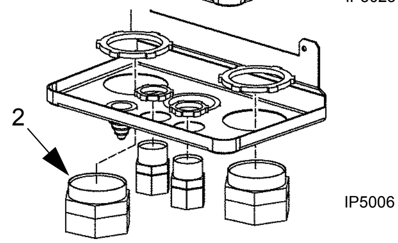
R1…R6, wiring UL type 12 enclosure

1. Step depends on Frame Size:
   - Frame Sizes R1…R4: Remove and discard the cable seals where conduit will be installed. (The cable seals are cone-shaped, rubber seals on the bottom of the drive.)
   - Frame Sizes R4 and R5: Use punch to create holes for conduit connections as needed.

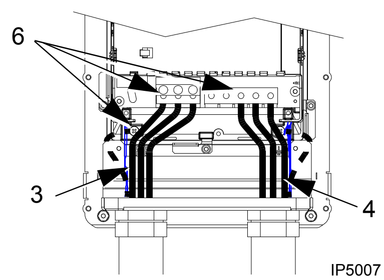




2. For each conduit run (input power, motor and control wiring must be separate), install liquid tight conduit connectors (not supplied).



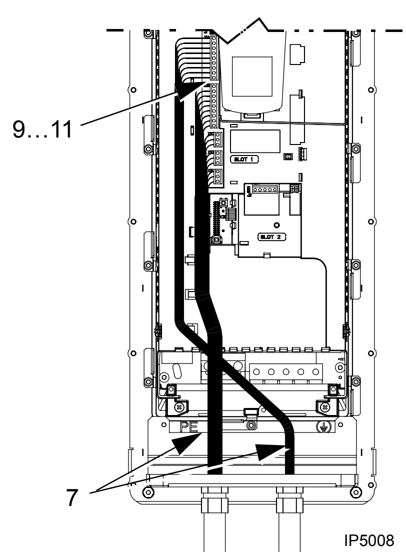
3. Route the power wiring through conduit.
4. Route the motor wiring through conduit (not the same conduit as input power wiring run).
5. Strip the wires.
6. Connect the power, motor, and ground wires to the drive terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18*, *Connection diagrams* on page *1-20* and table for tightening torques on page *1-307*.



Note: For R5 frame size, the minimum power cable size is 25 mm^2 (4 AWG). For R6 frame size, refer to *Power terminal considerations – R6 Frame size* on page *1-307*.

---

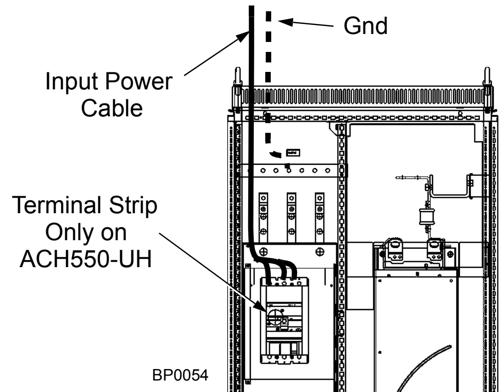
7. Route the control cables through the conduit (not the same conduit as either input power or motor wiring runs).
8. Use available secure points and tie strap landings to permanently secure control wiring at a minimum distance of 6 mm (1/4") from power wiring.
9. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.
10. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)
11. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)
12. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18*.
13. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).



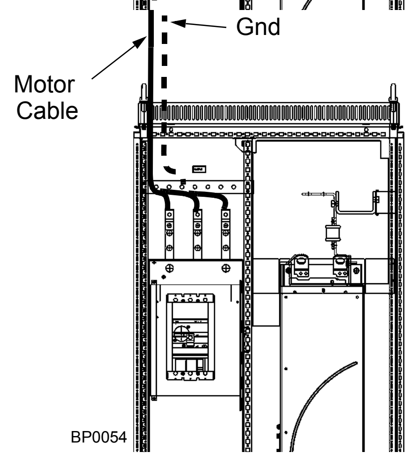
R7…R8, wiring (both enclosure types)

The figures show connections in the R7 cabinet, the R8 cabinet is similar.

1. Remove the conduit connection plate from the top of the left bay.
2. Route the input power, motor and control cables to the top of the cabinet. Each cable type (input power, motor, and control) must be in separate conduit.
3. Use punch to create holes for conduit connections as needed.



4. UL type 12 Enclosure: For each conduit run (input power, motor and control wiring must be separate), install liquid tight conduit connectors (not supplied).
5. Connect input power and motor cables to the bus terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18*, *Connection diagrams* on page *1-20*.



6. Connect grounds to ground bar.
7. Use available secure points and tie strap landings to permanently secure control wiring at a minimum distance of 6 mm (1/4") from power wiring.
8. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.
9. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)
10. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)
11. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18*.

Check installation

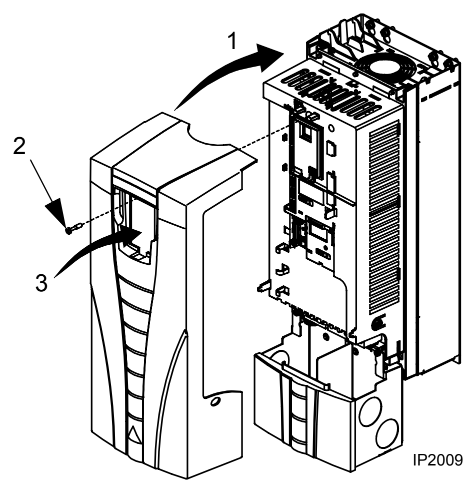
Before applying power, perform the following checks.

✓	Check
	Installation environment conforms to the drive's specifications for ambient conditions.
	The drive is mounted securely.
	Space around the drive meets the drive's specifications for cooling.
	The motor and driven equipment are ready for start.
	For floating networks (R1…R6): The internal RFI filter is disconnected (screws EM1 & EM3 or F1 & F2).
	The drive is properly grounded.
	The input power voltage matches the drive nominal input voltage range.
	The input power connections at U1, V1, and W1 are connected and tightened as specified.
	The input power branch circuit protection is installed.
	The motor connections at U2, V2, and W2 are connected and tightened as specified.
	The input power, motor and control wiring are routed through separate conduit runs.
	NO power factor compensation capacitors are in the motor cable.
	The control connections are connected and tightened as specified.
	NO tools or foreign objects (such as drill shavings) are inside the drive.
	NO alternate power source for the motor (such as a bypass connection) is connected – no voltage is applied to the output of the drive.

Re-install cover

R1…R6, UL type 1

1. Align the cover and slide it on.
2. Tighten the captive screw.
3. Re-install the control panel.



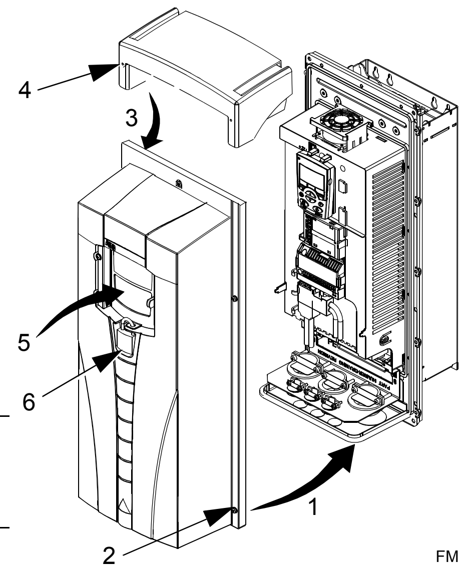
R1…R6, UL type 12

1. Align the cover and slide it on.
2. Tighten the captive screws around the edge of the cover.
3. R1…R4: Slide the hood down over the top of the cover.
4. R1…R4: Install the two screws that attach the hood.
5. Re-install the control panel.

Note: The control panel window must be closed to comply with UL type 12.

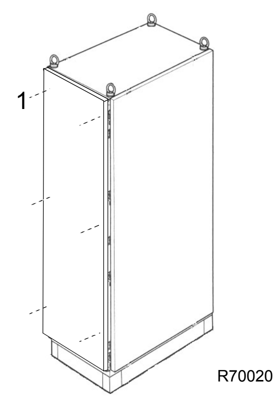
---

6. Optional: Add a lock (not supplied) to secure the control panel window.



R7…R8, Covers

1. If side panels were removed and not remounted, mount them now. Each panel requires 6 torx screws.
2. Re-mount all high voltage shields.
3. Close all internal swing-out panels and secure in place with the quarter-turn screws.
4. Close the cabinet door and secure in place with the quarter-turn screws.



Apply power

Always re-install the covers before turning power on.

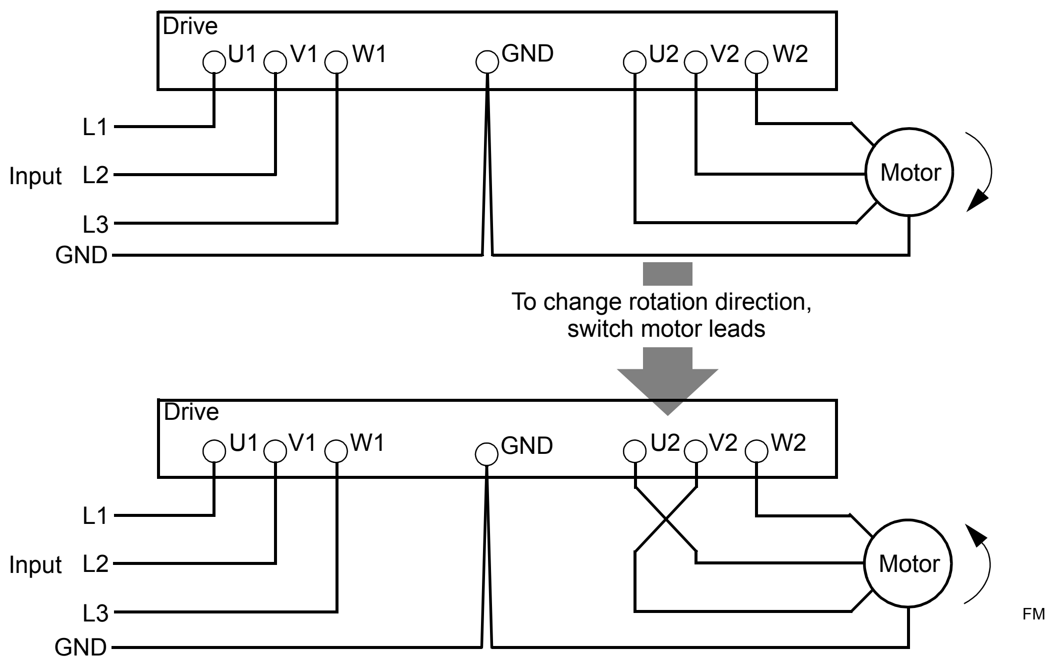
WARNING! The ACH550 will start up automatically at power up, if the external run command is on.

1. Apply input power.

   When power is applied to the ACH550, the green LED comes on.

WARNING! Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the power circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 (L1, L2, L3) and U2, V2, W2 (T1, T2, T3) and, depending on the frame size, UDC+ and UDC-, or BRK+ and BRK-.

Note: Before increasing motor speed, check that the motor is running in the desired direction. To change rotation direction, switch motor leads as shown below. Power circuit terminal designation and location varies depending on the frame size and some terminals are not used (UDC+ and UDC-, or BRK+ and BRK-). Refer to pages *1-20* and *1-21* for specific terminal layouts.



Start-up

The ACH550 has default parameter settings that are sufficient for many situations. However, review the following situations. Perform the associated procedures as appropriate.

Spin motor

When first installed and started the control panel displays a welcome screen with the following options.

- Press Exit to commission the drive as described in section *Start-up by changing the parameters individually* on page *1-47*.
- Press Enter to move to the following options:
  - Select "Commission Drive" to commission the drive as described in section Start-Up by *Start-up by using the Start-Up Assistant* on page *1-47*.
  - Select "Spin Motor" to operate the motor prior to commissioning. This option operates the motor without any commissioning, except entry of the motor data as described below. Spin Motor is useful, for example, to operate ventilation fans prior to commissioning.

Note: When using Spin Motor, the motor speed is limited to the range 1/3…2/3 of maximum speed. Also, no interlocks are activated. Finally, once the drive is commissioned, the welcome screen and this option no longer appear.

Motor data

The motor data on the ratings plate may differ from the defaults in the ACH550. The drive provides more precise control and better thermal protection if you enter the rating plate data.

1. Gather the following from the motor ratings plate:
   - Voltage
   - Nominal motor current
   - Nominal frequency
   - Nominal speed
   - Nominal power
2. Edit parameters 9905…9909 to the correct values.
   - Assistant Control Panel: The Start-Up Assistant walks you through this data entry (see page *1-37*).
   - Basic Control Panel: Refer to *Parameters Mode* on page *1-35*, for parameter editing instructions.

Macros

Note: Selecting the appropriate macro should be part of the original system design, since the control wiring installed depends on the macro used.

---

1. Review the macro descriptions in *Application macros* on page *1-49*. Use the macro that best fits system needs.
2. Edit parameter 9902 to select the appropriate macro. Use either of the following:
   - Use the Start-up Assistant, which displays the macro selection immediately after motor parameter setup.
   - Refer to *Parameters Mode* on page *1-35*, for parameter editing instructions.

Tuning – parameters

The system can benefit from one or more of the ACH550 special features, and/or fine tuning.

1. Review the parameter descriptions in *Complete parameter descriptions* starting on page *1-80*. Enable options and fine tune parameter values as appropriate for the system.
2. Edit parameters as appropriate.

Fault and alarm adjustments

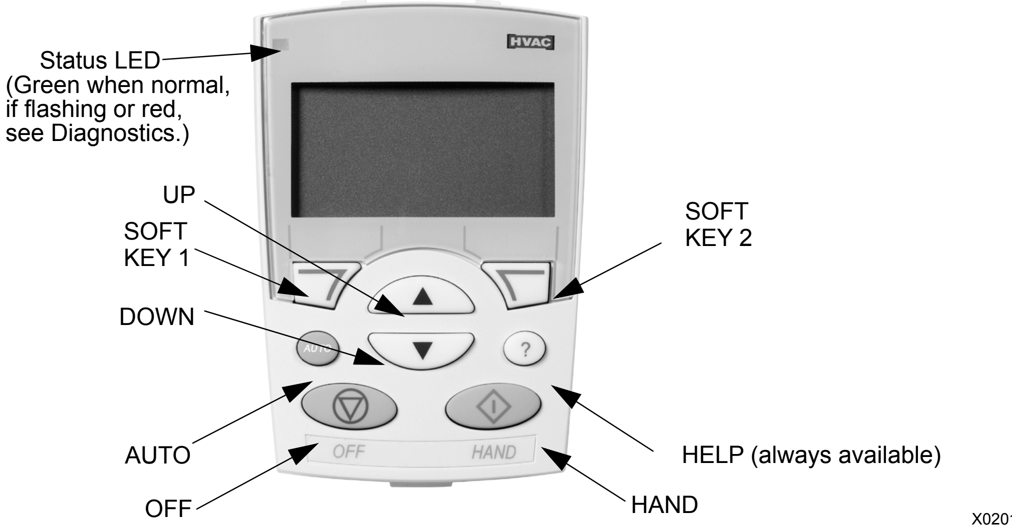
The ACH550 can detect a wide variety of potential system problems. For example, initial system operation may generate faults or alarms that indicate set-up problems.

1. Faults and alarms are reported on the control panel with a number. Note the number reported.
2. Review the description provided for the reported fault/alarm:
   - Use the fault and alarm listings on pages *1-280* and *1-286* respectively, or
   - Press the help key (Assistant Control Panel only) while fault or alarm is displayed.
3. Adjust the system or parameters as appropriate.

Control panel

HVAC control panel features

The ACH550 HVAC control panel (ACH-CP-B) features:



- Language selection for the display
- Drive connection that can be made or detached at any time
- Start-up assistant to facilitate drive commissioning
- Copy function for moving parameters to other ACH550 drives
- Backup function for saving parameter sets
- Context sensitive help
- Real-time clock

General display features

Soft key functions

The soft key functions are defined by text displayed just above each key.

Display contrast

To adjust display contrast, simultaneously press  and  or , as appropriate.

HVAC control panel modes

The HVAC control panel has several different modes for configuring, operating and diagnosing the drive. The modes are:

- **Standard Display Mode –** Shows drive status information and operates the drive.
- **Parameters Mode –** Edits parameter values individually.
- **Start-up Assistant Mode –** Guides the start-up and configuration.
- **Changed Parameters Mode –** Shows changed parameters.
- **Fault Logger Mode –** Shows the drive fault history.
- **Drive Parameter Backup Mode –** Stores or uploads the parameters.
- **Clock Set Mode –** Sets the time and date for the drive.
- **I/O Settings Mode –** Checks and edits the I/O settings.
- **Alarm Mode –** Reporting mode triggered by drive alarms.

Standard Display Mode

Use the Standard Display Mode to read information on the drive’s status and to operate the drive. To reach the Standard Display Mode, press EXIT until the LCD display shows status information as described below.

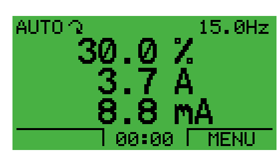
Status information

Top. The top line of the LCD display shows the basic status information of the drive.

- HAND **–** Indicates that the drive control is local, that is, from the control panel.
- AUTO **–** Indicates that the drive control is remote, such as the basic I/O (X1) or fieldbus.
- ↷ **–** Indicates the drive and motor rotation status as follows:

Control panel display	Significance
Rotating arrow (clockwise or counterclockwise)	• Drive is running and at setpoint • Shaft direction is forward or reverse
Rotating dotted arrow blinking	Drive is running but not at setpoint
Stationary dotted arrow	Start command is present, but motor is not running. E.g. start enable is missing.

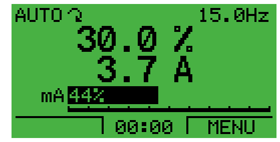
- Upper right **–** shows the active reference.



Middle. Using parameter group 34, the middle of the LCD display can be configured to display:

- One to three parameter values **–** The default display shows parameters 0103 (OUTPUT FREQ) in percentages, 0104 (CURRENT) in amperes and 0120 (AI1) in milliamperes.
  - Use parameters 3401, 3408, and 3415 to select the parameters (from Group 01) to display. Entering “parameter” 0100 results in no parameter displayed. For example, if 3401 = 0100 and 3415 = 0100, then only the parameter specified by 3408 appears in the Control Panel display.

- You can also scale each parameter in the display, for example, to convert the motor speed to a display of conveyor speed. Parameters 3402…3405 scale the parameter specified by 3401, parameters 3409…3412 scale the parameter specified by 3408, etc.



- A bar meter rather than one of the parameter values.
  - Enable bar graph displays using parameters 3404, 3411 and 3418.

Bottom. The bottom of the LCD display shows:

- Lower corners – show the functions currently assigned to the two soft keys.
- Lower middle – displays the current time (if configured to show the time).

Operating the drive

AUTO/HAND – The very first time the drive is powered up, it is in the auto control (AUTO) mode, and is controlled from the Control terminal block X1.

To switch to hand control (HAND) and control the drive using the control panel, press and hold the  or  button.

- Pressing the HAND button switches the drive to hand control while keeping the drive running.
- Pressing the OFF button switches to hand control and stops the drive.

To switch back to auto control (AUTO), press and hold the  button.

Hand/Auto/Off – To start the drive press the HAND or AUTO buttons, to stop the drive press the OFF button.

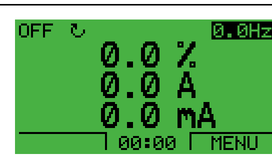
Reference – To modify the reference (only possible if the display in the upper right corner is in reverse video) press the UP or DOWN buttons (the reference changes immediately).

The reference can be modified in the local control mode (HAND/OFF), and can be parameterized (using Group 11 reference select) to also allow modification in the remote control mode.

Note: The Start/Stop, Shaft direction and Reference functions are only valid in local control (HAND/OFF) mode.

Parameters Mode

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		

2	Select the Parameters mode with the UP/ DOWN buttons, and select ENTER to select the Parameters Mode.		
3	Select the appropriate parameter group with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.		
4	Select the appropriate parameter in a group with the UP/DOWN buttons. Select EDIT to change the parameter.		
5	Press the UP/DOWN buttons to change the parameter value.		
6	Select SAVE to store the modified value or select CANCEL to leave the set mode. • Any modifications not saved are cancelled. • Each individual parameter setting is valid immediately after pressing SAVE.		
7	Select EXIT to return to the listing of parameter groups, and again to return to the main menu.		

For detailed hardware description, see the Appendix.

Note: The current parameter value appears below the highlighted parameter.

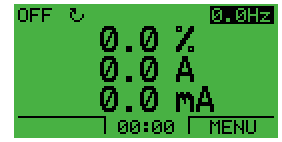
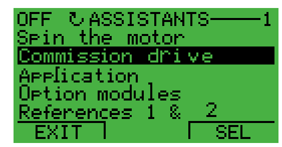
Note: To view the default parameter value, press the UP/DOWN buttons simultaneously.

Note: The most typical and necessary parameters to change are parameter groups 99 Start-up data, 10 Start/Stop/Dir, 11 Reference Select, 20 Limits, 21 Start/Stop, 22 Accel/Decel, 26 Motor Control and 30 Fault Functions.

Note: To restore the default factory settings, select the application macro HVAC Default.

Start-Up Assistant Mode

To start the Start-Up Assistant, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu		
2	Select ASSISTANTS with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.		
3	Scroll to COMMISSION DRIVE with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.		
4	Change the values suggested by the assistant to your preferences and then press SAVE after every change.		

The Start-Up Assistant will guide you through the start-up.

The Start-Up Assistant guides you through the basic programming of a new drive. (You should familiarize yourself with basic control panel operation and follow the steps outlined above.) At the first start, the drive automatically suggests entering the first task, Language Select.The assistant also checks the values entered to prevent entries that are out of range.

The Start-Up Assistant is divided into tasks. You may activate the tasks one after the other, as the Start-Up Assistant suggests, or independently.

Note: If you want to set the parameters independently, use the Parameters Mode.

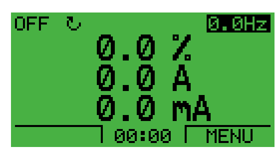
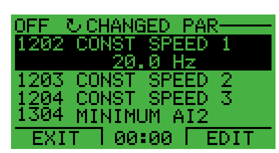
The order of tasks presented by the Start-up Assistant depends on your entries. The following task list is typical.

Task name	Description
Spin the motor	• Prompts for control panel display language selection. • Prompts for motor data. • Guides user through rotation check.
Commission drive	Prompts for motor data.
Application	Prompts for application macro selection.
References 1 & 2	• Prompts for the source of speed references 1 and 2. • Prompts for reference limits. • Prompts for frequency (or speed) limits.

Task name	Description
Start/Stop Control	• Prompts for the source for start and stop commands. • Prompts for start and stop mode definition. • Prompts for acceleration and deceleration times.
Protections	• Prompts for current and torque limits. • Prompts for the use of Run enable and Start enable signals. • Prompts for the use of emergency stop. • Prompts for Fault function selection. • Prompts for Auto reset functions selection.
Constant Speeds	• Prompts for the use of constant speeds. • Prompts for constant speed values.
PID Control	• Prompts for PID settings. • Prompts for the source of process reference. • Prompts for reference limits. • Prompts for source, limits and units for the process actual value. • Defines the use of Sleep function.
Low Noise Setup	• Prompts for switching frequency. • Prompts for definition of Flux optimization. • Prompts for the use of Critical speeds.
Panel Display	Prompts for display variable and unit settings.
Timed Functions	Prompts for the use of Timed functions.
Output	• Prompts for the signals indicated through the relay outputs. • Prompts for signals indicated through the analog outputs AO1 and AO2. Sets the minimum, maximum, scaling and inversion values.

Changed Parameters Mode

To view (and edit) a listing of all parameters that have been changed from macro default values, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		
2	Select CHANGED PAR with the UP/ DOWN buttons and select ENTER.	 	
3	A list of changed parameters is displayed. Select EXIT to exit the Changed Parameters Mode.		

Fault Logger Mode

Use the Fault Logger Mode to see drive fault history, fault state details and help for the faults.

1. Select FAULT LOGGER in the Main Menu.
2. Press ENTER to see the latest faults (up to 10 faults, maximum).
3. Press DETAIL to see details for the selected fault.
   - Details are available for the three latest faults.
4. Press DIAG to see the help description for the fault. See *Diagnostics* section.

Note: If a power off occurs, only the three latest faults will remain (with details only in the first fault).

Drive Parameter Backup Mode

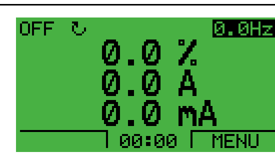
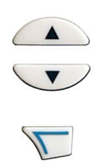
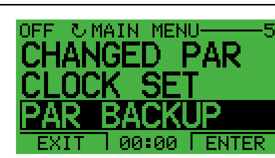
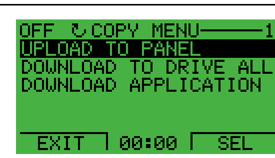
Use the Drive Parameter Backup Mode to export parameters from one drive to another. The parameters are uploaded from a drive to the control panel and downloaded from the control panel to another drive. Two options are available:

Par Backup Mode

The Assistant Control Panel can store a full set of drive parameters.

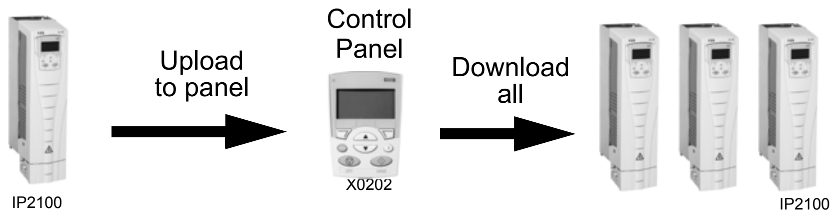
The Par Backup Mode has these functions:

- **Upload to Panel** – Copies all parameters from the drive to the Control Panel. This includes user sets of parameters (if defined) and internal parameters such as those created by the Motor Id Run. The Control Panel memory is non-volatile and does not depend on the panel's battery. To upload parameters to control panel, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/ DOWN buttons and select ENTER.		
3	Scroll to Upload to Panel and select SEL.		

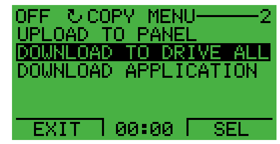
4	The text "Copying parameters" and a progress diagram is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		OFF ↻PAR BACKUP Copying parameters 51% ABORT 00:00
5	The text "Parameter upload successful" is displayed and the control panel returns to the PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu. Now you can disconnect the panel.		OFF ↻MESSAGE Parameter upload successful 00:00 OFF ↻COPY MENU 1 UPLOAD TO PANEL DOWNLOAD TO DRIVE ALL DOWNLOAD APPLICATION EXIT 00:00 SEL

- **Download Full Set** – Restores the full parameter set from the Control Panel to the drive. Use this option to restore a drive, or to configure identical drives. This download does not include user sets of parameters.



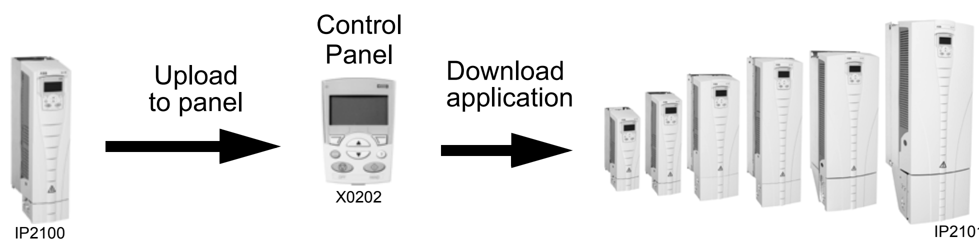
To download all parameters to drive, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		OFF ↻ 0.0Hz 0.0 % 0.0 A 0.0 mA 00:00 MENU
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/ DOWN buttons.		OFF ↻MAIN MENU 5 CHANGED PAR CLOCK SET PAR BACKUP EXIT 00:00 ENTER
3	Scroll to Download to drive all and select SEL.		OFF ↻COPY MENU 2 UPLOAD TO PANEL DOWNLOAD TO DRIVE ALL DOWNLOAD APPLICATION EXIT 00:00 SEL
4	The text "Restoring parameters" is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		OFF ↻PAR BACKUP Restoring parameters 51% ABORT 00:00

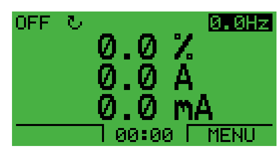
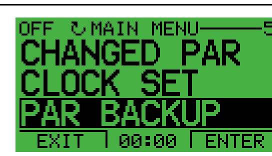
5	After the download stops, the message “Parameter download successful” is displayed and the control panel goes back to PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu.		 

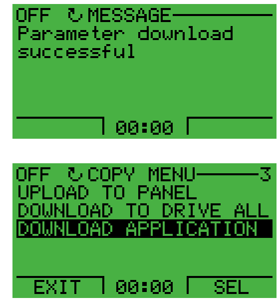
Note: Download Full Set writes all parameters to the drive, including motor parameters. Only use this function to restore a drive, or to transfer parameters to systems that are identical to the original system.

- **Download Application** – Copies a partial parameter set from the Control Panel to a drive. The partial set does not include internal motor parameters, parameters 9905…9909, 1605, 1607, 5201, nor any Group 51 and 53 parameters. Use this option to transfer parameters to systems that use similar configurations – the drive and motor sizes do not need to be the same.



To download application to drive, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/ DOWN buttons.		
3	Scroll to DOWNLOAD APPLICATION and select SEL.		
4	The text “Downloading parameters (partial)” is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		

5	The text "Parameter download successful" is displayed and the control panel returns to PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu.		

- **Download User Set 1 -** Copies USER S1 parameters (user sets are saved using parameter 9902 APPLIC MACRO) from the Control Panel to the drive.
- **Download User Set 2 -** Copies USER S2 parameters from the Control Panel to the drive.

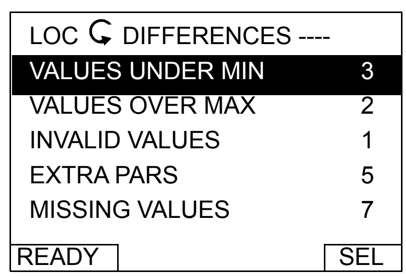
Handling inexact downloads

In some situations, an exact copy of the download is not appropriate for the target drive. Some examples:

- A download to an old drive specifies parameters/values that are not available on the old drive.
- A download (from an old drive) to a new drive does not have definitions for the new parameters – parameters that did not originally exist.
- A download can include an illegal value for the target drive, e.g. a backup from a small drive can have a switching frequency of 12 kHz whereas a big drive can only handle 8k Hz.

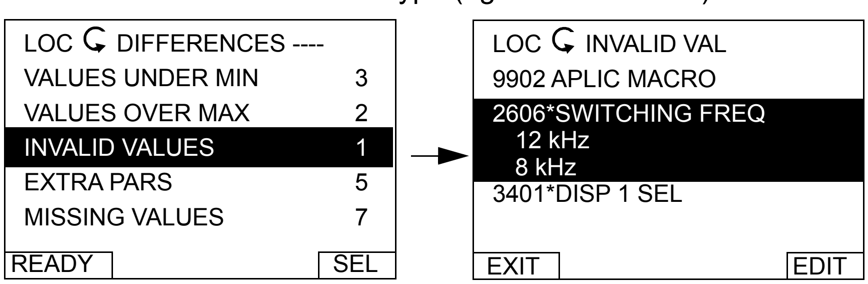
As a default, the control panel handles these situations by:

- Discarding parameters/values not available on the target drive.
- Using parameter default values when the download provides no values or invalid values.
- Providing a Differences List – A listing of the type and number of items that the target cannot accept exactly as specified.



You can either accept the default edits by pressing READY, or view and edit each item as follows:

1. Highlight an item type in the Differences List (left screen below) and press SEL to see the details for the selected type (right screen below).



In the above-right "details" screen:

- The first item that requires editing is automatically highlighted and includes details: In general, the first item listed in the details is the value defined by the backup file. The second item listed is the "default edit."
- For tracking purposes, an asterisk initially appears by each item. As edits are made, the asterisks disappear.

2. In the illustrated example, the backup specifies a switching frequency of 12 kHz, but the target drive is limited to 8 kHz.
3. Press EDIT to edit the parameter. The display is the target drive's standard edit screen for the selected parameter.
4. Highlight the desired value for the target drive.
5. Press SAVE to save setting.
6. Press EXIT to step back to the differences view and continue for each remaining exception.
7. When your editing is complete, press READY in the Differences List and then select "Yes, save parameters."

Download failures

In some situations, the drive may be unable to accept a download. In those cases, the control panel display is: "Parameter download failed" plus one of the following causes:

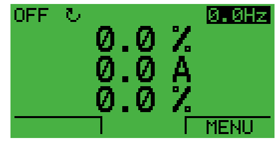
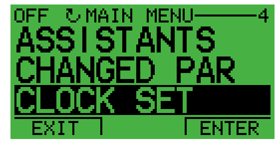
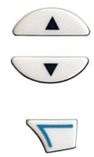
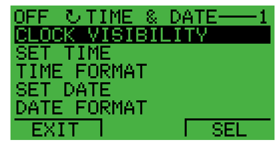
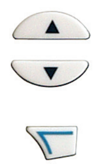
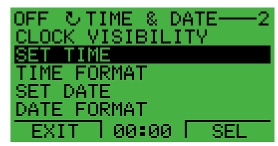
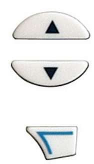
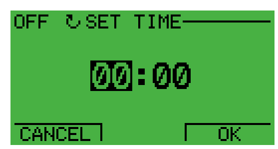
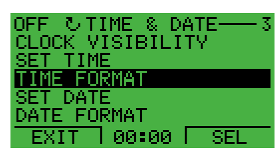
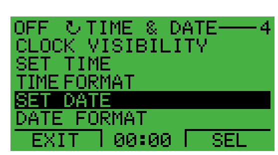
- Set not found – You are attempting to download a data set that was not defined in the backup. The remedy is to manually define the set, or upload the set from a drive that has the desired set definitions.
- Par lock – The remedy is to unlock the parameter set (parameter 1602).
- Incompat drive/model – The remedy is to perform backups only between drives of the same type (ACS/industrial or ACH/HVAC) and the same model (all ACH550).
- Too many differences – The remedy is to manually define a new set, or upload the set from a drive that more closely resembles the target drive.

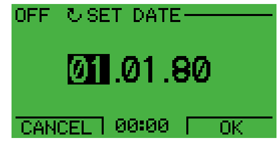
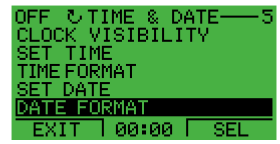
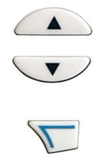
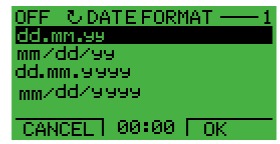
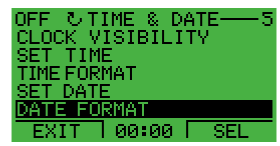
Note: If upload or download of parameters is aborted, the partial parameter set is not implemented.

Clock Set Mode

The Clock Set Mode is used for setting the time and date for the internal clock of the ACH550. In order to use the timer functions of the ACH550, the internal clock has to be set first. Date is used to determine weekdays and is visible in Fault logs.

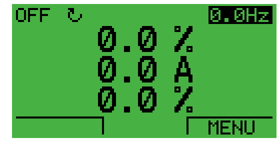
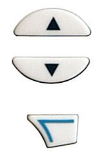
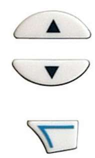
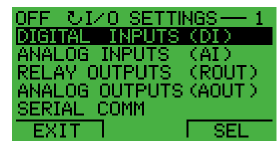
To set the clock, follow these steps:

<table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Select MENU to enter the main menu.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Scroll to Clock Set with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER to enter the Clock Set Mode.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Scroll to Clock Visibility with the UP/ DOWN buttons and select SEL to change the visibility of the clock.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Scroll to Show Clock with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL to make the clock visible.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Scroll to Set Time with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>Change the hours and minutes with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to save the values. The active value is displayed in inverted color.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Scroll to Time Format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>The different formats are displayed. Select a format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL to confirm the selection.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>Scroll to Set Date with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.</td><td></td><td>
</td></tr>
</table>

10	Change the days, months and year with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to save the values. The active value is displayed in inverted color.		
11	Scroll to Date Format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.		
12	The Date formats are displayed. Select a date format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to confirm the selection.		
13	Select EXIT twice to return to the main menu.		

I/O Settings Mode

To view and edit the I/O settings, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Scroll to I/O Settings with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.		
3	Scroll to the I/O setting you want to view with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.		
4	Select the setting you want to view with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK.		
5	You can change the value with the UP/ DOWN buttons and save it by selecting SAVE. If you do not want to change the setting, select CANCEL.		
6	Select EXIT to return to the main menu.		

Start-up

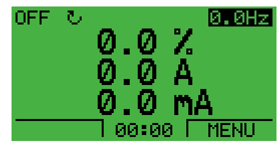
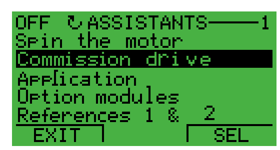
Start-up

Start-up can be performed in two ways:

- Using the Start-Up Assistant.
- Changing the parameters individually.

Start-up by using the Start-Up Assistant

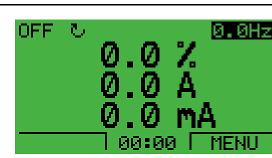
To start the Start-Up Assistant, follow these steps:

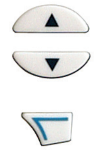
1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select ASSISTANTS with the Up/Down buttons and select ENTER.		
3	Scroll to COMMISSION DRIVE with the Up/Down buttons.		
4	Change the values suggested by the assistant to your preferences and then press SAVE after every change.		

The Start-Up Assistant will guide you through the start-up.

Start-up by changing the parameters individually

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select the Parameters mode with the UP/ DOWN buttons and select ENTER to select the Parameters mode.		

3	Select the appropriate parameter group with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL		
4	Select the appropriate parameter in a group with the UP/DOWN buttons. Select EDIT to change the parameter value.		
5	Press the UP/DOWN buttons to change the parameter value.		
6	Select SAVE to store the modified value or select CANCEL to leave the set mode. Any modifications not saved are cancelled.		
7	Select EXIT to return to the listing of parameter groups, and again to return to the main menu.		

To complete the control connections by manually entering the parameters, see *Parameters Mode* on page *1-35*.

For detailed hardware description, see the *Technical data* section on page *1-297*.

Note: The current parameter value appears below the highlighted parameter.

Note: To view the default parameter value, press the UP/DOWN buttons simultaneously.

Note: The most typical and necessary parameters to change are parameter groups 99 Start-up data, 10 Start/Stop/Dir, 11 Reference Select, 20 Limits, 21 Start/Stop, 22 Accel/Decel, 26 Motor Control and 30 Fault Functions.

Note: To restore the default factory settings, select the application macro HVAC Default.

Application macros

Overview

Macros change a group of parameters to new, predefined values designed for specific applications. Use macros to minimize the need for manual editing of parameters. Selecting a macro sets all other parameters to their default values, except:

- Group 99: Start-up Data parameters (except parameter 9904)
- The PARAMETER LOCK 1602
- The PARAM SAVE 1607
- The COMM FAULT FUNC 3018 and COMM FAULT TIME 3019
- The COMM PROT SEL 9802
- Groups 51…53 serial communication parameters
- Group 29: Maintenance triggers

After selecting a macro, additional parameter changes can be made manually using the control panel.

Application macros are enabled by setting the value for parameter 9902 APPLIC MACRO. By default, HVAC Default (value 1) is the enabled macro.

General considerations

The following considerations apply for all macros:

- When using a direct speed reference in AUTO mode, connect the speed reference to analog input 1 (AI1), and provide the START command using digital input 1 (DI1). In HAND/OFF mode, the control panel provides the speed reference and START command.
- When using process PID, connect the feedback signal to analog input 2 (AI2). As a default, the control panel sets the Setpoint, but analog input 1 can be used as an alternate source. You can set up process PID using parameters (Group 40) or using the PID control assistant (recommended).

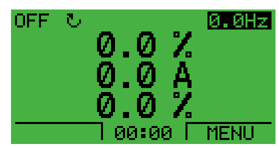
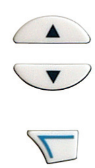
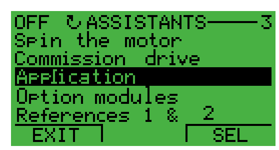
Application / macro listing

This section describes the following macros:

9902 Value	Macro	9902 Value	Macro
1	HVAC Default	9	Internal Timer with Constant Speeds
2	Supply Fan	10	Floating Point
3	Return Fan	11	Dual Setpoint PID
4	Cooling Tower Fan	12	Dual Setpoint PID with Constant Speeds
5	Condenser	13	E-bypass
6	Booster Pump	14	Hand Control
7	Pump Alternation	15	E-Clipse
8	Internal Timer		

Selecting an application macro

To select a macro, follow these steps:

<table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Select MENU to enter the main menu.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Select ASSISTANTS with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Scroll to APPLICATION and select ENTER.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Select a macro with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SAVE.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Restoring defaults

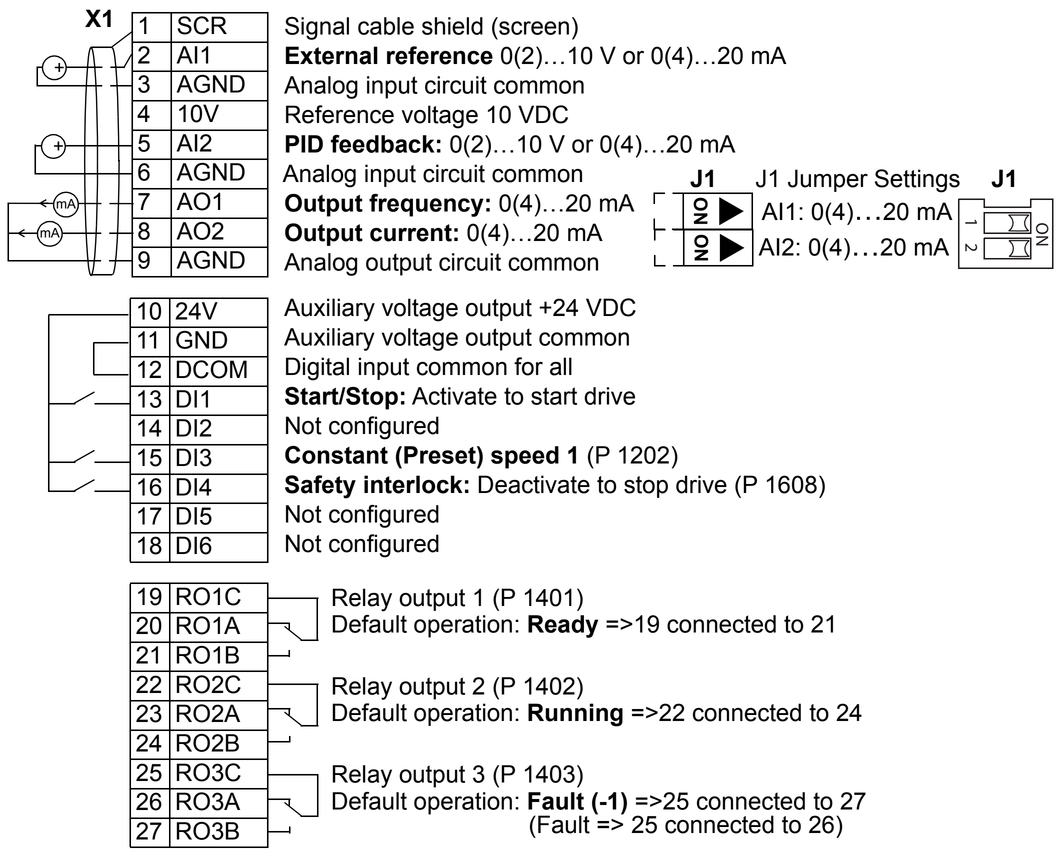
To restore the factory default settings, select the application macro HVAC Default.

Control wiring

Each macro has specific requirements for control wiring. For general details about the ACH550 control wiring terminals, see *Control terminal descriptions* on page *1-316*. Specific wiring requirements are included with each macro description.

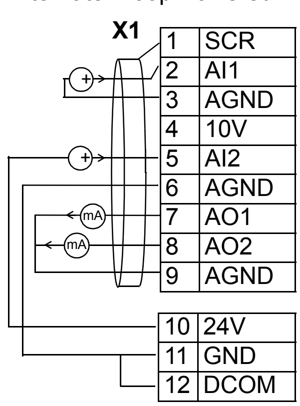
HVAC Default macro

This macro provides the factory default parameter settings for the ACH550-UH. Factory defaults can be restored at any time by setting parameter 9902 to 1. The diagram below shows typical wiring using this macro. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



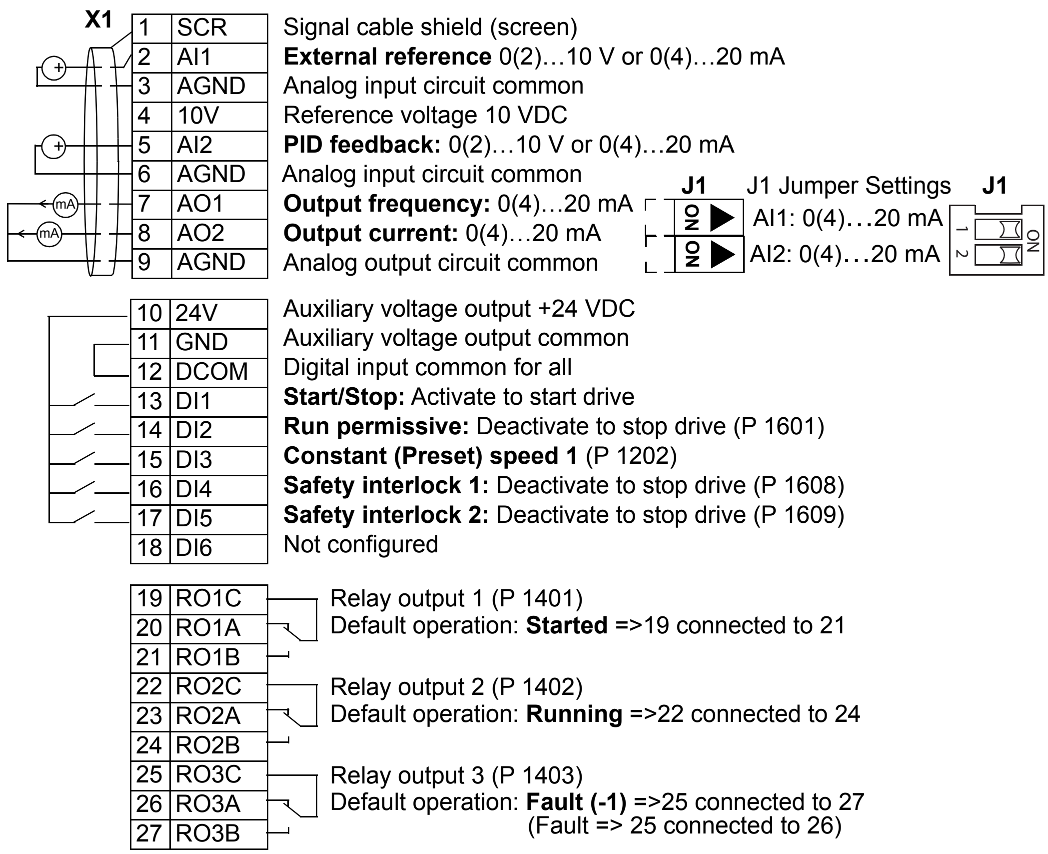
Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
None (Default macro)			

Alternate "Loop Powered Transmitter" Wiring



Supply Fan macro

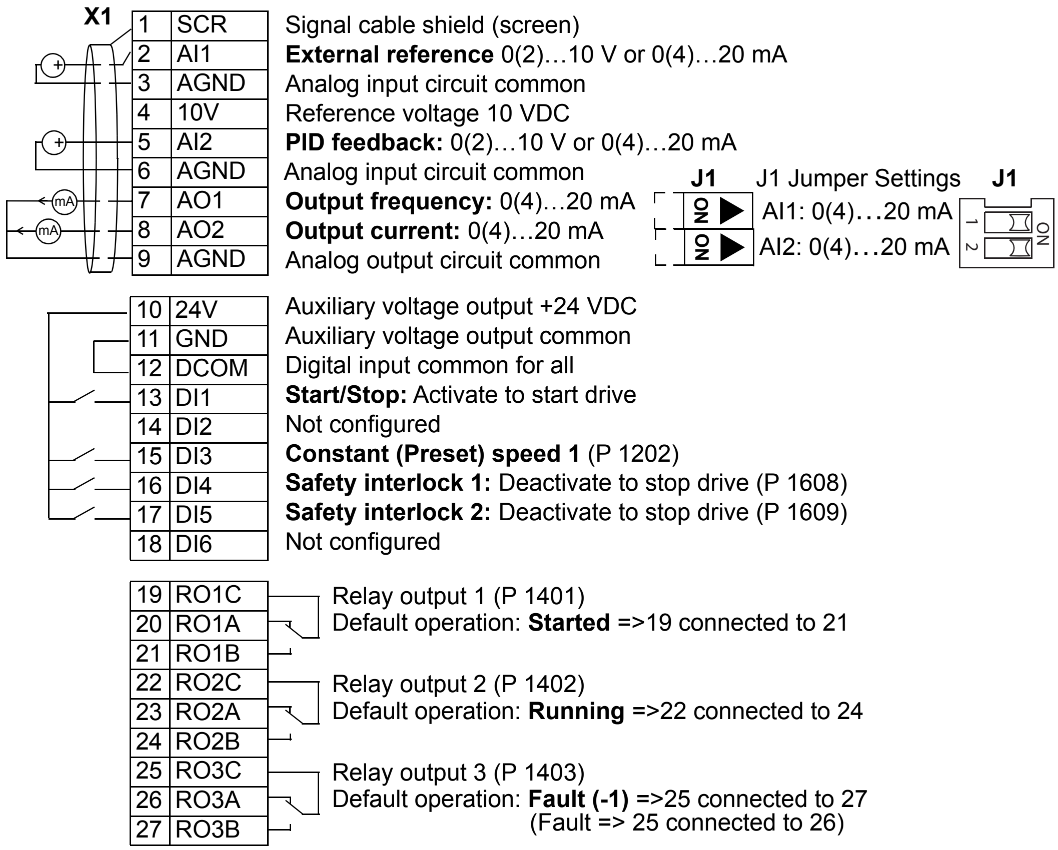
This macro configures for supply fan applications where the supply fan brings fresh air in according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	2 (SUPPLY FAN)	1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)

Return Fan macro

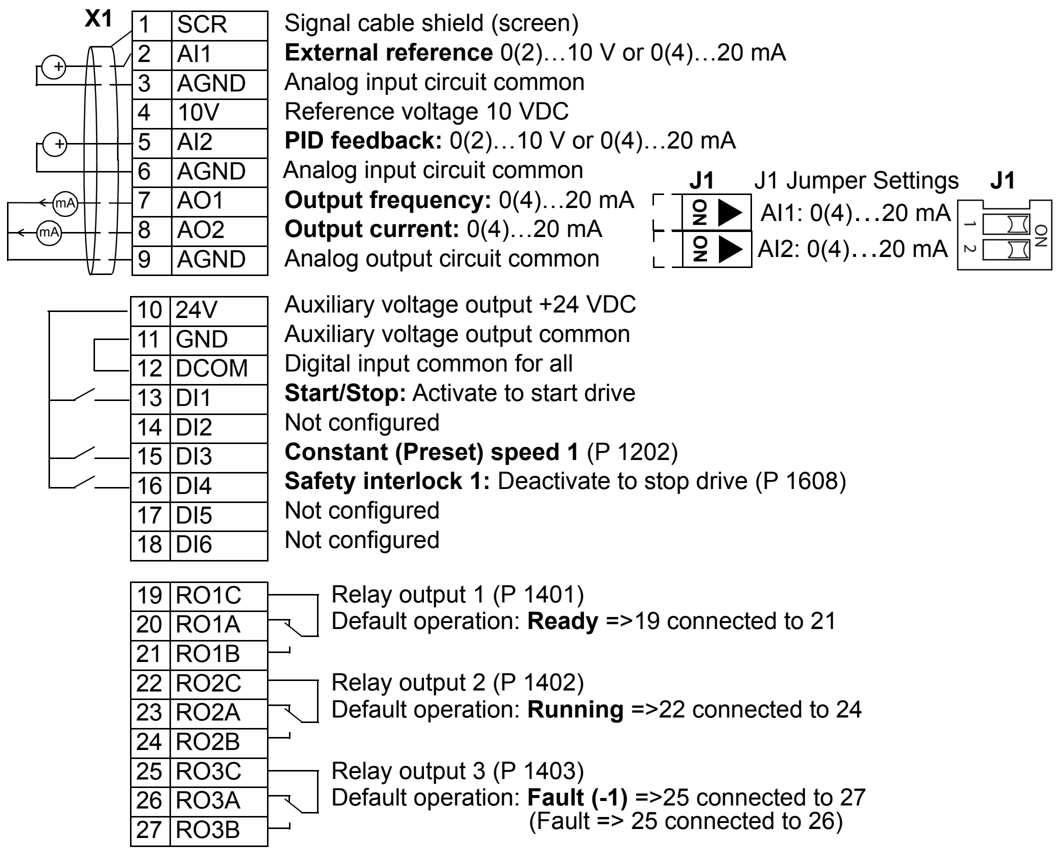
This macro configures for return fan applications where the return fan removes air according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	3 (RETURN FAN)	1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)		

Cooling Tower Fan macro

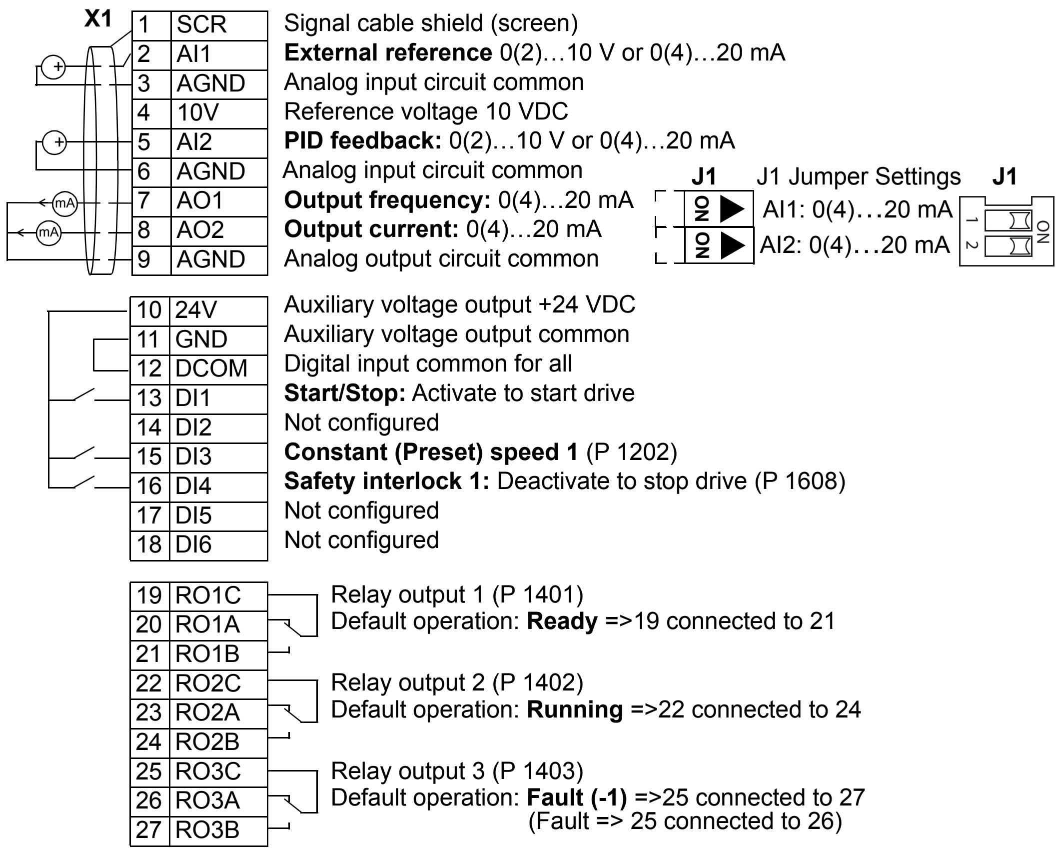
This macro configures for cooling tower fan applications where the fan speed is controlled according to the signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	4 (CLNG TWR FAN)	4005 **ERROR VALUE INV**	1 (YES)
2007 MINIMUM FREQ	20.0 Hz		

Condenser macro

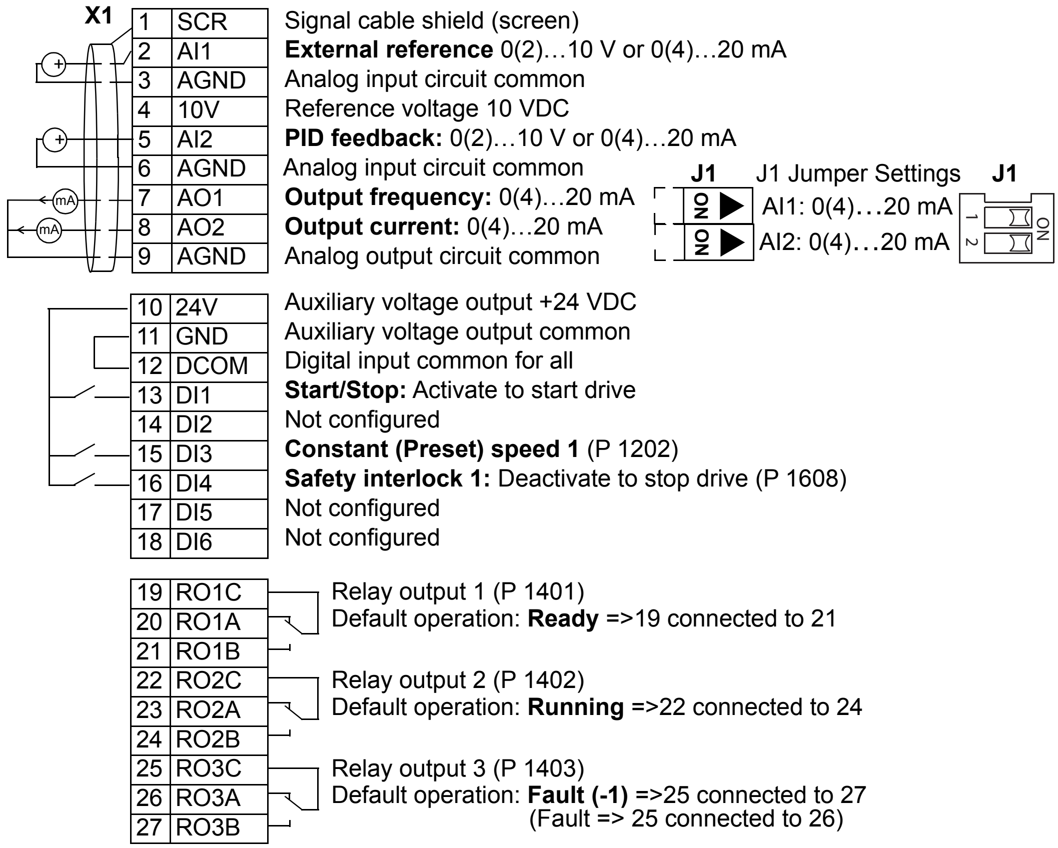
This macro configures for condenser and liquid cooler applications where fan speed is controlled according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	5 (CONDENSER)	4005 **ERROR VALUE INV**	1 (YES)

Booster Pump macro

This macro configures for booster pump applications where the pump speed is controlled according to a signal received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	6 (BOOSTER PUMP)	2202 ACCELER TIME 1	10.0 s
2101 START FUNCTION	8 (RAMP)	2203 DECELER TIME 1	10.0 s

Pump Alternation macro

This macro configures for pump alternation applications, usually used in booster stations. To adjust/maintain pressure in the network, the speed of the one pump changes according to a signal received from a pressure transducer. When the variable speed pump reaches a maximum speed limit, auxiliary pumps start as needed. When using process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*. To use more than one (the default) Auxiliary pump, see parameter group 81.

X1

1	SCR	Signal cable shield (screen)
2	AI1	**External reference** 0(2)…10 V or 0(4)…20 mA
3	AGND	Analog input circuit common
4	10V	Reference voltage 10 VDC
5	AI2	**PID feedback:** 0(2)…10 V or 0(4)…20 mA
6	AGND	Analog input circuit common
7	AO1	**Output frequency:** 0(4)…20 mA
8	AO2	**Output current:** 0(4)…20 mA
9	AGND	Analog output circuit common
10	24V	Auxiliary voltage output +24 VDC
11	GND	Auxiliary voltage output common
12	DCOM	Digital input common for all
13	DI1	**Start/Stop:** Activate to start drive
14	DI2	Not configured
15	DI3	Not configured
16	DI4	**PFA interlock 1:** Deactivate to stop drive (P 8120)
17	DI5	Not configured
18	DI6	Not configured
19	RO1C	Relay output 1 (P 1401) Default operation: **PFA** (starts lag pump)
20	RO1A	
21	RO1B	
22	RO2C	Relay output 2 (P 1402) Default operation: **Running** =>22 connected to 24
23	RO2A	
24	RO2B	
25	RO3C	Relay output 3 (P 1403) Default operation: **Fault (-1)** =>25 connected to 27 (Fault => 25 connected to 26)
26	RO3A	
27	RO3B	

J1 J1 Jumper Settings **J1**

AI1: 0(4)…20 mA

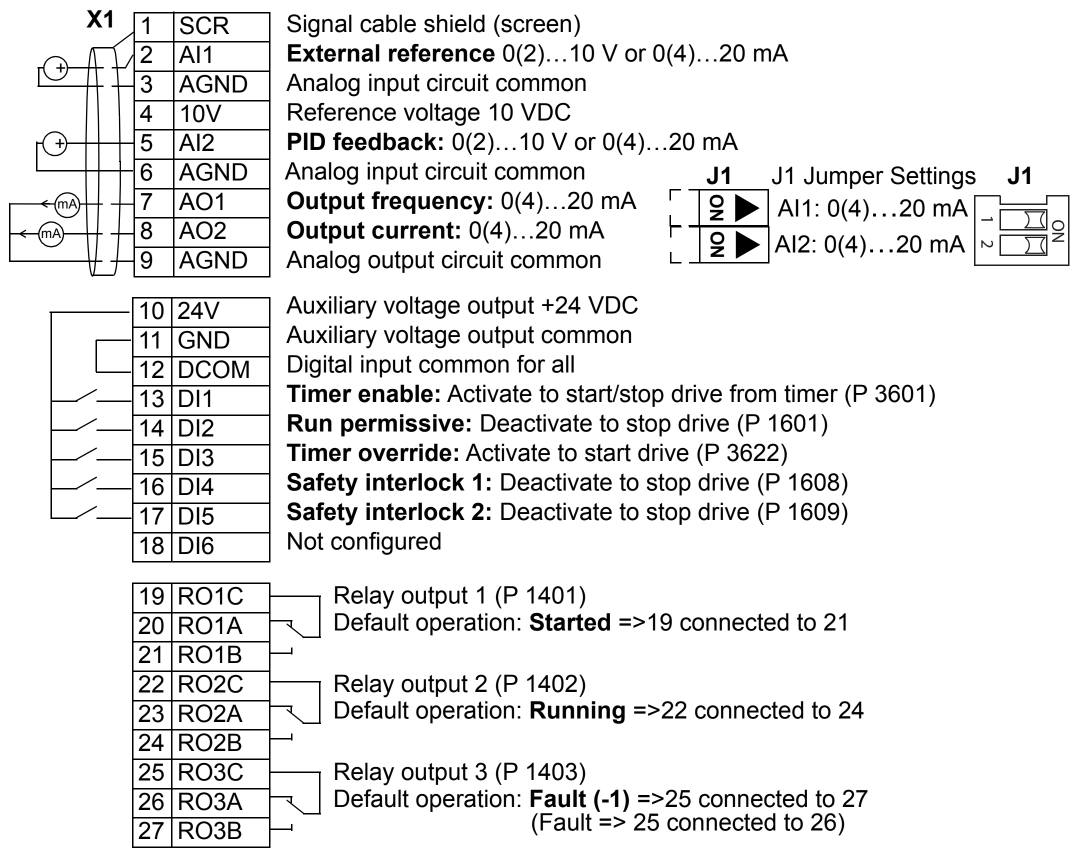
AI2: 0(4)…20 mA

Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	7 (PUMP ALTERNA)	2203 DECELER TIME 1	10.0 s
1201 CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	8109 START FREQ 1	58.0 HZ
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	31 (PFA)	8110 START FREQ 2	58.0 HZ
1608 START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)	8111 START FREQ 3	58.0 HZ
2101 START FUNCTION	8 (RAMP)	8123 PFA ENABLE	1 (ACTIVE)
2202 ACCELER TIME 1	10.0 s		

Internal Timer macro

This macro configures for applications where a built-in timer starts and stops the motor. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.

Momentarily activating digital input 3 (DI3) provides a boost function which operates the motor. See group 36, Timer Functions, for more information on setting up timers.

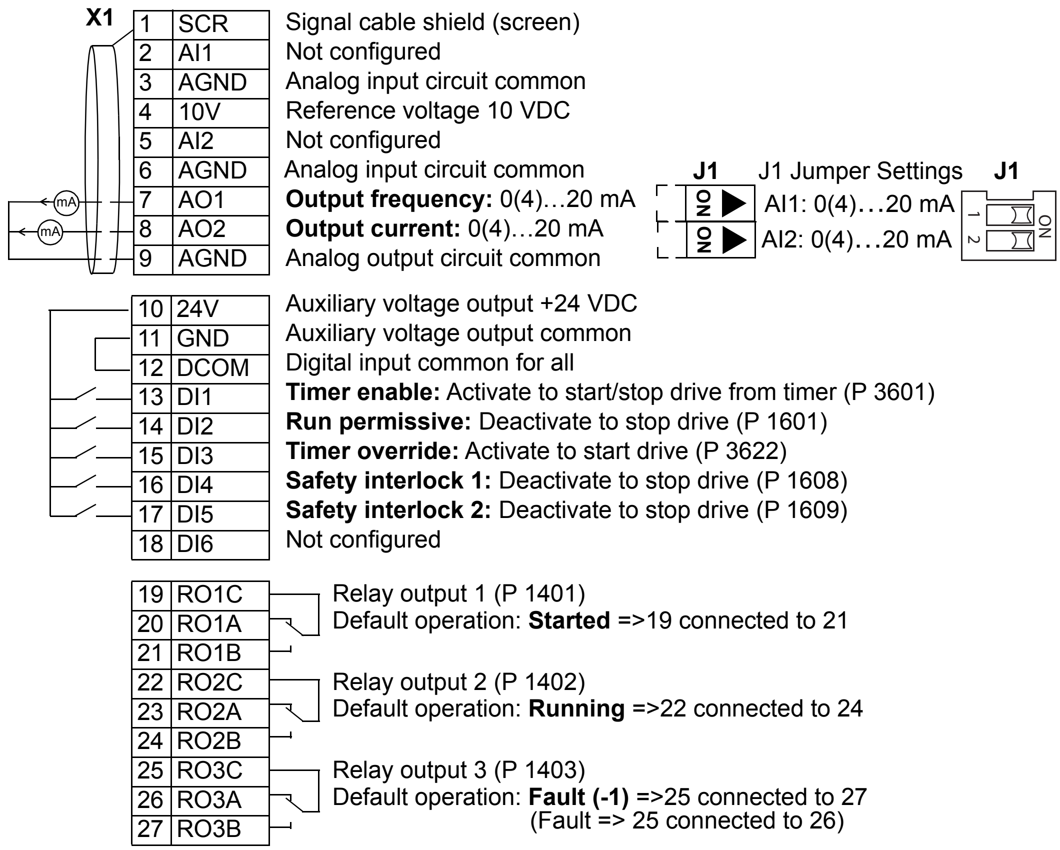


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	8 (INT TIMER)	1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)
1001 EXT1 COMMANDS	11 (TIMER 1)	1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)
1002 EXT2 COMMANDS	11 (TIMER 1)	3601 TIMERS ENABLE	1 (DI1)
1201 CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	3622 BOOST SEL	3 (DI3)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3626 TIMER 1 SRC	31 (P1+2+3+4+B)

Internal Timer with Constant Speeds / PRV macro

This macro configures for applications such as a timed powered roof ventilator (PRV) which alternates between two constant speeds (constant speed 1 and 2) based on a built-in timer.

Momentarily activating digital input 3 (DI3) provides a boost function which operates the motor. See group 36, Timer Functions, for more information on setting up timers.

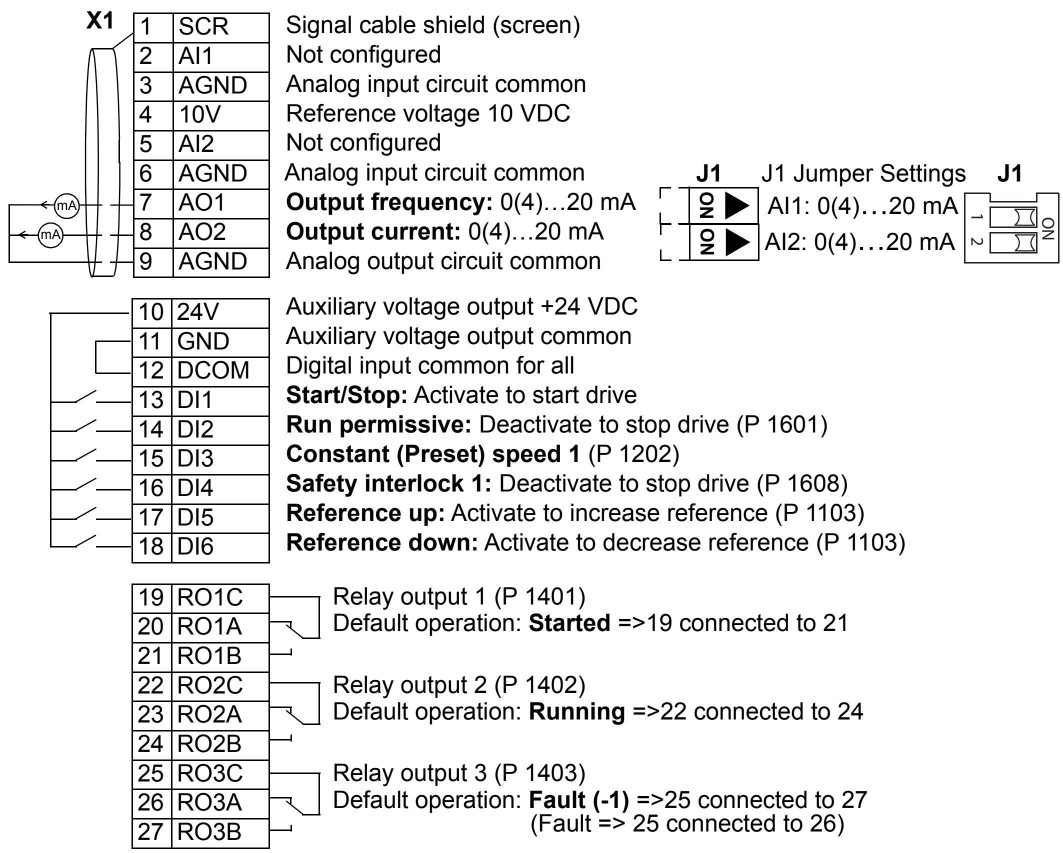


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter		**Value**	**Parameter**		**Value**
9902	APPLIC MACRO	9 (INT TIMER CS)	3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX	200.0%
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)	3419	OUTPUT 3 UNIT	4 (%)
1103	REF1 SEL	0 (KEYPAD)	3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN	-200.0%
1106	REF2 SEL	2 (AI2)	3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX	200.0%
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	15 (TIMER 1)	3601	TIMERS ENABLE	1 (DI1)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3622	BOOST SEL	3 (DI3)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	3626	TIMER 1 SRC	31 (P1+2+3+4+B)
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4010	SET POINT SEL	1 (AI1)
3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM	0105 (TORQUE)	4110	SET POINT SEL	1 (AI1)
3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN	-200.0%			

Floating Point macro

This application macro is for applications where speed reference needs to be controlled through digital inputs (DI5 & DI6). By activating digital input 5, the speed reference increases, by activating digital input 6, the speed reference decreases. If both digital inputs are active or inactive, the reference does not change.

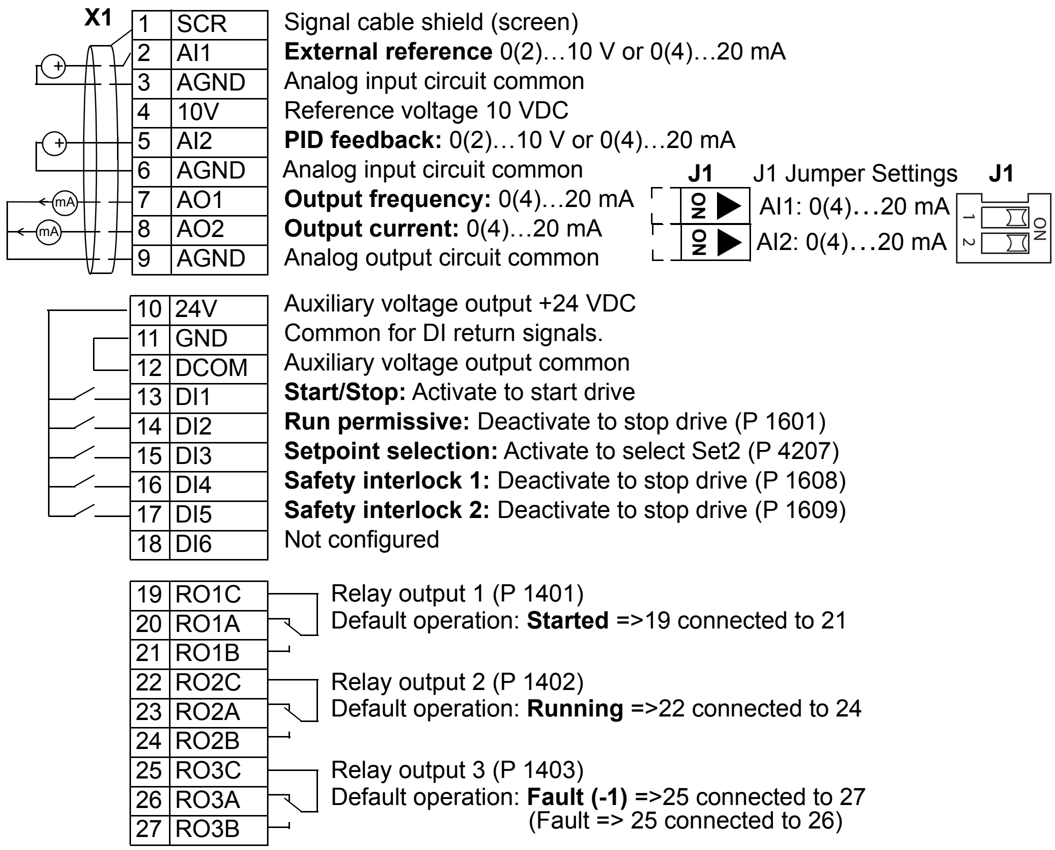
Note: When constant speed 1 is activated using digital input 3 (DI3), the reference speed is the value of parameter 1202. The value remains as the reference speed when digital input 3 is deactivated.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	10 (FLOATING PNT)	3416 SIGNAL 3 MIN	-200.0%
1103 REF1 SEL	7 (DI5U, 6D)	3417 SIGNAL 3 MAX	200.0%
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3419 OUTPUT 3 UNIT	4 (%)
1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	3420 OUTPUT 3 MIN	-200.0%
3415 SIGNAL 3 PARAM	0105 (TORQUE)	3421 OUTPUT 3 MAX	200.0%

Dual Setpoint with PID macro

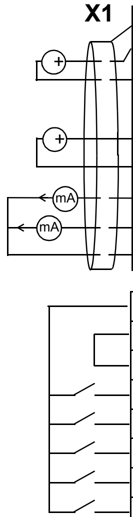
This macro configures for dual setpoint PID applications, where activating digital input 3 (DI3) changes the process PID controller's setpoint to another value. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*. Set process PID setpoints (internal to the drive) using parameters 4011 (SET1) and 4111 (SET2).



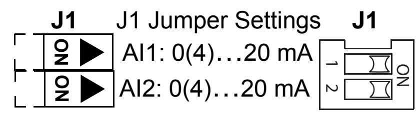
Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	11 (DUAL SETPPID)	4010 SET POINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1201 CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	4011 INTERNAL SETPNT	50.0%
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4027 PID 1 PARAM SET	3 (DI3)
1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4110 SET POINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4111 INTERNAL SETPNT	100.0%

Dual Setpoint with PID and Constant Speeds

This macro configures for applications with 2 constant speeds, active PID and PID alternating between two setpoints using digital inputs. Set PID setpoints (internal to the drive) using parameters 4011 (SET1) and 4111 (SET2). The digital input DI3 selects the setpoints.



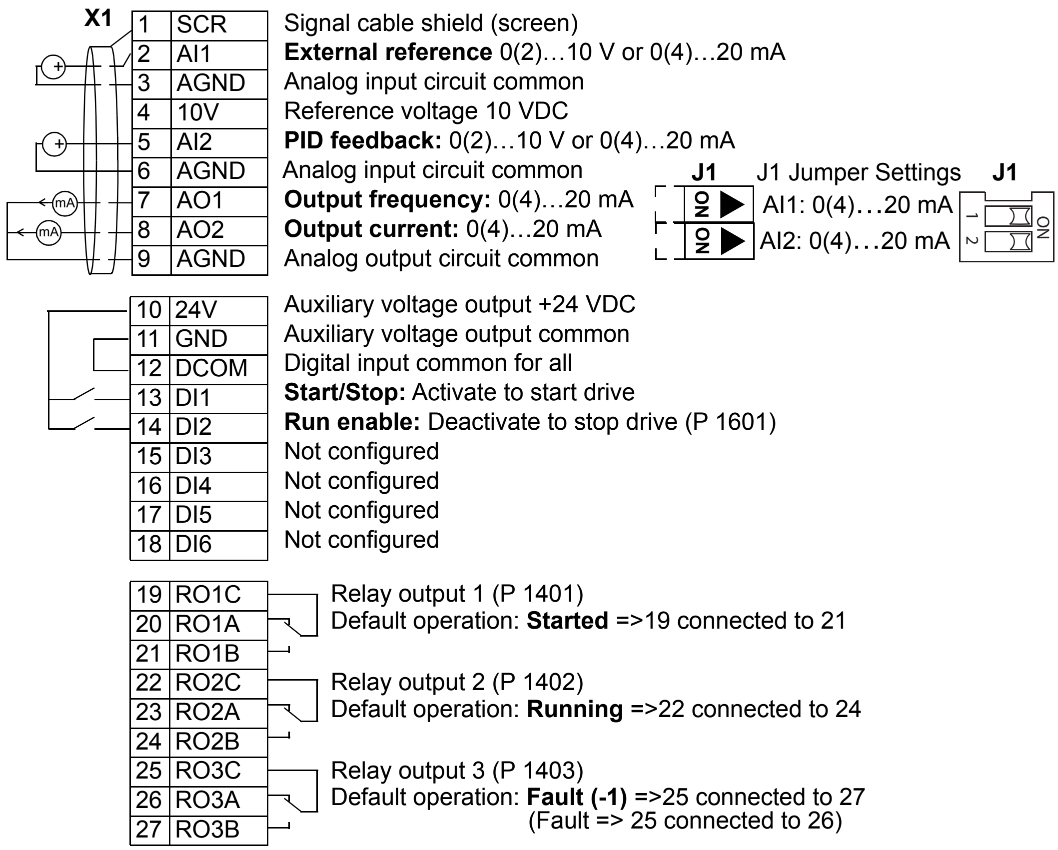
X1		
1	SCR	Signal cable shield (screen)
2	AI1	**External reference** 0(2)…10 V or 0(4)…20 mA
3	AGND	Analog input circuit common
4	10V	Reference voltage 10 VDC
5	AI2	**PID feedback:** 0(2)…10 V or 0(4)…20 mA
6	AGND	Analog input circuit common
7	AO1	**Output frequency:** 0(4)…20 mA
8	AO2	**Output current:** 0(4)…20 mA
9	AGND	Analog output circuit common
10	24V	Auxiliary voltage output +24 VDC
11	GND	Auxiliary voltage output common
12	DCOM	Digital input common for all
13	DI1	**Start/Stop:** Activate to start drive
14	DI2	**Presets/PID selection:** Activate to select PID (P 1102)
15	DI3	**Setpoint selection:** Activate to select Set2 (P 4027)
16	DI4	**Preset speed 1** (P 1201)
17	DI5	**Preset speed 2** (P 1201)
18	DI6	Not configured
19	RO1C	Relay output 1 (P 1401)
20	RO1A	Default operation: **Ready** =>19 connected to 21
21	RO1B	
22	RO2C	Relay output 2 (P 1402)
23	RO2A	Default operation: **Running** =>22 connected to 24
24	RO2B	
25	RO3C	Relay output 3 (P 1403)
26	RO3A	Default operation: **Fault (-1)** =>25 connected to 27 (Fault => 25 connected to 26)
27	RO3B	



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter		Value	Parameter		Value
9902	APPLIC MACRO	12 (DL SP PID CS)	4010	SET POINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	2 (DI2)	4011	INTERNAL SETPNT	50.0%
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	10 (DI4, 5)	4027	PID 1 PARAM SET	3 (DI3)
1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)	4110	SET POINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
2108	START INHIBIT	1 (ON)	4111	INTERNAL SETPNT	100.0%

E-bypass macro

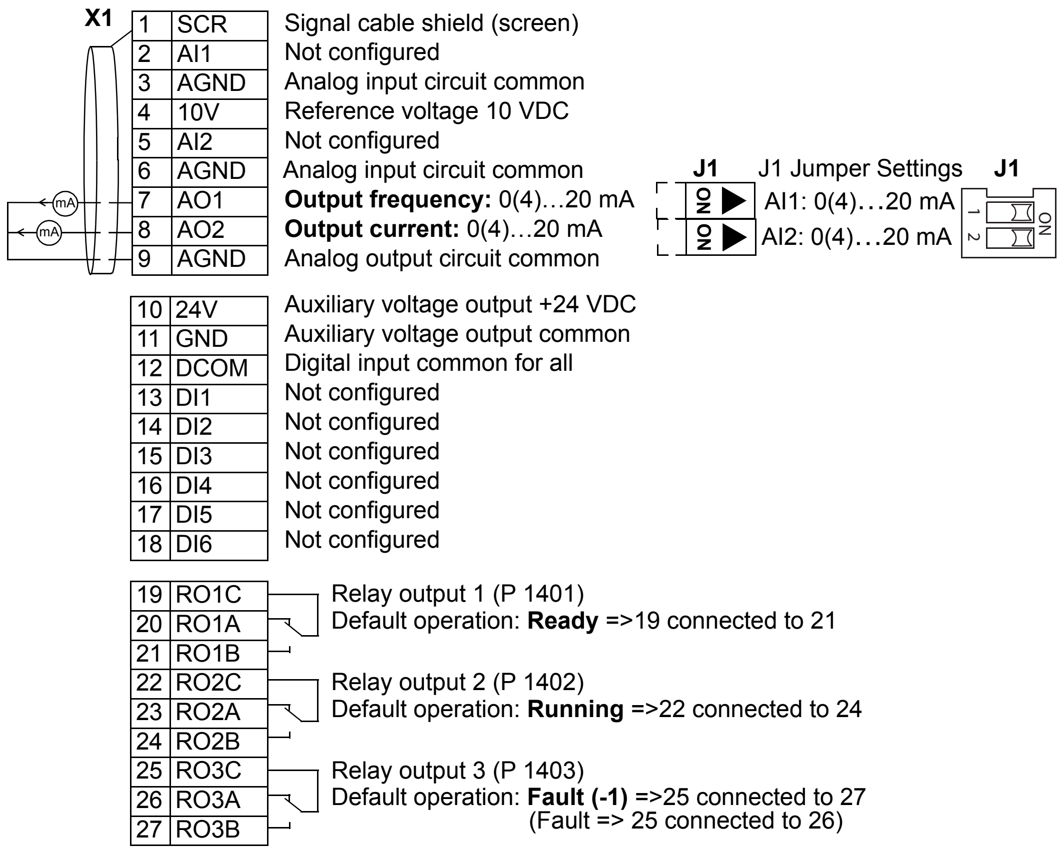
This macro configures for an E-bypass device which can bypass the drive and connect the motor direct on-line. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	**Value**	**Parameter**	**Value**
9902 APPLIC MACRO	13 (E-BYPASS)	1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)
1201 CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	1608 START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)		

Hand Control macro

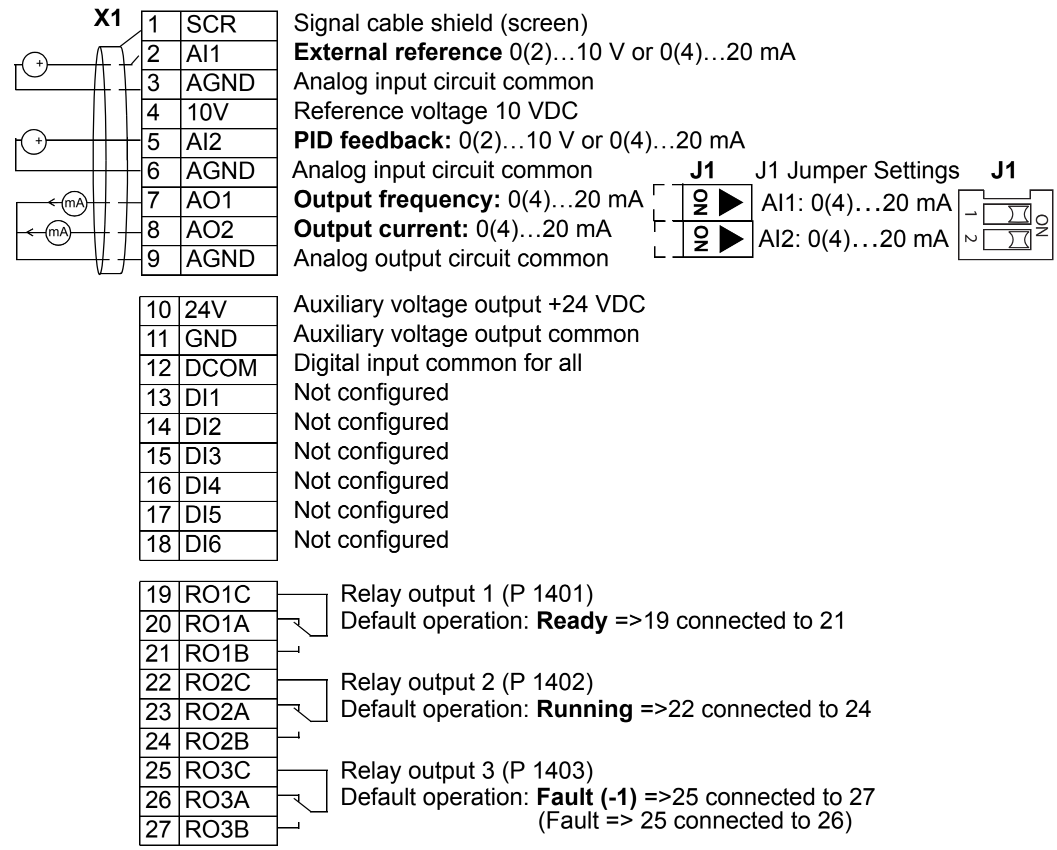
This macro configures for drive control using only the control panel with no automated control. Typically, this is a temporary configuration used prior to control wiring.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default						
Parameter		**Value**		**Parameter**		**Value**
9902	APPLIC MACRO	14 (HAND CONTROL)		3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM	0 (NOT SEL)
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)		3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN	0
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)		3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX	0
1106	REF2 SEL	2 (AI2)		3419	OUTPUT 3 UNIT	NO UNIT
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)		3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN	0.0
1504	MINIMUM AO1	0.0 mA		3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX	0.0
1510	MINIMUM AO2	0.0 mA		4010	SET POINT SEL	1 (AI1)
1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)		4110	SET POINT SEL	1 (AI1)

E-Clipse macro

This macro configures for an E-Clipse Bypass device which can bypass the drive and connect the motor direct on-line. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see *General considerations* on page *1-49*.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter		Value	Parameter		Value
9902	APPLIC MACRO	15 (E-CLIPSE)	1608	START ENABLE 1	7 (COMM)
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	5303	EFB BAUD RATE	76.8 KB/S
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	5304	EFB PARITY	2 (8 EVEN 1)
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE	1 (DCU PROFILE)
1601	RUN ENABLE	7 (COMM)			

Parameters

Complete parameter list

The following table lists all parameters. Table header abbreviations are:

- S = Parameters can be modified only when the drive is stopped.
- User = Space to enter desired parameter values.

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 99: START-UP DATA						
9901	LANGUAGE	0…16	1	0 (ENGLISH)		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	-3…15, 31	1	1 (HVAC DEFAULT)		✓
9904	MOTOR CTRL MODE	1, 3	1	3 (SCALAR:FREQ)		✓
9905	MOTOR NOM VOLT	115…345 V (200 V, US) 230…690 V (400 V, US) 288…862 V (600 V, US)	1 V	230 V (US) 460 V (US) 575 V (US)		✓
9906	MOTOR NOM CURR	$0.15 \cdot I_{2n}$ … $1.5 \cdot I_{2n}$	0.1 A	$1.0 \cdot I_{2n}$		✓
9907	MOTOR NOM FREQ	10.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)		✓
9908	MOTOR NOM SPEED	50…30000 rpm	1 rpm	Size dependent		✓
9909	MOTOR NOM POWER	0.15…$1.5 \cdot P_n$	0.1 hp	$1.0 \cdot P_n$		✓
9910	ID RUN	0, 1	1	0 (OFF/IDMAGN)		✓
9915	MOTOR COSPHI	0.01…0.97	0.01	0 (IDENTIFIED)		✓
Group 01: OPERATING DATA						
0101	SPEED & DIR	-30000…30000 rpm	1 rpm	-		
0102	SPEED	0…30000 rpm	1 rpm	-		
0103	OUTPUT FREQ	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	-		
0104	CURRENT	0.0…$1.5 \cdot I_{2n}$	0.1 A	-		
0105	TORQUE	-200.0…200.0%	0.1%	-		
0106	POWER	-1.5…$1.5 \cdot P_n$	0.1 kW	-		
0107	DC BUS VOLTAGE	0…$2.5 \cdot V_{dN}$	1 V	-		
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	0…$2.0 \cdot V_{dN}$	1 V	-		
0110	DRIVE TEMP	0.0…150.0 °C	0.1 °C	-		
0111	EXTERNAL REF 1	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	-		
0112	EXTERNAL REF 2	0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)	0.1%	-		
0113	CTRL LOCATION	0…2	1	-		
0114	RUN TIME (R)	0…9999 h	1 h	-		
0115	KWH COUNTER (R)	0…65535 kWh	1 kWh	-		
0116	APPL BLK OUTPUT	0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)	0.1%	-		
0118	DI 1-3 STATUS	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	-		
0119	DI 4-6 STATUS	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	-		
0120	AI 1	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
0121	AI 2	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	-		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	-		
0124	AO 1	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	-		
0125	AO 2	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	-		
0126	PID 1 OUTPUT	-1000.0…1000.0%	0.1%	-		
0127	PID 2 OUTPUT	-100.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
0128	PID 1 SETPNT	Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/ 4106 and 4007/4107	-	-		
0129	PID 2 SETPNT	Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207	-	-		
0130	PID 1 FBK	Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/ 4106 and 4007/4107	-	-		
0131	PID 2 FBK	Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207	-	-		
0132	PID 1 DEVIATION	Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/ 4106 and 4007/4107	-	-		
0133	PID 2 DEVIATION	Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207	-	-		
0134	COMM RO WORD	0…65535	1	-		
0135	COMM VALUE 1	-32768…+32767	1	-		
0136	COMM VALUE 2	-32768…+32767	1	-		
0137	PROCESS VAR 1	-	1	-		
0138	PROCESS VAR 2	-	1	-		
0139	PROCESS VAR 3	-	1	-		
0140	RUN TIME	0.00…499.99 kh	0.01 kh	-		
0141	MWH COUNTER	0…65535 MWh	1 MWh	-		
0142	REVOLUTION CNTR	0…65535 Mrev	1 Mrev	-		
0143	DRIVE ON TIME HI	0…65535 days	1 day	-		
0144	DRIVE ON TIME LO	00:00:00…23:59:58	1 = 2 s	-		
0145	MOTOR TEMP	Par. 3501 = 1…3: -10…200 °C Par. 3501 = 4: 0…5000 ohm Par. 3501 = 5…6: 0…1	1	-		
0150	CB TEMP	-20.0…150.0 °C	1.0 °C	-		
0153	MOT THERM STRESS	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
0158	PID COMM VALUE 1	-32768 …+32767	1	-		
0159	PID COMM VALUE 2	-32768 …+32767	1	-		
0174	SAVED KWH	0.0…999.9 kWh	0.1 kWh	-		
0175	SAVED MWH	0…65535 MWh	1 MWh	-		
0176	SAVED AMOUNT 1	0.0…999.9	0.1	-		
0177	SAVED AMOUNT 2	0…65535	1	-		
0178	SAVED CO2	0.0…6553.5 tn	0.1 tn	-		
Group 03: FB ACTUAL SIGNALS						
0301	FB CMD WORD 1	-	1	-		
0302	FB CMD WORD 2	-	1	-		
0303	FB STS WORD 1	-	1	-		
0304	FB STS WORD 2	-	1	-		
0305	FAULT WORD 1	-	1	-		
0306	FAULT WORD 2	-	1	-		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
0307	FAULT WORD 3	-	1	-		
0308	ALARM WORD 1	-	1	-		
0309	ALARM WORD 2	-	1	-		
Group 04: FAULT HISTORY						
0401	LAST FAULT	Fault codes (panel displays as text)	1	0		
0402	FAULT TIME 1	Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days	1 day	0		
0403	FAULT TIME 2	Time hh.mm.ss	2 s	0		
0404	SPEED AT FLT	-32768…+32767	1 rpm	0		
0405	FREQ AT FLT	-3276.8…+3276.7	0.1 Hz	0		
0406	VOLTAGE AT FLT	0.0…6553.5	0.1 V	0		
0407	CURRENT AT FLT	0.0…6553.5	0.1 A	0		
0408	TORQUE AT FLT	-3276.8…+3276.7	0.1%	0		
0409	STATUS AT FLT	0000…FFFF hex	1	0		
0410	DI 1-3 AT FLT	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	0		
0411	DI 4-6 AT FLT	000…111 (0…7 decimal)	1	0		
0412	PREVIOUS FAULT 1	As par. 0401	1	0		
0413	PREVIOUS FAULT 2	As par. 0401	1	0		
Group 10: START/STOP/DIR						
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	0…14	1	1 (DI1)		✓
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	0…14	1	1 (DI1)		✓
1003	DIRECTION	0…3	1	1 (FORWARD)		✓
Group 11: REFERENCE SELECT						
1101	KEYPAD REF SEL	1, 2	1	1 [REF1(Hz/rpm)]		
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	-6…12	1	0 (EXT1)		✓
1103	REF1 SELECT	0…17, 20…21	1	1 (AI1)		✓
1104	REF1 MIN	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
1105	REF1 MAX	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	60.0 Hz (US) / 1800 rpm (US)		
1106	REF2 SELECT	0…17, 19…21	1	19 (PID1OUT)		✓
1107	REF2 MIN	0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)	0.1%	0.0%		
1108	REF2 MAX	0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)	0.1%	100.0%		
Group 12: CONSTANT SPEEDS						
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	-14 …19	1	3 (DI3)		✓
1202	CONST SPEED 1	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	6.0 Hz / 360 rpm (US)		
1203	CONST SPEED 2	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	12.0 Hz / 720 rpm (US)		
1204	CONST SPEED 3	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	18.0 Hz / 1080 rpm (US)		
1205	CONST SPEED 4	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	24.0 Hz / 1440 rpm (US)		
1206	CONST SPEED 5	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	30.0 Hz / 1800 rpm (US)		
1207	CONST SPEED 6	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	48.0 Hz / 2880 rpm (US)		
1208	CONST SPEED 7	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	60.0 Hz / 3600 rpm (US)		
1209	TIMED MODE SEL	1, 2	1	2 (CS1/2/3/4)		✓

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 13: ANALOG INPUTS						
1301	MINIMUM AI1	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	20.0%		
1302	MAXIMUM AI1	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
1303	FILTER AI1	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s		
1304	MINIMUM AI2	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	20.0%		
1305	MAXIMUM AI2	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
1306	FILTER AI2	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s		
Group 14: RELAY OUTPUTS						
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	0…47	1	1 (READY)		
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	0…47	1	2 (RUN)		
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	0…47	1	3 [FAULT(-1)]		
1404	RO 1 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1405	RO 1 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1406	RO 2 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1407	RO 2 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1408	RO 3 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1409	RO 3 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1410	RELAY OUTPUT 4	0…47	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
1411	RELAY OUTPUT 5	0…47	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
1412	RELAY OUTPUT 6	0…47	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
1413	RO 4 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1414	RO 4 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1415	RO 5 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1416	RO 5 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1417	RO 6 ON DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
1418	RO 6 OFF DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
Group 15: ANALOG OUTPUTS						
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	99…178	1	103 (OUTPUT FREQ)		
1502	AO1 CONTENT MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 Hz		
1503	AO1 CONTENT MAX	Depends on selection	-	60.0 Hz		
1504	MINIMUM AO1	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	4.0 mA		
1505	MAXIMUM AO1	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	20.0 mA		
1506	FILTER AO1	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s		
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	99…178	1	104 (CURRENT)		
1508	AO2 CONTENT MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 A		
1509	AO2 CONTENT MAX	Depends on selection	-	1.0 · I_{2n} A		
1510	MINIMUM AO2	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	4.0 mA		
1511	MAXIMUM AO2	0.0…20.0 mA	0.1 mA	20.0 mA		
1512	FILTER AO2	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s		
Group 16: SYSTEM CONTROLS						
1601	RUN ENABLE	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓
1602	PARAMETER LOCK	0…2	1	1 (OPEN)		
1603	PASS CODE	0…65535	1	0		
1604	FAULT RESET SEL	-6…8	1	0 (KEYPAD)		
1605	USER PAR SET CHG	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
1606	LOCAL LOCK	-6…8	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
1607	PARAM SAVE	0, 1	1	0 (DONE)		
1608	START ENABLE 1	-6…7	1	4 (DI4)		✓
1609	START ENABLE 2	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓
1610	DISPLAY ALARMS	0, 1	1	1 (YES)		
1611	PARAMETER VIEW	0, 1	1	0 (DEFAULT)		
1612	FAN CONTROL	0, 1	1	0 (AUTO)		
1613	FAULT RESET	0, 1	1	0 (DEFAULT)		
Group 17: OVERRIDE						
1701	OVERRIDE SEL	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓
1702	OVERRIDE FREQ	-500…500 Hz	0.1	0.0 Hz		✓
1703	OVERRIDE SPEED	-30.000…30.000 rpm	1	0 rpm		✓
1704	OVERR PASS CODE	0…65535	1	0		✓
1705	OVERRIDE	0…1	1	0 (OFF)		✓
1706	OVERRIDE DIR	-6...7	1	0 (FORWARD)		✓
1707	OVERRIDE REF	1, 2	1	1 (CONSTANT)		✓
Group 20: LIMITS						
2001	MINIMUM SPEED	-30000…30000 rpm	1 rpm	0 rpm		✓
2002	MAXIMUM SPEED	0…30000 rpm	1 rpm	1800 rpm (US)		✓
2003	MAX CURRENT	0… 1.3 · I_{2n}	0.1 A	1.3 · I_{2n}		✓
2006	UNDERVOLT CTRL	0…2	1	1 [ENABLE(TIME)]		
2007	MINIMUM FREQ	-500.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	0.0 Hz		✓
2008	MAXIMUM FREQ	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)		✓
2013	MIN TORQUE SEL	-6…7	1	0 (MIN TORQUE 1)		
2014	MAX TORQUE SEL	-6…7	1	0 (MAX TORQUE 1)		
2015	MIN TORQUE 1	-600.0…0.0%	0.1%	-300.0%		
2016	MIN TORQUE 2	-600.0…0.0%	0.1%	-300.0%		
2017	MAX TORQUE 1	0.0…600.0%	0.1%	300.0%		
2018	MAX TORQUE 2	0.0…600.0%	0.1%	300.0%		
Group 21: START/STOP						
2101	START FUNCTION	Vector control modes: 1, 2, 8 Scalar control mode: 1…5, 8	1	3 (SCALAR FLYST)		✓
2102	STOP FUNCTION	1, 2	1	1 (COAST)		
2103	DC MAGN TIME	0.00…10.00 s	0.01 s	0.30 s		
2104	DC HOLD CTL	0…2	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓
2105	DC HOLD SPEED	0…360 rpm	1 rpm	5 rpm		
2106	DC CURR REF	0…100%	1%	30%		
2107	DC BRAKE TIME	0.0…250.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
2108	START INHIBIT	0, 1	1	0 (OFF)		
2109	EMERG STOP SEL	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
2110	TORQ BOOST CURR	15…300%	1%	100%		
2113	START DELAY	0.00…60.00 s	0.01 s	0.00 s		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL						
2201	ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
2202	ACCELER TIME 1	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s		
2203	DECELER TIME 1	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s		
2204	RAMP SHAPE 1	0.0…1000.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 (LINEAR)		
2205	ACCELER TIME 2	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s		
2206	DECELER TIME 2	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s		
2207	RAMP SHAPE 2	0.0…1000.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 (LINEAR)		
2208	EMERG DEC TIME	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	1.0 s		
2209	RAMP INPUT 0	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
Group 23: SPEED CONTROL						
2301	PROP GAIN	0.00…200.00	0.01	3.00		
2302	INTEGRATION TIME	0.00…600.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s		
2303	DERIVATION TIME	0…10000 ms	1 ms	0 ms		
2304	ACC COMPENSATION	0.00…600.00 s	0.01 s	0.00 s		
2305	AUTOTUNE RUN	0, 1	1	0 (OFF)		
Group 25: CRITICAL SPEEDS						
2501	CRIT SPEED SEL	0, 1	1	0 (OFF)		
2502	CRIT SPEED 1 LO	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
2503	CRIT SPEED 1 HI	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
2504	CRIT SPEED 2 LO	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
2505	CRIT SPEED 2 HI	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
2506	CRIT SPEED 3 LO	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
2507	CRIT SPEED 3 HI	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
Group 26: MOTOR CONTROL						
2601	FLUX OPT ENABLE	0, 1	1	1 (ON)		
2602	FLUX BRAKING	0, 1	1	0 (OFF)		
2603	IR COMP VOLT	0.0…100.0 V	0.1 V	0.0 V		
2604	IR COMP FREQ	0…100%	1%	80%		
2605	U/F RATIO	1, 2	1	2 (SQUARED)		
2606	SWITCHING FREQ	1, 2, 4, 8, 12 kHz	-	4 kHz		
2607	SWITCH FREQ CTRL	0, 1	1	1 (ON)		
2608	SLIP COMP RATIO	0…200%	1%	0%		
2609	NOISE SMOOTHING	0, 1	1	0 (DISABLE)		
2619	DC STABILIZER	0, 1	1	0 (DISABLE)		
2625	OVERMODULATION	0, 1	1	0 (DISABLE)		
Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG						
2901	COOLING FAN TRIG	0.0…6553.5 kh, 0.0 disables	0.1 kh	0.0 kh		
2902	COOLING FAN ACT	0.0…6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0 kh		
2903	REVOLUTION TRIG	0…65535 Mrev, 0 disables	1 Mrev	0 Mrev		
2904	REVOLUTION ACT	0…65535 Mrev	1 Mrev	0 Mrev		
2905	RUN TIME TRIG	0.0…6553.5 kh, 0.0 disables	0.1 kh	0.0 kh		
2906	RUN TIME ACT	0.0…6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0 kh		
2907	USER MWh TRIG	0.0…6553.5 MWh, 0.0 disables	0.1 MWh	0.0 MWh		
2908	USER MWh ACT	0.0…6553.5 MWh	0.1 MWh	0.0 MWh		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 30: FAULT FUNCTIONS						
3001	AI<MIN FUNCTION	0…3	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3002	PANEL COMM ERR	1…3	1	1 (FAULT)		
3003	EXTERNAL FAULT 1	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3004	EXTERNAL FAULT 2	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3005	MOT THERM PROT	0…2	1	1 (FAULT)		
3006	MOT THERM TIME	256…9999 s	1 s	1050 s		
3007	MOT LOAD CURVE	50…150%	1%	100%		
3008	ZERO SPEED LOAD	25…150%	1%	70%		
3009	BREAK POINT FREQ	1…250 Hz	1 Hz	35 Hz		
3010	STALL FUNCTION	0…2	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3011	STALL FREQUENCY	0.5…50.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	20.0 Hz		
3012	STALL TIME	10…400 s	1 s	20 s		
3017	EARTH FAULT	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		✓
3018	COMM FAULT FUNC	0…3	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3019	COMM FAULT TIME	0.0…600.0 s	0.1 s	10.0 s		
3021	AI1 FAULT LIMIT	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
3022	AI2 FAULT LIMIT	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
3023	WIRING FAULT	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		✓
3024	CB TEMP FAULT	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		
3028	EARTH FAULT LVL	1…3	1	1 (LOW)		
Group 31: AUTOMATIC RESET						
3101	NUMBER OF TRIALS	0…5	1	5		
3102	TRIAL TIME	1.0…600.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s		
3103	DELAY TIME	0.0…120.0 s	0.1 s	6.0 s		
3104	AR OVERCURRENT	0, 1	1	0 (DISABLE)		
3105	AR OVERVOLTAGE	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		
3106	AR UNDERVOLTAGE	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		
3107	AR AI<MIN	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		
3108	AR EXTERNAL FLT	0, 1	1	1 (ENABLE)		
Group 32: SUPERVISION						
3201	SUPERV 1 PARAM	100…178	1	103 (OUTPUT FREQ)		
3202	SUPERV 1 LIM LO	Depends on selection	-	60.0 Hz		
3203	SUPERV 1 LIM HI	Depends on selection	-	60.0 Hz		
3204	SUPERV 2 PARAM	100…178	1	104 (CURRENT)		
3205	SUPERV 2 LIM LO	Depends on selection	-	1.0 · I_{2n} A		
3206	SUPERV 2 LIM HI	Depends on selection	-	1.0 · I_{2n} A		
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	100…178	1	105 (TORQUE)		
3208	SUPERV 3 LIM LO	Depends on selection	-	100.0%		
3209	SUPERV 3 LIM HI	Depends on selection	-	100.0%		
Group 33: INFORMATION						
3301	FIRMWARE	0000…FFFF hex	1	-		
3302	LOADING PACKAGE	0000…FFFF hex	1	-		
3303	TEST DATE	yy.ww	0.01	-		
3304	DRIVE RATING	0000…FFFF hex	1	-		
3305	PARAMETER TABLE	0000…FFFF hex	1	-		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 34: PANEL DISPLAY						
3401	SIGNAL1 PARAM	100…178	1	103 (OUTPUT FREQ)		
3402	SIGNAL1 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 Hz		
3403	SIGNAL1 MAX	Depends on selection	-	600.0 Hz		
3404	OUTPUT1 DSP FORM	0…9	1	5 (+0.0)		
3405	OUTPUT1 UNIT	0…127	1	121 (%SP)		
3406	OUTPUT1 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 (%SP)		
3407	OUTPUT1 MAX	Depends on selection	-	1000.0 (%SP)		
3408	SIGNAL2 PARAM	100…178	1	104 (CURRENT)		
3409	SIGNAL2 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 A		
3410	SIGNAL2 MAX	Depends on selection	-	$2.0 \cdot I_{2n}$ A		
3411	OUTPUT2 DSP FORM	0…9	1	9 (DIRECT)		
3412	OUTPUT2 UNIT	0…127	1	1 (A)		
3413	OUTPUT2 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 A		
3414	OUTPUT2 MAX	Depends on selection	-	$2.0 \cdot I_{2n}$ A		
3415	SIGNAL3 PARAM	100…178	1	120 (AI 1)		
3416	SIGNAL3 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0%		
3417	SIGNAL3 MAX	Depends on selection	-	100.0%		
3418	OUTPUT3 DSP FORM	0…9	1	5 (+0.0)		
3419	OUTPUT3 UNIT	0…127	1	11 (mA)		
3420	OUTPUT3 MIN	Depends on selection	-	0.0 mA		
3421	OUTPUT3 MAX	Depends on selection	-	20.0 mA		
Group 35: MOTOR TEMP MEAS						
3501	SENSOR TYPE	0…6	1	0 (NONE)		
3502	INPUT SELECTION	1…8	1	1 (AI1)		
3503	ALARM LIMIT	-10…200 °C 0…5000 ohm 0…1	1	110 °C / 1500 ohm / 0		
3504	FAULT LIMIT	-10…200 °C 0…5000 ohm 0…1	1	130 °C / 4000 ohm / 0		
Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS						
3601	TIMERS ENABLE	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3602	START TIME 1	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3603	STOP TIME 1	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3604	START DAY 1	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3605	STOP DAY 1	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3606	START TIME 2	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3607	STOP TIME 2	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3608	START DAY 2	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3609	STOP DAY 2	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3610	START TIME 3	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3611	STOP TIME 3	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3612	START DAY 3	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3613	STOP DAY 3	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3614	START TIME 4	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
3615	STOP TIME 4	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00 AM		
3616	START DAY 4	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3617	STOP DAY 4	1…7	1	1 (MONDAY)		
3622	BOOSTER SEL	-6…6	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3623	BOOSTER TIME	00:00:00…23:59:58	2 s	00:00:00		
3626 … 3629	TIMED FUNC 1…4 SRC	0…31	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
Group 37: USER LOAD CURVE						
3701	USER LOAD C MODE	0…3	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
3702	USER LOAD C FUNC	1, 2	1	1 (FAULT)		
3703	USER LOAD C TIME	10…400 s	1 s	20 s		
3704	LOAD FREQ 1	0…500 Hz	1 Hz	5 Hz		
3705	LOAD TORQ LOW 1	0…600%	1%	10%		
3706	LOAD TORQ HIGH 1	0…600%	1%	300%		
3707	LOAD FREQ 2	0…500 Hz	1 Hz	25 Hz		
3708	LOAD TORQ LOW 2	0…600%	1%	15%		
3709	LOAD TORQ HIGH 2	0…600%	1%	300%		
3710	LOAD FREQ 3	0…500 Hz	1 Hz	43 Hz		
3711	LOAD TORQ LOW 3	0…600%	1%	25%		
3712	LOAD TORQ HIGH 3	0…600%	1%	300%		
3713	LOAD FREQ 4	0…500 Hz	1 Hz	50 Hz		
3714	LOAD TORQ LOW 4	0…600%	1%	30%		
3715	LOAD TORQ HIGH 4	0…600%	1%	300%		
3716	LOAD FREQ 5	0…500 Hz	1 Hz	500 Hz		
3717	LOAD TORQ LOW 5	0…600%	1%	30%		
3718	LOAD TORQ HIGH 5	0…600%	1%	300%		
Group 40: PROCESS PID SET 1						
4001	GAIN	0.1…100.0	0.1	2.5		
4002	INTEGRATION TIME	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	3.0 s		
4003	DERIVATION TIME	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
4004	PID DERIV FILTER	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	1.0 s		
4005	ERROR VALUE INV	0, 1	1	0 (NO)		
4006	UNITS	0…127	1	4 (%)		
4007	UNIT SCALE	0…4	1	1		
4008	0% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	0.0%		
4009	100% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	100.0%		
4010	SET POINT SEL	0…2, 8…17, 19…20	1	0 (KEYPAD)		✓
4011	INTERNAL SETPNT	Depends on Units and Scale	-	40.0%		
4012	SETPOINT MIN	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
4013	SETPOINT MAX	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
4014	FBK SEL	1…13	1	1 (ACT1)		
4015	FBK MULTIPLIER	-32.768…32.767	0.001	0.000 (NOT SEL)		
4016	ACT1 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓
4017	ACT2 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
4018	ACT1 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4019	ACT1 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4020	ACT2 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4021	ACT2 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4022	SLEEP SELECTION	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
4023	PID SLEEP LEVEL	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
4024	PID SLEEP DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s		
4025	WAKE-UP DEV	Depends on Units and Scale	-	0.0%		
4026	WAKE-UP DELAY	0.00…60.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s		
4027	PID 1 PARAM SET	-6…14	1	0 (SET 1)		
Group 41: PROCESS PID SET 2						
4101	GAIN	0.1…100.0	0.1	2.5		
4102	INTEGRATION TIME	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	3.0 s		
4103	DERIVATION TIME	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
4104	PID DERIV FILTER	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	1.0 s		
4105	ERROR VALUE INV	0, 1	1	0 (NO)		
4106	UNITS	0…127	1	4 (%)		
4107	UNIT SCALE	0…4	1	1		
4108	0% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	0.0%		
4109	100% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	100.0%		
4110	SET POINT SEL	0…2, 8…17, 19…20	1	0 (KEYPAD)		✓
4111	INTERNAL SETPNT	Depends on Units and Scale	-	40.0%		
4112	SETPOINT MIN	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
4113	SETPOINT MAX	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
4114	FBK SEL	1…13	1	1 (ACT1)		
4115	FBK MULTIPLIER	-32.768…32.767	0.001	0.000 (NOT SEL)		
4116	ACT1 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓
4117	ACT2 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓
4118	ACT1 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4119	ACT1 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4120	ACT2 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4121	ACT2 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4122	SLEEP SELECTION	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
4123	PID SLEEP LEVEL	0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz / 0 rpm		
4124	PID SLEEP DELAY	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s		
4125	WAKE-UP DEV	Depends on Units and Scale	-	0.0%		
4126	WAKE-UP DELAY	0.00…60.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s		
Group 42: EXT / TRIM PID						
4201	GAIN	0.1…100.0	0.1	1.0		
4202	INTEGRATION TIME	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s		
4203	DERIVATION TIME	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
4204	PID DERIV FILTER	0.0…10.0 s	0.1 s	1.0 s		
4205	ERROR VALUE INV	0, 1	1	0 (NO)		
4206	UNITS	0…127	1	4 (%)		
4207	UNIT SCALE	0…4	1	1		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
4208	0% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	0.0%		
4209	100% VALUE	Depends on Units and Scale	-	100.0%		
4210	SET POINT SEL	0…2, 8…17, 19…20	1	1 (AI1)		✓
4211	INTERNAL SETPNT	Depends on Units and Scale	-	40.0%		
4212	SETPOINT MIN	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
4213	SETPOINT MAX	-500.0…500.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
4214	FBK SEL	1…13	1	1 (ACT1)		
4215	FBK MULTIPLIER	-32.768…32.767	0.001	0.000 (NOT SEL)		
4216	ACT1 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓
4217	ACT2 INPUT	1…7	1	2 (AI2)		✓
4218	ACT1 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4219	ACT1 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4220	ACT2 MINIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	0%		
4221	ACT2 MAXIMUM	-1000…1000%	1%	100%		
4228	ACTIVATE	-6…12	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
4229	OFFSET	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
4230	TRIM MODE	0…2	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
4231	TRIM SCALE	-100.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
4232	CORRECTION SRC	1, 2	1	1 (PID2REF)		
Group 45: ENERGY SAVING						
4502	ENERGY PRICE	0.00…655.35	0.01	0.00		
4507	CO2 CONV FACTOR	0.0…10.0 tn/MWh	0.1 tn/MWh	0.5 tn/MWh		
4508	PUMP POWER	0.0…1000.0%	0.1%	100.0%		
4509	ENERGY RESET	0, 1	1	0 (DONE)		
Group 51: EXT COMM MODULE						
5101	FBA TYPE	0000…FFFF hex	-	0000 hex (NOT DEFINED)		
5102…5126	FB PAR 2…26	0…65535	1	0		
5127	FBA PAR REFRESH	0, 1	1	0 (DONE)		✓
5128	FILE CPI FW REV	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5129	FILE CONFIG ID	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5130	FILE CONFIG REV	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5131	FBA STATUS	0…6	1	0 (IDLE)		
5132	FBA CPI FW REV	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5133	FBA APPL FW REV	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
Group 52: PANEL COMM						
5201	STATION ID	1…247	1	1		
5202	BAUD RATE	9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 115.2 kb/s	-	9.6 kb/s		
5203	PARITY	0…3	1	0 (8 NONE 1)		
5204	OK MESSAGES	0…65535	1	-		
5205	PARITY ERRORS	0…65535	1	-		
5206	FRAME ERRORS	0…65535	1	-		
5207	BUFFER OVERRUNS	0…65535	1	-		
5208	CRC ERRORS	0…65535	1	-		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
Group 53: EFB PROTOCOL						
5301	EFB PROTOCOL ID	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5302	EFB STATION ID	0…65535	1	1		✓
5303	EFB BAUD RATE	1.2, 2.4, 4.8, 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 76.8 kb/s	-	9.6 kb/s		
5304	EFB PARITY	0…3	1	0 (8 NONE 1)		
5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE	0…2	1	0 (ABB DRV LIM)		
5306	EFB OK MESSAGES	0…65535	1	0		
5307	EFB CRC ERRORS	0…65535	1	0		
5308	EFB UART ERRORS	0…65535	1	0		
5309	EFB STATUS	0…7	1	0 (IDLE)		
5310	EFB PAR 10	0…65535	1	0		
5311	EFB PAR 11	0…65535	1	0		
5312	EFB PAR 12	0…65535	1	0		
5313	EFB PAR 13	0…65535	1	0		
5314	EFB PAR 14	0…65535	1	0		
5315	EFB PAR 15	0…65535	1	0		
5316	EFB PAR 16	0…65535	1	0		
5317	EFB PAR 17	0…65535	1	0		
5318	EFB PAR 18	0…65535	1	0		
5319	EFB PAR 19	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
5320	EFB PAR 20	0000…FFFF hex	1	0000 hex		
Group 64: LOAD ANALYZER						
6401	PVL SIGNAL	100…178	1	103 (OUTPUT FREQ)		
6402	PVL FILTER TIME	0.0…120.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s		
6403	LOGGERS RESET	-6…7	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
6404	AL2 SIGNAL	101…178	1	103 (OUTPUT FREQ)		
6405	AL2 SIGNAL BASE	Depends on selection	-	60.0 Hz		
6406	PEAK VALUE	-	-	-		
6407	PEAK TIME 1	Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days	1 d	-		
6408	PEAK TIME 2	Time hh.mm.ss	2 s	-		
6409	CURRENT AT PEAK	0.0…6553.5 A	0.1 A	-		
6410	UDC AT PEAK	0…65535 V	1 V	-		
6411	FREQ AT PEAK	0.0…6553.5 Hz	0.1 Hz	-		
6412	TIME OF RESET 1	Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days	1 d	-		
6413	TIME OF RESET 2	Time hh.mm.ss	2 s	-		
6414	AL1RANGE0TO10	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6415	AL1RANGE10TO20	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6416	AL1RANGE20TO30	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6417	AL1RANGE30TO40	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6418	AL1RANGE40TO50	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6419	AL1RANGE50TO60	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6420	AL1RANGE60TO70	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6421	AL1RANGE70TO80	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6422	AL1RANGE80TO90	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		

Code	Name	Range	Resolution	Default	User	S
6423	AL1RANGE90TO	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6424	AL2RANGE0TO10	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6425	AL2RANGE10TO20	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6426	AL2RANGE20TO30	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6427	AL2RANGE30TO40	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6428	AL2RANGE40TO50	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6429	AL2RANGE50TO60	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6430	AL2RANGE60TO70	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6431	AL2RANGE70TO80	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6432	AL2RANGE80TO90	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
6433	AL2RANGE90TO	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	-		
Group 81: PFA CONTROL						
8103	REFERENCE STEP 1	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
8104	REFERENCE STEP 2	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
8105	REFERENCE STEP 3	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	0.0%		
8109	START FREQ 1	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)		
8110	START FREQ 2	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)		
8111	START FREQ 3	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)		
8112	LOW FREQ 1	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 Hz (US)		
8113	LOW FREQ 2	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 Hz (US)		
8114	LOW FREQ 3	0.0…500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 Hz (US)		
8115	AUX MOT START D	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	5.0 s		
8116	AUX MOT STOP D	0.0…3600.0 s	0.1 s	3.0 s		
8117	NR OF AUX MOT	0…4	1	1		✓
8118	AUTOCHNG INTERV	-0.1…336.0 h	0.1 h	0.0 h (NOT SEL)		✓
8119	AUTOCHNG LEVEL	0.0…100.0%	0.1%	50.0%		
8120	INTERLOCKS	0…6	1	4 (DI4)		✓
8121	REG BYPASS CTRL	0, 1	1	0 (NO)		
8122	PFA START DELAY	0.00…10.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s		
8123	PFA ENABLE	0, 1	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓
8124	ACC IN AUX STOP	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s (NOT SEL)		
8125	DEC IN AUX START	0.0…1800.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s (NOT SEL)		
8126	TMED AUTOCHNG	0…4	1	0 (NOT SEL)		
8127	MOTORS	1…7	1	2		✓
8128	AUX START ORDER	1, 2	1	1 (EVEN RUNTIME)		✓
Group 98: OPTIONS						
9802	COMM PROT SEL	0…5	1	0 (NOT SEL)		✓

Complete parameter descriptions

Parameter data is specific to ACH550 firmware version 2.13.

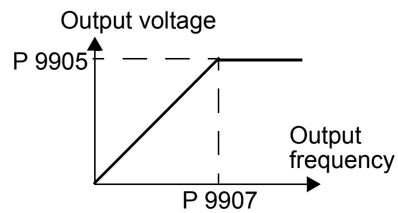
Group 99: START-UP DATA

This group defines special Start-up data required to:

- Set up the drive.
- Enter motor information

Note: Parameters checked under the heading “S” can be modified only when the drive is stopped.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 99: Start-up Data</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">9901</td><td>LANGUAGE</td><td>0…16</td><td>1</td><td>0 (ENGLISH)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the display language.
0 = ENGLISH 1 = ENGLISH (AM) 2 = DEUTSCH 3 = ITALIANO 4 = ESPAÑOL 5 = PORTUGUES
6 = NEDERLANDS 7 = FRANCAIS 8 = DANSK 9 = SUOMI 10 = SVENSKA 11 = RUSSKI
12 = POLSKI 13 = TÜRKCE 14 = CZECH 15 = MAGYAR 16 = RESERVED</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">9902</td><td>APPLIC MACRO</td><td>-3…15, 31</td><td>1</td><td>1 (HVAC DEFAULT)</td><td>✓</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects an application macro. Application macros automatically edit parameters to configure the ACH550 for a particular application. See Application macros for application macro descriptions.
1= HVAC DEFAULT 2= SUPPLY FAN 3= RETURN FAN 4= COOLING TOWER FAN 5= CONDENSER
6= BOOSTER PUMP 7= PUMP ALTERNATION 8= INTERNAL TIMER 9= INTERNAL TIMER WITH CONSTANT SPEEDS 10= FLOATING POINT
11= DUAL SETPOINT PID 12= DUAL SETPOINT PID WITH CONSTANT SPEEDS 13= E-BYPASS 14= HAND CONTROL 15= E-CLIPSE
31 = LOAD FD SET - FrontDrop parameter values as defined by the FlashDrop file. Parameter view is selected by parameter 1611 PARAMETER VIEW.
• FlashDrop is an optional device for fast copying of parameters to unpowered drives. FlashDrop allows easy customization of the parameter list, e.g. selected parameters can be hidden. For more information, see MFDT-01 FlashDrop User’s Manual [3AFE68591074 (English)].
-1 = USER S1 SAVE, -3 = USER S2 SAVE - With these it is possible to save two different user parameter sets into the drive permanent memory for later use. Each set contains parameter settings, including Group 99: START-UP DATA, and the results of the motor identification run.
0 = USER S1 LOAD, -2 = USER S2 LOAD - With these the user parameter sets can be taken back in use.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">9904</td><td>MOTOR CTRL MOD</td><td>1, 3</td><td>1</td><td>3 (SCALAR:FREQ)</td><td>✓</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the motor control mode.
1 = VECTOR: SPEED – sensorless vector control mode.
• Reference 1 is speed reference in rpm.
• Reference 2 is speed reference in % (100% is absolute maximum speed, equal to the value of parameter 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED, or 2001 MINIMUM SPEED if the absolute value of the minimum speed is greater than the maximum speed).
3 = SCALAR: FREQ – scalar control mode.
• Reference 1 is frequency reference in Hz.
• Reference 2 is frequency reference in % (100% is absolute maximum frequency, equal to the value of parameter 2008 MAXIMUM FREQUENCY, or 2007 MINIMUM FREQUENCY if the absolute value of the minimum speed is greater than the maximum speed).</td></tr>
</table>

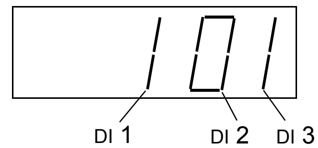
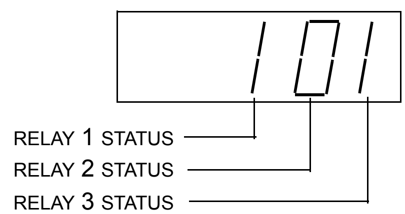
Group 99: Start-up Data					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
9905	**MOTOR NOM VOLT** Defines the nominal motor voltage. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate. • The ACH550 cannot supply the motor with a voltage greater than the input power (mains) voltage. 	**115…345 V (200 V, US)** **230…690 V (400 V, US)** **288…862 V (600 V, US)**	**1 V** **1 V** **1 V**	**230 V (US)** **460 V (US)** **575 V (US)**	✓
9906	**MOTOR NOM CURR** Defines the nominal motor current. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate. • Range allowed: 0.15…1.5 · I_{2n} (where I_{2n} is drive current).	**0.15 · I_{2n} … 1.5 · I_{2n}**	**0.1 A**	**1.0 · I_{2n}**	✓
9907	**MOTOR NOM FREQ** Defines the nominal motor frequency. • Range: 10…500 Hz (typically 50 or 60 Hz) • Sets the frequency at which output voltage equals the MOTOR NOM VOLT. • Field weakening point = Nom Freq · Supply Volt / Mot Nom Volt	**10.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**60.0 Hz (US)**	✓
9908	**MOTOR NOM SPEED** Defines the nominal motor speed. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate.	**50…30000 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**Size dependent**	✓
9909	**MOTOR NOM POWER** Defines the nominal motor power. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate.	**0.15…1.5 · P_n**	**0.1 hp**	**1.0 · P_n**	✓
9910	**ID RUN** This parameter controls a self-calibration process called the Motor ID Run. During this process, the drive operates the motor (motor rotating) and makes measurements in order to identify motor characteristics and create a model used for internal calculations. An ID Run is especially effective when: • vector control mode is used [parameter *9904* = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED) and/or • operation point is near zero speed, and/or • operation requires a torque range above the motor nominal torque, over a wide speed range, and without any measured speed feedback (i.e. without a pulse encoder). 0 = OFF/IDMAGN – The Motor ID Run process is not run. Identification magnetization is performed, depending on parameter 9904 and 2101 settings. In identification magnetization, the motor model is calculated at first start by magnetizing the motor for 10 to 15 s at zero speed (motor not rotating). The model is recalculated always at start after motor parameter changes. • Parameter *9904* = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED): Identification magnetization is performed. • Parameter *9904* = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ) and parameter *2101* = 3 (SCALAR FLYST) or 5 (FLY + BOOST): Identification magnetization is performed. • Parameter *9904* = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ) and parameter *2101* has other value than 3 (SCALAR FLYST) or 5 (FLY + BOOST): Identification magnetization is not performed. 1 = ON – Enables the Motor ID Run, during which the motor is rotating, at the next start command. After run completion, this value automatically changes to 0. **Note:** If motor parameters are changed after ID Run, repeat the ID Run. **WARNING!** The motor will run at up to approximately 50…80% of the nominal speed during the ID Run. The motor will rotate in the forward direction. **Ensure that it is safe to run the motor before performing the ID Run!**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (OFF/IDMAGN)**	✓
9915	**MOTOR COSPHI** Defines the nominal motor cos phi (power factor). The parameter improves performance especially with high efficiency motors. 0 = IDENTIFIED – Drive identifies the cos phi automatically by estimation. 0.01…0.97 – Value entered used as the cos phi.	**0.01…0.97**	**0.01**	**0 (IDENTIFIED)**	✓

Group 01: OPERATING DATA

This group contains drive operating data, including actual signals. The drive sets the values for actual signals, based on measurements or calculations. You cannot set these values.

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0101	**SPEED & DIR**	**-30000…30000 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**-**	
	The calculated signed speed of the motor (rpm). The absolute value of 0101 SPEED & DIR is the same as the value of 0102 SPEED. • The value of 0101 SPEED & DIR is positive if the motor runs in the forward direction. • The value of 0101 SPEED & DIR is negative if the motor runs in the reverse direction.				
0102	**SPEED**	**0…30000 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**-**	
	The calculated speed of the motor (rpm).				
0103	**OUTPUT FREQ**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**-**	
	The frequency (Hz) applied to the motor.				
0104	**CURRENT**	**0.0…1.5 ·** I_{2n}	**0.1 A**	**-**	
	The motor current, as measured by the ACH550.				
0105	**TORQUE**	**-200.0…200.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Output torque. Calculated value of torque on motor shaft in % of motor nominal torque.				
0106	**POWER**	**-1.5…1.5 ·** P_n	**0.1 kW**	**-**	
	The measured motor power in kW.				
0107	**DC BUS VOLTAGE**	**0…2.5 ·** V_{dN}	**1 V**	**-**	
	The DC bus voltage in V DC, as measured by the ACH550.				
0109	**OUTPUT VOLTAGE**	**0…2.0 ·** V_{dN}	**1 V**	**-**	
	The voltage applied to the motor.				
0110	**DRIVE TEMP**	**0.0…150.0 °C**	**0.1 °C**	**-**	
	The temperature of the drive power transistors in degrees Celsius.				
0111	**EXTERNAL REF 1**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**-**	
	External reference, REF1, in rpm or Hz – units determined by parameter 9904.				
0112	**EXTERNAL REF 2**	**0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	External reference, REF2, in %.				
0113	**CTRL LOCATION**	**0…2**	**1**	**-**	
	Active control location. Alternatives are: 0 = LOCAL 1 = EXT1 2 = EXT2				
0114	**RUN TIME (R)**	**0…9999 h**	**1 h**	**-**	
	The drive’s accumulated running time in hours (h). • Can be **reset** by pressing UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameters mode.				
0115	**KWH COUNTER (R)**	**0…65535 kWh**	**1 kWh**	**-**	
	The drive’s accumulated power consumption in kilowatt hours. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. • Can be **reset** by pressing UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameters mode.				

Group 01: Operating Data

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0116	**APPL BLK OUTPUT**	**0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torque)**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Application block output signal. Value is from either: • PFA control, if PFA Control is active, or • Parameter 0112 EXTERNAL REF 2.				
0118	**DI 1-3 STATUS**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**-**	
	Status of the three digital inputs. • Status is displayed as a binary number. • 1 indicates that the input is activated. • 0 indicates that the input is deactivated. 				
0119	**DI 4-6 STATUS**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**-**	
	Status of the three digital inputs. • See parameter 0118 DI 1-3 STATUS.				
0120	**AI 1**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	The relative value of analog input 1 in %.				
0121	**AI 2**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	The relative value of analog input 2 in %.				
0122	**RO 1-3 STATUS**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**-**	
	Status of the three relay outputs. • 1 indicates that the relay is energized. • 0 indicates that the relay is de-energized. 				
0123	**RO 4-6 STATUS**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**-**	
	Status of the three relay outputs. Available if OREL-01 Relay Output Extension Module is installed. • See parameter 0122.				
0124	**AO 1**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**-**	
	The analog output 1 value in milliamperes.				
0125	**AO 2**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**-**	
	The analog output 2 value in milliamperes.				
0126	**PID 1 OUTPUT**	**-1000.0…1000.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	The PID controller 1 output value in %.				
0127	**PID 2 OUTPUT**	**-100.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	The PID controller 2 output value in %.				
0128	**PID 1 SETPNT**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/4106 and 4007/4107**	**-**	**-**	
	The PID 1 controller setpoint signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				
0129	**PID 2 SETPNT**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207**	**-**	**-**	
	The PID 2 controller setpoint signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0130	**PID 1 FBK**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/4106 and 4007/4107**	**-**	**-**	
	The PID 1 controller feedback signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				
0131	**PID 2 FBK**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207**	**-**	**-**	
	The PID 2 controller feedback signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				
0132	**PID 1 DEVIATION**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4006/4106 and 4007/4107**	**-**	**-**	
	The difference between the PID 1 controller reference value and actual value. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				
0133	**PID 2 DEVIATION**	**Unit and scale defined by par. 4206 and 4207**	**-**	**-**	
	The difference between the PID 2 controller reference value and actual value. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters.				
0134	**COMM RO WORD**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Free data location that can be written from serial link. • Used for relay output control. • See parameter 1401.				
0135	**COMM VALUE 1**	**-32768…+32767**	**1**	**-**	
	Free data location that can be written from serial link.				
0136	**COMM VALUE 2**	**-32768…+32767**	**1**	**-**	
	Free data location that can be written from serial link.				
0137	**PROCESS VAR 1**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Process variable 1 • Defined by parameters in *Group 34: PANEL DISPLAY*.				
0138	**PROCESS VAR 2**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Process variable 2 • Defined by parameters in *Group 34: PANEL DISPLAY*.				
0139	**PROCESS VAR 3**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Process variable 3 • Defined by parameters in *Group 34: PANEL DISPLAY*.				
0140	**RUN TIME**	**0.00…499.99 kh**	**0.01 kh**	**-**	
	The drive's accumulated running time in thousands of hours (kh). • Cannot be reset.				
0141	**MWH COUNTER**	**0…65535 MWh**	**1 MWh**	**-**	
	The drive's accumulated power consumption in megawatt hours. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. • Cannot be reset.				
0142	**REVOLUTION CNTR**	**0…65535 Mrev**	**1 Mrev**	**-**	
	The motor's accumulated revolutions in millions of revolutions. • Can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameters mode.				
0143	**DRIVE ON TIME HI**	**0…65535 days**	**1 day**	**-**	
	The drive's accumulated power-on time in days. • Cannot be reset.				

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0144	**DRIVE ON TIME LO**	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**1 = 2 s**	**-**	
	The drive's accumulated power-on time in 2 second ticks (30 ticks = 60 seconds). • Shown in format hh.mm.ss. • Cannot be reset.				
0145	**MOTOR TEMP**	**Par. 3501 = 1…3: -10…200 °C Par. 3501 = 4: 0…5000 ohm Par. 3501 = 5…6: 0…1**	**1**	**-**	
	Motor temperature in degrees Celsius / PTC resistance in ohms. • Applies only if motor temperature sensor is set up. • See parameter 3501.				
0150	**CB TEMP**	**-20.0…150.0 °C**	**1.0 °C**	**-**	
	Temperature of the drive control board in degrees Celsius. **Note:** Some drives have a control board (OMIO) that does not support this feature. These drives always show the constant value of 25.0 °C.				
0153	**MOT THERM STRESS**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Estimated rise of the motor temperature. Value equals to the estimated motor thermal stress as a percentage of the motor temperature trip level.				
0158	**PID COMM VALUE 1**	**-32768…+32767**	**1**	**-**	
	Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2).				
0159	**PID COMM VALUE 2**	**-32768…+32767**	**1**	**-**	
	Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2).				
0174	**SAVED KWH**	**0.0…999.9 kWh**	**0.1 kWh**	**-**	
	Energy saved in kWh compared to the energy used when the pump is connected directly to the supply. See the note on page *1-162*. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 999.9 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0.0. • Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). • See *Group 45: ENERGY SAVING*.				
0175	**SAVED MWH**	**0…65535 MWh**	**1 MWh**	**-**	
	Energy saved in MWh compared to the energy used when the pump is connected directly to the supply. See the note on page *1-162*. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. • Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). • See *Group 45: ENERGY SAVING*.				
0176	**SAVED AMOUNT 1**	**0.0…999.9**	**0.1**	**-**	
	Energy saved in local currency (remainder when the total saved energy is divided by 1000). See the note on page *1-162*. • To find out the total saved energy in currency units, add the value of parameter 0177 multiplied by 1000 to the value of parameter 0176. **Example:** 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1 = 123.4 0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 = 5 Total saved energy = 5 · 1000 + 123.4 = 5123.4 currency units. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 999.9 (the counter does not roll over). • Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). • Local energy price is set with parameter 4502 ENERGY PRICE. • See *Group 45: ENERGY SAVING*.				

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0177	**SAVED AMOUNT 2**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Energy saved in local currency in thousand currency units. Eg value 5 means 5000 currency units. See the note on page *1-162*. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 (the counter does not roll over). • See parameter 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1.				
0178	**SAVED CO2**	**0.0…6553.5 tn**	**0.1 tn**	**-**	
	Reduction of carbon dioxide emissions in tons. See the note on page *1-162*. • The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 6553.5 (the counter does not roll over). • Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). • CO2 conversion factor is set with parameter 4507 CO2 CONV FACTOR. • See *Group 45: ENERGY SAVING*.				

Group 03: ACTUAL SIGNALS

This group monitors fieldbus communications.

Group 03: Actual Signals					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0301	**FB CMD WORD 1**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Read-only copy of the Fieldbus Command Word 1. • The fieldbus command is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus controller. The command consists of two Command Words. Bit-coded instructions in the Command Words switch the drive between states. • To control the drive, using the Command Words, an external location (EXT1 or EXT2) must be active and set to COMM. (See parameters 1001 and 1002.) The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays as 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000.				
0302	**FB CMD WORD 2**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Read-only copy of the Fieldbus Command Word 2. • See parameter 0301.				

Bit #	0301, FB CMD WORD 1	0302, FB CMD WORD 2
0	STOP	FBLOCAL_CTL
1	START	FBLOCAL_REF
2	REVERSE	START_DISABLE1
3	LOCAL	START_DISABLE2
4	RESET	Reserved
5	EXT2	Reserved
6	RUN_DISABLE	Reserved
7	STPMODE_R	Reserved
8	STPMODE_EM	Reserved
9	STPMODE_C	Reserved
10	RAMP_2	Reserved
11	RAMP_OUT_0	REF_CONST
12	RAMP_HOLD	REF_AVE
13	RAMP_IN_0	LINK_ON
14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	REQ_STARTINH
15	TORQLIM2	OFF_INTERLOCK

Group 03: Actual Signals					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0303	**FB STS WORD 1**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Read-only copy of the Status Word 1. • The drive sends status information to the fieldbus controller. The status consists of two Status Words. • The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays as 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000.				
0304	**FB STS WORD 2**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	Read-only copy of the Status Word 2. • See parameter 0303.				

Bit #	0303, FB STS WORD 1	0304, FB STS WORD 2
0	READY	ALARM
1	ENABLED	NOTICE
2	STARTED	DIRLOCK
3	RUNNING	LOCALLOCK
4	ZERO_SPEED	CTL_MODE
5	ACCELERATE	Reserved
6	DECELERATE	Reserved
7	AT_SETPOINT	CPY_CTL
8	LIMIT	CPY_REF1
9	SUPERVISION	CPY_REF2
10	REV_REF	REQ_CTL
11	REV_ACT	REQ_REF1
12	PANEL_LOCAL	REQ_REF2
13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	REQ_REF2EXT
14	EXT2_ACT	ACK_STARTINH
15	FAULT	ACK_OFF_ILCK

Group 03: Actual Signals					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0305	**FAULT WORD 1**	-	1	-	

Read-only copy of the Fault Word 1.
- When a fault is active, the corresponding bit for the active fault is set in the Fault Words.
- Each fault has a dedicated bit allocated within Fault Words.
- See section *Fault listing* on page *1-280* for a description of the faults.
- The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays as 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000.

Bit #	0305, FAULT WORD 1	0306, FAULT WORD 2	0307, FAULT WORD 3
0	OVERCURRENT	Obsolete	EFB 1
1	DC OVERVOLT	THERM FAIL	EFB 2
2	DEV OVERTEMP	OPEX LINK	EFB 3
3	SHORT CIRC	OPEX PWR	INCOMPATIBLE SW
4	Reserved	CURR MEAS	USER LOAD CURVE
5	DC UNDERVOLT	SUPPLY PHASE	Reserved
6	AI1 LOSS	ENCODER ERR	Reserved
7	AI2 LOSS	OVERSPEED	Reserved
8	MOT OVERTEMP	Reserved	Reserved
9	PANEL LOSS	DRIVE ID	Reserved
10	ID RUN FAIL	CONFIG FILE	System error
11	MOTOR STALL	SERIAL 1 ERR	System error
12	CB OVERTEMP	EFB CON FILE	System error
13	EXT FAULT 1	FORCE TRIP	System error
14	EXT FAULT 2	MOTOR PHASE	System error
15	EARTH FAULT	OUTP WIRING	Param. setting fault

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0306	**FAULT WORD 2** Read-only copy of the Fault Word 2. • See parameter 0305.	-	1	-	
0307	**FAULT WORD 3** Read-only copy of the Fault Word 3. • See parameter 0305.	-	1	-	

Group 03: Actual Signals					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0308	**ALARM WORD 1**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	• When an alarm is active, the corresponding bit for the active alarm is set in the Alarm Words. • Each alarm has a dedicated bit allocated within Alarm Words. • Bits remain set until the whole alarm word is reset. (Reset by writing zero to the word.) • The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays as 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000.				
0309	**ALARM WORD 2**	**-**	**1**	**-**	
	• See parameter 0308.				

Bit #	0308, ALARM WORD 1	0309, ALARM WORD 2
0	OVERCURRENT	Reserved
1	OVERVOLTAGE	PID SLEEP
2	UNDERVOLTAGE	ID RUN
3	DIR LOCK	Reserved
4	IO COMM	START ENABLE 1 MISSING
5	AI1 LOSS	START ENABLE 2 MISSING
6	AI2 LOSS	EMERGENCY STOP
7	PANEL LOSS	ENCODER ERROR
8	DEVICE OVERTEMP	FIRST START
9	MOTOR TEMP	Reserved
10	Reserved	USER LOAD CURVE
11	MOTOR STALL	START DELAY
12	AUTORESET	Reserved
13	AUTOCHANGE	Reserved
14	PFA I LOCK	Reserved
15	Reserved	Reserved

Group 04: FAULT HISTORY

This group stores a recent history of the faults reported by the drive.

Group 04: Fault History					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
0401	**LAST FAULT**	**Fault codes (panel displays as text)**	**1**	**0**	
	0 – Clear the fault history (on panel = NO RECORD). n – Fault code of the last recorded fault. The fault code is displayed as a name. See section *Fault listing* on page *1-280* for the fault codes and names. The fault name shown for this parameter may be shorter than the corresponding name in the fault listing, which shows the names as they are shown in the fault display.				
0402	**FAULT TIME 1**	**Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days**	**1 day**	**0**	
	The day on which the last fault occurred. Either as: • A date – if real time clock is operating. • The number of days after power on – if real time clock is not used, or was not set.				
0403	**FAULT TIME 2**	**Time hh:mm:ss**	**2 s**	**0**	
	The time at which the last fault occurred. Either as: • Real time, in format hh:mm:ss – if real time clock is operating. • The time since power on (minus the whole days reported in 0402), in format hh:mm:ss – if real time clock is not used, or was not set. • Format on the Basic Control Panel: The time since power on in 2-second ticks (minus the whole days reported in 0402). 30 ticks = 60 seconds. E.g. Value 514 equals 17 minutes and 8 seconds (= 514/30).				
0404	**SPEED AT FLT**	**-32768…+32767**	**1 rpm**	**0**	
	The motor speed (rpm) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0405	**FREQ AT FLT**	**-3276.8…+3276.7**	**0.1 Hz**	**0**	
	The frequency (Hz) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0406	**VOLTAGE AT FLT**	**0.0…6553.5**	**0.1 V**	**0**	
	The DC bus voltage (V) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0407	**CURRENT AT FLT**	**0.0…6553.5**	**0.1 A**	**0**	
	The motor current (A) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0408	**TORQUE AT FLT**	**-3276.8…+3276.7**	**0.1%**	**0**	
	The motor torque (%) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0409	**STATUS AT FLT**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0**	
	The drive status (hex code word) at the time the last fault occurred.				
0410	**DI 1-3 AT FLT**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**0**	
	The status of digital inputs 1…3 at the time the last fault occurred.				
0411	**DI 4-6 AT FLT**	**000…111 (0…7 decimal)**	**1**	**0**	
	The status of digital inputs 4…6 at the time the last fault occurred.				
0412	**PREVIOUS FAULT 1**	**As par. 0401**	**1**	**0**	
	Fault code of the second last fault. Read-only.				
0413	**PREVIOUS FAULT 2**	**As par. 0401**	**1**	**0**	
	Fault code of the third last fault. Read-only.				

Group 10: START/STOP/DIR

This group:

- defines external sources (EXT1 and EXT2) for commands that enable start, stop and direction changes
- locks direction or enables direction control.

To select between the two external locations use the next group (parameter 1102).

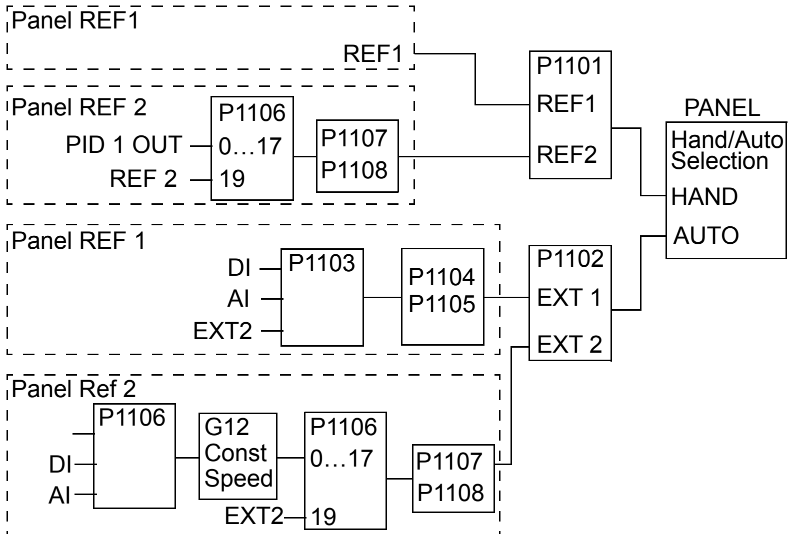
Group 10: Start/Stop/Dir					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1001	**EXT1 COMMANDS**	**0…14**	**1**	**1 (DI1)**	✓
	Defines external control location 1 (EXT1) – the configuration of start, stop and direction commands. 0 = NOT SEL – No external start, stop and direction command source. 1 = DI1 – Two-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI1 (DI1 activated = Start; DI1 de-activated = Stop). • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (REQUEST) is the same as 1003 = 1 (FORWARD). 2 = DI1,2 – Two-wire Start/Stop, Direction. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI1 (DI1 activated = Start; DI1 de-activated = Stop). • Direction control [requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST)] is through digital input DI2 (DI2 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 3 = DI1P,2P – Three-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop commands are through momentary push-buttons (the P stands for "pulse"). • Start is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI1. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI2 must be activated prior to the pulse in DI1. • Connect multiple Start push-buttons in parallel. • Stop is through a normally closed push-button connected to digital input DI2. • Connect multiple Stop push-buttons in series. • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (REQUEST) is the same as 1003 = 1 (FORWARD). 4 = DI1P,2P,3 – Three-wire Start/Stop, Direction. • Start/Stop commands are through momentary push-buttons, as described for DI1P,2P. • Direction control [requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST)] is through digital input DI3 (DI3 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 5 = DI1P,2P,3P – Start Forward, Start Reverse and Stop. • Start and Direction commands are given simultaneously with two separate momentary push-buttons (the P stands for "pulse"). • Start Forward command is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI1. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI3 must be activated prior to the pulse in DI1. • Start Reverse command is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI2. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI3 must be activated during the pulse in DI2. • Connect multiple Start push-buttons in parallel. • Stop is through a normally closed push-button connected to digital input DI3. • Connect multiple Stop push-buttons in series. • Requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST). 6 = DI6 – Two-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI6 (DI6 activated = Start; DI6 de-activated = Stop). • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (REQUEST) is the same as 1003 = 1 (FORWARD). 7 = DI6,5 – Two-wire Start/Stop/Direction. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI6 (DI6 activated = Start; DI6 de-activated = Stop). • Direction control [requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST)] is through digital input DI5. (DI5 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 8 = KEYPAD – Control Panel. • Start/Stop and Direction commands are through the control panel when EXT1 is active. • Direction control requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST). 9 = DI1F,2R – Start/Stop/Direction commands through DI1 and DI2 combinations. • Start forward = DI1 activated and DI2 de-activated. • Start reverse = DI1 de-activated and DI2 activated. • Stop = both DI1 and DI2 activated, or both de-activated. • Requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST).				

Group 10: Start/Stop/Dir					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
	10 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start/stop and direction commands. • Bits 0, 1, 2 of Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) activates the start/stop and direction commands. • See Fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. 11 = TIMED FUNC 1. – Assigns Start/Stop control to Timed Function 1 (Timed Function activated = START; Timed Function de-activated = STOP). See *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*. 12…14 = TIMED FUNC 2…4 – Assigns Start/Stop control to Timed Function 2…4. See TIMED FUNC 1 above.				
1002	**EXT2 COMMANDS**	**0…14**	**1**	**1 (DI1)**	✓
	Defines external control location 2 (EXT2) – the configuration of start, stop and direction commands. • See parameter 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS above.				
1003	**DIRECTION**	**1…3**	**1**	**1 (FORWARD)**	✓
	Defines the control of motor rotation direction. 1 = FORWARD – Rotation is fixed in the forward direction. 2 = REVERSE – Rotation is fixed in the reverse direction. 3 = REQUEST – Rotation direction can be changed on command.				

Group 11: REFERENCE SELECT

This group defines:

- how the drive selects between command sources
- characteristics and sources for REF1 and REF2.



Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1101	**KEYPAD REF SEL**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 [REF1(Hz/rpm)]**	
	Selects the reference controlled in local control mode. 1 = REF1(Hz/rpm) – Reference type depends on parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE. • Speed reference (rpm) if 9904 = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED) or 2 (VECTOR:TORQ). • Frequency reference (Hz) if 9904 = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ). 2 = REF2(%)				
1102	**EXT1/EXT2 SEL**	**-6…12**	**1**	**0 (EXT1)**	✓
	Defines the source for selecting between the two external control locations EXT1 or EXT2. Thus, defines the source for Start/Stop/Direction commands and reference signals. 0 = EXT1 – Selects external control location 1 (EXT1). • See parameter 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS for EXT1's Start/Stop/Dir definitions. • See parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT for EXT1's reference definitions. 1 = DI1 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of DI1 (DI1 activated = EXT2; DI1 de-activated = EXT1). 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the selected digital input. See DI1 above. 7 = EXT2 – Selects external control location 2 (EXT2). • See parameter 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS for EXT2's Start/Stop/Dir definitions. • See parameter 1106 REF2 SELECT for EXT2's reference definitions. 8 = COMM – Assigns control of the drive via external control location EXT1 or EXT2 based on the fieldbus control word. • Bit 5 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) defines the active external control location (EXT1 or EXT2). • See Fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. 9 = TIMED FUNC 1 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the Timed Function (Timed Function activated = EXT2; Timed Function de-activated = EXT1). See *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*. 10…12 = TIMED FUNC 2…4 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the Timed Function. See TIMED FUNC 1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of DI1 (DI1 activated = EXT1; DI1 de-activated = EXT2). -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the selected digital input. See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1103	**REF1 SELECT**	**0…17, 20…21**	**1**	**1 (AI1)**	✓

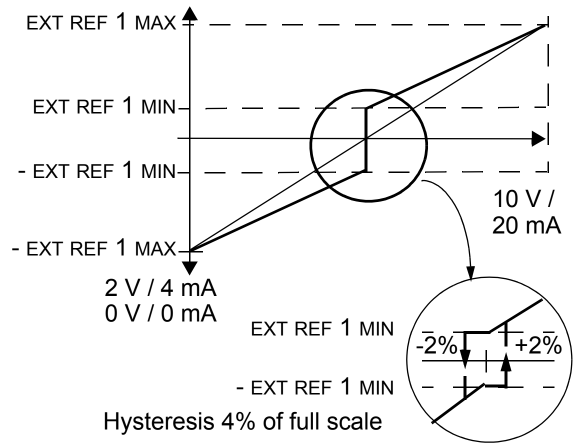
Selects the signal source for external reference REF1.

0 = KEYPAD – Defines the control panel as the reference source.

1 = AI1 – Defines analog input 1 (AI1) as the reference source.

2 = AI2 – Defines analog input 2 (AI2) as the reference source.

3 = AI1/JOYST – Defines analog input 1 (AI1), configured for joystick operation, as the reference source.
- The minimum input signal runs the drive at the maximum reference in the reverse direction. Define the minimum using parameter 1104.
- The maximum input signal runs the drive at maximum reference in the forward direction. Define the maximum using parameter 1105.
- Requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST).



⚠ **WARNING!** Because the low end of the reference range commands full reverse operation, do not use 0 V as the lower end of the reference range. Doing so means that if the control signal is lost (which is a 0 V input) the result is full reverse operation. Instead, use the following set-up so that loss of the analog input triggers a fault, stopping the drive:
- Set parameter 1301 MINIMUM AI1 (1304 MINIMUM AI2) at 20% (2 V or 4 mA).
- Set parameter 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT to a value 5% or higher.
- Set parameter 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION to 1 (FAULT).

4 = AI2/JOYST – Defines analog input 2 (AI2), configured for joystick operation, as the reference source.
- See above (AI1/JOYST) description.

5 = DI3U,4D(R) – Defines digital inputs as the speed reference source (motor potentiometer control).
- Digital input DI3 increases the speed (the U stands for "up").
- Digital input DI4 decreases the speed (the D stands for "down").
- A Stop command resets the reference to zero (the R stands for "reset").
- Parameter 2205 ACCELER TIME 2 controls the reference signal's rate of change.

6 = DI3U,4D – Same as above (DI3U,4D(R)), except:
- A Stop command does not reset the reference to zero. The reference is stored.
- When the drive restarts, the motor ramps up (at the selected acceleration rate) to the stored reference.

7 = DI5U,6D – Same as above (DI3U,4D), except that DI5 and DI6 are the digital inputs used.

8 = COMM – Defines the fieldbus as the reference source.

9 = COMM+AI1 – Defines a fieldbus and analog input 1 (AI1) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

10 = COMM*AI1 – Defines a fieldbus and analog input 1 (AI1) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

11 = DI3U,4D(RNC) – Same as DI3U,4D(R) above, except that:
- Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1, LOC to REM) does not copy the reference.

12 = DI3U,4D(NC) – Same as DI3U,4D above, except that:
- Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1, LOC to REM) does not copy the reference.

13 = DI5U,6D(NC) – Same as DI5U,6D above, except that:
- Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1, LOC to REM) does not copy the reference.

14 = AI1+AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

15 = AI1*AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

16 = AI1-AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

17 = AI1/AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.

20 = KEYPAD(RNC) – Defines the control panel as the reference source.
- A Stop command resets the reference to zero (the R stands for reset.).
- Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1) does not copy the reference.

21 = KEYPAD(NC) – Defines the control panel as the reference source.
- A Stop command does not reset the reference to zero. The reference is stored.
- Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1) does not copy the reference.

Group 11: Reference Select

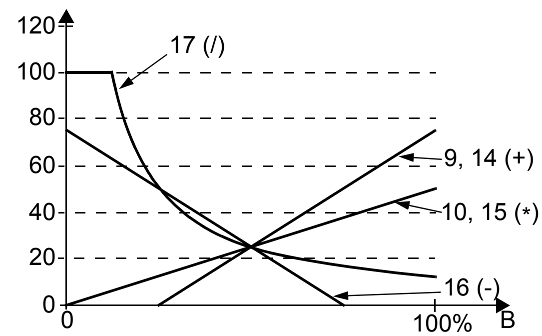
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
	Analog Input Reference Correction				

Parameter values 9, 10 and 14…17 use the formula in the following table.

Value setting	Calculation of the AI reference
C + B	C value + (B value - 50% of reference value)
C * B	C value · (B value / 50% of reference value)
C - B	(C value + 50% of reference value) - B value
C / B	(C value · 50% of reference value) / B value

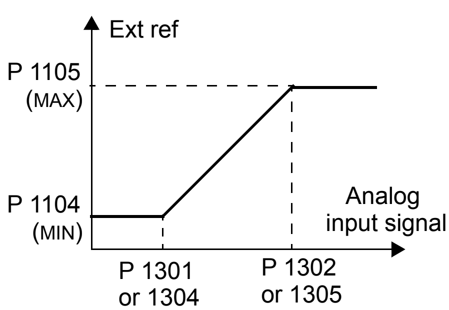
Where:
- C = Main reference value
  (= COMM for values 9, 10 and
  = AI1 for values 14…17).
- B = Correcting reference
  (= AI1 for values 9, 10 and
  = AI2 for values 14…17).

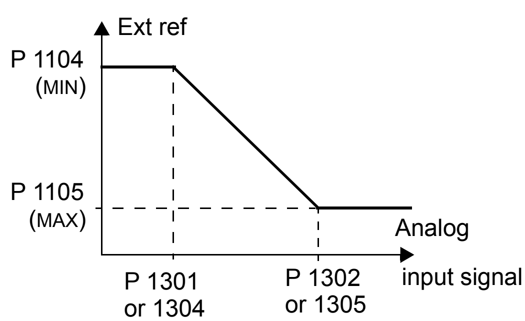
Example:
The figure shows the reference source curves for value settings 9, 10 and 14…17, where:
- C = 25%.
- P 4012 SETPOINT MIN = 0.
- P 4013 SETPOINT MAX = 0.
- B varies along the horizontal axis.



Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1104	**REF1 MIN**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	

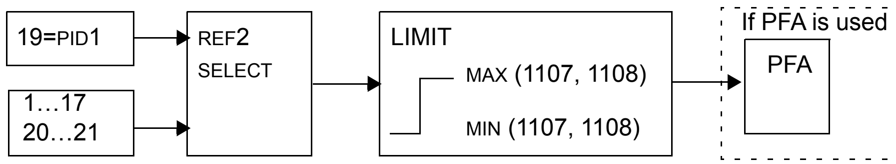
Sets the minimum for external reference 1.
- The minimum analog input signal (as a percent of the full signal in volts or amperes) corresponds to REF1 MIN in Hz/rpm.
- Parameter 1301 MINIMUM AI1 or 1304 MINIMUM AI2 sets the minimum analog input signal.
- These parameters (reference and analog min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the reference.





Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1105	**REF1 MAX**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**60.0 Hz (US) / 1800 rpm (US)**	

Sets the maximum for external reference 1.
- The maximum analog input signal (as a percent of full the signal in volts or amperes) corresponds to REF1 MAX in Hz/rpm.
- Parameter 1302 MAXIMUM AI1 or 1305 MAXIMUM AI2 sets the maximum analog input signal.

Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1106	**REF2 SELECT**	**0…17, 19…21**	**1**	**19 (PID1OUT)**	✓
	Selects the signal source for external reference REF2. 0…17 – Same as for parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT. 19 = PID1OUT – The reference is taken from the PID1 output. See *Group 40: PROCESS PID SET 1* and *Group 41: PROCESS PID SET 2*. 20…21 – Same as for parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT. 				
1107	**REF2 MIN**	**0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for toruqe)**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets the minimum for external reference 2. • The minimum analog input signal (in volts or amperes) corresponds to REF2 MIN in %. • Parameter 1301 MINIMUM AI1 or 1304 MINIMUM AI2 sets the minimum analog input signal. • This parameter sets the minimum frequency reference. • The value is a percentage of the: – maximum frequency or speed – maximum process reference – nominal torque.				
1108	**REF2 MAX**	**0.0…100.0% (0.0…600.0% for torqe)**	**0.1%**	**100.0%**	
	Sets the maximum for external reference 2. • The maximum analog input signal (in volts or amperes) corresponds to REF2 MAX in %. • Parameter 1302 MAXIMUM AI1 or 1305 MAXIMUM AI2 sets the maximum analog input signal. • This parameter sets the maximum frequency reference. • The value is a percentage of the: – maximum frequency or speed – maximum process reference – nominal torque.				

Group 12: CONSTANT SPEEDS

This group defines a set of constant speeds. In general:

- You can program up to 7 constant speeds, ranging from 0...500 Hz or 0...30000 rpm.
- Values must be positive (No negative speed values for constant speeds).
- Constant speed selections are ignored if:
  - the torque control is active, or
  - the process PID reference is followed, or
  - the drive is in local control mode, or
  - PFA (Pump-Fan Alternation) is active.

Note: Parameter 1208 CONST SPEED 7 acts also as a so-called fault speed which may be activated if the control signal is lost. For example, see parameters 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION, 3002 PANEL COMM ERR and 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC.

Group 12: Constant Speeds					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1201	**CONST SPEED SEL**	**-14 …19**	**1**	**3 (DI3)**	✓
	Defines the digital inputs used to select Constant Speeds. See general comments in introduction. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the constant speed function. 1 = DI1 – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input DI1. • Digital input activated = Constant Speed 1 activated. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input DI2…DI6. See above. 7 = DI1,2 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI1 and DI2. • Uses two digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated):				

DI1	DI2	Function
0	0	No constant speed
1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)
0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)
1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)

	• Can be set up as a so-called fault speed, which is activated if the control signal is lost. Refer to parameter 3001 AI<MIN function and parameter 3002 PANEL COMM ERR. 8 = DI2,3 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI2 and DI3. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 9 = DI3,4 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI3 and DI4. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 10 = DI4,5 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI4 and DI5. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 11 = DI5,6 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI5 and DI6. • See above (DI1,2) for code.				

Group 12: Constant Speeds

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
	12 = DI1,2,3 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI1, DI2 and DI3. • Uses three digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated):				

DI1	DI2	DI3	Function
0	0	0	No constant speed
1	0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)
0	1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)
1	1	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)
0	0	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)
1	0	1	Constant speed 5 (1206)
0	1	1	Constant speed 6 (1207)
1	1	1	Constant speed 7 (1208)

13 = DI3,4,5 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI3, DI4 and DI5.
• See above (DI1,2,3) for code.
14 = DI4,5,6 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI4, DI5 and DI6.
• See above (DI1,2,3) for code.
15…18 = TIMED FUNC 1…4 – Selects Constant Speed 1, Constant Speed 2 or the external reference, depending on the state of the Timed Function (1…4) and constant speed mode. See parameter 1209 TIMED MODE SEL and *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*.
19 = TIMED FUN1&2 – Selects a constant speed or the external reference, depending on the state of Timed Functions 1 & 2 and constant speed mode. See parameter 1209 TIMED MODE SEL and *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*.
-1 = DI1(INV) – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input DI1.
• Inverse operation: Digital input de-activated = Constant Speed 1 activated.
-2…- 6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input. See above.
-7 = DI1,2(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI1 and DI2.
• Inverse operation uses two digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated):

DI1	DI2	Function
1	1	No constant speed
0	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)
1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)
0	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)

-8 = DI2,3(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI2 and DI3.
• See above (DI1,2(INV)) for code.
-9 = DI3,4(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI3 and DI4.
• See above (DI1,2(INV)) for code.
-10 = DI4,5(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI4 and DI5.
• See above (DI1,2(INV)) for code.
-11 = DI5,6(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1…3) using DI5 and DI6.
• See above (DI1,2(INV)) for code.
-12 = DI1,2,3(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI1, DI2 and DI3.
• Inverse operation uses three digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated):

DI1	DI2	DI3	Function
1	1	1	No constant speed
0	1	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)
1	0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)
0	0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)
1	1	0	Constant speed 4 (1205)
0	1	0	Constant speed 5 (1206)
1	0	0	Constant speed 6 (1207)
0	0	0	Constant speed 7 (1208)

-13 = DI3,4,5(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI3, DI4 and DI5.
• See above (DI1,2,3(INV)) for code.
-14 = DI4,5,6(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1…7) using DI4, DI5 and DI6.
• See above (DI1,2,3(INV)) for code.

Group 12: Constant Speeds					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1202	**CONST SPEED 1**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**6.0 Hz (US) / 360 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 1. • The range and units depend on parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE. • Range: 0…30000 rpm when 9904 = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED). • Range: 0…500 Hz when 9904 = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ).				
1203	**CONST SPEED 2**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**12.0 Hz (US) / 720 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 2. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				
1204	**CONST SPEED 3**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**18.0 Hz (US) / 1080 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 3. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				
1205	**CONST SPEED 4**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**24.0 Hz (US) / 1440 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 4. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				
1206	**CONST SPEED 5**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**30.0 Hz (US) / 1800 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 5. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				
1207	**CONST SPEED 6**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**48.0 Hz (US) / 2880 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 6. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				
1208	**CONST SPEED 7**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**60.0 Hz (US) / 3600 rpm (US)**	
	Sets value for Constant Speed 7. See CONST SPEED 1 above.				

Group 12: Constant Speeds					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1209	**TIMED MODE SEL**	**1, 2**	**1**	**2 (CS1/2/3/4)**	✓

Defines timed function activated constant speed mode. Timed function can be used to change between the external reference and constant speeds when parameter 1201 CONST SPEED SEL = 15…18 (TIMED FUNC 1…4) or 19 (TIMED FUN1&2).

1 = EXT/CS1/2/3

- If parameter 1201 = 15…18 (TIMED FUNC 1…4), selects an external speed when this timed function (1…4) is not active and selects Constant speed 1 when it is active.

TIMED FUNCTION 1…4	Function
0	External reference
1	Constant speed 1 (1202)

- If parameter 1201 = 19 (TIMED FUN1&2), selects an external speed when neither timed function is active, selects Constant speed 1 when only Timed function 1 is active, selects Constant speed 2 when only Timed function 2 is active and selects Constant speed 3 when both Timed functions 1 and 2 are active.

TIMED FUNCTION 1	TIMED FUNCTION 2	Function
0	0	External reference
1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)
0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)
1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)

2 = CS1/2/3/4

- If parameter 1201 = 15…18 (TIMED FUNC 1…4), selects Constant speed 1 when this timed function (1…4) is not active and selects Constant speed 2 when it is active.

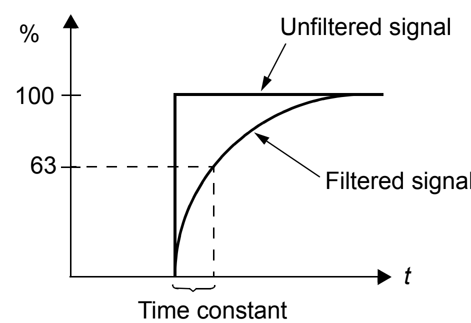
TIMED FUNCTION 1…4	Function
0	Constant speed 1 (1202)
1	Constant speed 2 (1203)

- If parameter 1201 = 19 (TIMED FUN1&2), selects Constant speed 1 when neither timed function is active, selects Constant speed 2 when only Timed function 1 is active, selects Constant speed 3 when only Timed function 2 is active and selects Constant speed 4 when both Timed functions 1 and 2 are active.

TIMED FUNCTION 1	TIMED FUNCTION 2	Function
0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)
1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)
0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)
1	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)

Group 13: ANALOG INPUTS

This group defines the limits and the filtering for analog inputs.

Group 13: Analog Inputs					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1301	**MINIMUM AI1**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**20.0%**	
	Defines the minimum value of the analog input. • Define value as a percent of the full analog signal range. See example below. • The minimum analog input signal corresponds to 1104 REF1 MIN or 1107 REF2 MIN. • MINIMUM AI cannot be greater than MAXIMUM AI. • These parameters (reference and analog min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the reference. • See the figure at parameter 1104. **Example:** To set the minimum analog input value to 4 mA: • Configure the analog input for 0…20 mA current signal. • Calculate the minimum (4 mA) as a percent of full range (20 mA) = 4 mA / 20 mA · 100% = 20%				
1302	**MAXIMUM AI1**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**100.0%**	
	Defines the maximum value of the analog input. • Define value as a percent of the full analog signal range. • The maximum analog input signal corresponds to 1105 REF1 MAX or 1108 REF2 MAX. • See the figure at parameter 1104.				
1303	**FILTER AI1**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.1 s**	
	Defines the filter time constant for analog input 1 (AI1). • The filtered signal reaches 63% of a step change within the time specified.  				
1304	**MINIMUM AI2**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**20.0%**	
	Defines the minimum value of the analog input. • See MINIMUM AI1 above.				
1305	**MAXIMUM AI2**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**100.0%**	
	Defines the maximum value of the analog input. • See MAXIMUM AI1 above.				
1306	**FILTER AI2**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.1 s**	
	Defines the filter time constant for analog input 2 (AI2). • See FILTER AI1 above.				

Group 14: RELAY OUTPUTS

This group defines the condition that activates each of the relay outputs. Relay outputs 4…6 are only available if OREL-01 Relay Output Extension Module is installed.

Group 14: Relay Outputs					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1401	**RELAY OUTPUT 1**	**0…47**	**1**	**1 (READY)**	
	Defines the event or condition that activates relay 1 – what relay output 1 means. 0 = NOT SEL – Relay is not used and is de-energized. 1 = READY – Energize relay when drive is ready to function. Requires: • Run enable signal present. • No faults exist. • Supply voltage is within range. • Emergency Stop command is not on. 2 = RUN – Energize relay when the drive is running. 3 = FAULT(-1) – Energize relay when power is applied. De-energizes when a fault occurs. 4 = FAULT – Energize relay when a fault is active. 5 = ALARM – Energize relay when an alarm is active. 6 = REVERSED – Energize relay when motor rotates in reverse direction. 7 = STARTED – Energize relay when drive receives a start command (even if Run Enable signal is not present). De-energized relay when drive receives a stop command or a fault occurs. 8= SUPRV1 OVER – Energize relay when first supervised parameter (3201) exceeds the limit (3203). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 9 = SUPRV1 UNDER – Energize relay when first supervised parameter (3201) drops below the limit (3202). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 10 = SUPRV2 OVER – Energize relay when second supervised parameter (3204) exceeds the limit (3206). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 11 = SUPRV2 UNDER – Energize relay when second supervised parameter (3204) drops below the limit (3205). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 12 = SUPRV3 OVER – Energize relay when third supervised parameter (3207) exceeds the limit (3209). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 13 = SUPRV3 UNDER – Energize relay when third supervised parameter (3207) drops below the limit (3208). • See *Group 32: SUPERVISION* starting on page *1-134*. 14 = AT SET POINT – Energize relay when the output frequency is equal to the reference frequency. 15 = FAULT(RST) – Energize relay when the drive is in a fault condition and will reset after the programmed auto-reset delay. • See parameter 3103 DELAY TIME. 16 = FLT/ALARM – Energize relay when fault or alarm occurs. 17 = EXT CTRL – Energize relay when external control is selected. 18 = REF 2 SEL – Energize relay when EXT2 is selected. 19 = CONST FREQ – Energize relay when a constant speed is selected. 20 = REF LOSS – Energize relay when reference or active control place is lost. 21 = OVERCURRENT – Energize relay when an overcurrent alarm or fault occurs. 22 = OVERVOLTAGE – Energize relay when an overvoltage alarm or fault occurs. 23 = DRIVE TEMP – Energize relay when a drive or control board overtemperature alarm or fault occurs. 24 = UNDERVOLTAGE – Energize relay when an undervoltage alarm or fault occurs. 25 = AI1 LOSS – Energize relay when AI1 signal is lost. 26 = AI2 LOSS – Energize relay when AI2 signal is lost. 27 = MOTOR TEMP – Energize relay when a motor overtemperature alarm or fault occurs. 28 = STALL – Energize relay when a stall alarm or fault exists. 30 = PID SLEEP – Energize relay when the PID sleep function is active. 31 = PFA – Use relay to start/stop motor in PFA control (See *Group 81: PFA CONTROL*). • Use this option only when PFA control is used. • Selection activated / deactivated when drive is not running. 32 = AUTOCHANGE – Energize relay when PFA autochange operation is performed. • Use this option only when PFA control is used. 33 = FLUX READY – Energize relay when the motor is magnetized and able to supply nominal torque (motor has reached nominal magnetizing). 34 = USER MACRO 2 – Energize relay when User Parameter Set 2 is active.				

Group 14: Relay Outputs

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S

35 = COMM – Energize relay based on input from fieldbus communication.
- Fieldbus writes binary code in parameter 0134 that can energize relay 1…relay 6 according to the following:

Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1
0	000000	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	000001	0	0	0	0	0	1
2	000010	0	0	0	0	1	0
3	000011	0	0	0	0	1	1
4	000100	0	0	0	1	0	0
5…62	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
63	111111	1	1	1	1	1	1

- 0 = De-energize relay, 1 = Energize relay.

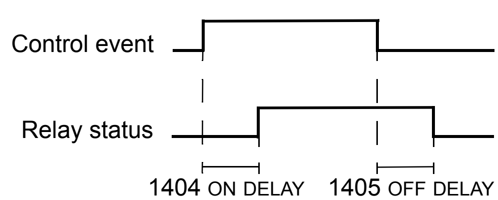
36 = COMM(-1) – Energize relay based on input from fieldbus communication.
- Fieldbus writes binary code in parameter 0134 that can energize relay 1…relay 6 according to the following:

Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1
0	000000	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	000001	1	1	1	1	1	0
2	000010	1	1	1	1	0	1
3	000011	1	1	1	1	0	0
4	000100	1	1	1	0	1	1
5…62	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
63	111111	0	0	0	0	0	0

- 0 = De-energize relay, 1 = Energize relay.

37 = TIMED FUNC 1 – Energize relay when Timed Function 1 is active. See *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*.
38…40 = TIMED FUNC 2…4 – Energize relay when Timed Function 2…4 is active. See TIMED FUNC 1 above.
41 = MNT TRIG FAN – Energize relay when cooling fan counter is triggered. See *Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG*.
42 = MNT TRIG REV – Energize relay when revolutions counter is triggered. See *Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG*.
43 = MNT TRIG RUN – Energize relay when run time counter is triggered. See *Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG*.
44 = MNT TRIG MWH – Energize relay when MWh counter is triggered. See *Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG*.
45 = OVERRIDE – Energize relay when override mode is active.
46 = START DELAY – Energize relay when a start delay is active.
47 = USER LOAD C – Energize relay when a user load curve fault or alarm occurs.

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1402	**RELAY OUTPUT 2** Defines the event or condition that activates relay 2 – what relay output 2 means. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.	**0…47**	**1**	**2 (RUN)**	
1403	**RELAY OUTPUT 3** Defines the event or condition that activates relay 3 – what relay output 3 means. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.	**0…47**	**1**	**3 [FAULT(-1)]**	
1404	**RO 1 ON DELAY** Defines the switch-on delay for relay 1. • On / off delays are ignored when relay output 1401 is set to PFA.	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	



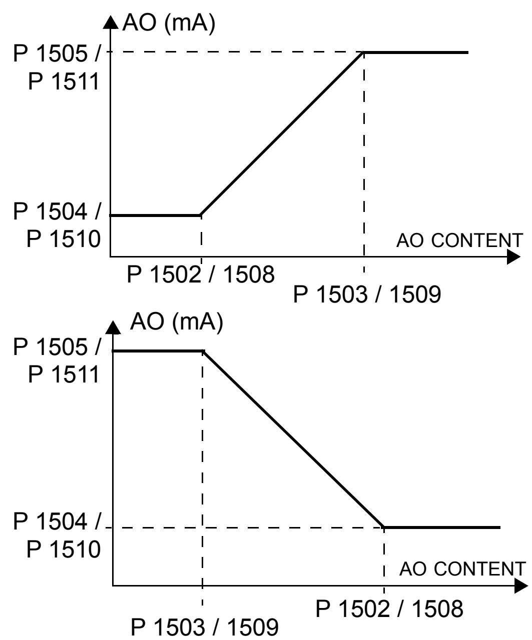
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1405	**RO 1 OFF DELAY** Defines the switch-off delay for relay 1. • On / off delays are ignored when relay output 1401 is set to PFA.	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	

Group 14: Relay Outputs					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1406	**RO 2 ON DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 2. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.				
1407	**RO 2 OFF DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 2. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.				
1408	**RO 3 ON DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 3. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.				
1409	**RO 3 OFF DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 3. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.				
1410 … 1412	**RELAY OUTPUT 4…6**	**0…47**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the event or condition that activates relay 4…6 – what relay output 4…6 means. Available if OREL-01 Relay Output Extension Module is installed. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.				
1413	**RO 4 ON DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 4. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.				
1414	**RO 4 OFF DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 4. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.				
1415	**RO 5 ON DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 5. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.				
1416	**RO 5 OFF DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 5. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.				
1417	**RO 6 ON DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 6. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.				
1418	**RO 6 OFF DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 6. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.				

Group 15: ANALOG OUTPUTS

This group defines the drive's analog (current signal) outputs. The drive's analog outputs can be:

- any parameter in *Group 01: OPERATING DATA*
- limited to programmable minimum and maximum values of output current
- scaled (and/or inverted) by defining the minimum and maximum values of the source parameter (or content). Defining a maximum value (parameter 1503 or 1509) that is less than the content minimum value (parameter 1502 or 1508) results in an inverted output.
- filtered.

Group 15: Analog Outputs					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1501	**AO1 CONTENT SEL**	**99…178**	**1**	**103 (OUTPUT FREQ)**	
	Defines the content for analog output AO1. 99 = EXCITE PTC – Provides a current source for sensor type PTC. Output = 1.6 mA. See *Group 35: MOTOR TEMP MEAS*. 100 = EXCITE PT100 – Provides a current source for sensor type PT100. Output = 9.1 mA. See *Group 35: MOTOR TEMP MEAS*. 101…178 – Output corresponds to a parameter in *Group 01: OPERATING DATA*. • Parameter defined by value (value 102 = parameter 0102)				
1502	**AO1 CONTENT MIN**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**0.0 Hz**	
	Sets the minimum content value. • Content is the parameter selected by parameter 1501. • Minimum value refers to the minimum content value that will be converted to an analog output. • These parameters (content and current min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the output. See the figure.  				
1503	**AO1 CONTENT MAX**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**60.0 Hz**	
	Sets the maximum content value • Content is the parameter selected by parameter 1501. • Maximum value refers to the maximum content value that will be converted to an analog output.				
1504	**MINIMUM AO1**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**4.0 mA**	
	Sets the minimum output current.				

Group 15: Analog Outputs					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1505	**MAXIMUM AO1**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**20.0 mA**	
	Sets the maximum output current.				
1506	**FILTER AO1**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.1 s**	
	Defines the filter time constant for AO1. • The filtered signal reaches 63% of a step change within the time specified. • See the figure in parameter 1303.				
1507	**AO2 CONTENT SEL**	**99…178**	**1**	**104 (CURRENT)**	
	Defines the content for analog output AO2. See AO1 CONTENT SEL above.				
1508	**AO2 CONTENT MIN**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**0.0 A**	
	Sets the minimum content value. See AO1 CONTENT MIN above.				
1509	**AO2 CONTENT MAX**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**1.0 · I_{2n} A**	
	Sets the maximum content value. See AO1 CONTENT MAX above.				
1510	**MINIMUM AO2**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**4.0 mA**	
	Sets the minimum output current. See MINIMUM AO1 above.				
1511	**MAXIMUM AO2**	**0.0…20.0 mA**	**0.1 mA**	**20.0 mA**	
	Sets the maximum output current. See MAXIMUM AO1 above.				
1512	**FILTER AO2**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.1 s**	
	Defines the filter time constant for AO2. See FILTER AO1 above.				

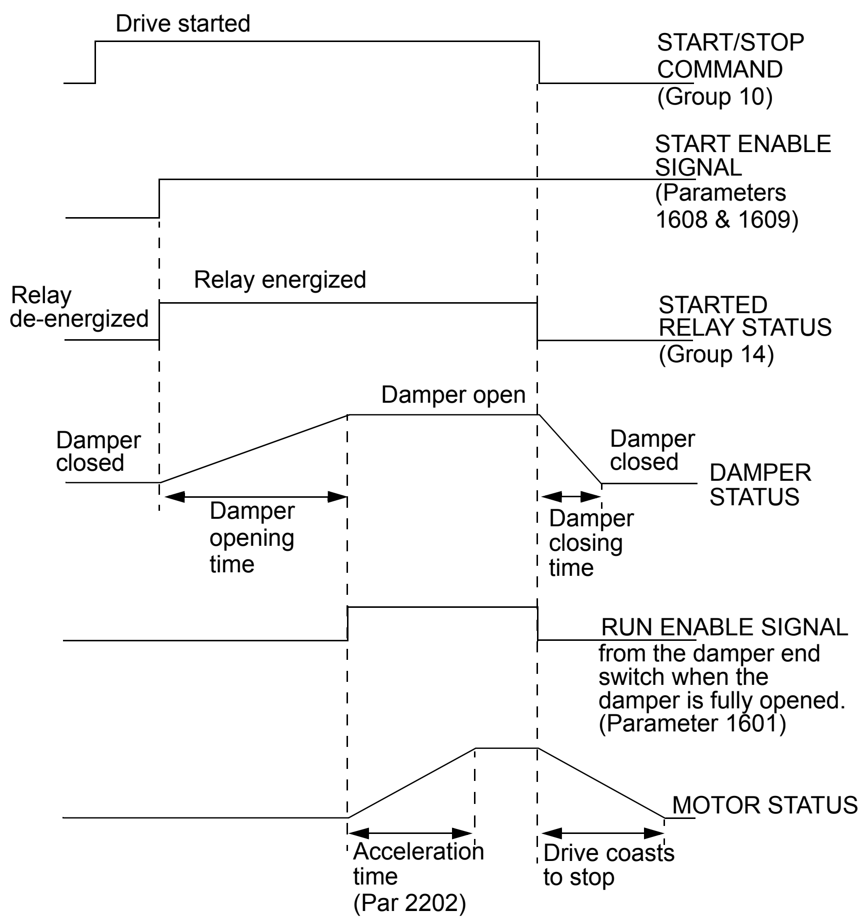
Group 16: SYSTEM CONTROLS

This group defines a variety of system level locks, resets and enables.

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1601	**RUN ENABLE**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects the source of the run enable signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external run enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the run enable signal. • This digital input must be activated for run enable. • If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and not start until the run enable signal resumes. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the run enable signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the run enable signal. • Bit 6 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) activates the run disable signal. • See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the run enable signal. • This digital input must be de-activated for run enable. • If this digital input activates, the drive will coast to stop and not start until the run enable signal resumes. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the run enable signal. • See DI1(INV) above.				
1602	**PARAMETER LOCK**	**0…2**	**1**	**1 (OPEN)**	
	Determines if the control panel can change parameter values. • This lock does not limit parameter changes made by macros. • This lock does not limit parameter changes written by fieldbus inputs. • This parameter value can be changed only if the correct pass code is entered. See parameter 1603 PASS CODE. 0 = LOCKED – You cannot use the control panel to change parameter values. • The lock can be opened by entering the valid pass code to parameter 1603. 1 = OPEN – You can use the control panel to change parameter values. 2 = NOT SAVED – You can use the control panel to change parameter values, but they are not stored in permanent memory. • Set parameter 1607 PARAM SAVE to 1 (SAVE...) to store changed parameter values to memory.				
1603	**PASS CODE**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Entering the correct pass code allows you to change the parameter lock. • See parameter 1602 above. • The code 358 allows you to change the value of the parameter 1602 once. • This entry reverts back to 0 automatically.				
1604	**FAULT RESET SEL**	**-6…8**	**1**	**0 (KEYPAD)**	
	Selects the source for the fault reset signal. The signal resets the drive after a fault trip if the cause of the fault no longer exists. 0 = KEYPAD – Defines the control panel as the only fault reset source. • Fault reset is always possible with control panel. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as a fault reset source. • Activating the digital input resets the drive. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as a fault reset source. • See DI1 above. 7 = START/STOP – Defines the Stop command as a fault reset source. • Do not use this option when fieldbus communication provides the start, stop and direction commands. 8 = COMM – Defines the fieldbus as a fault reset source. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The bit 4 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) resets the drive. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as a fault reset source. • De-activating the digital input resets the drive. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as a fault reset source. • See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1605	**USER PAR SET CHG**	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines control for changing the user parameter set. • See parameter 9902 APPLIC MACRO. • The drive must be stopped to change User Parameter Sets. • During a change, the drive will not start. **Note:** Always save the User Parameter Set after changing any parameter settings, or performing a motor identification. • Whenever the power is cycled, or parameter 9902 APPLIC MACRO is changed, the drive loads the last settings saved. Any unsaved changes to a user parameter set are lost. **Note:** The value of this parameter (1605) is not included in the User Parameter Sets, and it does not change if User Parameter Sets change. **Note:** You can use a relay output to supervise the selection of User Parameter Set 2. • See parameter 1401. 0 = NOT SEL – Defines the control panel (using parameter 9902) as the only control for changing User Parameter Sets. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets. • The drive loads User Parameter Set 1 on the falling edge of the digital input. • The drive loads User Parameter Set 2 on the rising edge of the digital input. • The User Parameter Set changes only when the drive is stopped. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets. • See DI1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets. • The drive loads User Parameter Set 1 on the rising edge of the digital input. • The drive loads User Parameter Set 2 on the falling edge of the digital input. • The User Parameter Set changes only when the drive is stopped. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets. • See DI1(INV) above.				
1606	**LOCAL LOCK**	**-6…8**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines control for the use of the HAND mode. The HAND mode allows drive control from the control panel. • When LOCAL LOCK is active, the control panel cannot change to HAND mode. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the lock. The control panel can select HAND and control the drive. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for setting the local lock. • Activating the digital input locks out local control. • De-activating the digital input enable the HAND selection. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for setting the local lock. • See DI1 above. 7 = ON – Sets the lock. The control panel cannot select HAND and cannot control the drive. 8 = COMM – Defines bit 14 of the Command Word 1 as the control for setting the local lock. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The Command Word is 0301. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for setting the local lock. • De-activating the digital input locks out local control. • Activating the digital input enable the HAND selection. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for setting the local lock. • See DI1(INV) above.				
1607	**PARAM. SAVE**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DONE)**	
	Saves all altered parameters to permanent memory. • Parameters altered through a fieldbus are not automatically saved to permanent memory. To save, you must use this parameter. • If 1602 PARAMETER LOCK = 2 (NOT SAVED), parameters altered from the control panel are not saved. To save, you must use this parameter. • If 1602 PARAMETER LOCK = 1 (OPEN), parameters altered from the control panel are stored immediately to permanent memory. 0 = DONE – Value changes automatically when all parameters are saved. 1 = SAVE… – Saves altered parameters to permanent memory.				

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1608	**START ENABLE 1**	**-6…7**	**1**	**4 (DI4)**	✓
	Selects the source of the start enable 1 signal. **Note:** Start enable functionality differs from the run enable functionality. 0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external start enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the start enable 1 signal. • This digital input must be activated for start enable 1 signal. • If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and show alarm 2021 on the panel display. The drive will not start until start enable 1 signal resumes. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the start enable 1 signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start enable 1 signal. • Bit 2 of the Command Word 2 (parameter 0302) activates the start disable 1 signal. • See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the start enable 1 signal. -2…-6 = DI2 (INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the start enable 1 signal. • See DI1 (INV) above.				



Group 16: System Controls					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1609	**START ENABLE 2**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects the source of the start enable 2 signal. **Note:** Start enable functionality differs from the run enable functionality. 0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external start enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the start enable 2 signal. • This digital input must be activated for start enable 2 signal. • If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and show alarm 2022 on the panel display. The drive will not start until start enable 2 signal resumes. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the start enable 2 signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start enable 2 signal. Bit 3 of the Command word 2 (parameter 0302) activates the start disable 2 signal. • See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the start enable 2 signal. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the start enable 2 signal. • See DI1 (INV) above.				
1610	**DISPLAY ALARMS**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (YES)**	
	Controls the visibility of the following alarms: • 2001, Overcurrent alarm • 2002, Overvoltage alarm • 2003, Undervoltage alarm • 2009, Device overtemperature alarm. For more information, see section *Alarm listing* on page *1-286*. 0 = NO – The above alarms are suppressed. 1 = YES – All of the above alarms are enabled.				
1611	**PARAMETER VIEW**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DEFAULT)**	
	Selects the parameter view, i.e. which parameters are shown. **Note:** This parameter is visible only when it is activated by the optional FlashDrop device. FlashDrop is designed for fast copying of parameters to unpowered drives. It allows easy customization of the parameter list, e.g. selected parameters can be hidden. For more information, see *MFDT-01 FlashDrop User's Manual* (3AFE68591074 [English]). FlashDrop parameter values are activated by setting parameter 9902 to 31 (LOAD FD SET). 0 = DEFAULT – Complete long and short parameter lists are shown. 1 = FLASHDROP – FlashDrop parameter list is shown. Does not include short parameter list. Parameters that are hidden by the FlashDrop device are not visible.				
1612	**FAN CONTROL**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (AUTO)**	
	Selects drive cooling fan control. 0 = AUTO – Fan is controlled automatically. 1 = ON – Fan is always forced on.				
1613	**FAULT RESET**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DEFAULT)**	
	Allows fault reset with a parameter. Can be used to reset faults from remote monitoring systems that have access to drive parameters. 0 = DEFAULT – Fault is not reset. 1 = RESET NOW – Resets fault.				

Group 17: OVERRIDE

This group defines the source for the override activation signal, the override speed/ frequency and pass code and how the override is enabled and disabled.

When override DI is activated, the drive stops and then accelerates to the preset speed or frequency. When the DI is deactivated the drive stops and reboots. If the start command, run enable and start enables are active in the AUTO mode the drive starts automatically and continues normally after override mode. In the HAND mode the drive returns to OFF mode.

When override is active:

- Drive runs at preset speed or PID output (defined by 1707 OVERRIDE REF)
- Drive ignores all keypad commands
- Drive ignores all commands from communication links
- Drive ignores all digital inputs except override activation/deactivation, and RUN ENABLE/START ENABLE inputs configured prior to setting 1705 OVERRIDE ENABLE to ON.
- Drive displays alarm message "2020 OVERRIDE MODE"

The following faults are ignored:

3	DEVICE OVERTEMP
5	OVERLOAD
6	DC UNDERVOLT
7	AI1 LOSS
8	AI2 LOSS
9	MOTOR TEMP
10	PANEL LOSS
12	MOTOR STALL
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2
17	UNDERLOAD
18	THERM FAIL
21	CURR MEAS
22	SUPPLY PHASE
24	OVERSPEED
28	SERIAL 1 ERR
29	EFB CONFIG FILE
30	FORCE TRIP
31	EFB 1
32	EFB 2
33	EFB 3
34	MOTOR PHASE
1001	PAR PFA REFNEG

1002	PAR PFA IOCONF
1003	PAR AI SCALE
1004	PAR AO SCALE
1006	PAR EXTROMISSING
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR

Commissioning the override mode:

1. Enter the parameters in all groups as needed, except group 17. Run Enable/Start Enable inputs configured prior to enabling the override mode will be acknowledged in override. Inputs configured after enabling override will be ignored (Low priority safeties).
2. Select the digital input that will activate override mode P1701.
3. Enter the frequency or speed reference for override mode, P1702 and P1703, according to the motor control mode P9904.
4. Enter the pass code P1704 (358).
5. Enable the override mode P1705.

Changing the override parameters:

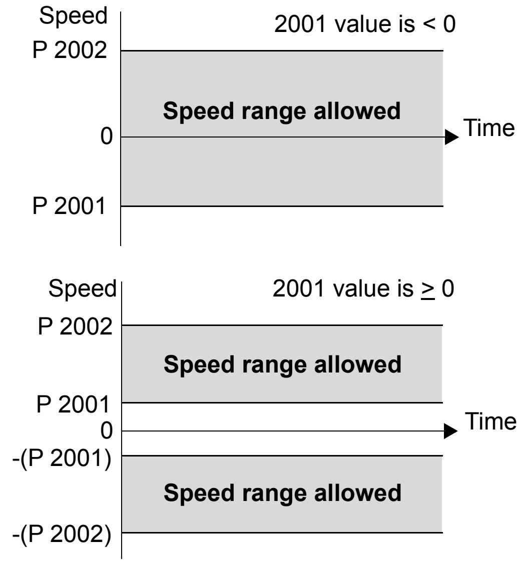
1. If override mode is already enabled, disable it:
   - Enter the pass code P1704.
   - Disable the override mode P1705.
2. If needed, load the override parameter set P9902.
3. Change the parameters as needed, except group 17.
4. Change the parameters in group 17 as needed:
   - Digital input for override mode P1701.
   - Frequency or speed reference, P1702 or P1703.
5. Enter the pass code P1704.
6. Enable the override mode P1705. The drive replaces the override parameter set with new values of all parameters.

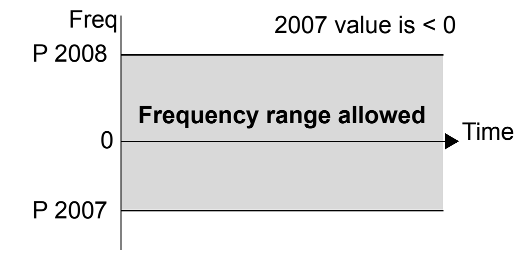
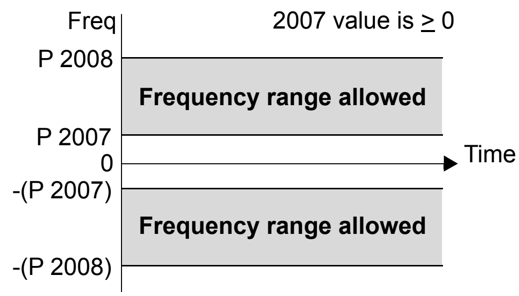
Group 17: Override					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1701	**OVERRIDE SEL**	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects the source of the override activation signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Override activation signal not selected. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the override activation signal. • This digital input must be activated for override activation signal. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the override activation signal. • See DI1 above. (-1) = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the override activation signal. (-2)…(-6) = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the override activation signal. • See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 17: Override					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
1702	**OVERRIDE FREQ**	**-500…500 Hz**	**0.1**	**0.0 Hz**	✓
	Defines a preset frequency for the override. **Note:** Set this value if motor control mode (Par. 9904) is SCALAR: FREQ (3).				
1703	**OVERRIDE SPEED**	**-30.000…30.000 rpm**	**1**	**0 rpm**	✓
	Defines a preset speed for the override. Note! Set this value if motor control mode (parameter 9904) is VECTOR: SPEED (1).				
1704	**OVERR PASS CODE**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	✓
	Entering the correct override pass code unlocks parameter 1705 for one change. • Enter the pass code always before changing the value of the parameter 1705. • See parameter 1705 below. • The pass code is 358. • The entry reverts back to zero automatically.				
1705	**OVERRIDE**	**0…1**	**1**	**0 (OFF)**	✓
	Selects whether the override is enabled or disabled. 0 = OFF – Override disabled. 1 = ON – Override enabled. • When enabled, the drive stores the values of all parameters into an override parameter set (see parameter 9902) and the parameters in Group 17 will be write protected (except parameter 1704). To change the other parameters in the Group 17, override has to be disabled.				
1706	**OVERRIDE DIR**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (FORWARD)**	✓
	Selects the source of the override direction signal. 0 = FORWARD – Assigns forward as the override direction. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the override direction signal. • Activating the digital input selects the forward direction. • De-activating the digital input selects the reverse direction. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the override direction signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = REVERSE – Assigns reverse as the override direction. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the override direction signal. • De-activating the digital input selects the forward direction. • Activating the digital input selects the reverse direction. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the override direction signal. • See DI1(INV) above.				
1707	**OVERRIDE REF**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 (CONSTANT)**	✓
	Selects the source of the override reference. 1 = CONSTANT – Selects a preset frequency or speed for the override. The frequency value is defined by parameter 1702 OVERRIDE FREQ and the speed value by parameter 1703 OVERRIDE SPEED. 2 = PID – The reference is taken from the PID output, see group 40 PROCESS PID SET 1. • **Note:** The following conditions must be met when using PID in the override mode: • PID1 set point (parameter 4010 SET POINT SEL) can be either A1, A2 or INTERNAL. Other selections including KEYPAD will prevent enabling Override Mode and will display FAULT 1011 PAR OVERRIDE. • PID1 parameter set 1 must be active (parameter 4027 PID 1 PARAM SET = SET 1). • Override direction (parameter 1706 OVERRIDE DIR) can be either 0 = FORWARD or 7 = REVERSE.				

Group 20: LIMITS

This group defines minimum and maximum limits to follow in driving the motor – speed, frequency, current, torque, etc.

Group 20: Limits					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2001	**MINIMUM SPEED**	**-30000…30000 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**0 rpm**	✓
	Defines the minimum speed (rpm) allowed. • A positive (or zero) minimum speed value defines two ranges, one positive and one negative. • A negative minimum speed value defines one speed range. • See the figure.  				
2002	**MAXIMUM SPEED**	**0…30000 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**1800 (US)**	✓
	Defines the maximum speed (rpm) allowed.				
2003	**MAX CURRENT**	**0.0… 1.3 • I_{2n}**	**0.1 A**	**1.3 • I_{2n}**	✓
	Defines the maximum output current (A) supplied by the drive to the motor.				
2006	**UNDERVOLT CTRL**	**0…2**	**1**	**1 [ENABLE (TIME)]**	
	Sets the DC undervoltage controller on or off. When on: • If the DC bus voltage drops due to loss of input power, the undervoltage controller decreases the motor speed in order to keep the DC bus voltage above the lower limit. • When the motor speed decreases, the inertia of the load causes regeneration back into the drive, keeping the DC bus charged and preventing an undervoltage trip. • The DC undervoltage controller increases power loss ride-through on systems with a high inertia, such as a centrifuge or a fan. 0 = DISABLE – Disables controller. 1 = ENABLE(TIME) – Enables controller with 500 ms time limit for operation. 2 = ENABLE – Enables controller without maximum time limit for operation.				

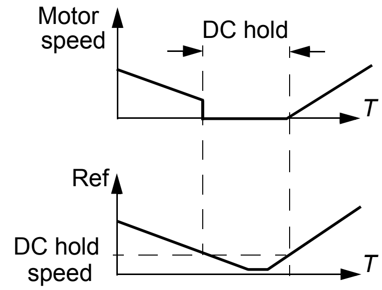
Group 20: Limits					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2007	**MINIMUM FREQ**	**-500.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**0.0 Hz**	✓
	Defines the minimum limit for the drive output frequency. • A positive or zero minimum frequency value defines two ranges, one positive and one negative. • A negative minimum frequency value defines one speed range. See the figure. **Note:** Keep MINIMUM FREQ ≤ MAXIMUM FREQ.   				
2008	**MAXIMUM FREQ**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**60.0 Hz (US)**	✓
	Defines the maximum limit for the drive output frequency.				
2013	**MIN TORQUE SEL**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (MIN TORQUE 1)**	
	Defines control of the selection between two minimum torque limits (2015 MIN TORQUE 1 and 2016 MIN TORQUE 2). 0 = MIN TORQUE 1 – Selects 2015 MIN TORQUE 1 as the minimum limit used. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used. • Activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 2 value. • De-activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 1 value. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Defines bit 15 of the Command Word 1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The Command Word is parameter 0301. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used. • Activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 1 value. • De-activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 2 value. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used. • See DI1(INV) above.				
2014	**MAX TORQUE SEL**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (MAX TORQUE 1)**	
	Defines control of the selection between two maximum torque limits (2017 MAX TORQUE 1 and 2018 MAX TORQUE 2). 0 = MAX TORQUE 1 – Selects 2017 MAX TORQUE 1 as the maximum limit used. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used. • Activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 2 value. • De-activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 1 value. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Defines bit 15 of the Command Word 1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The Command Word is parameter 0301. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input di1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used. • Activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 1 value. • De-activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 2 value. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used. • See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 20: Limits					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2015	**MIN TORQUE 1**	**-600.0%…0.0%**	**0.1%**	**-300.0%**	
	Sets the first minimum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.				
2016	**MIN TORQUE 2**	**-600.0%…0.0%**	**0.1%**	**-300.0%**	
	Sets the second minimum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.				
2017	**MAX TORQUE 1**	**0.0%…600.0%**	**0.1%**	**300.0%**	
	Sets the first maximum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.				
2018	**MAX TORQUE 2**	**0.0%…600.0%**	**0.1%**	**300.0%**	
	Sets the second maximum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.				

Group 21: START/STOP

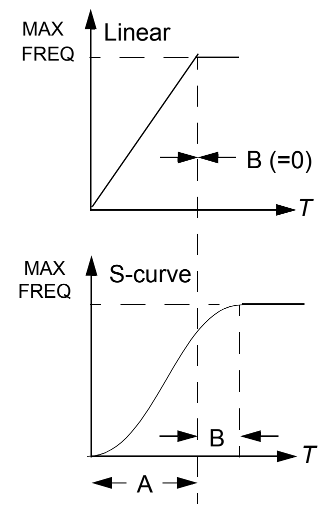
This group defines how the motor starts and stops. The ACH550 supports several start and stop modes.

Group 21: Start/Stop					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2101	**START FUNCTION**	**Vector control modes: 1, 2, 8** **Scalar control mode: 1…5, 8**	**1**	**3 (SCALAR FLYST)**	✓
	Selects the motor start method. The valid options depend on the value of parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE. 1 = AUTO – Selects the automatic start mode. • Vector control modes: Optimal start in most cases. The drive automatically selects the correct output frequency to start a rotating motor. • SCALAR:FREQ mode: Immediate start from zero frequency. Identical to selection 8 = RAMP. 2 = DC MAGN – Selects the DC Magnetizing start mode. **Note:** The DC Magnetizing start mode cannot start a rotating motor. **Note:** The drive starts when the set pre-magnetizing time (parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME) has passed, even if motor magnetization is not complete. • Vector control modes: Magnetizes the motor within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. The normal control is released exactly after the magnetizing time. This selection guarantees the highest possible break-away torque. • SCALAR:FREQ mode: Magnetizes the motor within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. The normal control is released exactly after the magnetizing time. 3 = SCALAR FLYST – Selects the flying start mode. • Vector control modes: Not applicable. • SCALAR:FREQ mode: The drive automatically selects the correct output frequency to start a rotating motor – useful if the motor is already rotating and if the drive will start smoothly at the current frequency. • Cannot be used in multimotor systems. 4 = TORQ BOOST – Selects the automatic torque boost mode (SCALAR:FREQ mode only). • May be necessary in drives with high starting torque. • Torque boost is only applied at start, ending when output frequency exceeds 20 Hz or when output frequency is equal to reference. • In the beginning the motor magnetizes within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. • See parameter 2110 TORQ BOOST CURR. 5 = FLY + BOOST – Selects both the flying start and the torque boost mode (SCALAR:FREQ mode only). • Flying start routine is performed first and the motor is magnetized. If the speed is found to be zero, the torque boost is done. 8 = RAMP – Immediate start from zero frequency.				
2102	**STOP FUNCTION**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 (COAST)**	
	Selects the motor stop method. 1 = COAST – Selects cutting off the motor power as the stop method. The motor coasts to stop. 2 = RAMP – Selects using a deceleration ramp. • Deceleration ramp is defined by 2203 DECELER TIME 1 or 2206 DECELER TIME 2 (whichever is active).				
2103	**DC MAGN TIME**	**0.00…10.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.30 s**	
	Defines the pre-magnetizing time for the DC Magnetizing start mode. • Use parameter 2101 to select the start mode. • After the start command, the drive pre-magnetizes the motor for the time defined here and then starts the motor. • Set the pre-magnetizing time just long enough to allow full motor magnetization. Too long a time heats the motor excessively.				

Group 21: Start/Stop					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2104	**DC HOLD CTL**	**0…2**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects whether DC current is used for braking or DC Hold. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the DC current operation. 1 = DC HOLD – Enables the DC Hold function. See the diagram. • Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED) • Stops generating sinusoidal current and injects DC into the motor when both the reference and the motor speed drop below the value of parameter 2105. • When the reference rises above the level of parameter 2105 the drive resumes normal operation. 2 = DC BRAKING – Enables the DC Injection Braking after modulation has stopped. • If parameter 2102 STOP FUNCTION is 1 (COAST), braking is applied after start is removed. • If parameter 2102 STOP FUNCTION is 2 (RAMP), braking is applied after ramp.  				
2105	**DC HOLD SPEED**	**0…360 rpm**	**1 rpm**	**5 rpm**	
	Sets the speed for DC Hold. Requires that parameter 2104 DC HOLD CTL = 1 (DC HOLD).				
2106	**DC CURR REF**	**0…100%**	**1%**	**30%**	
	Defines the DC current control reference as a percentage of parameter 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR.				
2107	**DC BRAKE TIME**	**0.0…250.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the DC brake time after modulation has stopped, if parameter 2104 is 2 (DC BRAKING).				
2108	**START INHIBIT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (OFF)**	
	Sets the Start inhibit function on or off. If the drive is not actively started and running, the Start inhibit function ignores a pending start command in any of the following situations and a new start command is required: • A fault is reset. • Run Enable (parameter 1601) activates while start command is active. • Mode changes from local to remote. • Control switches from EXT1 to EXT2. • Control switches from EXT2 to EXT1. 0 = OFF – Disables the Start inhibit function. 1 = ON – Enables the Start inhibit function.				
2109	**EMERG STOP SEL**	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines control of the Emergency stop command. When activated: • Emergency stop decelerates the motor using the emergency stop ramp (parameter 2208 EMERG DEC TIME). • Requires an external stop command and removal of the emergency stop command before drive can restart. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the Emergency stop function through digital inputs. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for Emergency stop command. • Activating the digital input issues an Emergency stop command. • De-activating the digital input removes the Emergency stop command. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for Emergency stop command. • See DI1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for Emergency stop command. • De-activating the digital input issues an Emergency stop command. • Activating the digital input removes the Emergency stop command. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for Emergency stop command. • See DI1(INV) above.				
2110	**TORQ BOOST CURR**	**15…300%**	**1%**	**100%**	
	Sets the maximum supplied current during torque boost. • See parameter 2101 START FUNCTION.				
2113	**START DELAY**	**0.0…60.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.00 s**	
	Defines the Start delay. After the conditions for start have been fulfilled, the drive waits until the delay has elapsed and then starts the motor. Start delay can be used with all start modes. • If START DELAY = zero, the delay is disabled. • During the Start delay, alarm 2028 START DELAY is shown.				

Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL

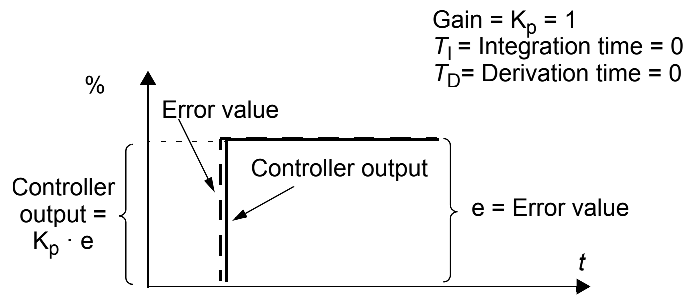
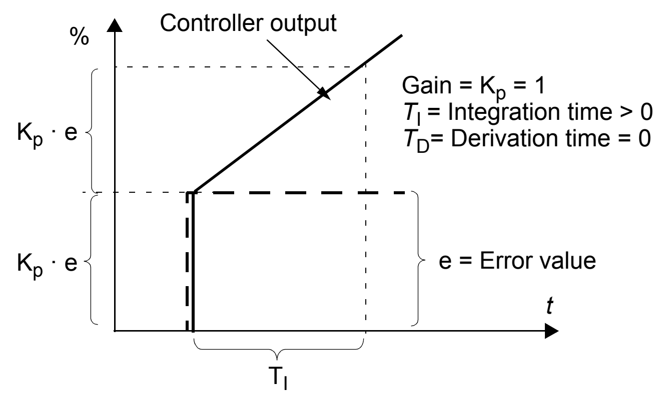
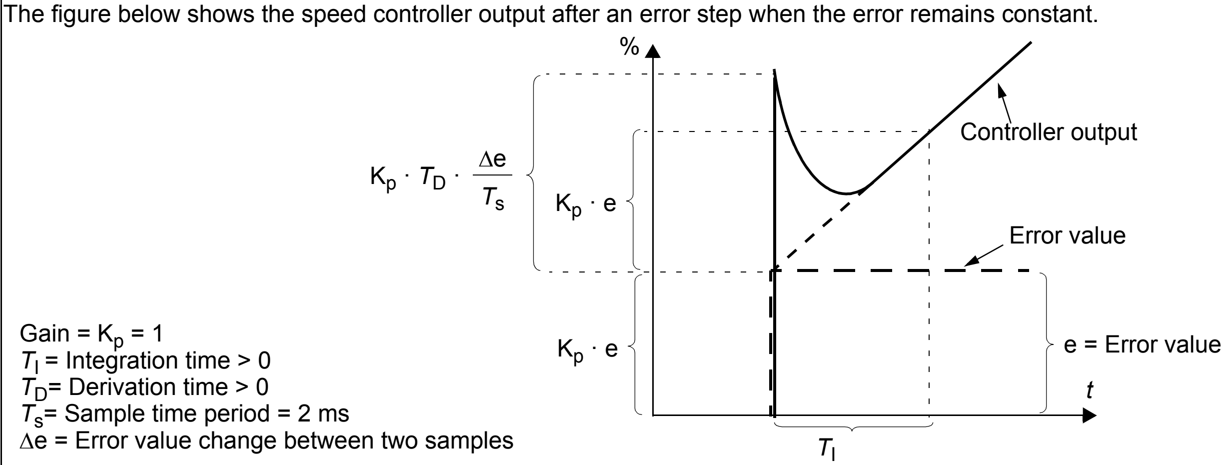
This group defines ramps that control the rate of acceleration and deceleration. You define these ramps as a pair, one for acceleration and one for deceleration. You can define two pairs of ramps and use a digital input to select one or the other pair.

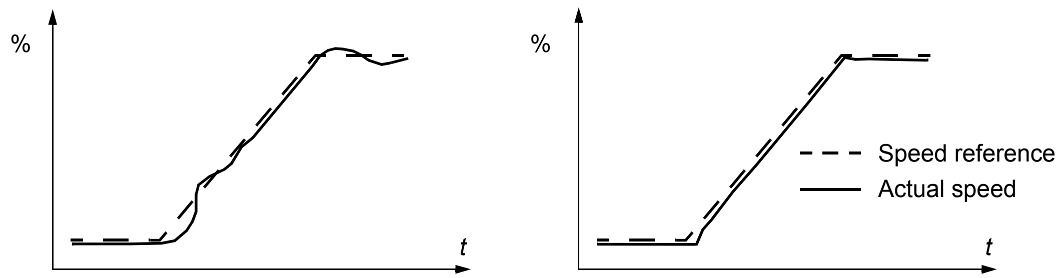
Group 22: Accel/Decel					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2201	**ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines control for selection of acceleration/deceleration ramps. • Ramps are defined in pairs, one each for acceleration and deceleration. • See below for the ramp definition parameters. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables selection, the first ramp pair is used. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for ramp pair selection. • Activating the digital input selects ramp pair 2. • De-activating the digital input selects ramp pair 1. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for ramp pair selection. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Defines bit 10 of the Command Word 1 as the control for ramp pair selection. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The Command Word is parameter 0301. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for ramp pair selection. • De-activating the digital input selects ramp pair 2 • Activating the digital input selects ramp pair 1. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for ramp pair selection. • See DI1(INV) above.				
2202	**ACCELER TIME 1**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**30.0 s**	
	Sets the acceleration time for zero to maximum frequency for ramp pair 1. See A in the figure. • Actual acceleration time also depends on 2204 RAMP SHAPE 1. • See 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ.  A = 2202 ACCELER TIME 1 B = 2204 RAMP SHAPE 1				
2203	**DECELER TIME 1**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**30.0 s**	
	Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for ramp pair 1. • Actual deceleration time also depends on 2204 RAMP SHAPE 1. • See 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ.				
2204	**RAMP SHAPE 1**	**0.0...1000.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s (LINEAR)**	
	Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp for ramp pair 1. See B in the figure. • Shape is defined as a ramp, unless additional time is specified here to reach the maximum frequency. A longer time provides a softer transition at each end of the slope. The shape becomes an s-curve. • Rule of thumb: 1/5 is a suitable relation between the ramp shape time and the acceleration ramp time. 0.0 = LINEAR – Specifies linear acceleration/deceleration ramps for ramp pair 1. 0.1…1000.0 = S-CURVE – Specifies s-curve acceleration/deceleration ramps for ramp pair 1.				

Group 22: Accel/Decel					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2205	**ACCELER TIME 2**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**60.0 s**	
	Sets the acceleration time for zero to maximum frequency for ramp pair 2. • See 2202 ACCELER TIME 1. • Used also as jogging acceleration time. See 1004 JOGGING SEL.				
2206	**DECELER TIME 2**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**60.0 s**	
	Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for ramp pair 2. • See 2203 DECELER TIME 1. • Used also as jogging deceleration time. See 1004 JOGGING SEL.				
2207	**RAMP SHAPE 2**	**0.0…1000.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp for ramp pair 2. • See 2204 RAMP SHAPE 1.				
2208	**EMERG DEC TIME**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**1.0 s**	
	Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for an emergency. • See parameter 2109 EMERG STOP SEL. • Ramp is linear.				
2209	**RAMP INPUT 0**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines control for forcing the speed to 0 with the currently used deceleration ramp (see parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2). 0 = NOT SEL – Not selected. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for forcing the speed to 0. • Activating the digital input forces the speed to zero, after which the speed will stay at 0. • De-activating the digital input: speed control resumes normal operation. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for forcing the speed to 0. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Defines bit 13 of the Command Word 1 as the control for forcing the speed to 0. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The Command Word is parameter 0301. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines inverted digital input DI1 as the control for forcing the speed to 0. • De-activating the digital input forces the speed to 0. • Activating the digital input: speed control resumes normal operation. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for forcing the speed to 0. • See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 23: SPEED CONTROL

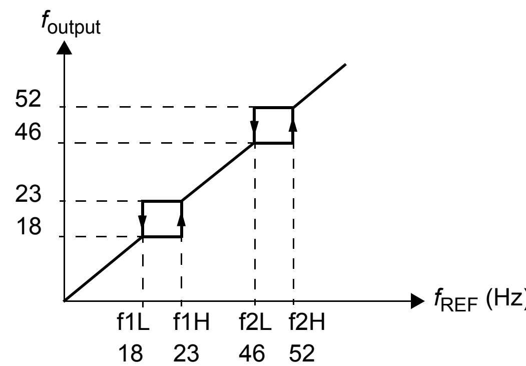
This group defines variables used for speed control operation.

Group 23: Speed Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2301	**PROP GAIN**	**0.00…200.00**	**0.01**	**3.00**	
	Sets the relative gain for the speed controller. • Larger values may cause speed oscillation. • The figure shows the speed controller output after an error step (error remains constant). **Note:** You can use parameter 2305 AUTOTUNE RUN to automatically set the proportional gain.  				
2302	**INTEGRATION TIME**	**0.00…600.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.50 s**	
	Sets the integration time for the speed controller. • The integration time defines the rate at which the controller output changes for a constant error value. • Shorter integration times correct continuous errors faster. • Control becomes unstable if the integration time is too short. • The figure shows the speed controller output after an error step (error remains constant). **Note:** You can use parameter 2305 AUTOTUNE RUN to automatically set the integration time.  				
2303	**DERIVATION TIME**	**0…10000 ms**	**1 ms**	**0 ms**	
	Sets the derivation time for the speed controller. • Derivative action makes the control more responsive to error value changes. • The longer the derivation time, the more the speed controller output is boosted during the change. • If the derivation time is set to zero, the controller works as a PI controller, otherwise as a PID controller. The figure below shows the speed controller output after an error step when the error remains constant.  				

Group 23: Speed Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2304	**ACC COMPENSATION**	**0.00…600.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.00 s**	
	Sets the derivation time for acceleration compensation. • Adding a derivative of the reference to the output of the speed controller compensates for inertia during acceleration. • 2303 DERIVATION TIME describes the principle of derivative action. • Rule of thumb: Set this parameter between 50 and 100% of the sum of the mechanical time constants for the motor and the driven machine. • The figure shows the speed responses when a high inertia load is accelerated along a ramp. * **No acceleration compensation** **Acceleration compensation**  ***Note:** You can use parameter 2305 AUTOTUNE RUN to automatically set acceleration compensation.				
2305	**AUTOTUNE RUN**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (OFF)**	
	Starts automatic tuning of the speed controller. 0 = OFF – Disables the Autotune creation process. (Does not disable the operation of Autotune settings.) 1 = ON – Activates speed controller autotuning. Automatically reverts to OFF. Procedure: **Note:** The motor load must be connected. • Run the motor at a constant speed of 20 to 40% of the rated speed. • Change the autotuning parameter 2305 to ON. The drive: • Accelerates the motor. • Calculates values for proportional gain, integration time and acceleration compensation. • Changes parameters 2301, 2302 and 2304 to these values. • Resets 2305 to OFF.				

Group 25: CRITICAL SPEEDS

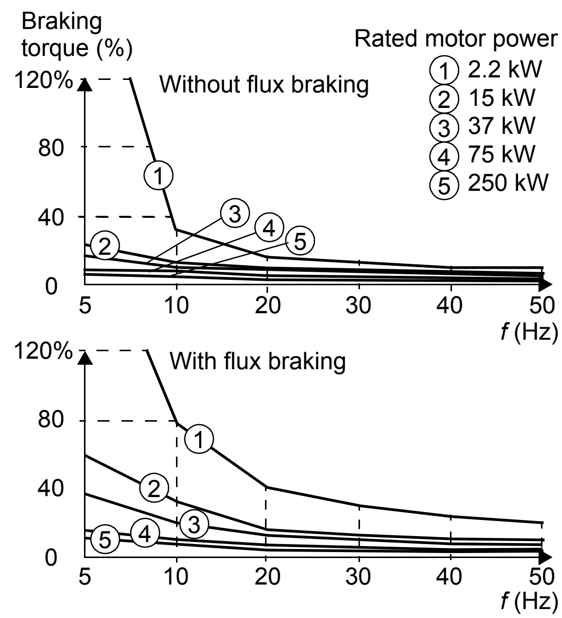
This group defines up to three critical speeds or ranges of speeds that are to be avoided due, for example, to mechanical resonance problems at certain speeds.

Group 25: Critical Speeds					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2501	**CRIT SPEED SEL**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (OFF)**	
	Sets the critical speeds function on or off. The critical speed function avoids specific speed ranges. 0 = OFF – Disables the critical speeds function. 1 = ON – Enables the critical speeds function. **Example:** To avoid speeds at which a fan system vibrates badly: • Determine problem speed ranges. Assume they are found to be: 18…23 Hz and 46…52 Hz. • Set 2501 CRIT SPEED SEL = 1. • Set 2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO = 18 Hz. • Set 2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI = 23 Hz. • Set 2504 CRIT SPEED 2 LO = 46 Hz. • Set 2505 CRIT SPEED 2 HI = 52 Hz.				
2502	**CRIT SPEED 1 LO**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 1. • The value must be less than or equal to 2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI. • Units are rpm, unless 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ), then units are Hz.				
2503	**CRIT SPEED 1 HI**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 1. • The value must be greater than or equal to 2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO. • Units are rpm, unless 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ), then units are Hz.				
2504	**CRIT SPEED 2 LO**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 2. • See parameter 2502.				
2505	**CRIT SPEED 2 HI**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 2. • See parameter 2503.				
2506	**CRIT SPEED 3 LO**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 3. • See parameter 2502.				
2507	**CRIT SPEED 3 HI**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 3. • See parameter 2503.				

Group 26: MOTOR CONTROL

This group defines variables used for motor control.

Group 26: Motor Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2601	**FLUX OPT ENABLE**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ON)**	
	Changes the magnitude of the flux depending on the actual load. Flux Optimization can reduce the total energy consumption and noise, and it should be enabled for drives that usually operate below nominal load. 0 = OFF – Disables the feature. 1 = ON – Enables the feature.				
2602	**FLUX BRAKING**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (OFF)**	
	Provides faster deceleration by raising the level of magnetization in the motor when needed, instead of limiting the deceleration ramp. By increasing the flux in the motor, the energy of the mechanical system is changed to thermal energy in the motor. • Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED) OR 2 (VECTOR:TORQ). 0 = OFF – Disables the feature. 1 = ON – Enables the feature.				
2603	**IR COMP VOLT**	**0.0…100.0 V**	**0.1 V**	**0.0 V**	
2604	**IR COMP FREQ**	**0…100%**	**1%**	**80%**	

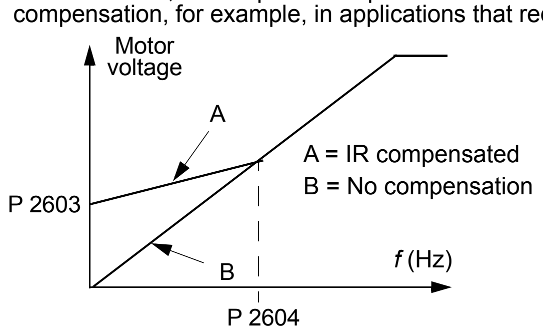


2603 IR COMP VOLT

Sets the IR compensation voltage used for 0 Hz.
- Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ).
- Keep IR compensation as low as possible to prevent overheating.
- Typical IR compensation values are:

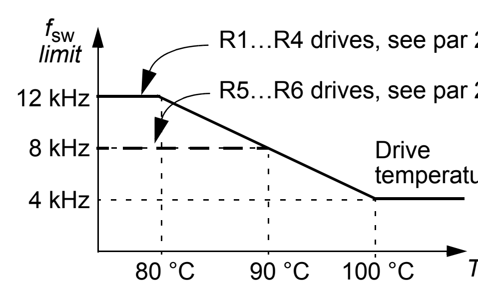
380…480 V drives					
P_N (kW)	3	7.5	15	37	132
IR comp (V)	18	15	12	8	3

IR compensation
- When enabled, IR compensation provides an extra voltage boost to the motor at low speeds. Use IR compensation, for example, in applications that require a high breakaway torque.



2604 IR COMP FREQ

Sets the frequency at which IR compensation is 0 V (in % of motor frequency).

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 26: Motor Control</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td>2605</td><td>U/f RATIO</td><td>1, 2</td><td>1</td><td>2 (SQUARED)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Selects the form for the U/f (voltage to frequency) ratio below field weakening point.
1 = LINEAR – Preferred for constant torque applications.
2 = SQUARED – Preferred for centrifugal pump and fan applications. (SQUARED is more silent for most operating frequencies.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2606</td><td>SWITCHING FREQ</td><td>1, 2, 4, 8, 12 kHz</td><td>-</td><td>4 kHz</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Sets the switching frequency for the drive. Also see parameter 2607 SWITCH FREQ CTRL and Motor connections on page 1-309.
• Higher switching frequencies mean less noise.
• 12 kHz switching frequency is available in scalar control mode, that is when parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ). The drive nominal current rating is reduced approximately 20% with the 12 kHz setting. Continuous current higher than the reduced nominal rating is not possible with this setting.
• See the availability of switching frequencies for different drive types in the table below.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th>1, 2, 4 and 8 kHz</th><th>12 kHz (The drive nominal current rating is reduced approximately 20% with this setting.)</th></tr>
<tr><td>208…240 V</td><td>All types</td><td>Frame sizes R1…R4 in scalar control mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>380…480 V</td><td>All types</td><td>Frame sizes R1…R4 (except ACH550-01-097A-4) in scalar control mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>500…600 V</td><td>All types</td><td>Frame sizes R2…R4 in scalar control mode</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>2607</td><td>SWITCH FREQ CTRL</td><td>0, 1</td><td>1</td><td>1 (ON)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">The switching frequency may be reduced if the ACH550 internal temperature rises above a limit. See the figure. This function allows the highest possible switching frequency to be used based on operating conditions. Higher switching frequency results in lower acoustic noise.
0 = OFF – The function is disabled.
1 = ON – The switching frequency is limited according to the figure.

</td></tr>
<tr><td>2608</td><td>SLIP COMP RATIO</td><td>0…200%</td><td>1%</td><td>0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Sets gain for slip compensation (in %).
• A squirrel-cage motor slips under load. Increasing the frequency as the motor torque increases compensates for the slip.
• Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ).
0 = No slip compensation.
1…200 = Increasing slip compensation. 100% means full slip compensation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2609</td><td>NOISE SMOOTHING</td><td>0, 1</td><td>1</td><td>0 (DISABLE)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">This parameter introduces a random component to the switching frequency. Noise smoothing distributes the acoustic motor noise over a range of frequencies instead of a single tonal frequency resulting in lower peak noise intensity. The random component has an average of 0 Hz. It is added to the switching frequency set by parameter 2606 SWITCHING FREQ. This parameter has no effect if parameter 2606 = 12 kHz.
0 = DISABLE
1 = ENABLE.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2619</td><td>DC STABILIZER</td><td>0, 1</td><td>1</td><td>0 (DISABLE)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Enables or disables the DC voltage stabilizer. The DC stabilizer is used in scalar control mode to prevent possible voltage oscillations in the drive DC bus caused by motor load or weak supply network. In case of voltage variation the drive tunes the frequency reference to stabilize the DC bus voltage and therefore the load torque oscillation.
0 = DISABLE – Disables DC stabilizer.
1 = ENABLE – Enables DC stabilizer.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2625</td><td>OVERMODULATION</td><td>0, 1</td><td>1</td><td>0 (DISABLE)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Enables or disables overmodulation. Enabling overmodulation alters the drive output waveform and can increase the RMS voltage to the motor when operating near or above motor base speed. (Field weakening area)
0 = DISABLE – Disables overmodulation.
1 = ENABLE – Enables overmodulation.</td></tr>
</table>

Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG

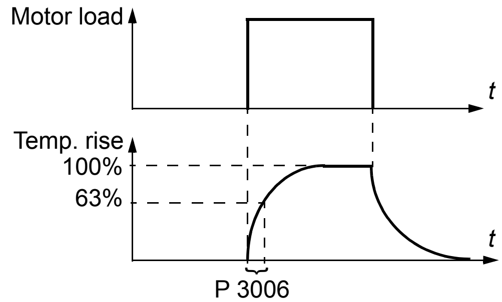
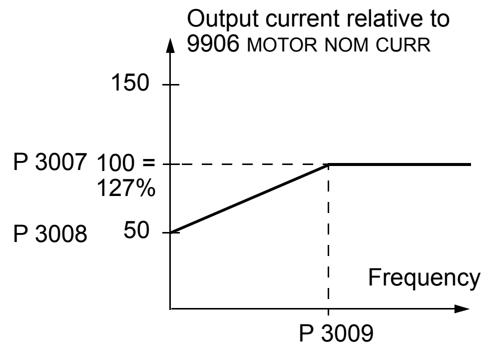
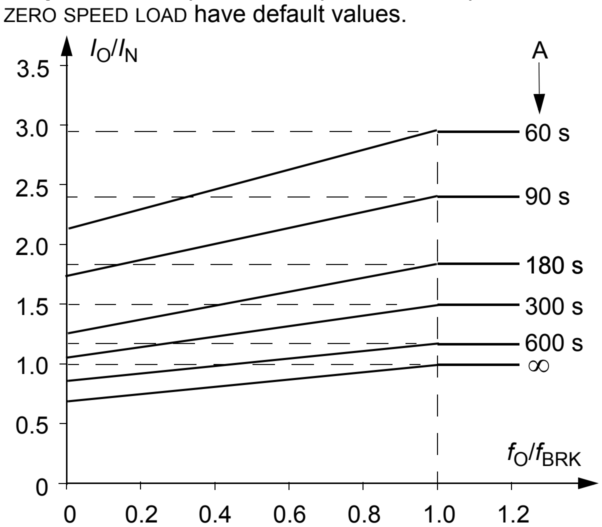
This group contains usage levels and trigger points. When usage reaches the set trigger point, a notice displayed on the control panel signals that maintenance is due.

Group 29: Maintenance Trig					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
2901	**COOLING FAN TRIG**	**0.0…6553.5 kh 0.0 disables**	**0.1 kh**	**0.0 kh**	
	Sets the trigger point for the drive's cooling fan counter. • Value is compared to parameter 2902 value. 0.0 – Disables the trigger.				
2902	**COOLING FAN ACT**	**0.0…6553.5 kh**	**0.1 kh**	**0.0 kh**	
	Defines the actual value of the drive's cooling fan counter. • When parameter 2901 has been set to a non-zero value, the counter starts. • When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter 2901, a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel. 0.0 – Resets the parameter.				
2903	**REVOLUTION TRIG**	**0…65535 Mrev 0 disables**	**1 Mrev**	**0 Mrev**	
	Sets the trigger point for the motor's accumulated revolutions counter. • Value is compared to parameter 2904 value. 0 – Disables the trigger.				
2904	**REVOLUTION ACT**	**0…65535 Mrev**	**1 Mrev**	**0 Mrev**	
	Defines the actual value of the motor's accumulated revolutions counter. • When parameter 2903 has been set to a non-zero value, the counter starts. • When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter 2903, a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel. 0 – Resets the parameter.				
2905	**RUN TIME TRIG**	**0.0…6553.5 kh 0.0 disables**	**0.1 kh**	**0.0 kh**	
	Sets the trigger point for the drive's run time counter. • Value is compared to parameter 2906 value. 0.0 – Disables the trigger.				
2906	**RUN TIME ACT**	**0.0…6553.5 kh**	**0.1 kh**	**0.0 kh**	
	Defines the actual value of the drive's run time counter. • When parameter 2905 has been set to a non-zero value, the counter starts. • When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter 2905, a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel. 0.0 – Resets the parameter.				
2907	**USER MWh TRIG**	**0.0…6553.5 MWh 0.0 disables**	**0.1 MWh**	**0.0 MWh**	
	Sets the trigger point for the drive's accumulated power consumption (in megawatt hours) counter. • Value is compared to parameter 2908 value. 0.0 – Disables the trigger.				
2908	**USER MWh ACT**	**0.0…6553.5 MWh**	**0.1 MWh**	**0.0 MWh**	
	Defines the actual value of the drive's accumulated power consumption (in megawatt hours) counter. • When parameter 2907 has been set to a non-zero value, the counter starts. • When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter 2907, a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel. 0.0 – Resets the parameter.				

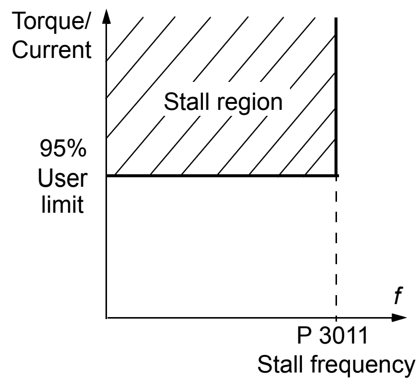
Group 30: FAULT FUNCTIONS

This group defines situations that the drive should recognize as potential faults and defines how the drive should respond if the fault is detected.

Group 30: Fault Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3001	**AI<MIN FUNCTION**	**0…3**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the drive response if the analog input (AI) signal drops below the fault limits and AI is used • as the active reference source (*Group 11: REFERENCE SELECT*) • as the Process or External PID controllers' feedback or setpoint source (*Group 40: PROCESS PID SET 1*, *Group 41: PROCESS PID SET 2* or *Group 42: EXT / TRIM PID*) and the corresponding PID controller is active. 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT and 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT set the fault limits. 0 = NOT SEL – No response. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (7, AI1 LOSS or 8, AI2 LOSS) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP 7 – Displays an alarm (2006, AI1 LOSS or 2007, AI2 LOSS) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays an alarm (2006, AI1 LOSS or 2007, AI2 LOSS) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. **WARNING!** If you select CONST SP 7 or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when the analog input signal is lost.				
3002	**PANEL COMM ERR**	**1…3**	**1**	**1 (FAULT)**	
	Defines the drive response to a control panel communication error. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (10, PANEL LOSS) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP 7 – Displays an alarm (2008, PANEL LOSS) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays an alarm (2008, PANEL LOSS) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. **Note:** When either of the two external control locations are active, and start, stop and/or direction are through the control panel – 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS / 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS = 8 (KEYPAD) – the drive follows speed/frequency reference according to the configuration of the external control locations, instead of the value of the last speed or parameter 1208 CONST SPEED 7. **WARNING!** If you select CONST SP 7 or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when the control panel communication is lost.				
3003	**EXTERNAL FAULT 1**	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the External Fault 1 signal input and the drive response to an external fault. 0 = NOT SEL – External fault signal is not used. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the external fault input. • Activating the digital input indicates a fault. The drive displays a fault (14, EXT FAULT 1) and the drive coasts to stop. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the external fault input. • See DI1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the external fault input. • De-activating the digital input indicates a fault. The drive displays a fault (14, EXT FAULT 1) and the drive coasts to stop. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the external fault input. • See DI1(INV) above.				
3004	**EXTERNAL FAULT 2**	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the External Fault 2 signal input and the drive response to an external fault. • See parameter 3003 above.				
3005	**MOT THERM PROT**	**0…2**	**1**	**1 (FAULT)**	
	Defines the drive response to motor overheating. 0 = NOT SEL – No response and/or motor thermal protection not set up. 1 = FAULT – When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 90 °C, displays an alarm (2010, MOTOR TEMP). When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 110 °C, displays a fault (9, MOT OVERTEMP) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = ALARM – When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 90 °C, displays an alarm (2010, MOTOR TEMP).				

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 30: Fault Functions</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3006</td><td>MOT THERM TIME</td><td>256…9999 s</td><td>1 s</td><td>1050 s</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the motor thermal time constant for the motor temperature model.
• This is the time required for the motor to reach 63% of the final temperature with steady load.
• For thermal protection according to UL requirements for NEMA class motors, use the rule of thumb: MOTOR THERM TIME equals 35 times t6, where t6 (in seconds) is specified by the motor manufacturer as the time that the motor can safely operate at six times its rated current.
• The thermal time for a Class 10 trip curve is 350 s, for a Class 20 trip curve 700 s, and for a Class 30 trip curve 1050 s.

</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3007</td><td>MOT LOAD CURVE</td><td>50…150%</td><td>1%</td><td>100%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the maximum allowable operating load of the motor.
• With the default value 100%, motor overload protection is functioning when the constant current exceeds 127% of the parameter 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR value.
• The default overloadability is at the same level as what motor manufacturers typically allow below 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature and below 1000 m (3300 ft) altitude. When the ambient temperature exceeds 30 °C (86 °F) or the installation altitude is over 1000 m (3300 ft), decrease the parameter 3007 value according to the motor manufacturer's recommendation.
Example: If the constant protection level needs to be 115% of the motor nominal current, set parameter 3007 value to 91% (= 115/127·100%).

</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3008</td><td>ZERO SPEED LOAD</td><td>25…150%</td><td>1%</td><td>70%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the maximum allowable current at zero speed.
• Value is relative to 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3009</td><td>BREAK POINT FREQ</td><td>1…250 Hz</td><td>1 Hz</td><td>35 Hz</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the break point frequency for the motor load curve.
Example: Thermal protection trip times when parameters 3006 MOT THERM TIME, 3007 MOT LOAD CURVE and 3008 ZERO SPEED LOAD have default values.


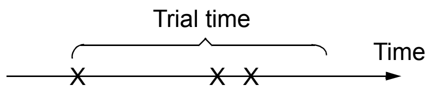
I_O = Output current
I_N = Nominal motor current
f_O = Output frequency
f_{BRK} = Break point frequency
A = Trip time</td></tr>
</table>

Group 30: Fault Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3010	**STALL FUNCTION**	**0…2**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	This parameter defines the operation of the Stall function. This protection is active if the drive operates in the stall region (see the figure) for the time defined by 3012 STALL TIME. The "User Limit" is defined in *Group 20: LIMITS* by 2017 MAX TORQUE 1, 2018 MAX TORQUE 2, or the limit on the COMM input. 0 = NOT SEL – Stall protection is not used. 1 = FAULT – When the drive operates in the stall region for the time set by 3012 STALL TIME: • The drive coasts to stop. • A fault indication is displayed. 2 = ALARM – When the drive operates in the stall region for the time set by 3012 STALL TIME: • An alarm indication is displayed. • The alarm disappears when the drive is out of the stall region for half the time set by parameter 3012 STALL TIME.  				
3011	**STALL FREQUENCY**	**0.5…50.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**20.0 Hz**	
	This parameter sets the frequency value for the Stall function. See parameter 3010.				
3012	**STALL TIME**	**10…400 s**	**1 s**	**20 s**	
	This parameter sets the time value for the Stall function.				
3017	**EARTH FAULT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	✓
	Defines the drive response if the drive detects a ground fault in the motor or motor cables. The drive monitors for ground faults while the drive is running, and voltage is present on the output. Also see parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT. 0 = DISABLE – No drive response to ground faults. **Note:** Disabling earth fault (ground fault) may void the warranty. 1 = ENABLE – Ground faults display fault 16 (EARTH FAULT), and (if running) the drive coasts to stop.				
3018	**COMM FAULT FUNC**	**0…3**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the drive response if the fieldbus communication is lost. 0 = NOT SEL – No response. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (28, SERIAL 1 ERR) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP 7 – Displays an alarm (2005, I/O COMM) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. This "alarm speed" remains active until the fieldbus writes a new reference value. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays an alarm (2005, I/O COMM) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. This "alarm speed" remains active until the fieldbus writes a new reference value. ⚠ **WARNING!** If you select CONST SP 7, or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when fieldbus communication is lost.				
3019	**COMM FAULT TIME**	**0.0…600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**10.0 s**	
	Sets the communication fault time used with 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC. • Brief interruptions in the fieldbus communication are not treated as faults if they are less than the COMM FAULT TIME value.				
3021	**AI1 FAULT LIMIT**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets a fault level for analog input 1. • See 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.				
3022	**AI2 FAULT LIMIT**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets a fault level for analog input 2. • See 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.				

Group 30: Fault Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3023	**WIRING FAULT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	✓
	Defines the drive response to cross wiring faults and to ground faults detected when the drive is NOT running. When the drive is not running it monitors for: • Improper connections of input power to the drive output (the drive can display fault 35, OUTPUT WIRING if improper connections are detected). • Ground faults (the drive can display fault 16, EARTH FAULT if a ground fault is detected). Also, see parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT. 0 = DISABLE – No drive response to either of the above monitoring results. 1 = ENABLE – The drive displays faults when this monitoring detects problems.				
3024	**CB TEMP FAULT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	
	Defines the drive response to control board overheating. Not for drives with an OMIO control board. 0 = DISABLE – No response. 1 = ENABLE – Displays fault 37 (CB OVERTEMP) and the drive coasts to stop.				
3028	**EARTH FAULT LVL**	**1…3**	**1**	**1 (LOW)**	
	Defines detection level for ground (earth) fault. See *Correcting faults*, fault 16 EARTH FAULT. **Note**: Parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT has to be enabled. 1 = LOW – Lower level of ground (earth) current detected generates a fault (high sensitivity). US DEFAULT 2 = MEDIUM – Medium sensitivity to ground (earth) fault current. 3 = HIGH – Higher level of ground (earth) current detected generates a fault (low sensitivity).				

Group 31: AUTOMATIC RESET

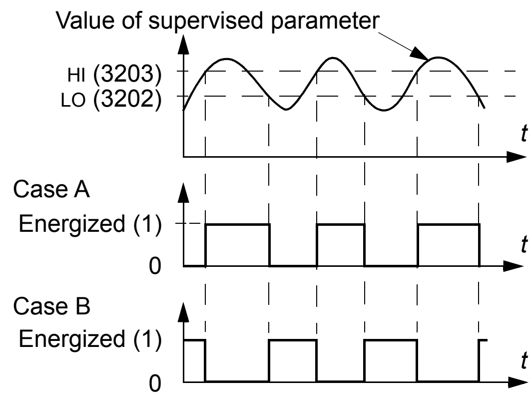
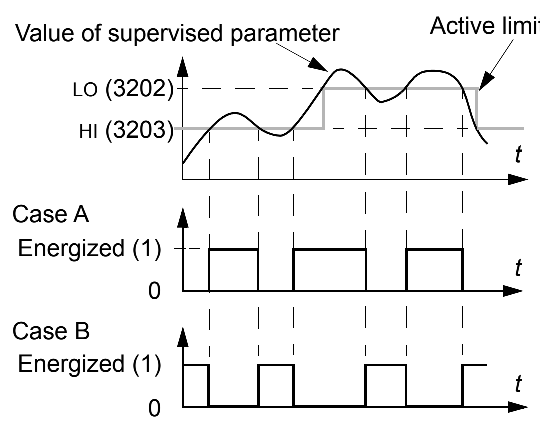
This group defines conditions for automatic resets. An automatic reset occurs after a particular fault is detected. The drive holds for a set delay time, then automatically restarts. You can limit the number of resets in a specified time period and set up automatic resets for a variety of faults.

Group 31: Automatic Reset					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3101	**NUMBER OF TRIALS**	**0…5**	**1**	**5**	
	Sets the number of allowed automatic resets within a trial period defined by 3102 TRIAL TIME. • If the number of automatic resets exceeds this limit (within the trial time), the drive prevents additional automatic resets and remains stopped. • Starting then requires a successful reset performed from the control panel or from a source selected by 1604 FAULT RESET SEL. **Example:** Three faults have occurred in the trial time. The last is reset only if the value for 3101 NUMBER OF TRIALS is 3 or more.  x = Automatic reset				
3102	**TRIAL TIME**	**1.0…600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**30.0 s**	
	Sets the time period used for counting and limiting the number of resets. • See 3101 NUMBER OF TRIALS.				
3103	**DELAY TIME**	**0.0…120.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**6.0 s**	
	Sets the delay time between a fault detection and attempted drive restart. • If DELAY TIME = zero, the drive resets immediately.				
3104	**AR OVERCURRENT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DISABLE)**	
	Sets the automatic reset for the overcurrent function on or off. 0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset. • Automatically resets the fault (OVERCURRENT) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation.				
3105	**AR OVERVOLTAGE**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	
	Sets the automatic reset for the overvoltage function on or off. 0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset. • Automatically resets the fault (DC OVERVOLT) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation.				
3106	**AR UNDERVOLTAGE**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	
	Sets the automatic reset for the undervoltage function on or off. 0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset. • Automatically resets the fault (DC UNDERVOLT) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation.				
3107	**AR AI<MIN**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	
	Sets the automatic reset for the analog input less than minimum value function on or off. 0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset. • Automatically resets the fault (AI<MIN) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. **WARNING!** When the analog input signal is restored, the drive may restart, even after a long stop. Make sure that automatic, long delayed starts will not cause physical injury and/or damage equipment.				

Group 31: Automatic Reset					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3108	**AR EXTERNAL FLT**	**0, 1**	**1**	**1 (ENABLE)**	
	Sets the automatic reset for external faults function on or off. 0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset. • Automatically resets the fault (EXT FAULT 1 or EXT FAULT 2) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation.				

Group 32: SUPERVISION

This group defines supervision for up to three signals from *Group 01: OPERATING DATA*. Supervision monitors a specified parameter and energizes a relay output if the parameter passes a defined limit. Use *Group 14: RELAY OUTPUTS* to define the relay and whether the relay activates when the signal is too low or too high.

Group 32: Supervision					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3201	**SUPERV 1 PARAM**	**100…178**	**1**	**103 (OUTPUT FREQ)**	
	Selects the first supervised parameter. • Must be a parameter number from *Group 01: OPERATING DATA*. • 100 = NOT SELECTED – No parameter selected. • 101…178 – Selects parameter 0101…0178. • If the supervised parameter passes a limit, a relay output is energized. • The supervision limits are defined in this group. • The relay outputs are defined in *Group 14: RELAY OUTPUTS* (definition also specifies which supervision limit is monitored). **LO ≤ HI** Operating data supervision using relay outputs, when LO≤HI. • Case A = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 OVER or SUPRV2 OVER. Use for monitoring when/if the supervised signal exceeds a given limit. The relay remains active until the supervised value drops below the low limit. • Case B = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 UNDER or SUPRV2 UNDER. Use for monitoring when/if the supervised signal falls below a given limit. The relay remains active until the supervised value rises above the high limit. **Note:** Case LO ≤ HI represents a normal hysteresis.  **LO > HI** Operating data supervision using relay outputs, when LO>HI. The lowest limit (HI 3203) is active initially and remains active until the supervised parameter goes above the highest limit (LO 3202), making that limit the active limit. That limit remains active until the supervised parameter goes below the lowest limit (HI 3203), making that limit active. • Case A = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 OVER or SUPRV2 OVER. Initially the relay is de-energized. It is energized whenever the supervised parameter goes above the active limit. • Case B = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 UNDER or SUPRV2 UNDER. Initially the relay is energized. It is de-energized whenever the supervised parameter goes below the active limit. **Note:** Case LO>HI represents a special hysteresis with two separate supervision limits. 				
3202	**SUPERV 1 LIM LO**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**60.0 Hz**	
	Sets the low limit for the first supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.				
3203	**SUPERV 1 LIM HI**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**60.0 Hz**	
	Sets the high limit for the first supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.				

Group 32: Supervision					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3204	**SUPERV 2 PARAM**	**100…178**	**1**	**104 (CURRENT)**	
	Selects the second supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.				
3205	**SUPERV 2 LIM LO**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**1.0 · I_{2n} A**	
	Sets the low limit for the second supervised parameter. See 3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM above.				
3206	**SUPERV 2 LIM HI**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**1.0 · I_{2n} A**	
	Sets the high limit for the second supervised parameter. See 3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM above.				
3207	**SUPERV 3 PARAM**	**100…178**	**1**	**105 (TORQUE)**	
	Selects the third supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.				
3208	**SUPERV 3 LIM LO**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**100.0%**	
	Sets the low limit for the third supervised parameter. See 3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM above.				
3209	**SUPERV 3 LIM HI**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**100.0%**	
	Sets the high limit for the third supervised parameter. See 3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM above.				

Group 33: INFORMATION

This group provides access to information about the drive's current programs: versions and test date.

Group 33: Information					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3301	**FIRMWARE**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains the version of the drive's firmware.				
3302	**LOADING PACKAGE**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains the version of the loading package.				
3303	**TEST DATE**	**yy.ww**	**0.01**	**-**	
	Contains the test date (yy.ww).				
3304	**DRIVE RATING**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**-**	
	Indicates the drive's current and voltage rating. The format is XXXY, where: • XXX = The nominal current rating of the drive in amperes. If present, an "A" indicates a decimal point in the rating for the current. For example XXX = 8A8 indicates a nominal current rating of 8.8 A. • Y = The voltage rating of the drive, where Y = : • 2 indicates a 208…240 V rating. • 4 indicates a 380…480 V rating. • 6 indicates a 500…600 V rating.				
3305	**PARAMETER TABLE**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains the version of the parameter table used in the drive.				

Group 34: PANEL DISPLAY

This group defines the content for control panel display (middle area), when the control panel is in the Output mode.

Group 34: Panel Display

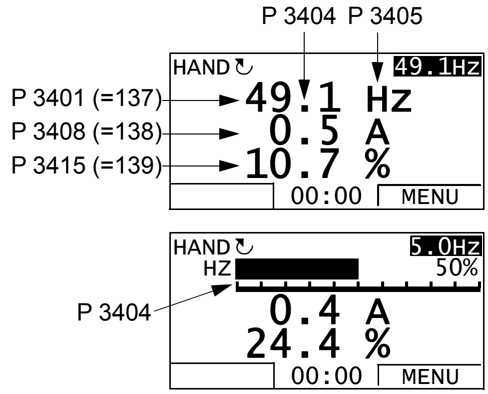
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3401	**SIGNAL1 PARAM**	**100…178**	**1**	**103 (OUTPUT FREQ)**	

Selects the first parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel.

- Definitions in this group define display content when the control panel is in the control mode.
- Any parameter number in *Group 01: OPERATING DATA* can be selected.
- Using the following parameters, the display value can be scaled, converted to convenient units and/or displayed as a bar graph.
- The figure identifies selections made by parameters in this group.
- If just one or two parameters are selected for display, that is just one or two of the values of parameters 3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM, 3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM and 3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM are other than 100 (NOT SELECTED), the number and name of each displayed parameter are shown in addition to the value.

100 = NOT SELECTED – First parameter not displayed.

101…178 – Displays parameter 0101…0178. If parameter does not exist, the display shows "n.a.".

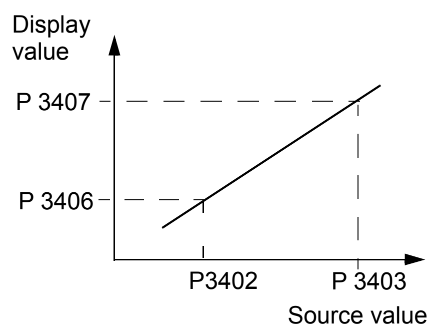


3402	**SIGNAL1 MIN**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**0.0 Hz**	

Defines the minimum expected value for the first display parameter.

Use parameters 3402, 3403, 3406 and 3407, for example to convert a *Group 01: OPERATING DATA* parameter, such as 0102 SPEED (in rpm) to the speed of a conveyor driven by the motor (in ft/min). For such a conversion, the source values in the figure are the min. and max. motor speed, and the display values are the corresponding min. and max. conveyor speed. Use parameter 3405 to select the proper units for the display.

Note: Selecting units does not convert values. Parameter is not effective if parameter 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM = 9 (DIRECT).



3403	**SIGNAL1 MAX**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**600.0 Hz**	

Defines the maximum expected value for the first display parameter.

Note: Parameter is not effective if parameter 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM = 9 (DIRECT).

3404	**OUTPUT1 DSP FORM**	**0…9**	**1**	**5 (+0.0)**	

Defines the decimal point location for the first display parameter.

0…7 – Defines the decimal point location.

- Enter the number of digits desired to the right of the decimal point.
- See the table for an example using pi (3.14159).

8 = BAR METER – Specifies a bar meter display.

9 = DIRECT – Decimal point location and units of measure are identical to the source signal. See *Group 01: OPERATING DATA* parameter listing in section *Complete parameter list* on page *1-67* for resolution (which indicates the decimal point location) and the units of measure.

3404 value	Display	Range
0	± 3	-32768…+32767 (Signed)
1	± 3.1	
2	± 3.14	
3	± 3.142	
4	3	0…65535 (Unsigned)
5	3.1	
6	3.14	
7	3.142	
8	Bar meter displayed.	
9	Decimal point location and units as for the source signal.	

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 34: Panel Display</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3405</td><td>OUTPUT1 UNIT</td><td>0…127</td><td>1</td><td>121 (%SP)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the units used with the first display parameter.
Note: Parameter is not effective if parameter 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM = 9 (DIRECT).

0 = NO UNIT, 9 = °C, 18 = MWh, 27 = ft, 36 = l/s, 45 = Pa, 54 = lb/m, 63 = Mrev
1 = A, 10 = lb ft, 19 = m/s, 28 = MGD, 37 = l/min, 46 = GPS, 55 = lb/h, 64 = d
2 = V, 11 = mA, 20 = m^3/h, 29 = inHg, 38 = l/h, 47 = gal/s, 56 = FPS, 65 = inWC
3 = Hz, 12 = mV, 21 = dm^3/s, 30 = FPM, 39 = m^3/s, 48 = gal/m, 57 = ft/s, 66 = m/min
4 = %, 13 = kW, 22 = bar, 31 = kb/s, 40 = m^3/m, 49 = gal/h, 58 = inH$_2$O, 67 = Nm
5 = s, 14 = W, 23 = kPa, 32 = kHz, 41 = kg/s, 50 = ft^3/s, 59 = in wg, 68 = Km^3/h
6 = h, 15 = kWh, 24 = GPM, 33 = ohm, 42 = kg/m, 51 = ft^3/m, 60 = ft wg
7 = rpm, 16 = °F, 25 = PSI, 34 = ppm, 43 = kg/h, 52 = ft^3/h, 61 = lbsi
8 = kh, 17 = hp, 26 = CFM, 35 = pps, 44 = mbar, 53 = lb/s, 62 = ms

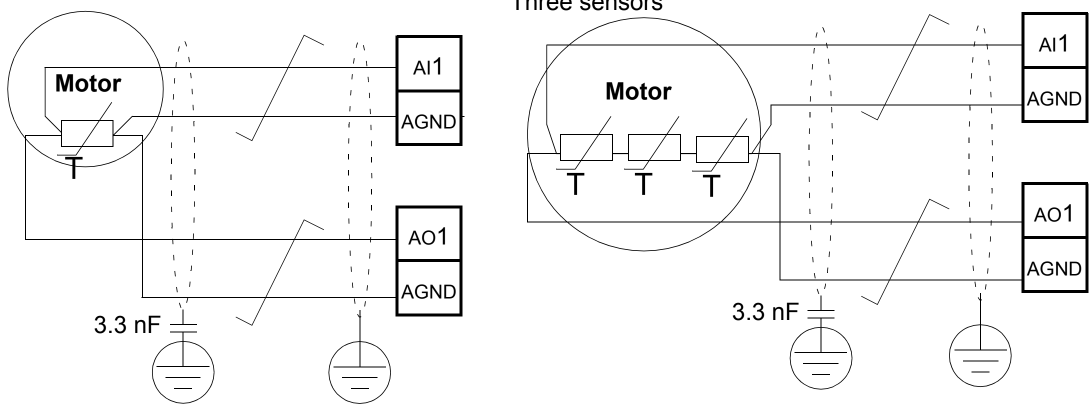
The following units are useful for the bar display.
117 = %ref, 119 = %dev, 121 = % SP, 123 = Iout, 125 = Fout, 127 = Vdc
118 = %act, 120 = % LD, 122 = %FBK, 124 = Vout, 126 = Tout</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3406</td><td>OUTPUT1 MIN</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>0.0 (%SP)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the minimum value displayed for the first display parameter.
Note: Parameter is not effective if parameter 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM = 9 (DIRECT).</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3407</td><td>OUTPUT1 MAX</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>1000.0 (%SP)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the maximum value displayed for the first display parameter.
Note: Parameter is not effective if parameter 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM = 9 (DIRECT).</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3408</td><td>SIGNAL2 PARAM</td><td>100…178</td><td>1</td><td>104 (CURRENT)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the second parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel. See parameter 3401.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3409</td><td>SIGNAL2 MIN</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>0.0 A</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the minimum expected value for the second display parameter. See parameter 3402.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3410</td><td>SIGNAL2 MAX</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>2.0 · I_{2n} A</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the maximum expected value for the second display parameter. See parameter 3403.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3411</td><td>OUTPUT2 DSP FORM</td><td>0…9</td><td>1</td><td>9 (DIRECT)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the decimal point location for the second display parameter. See parameter 3404.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3412</td><td>OUTPUT2 UNIT</td><td>0…127</td><td>1</td><td>1 (A)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the units used with the second display parameter. See parameter 3405.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3413</td><td>OUTPUT2 MIN</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>0.0 A</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the minimum value displayed for the second display parameter. See parameter 3406.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3414</td><td>OUTPUT2 MAX</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>2.0 · I_{2n} A</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Sets the maximum value displayed for the second display parameter. See parameter 3407.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3415</td><td>SIGNAL3 PARAM</td><td>100…178</td><td>1</td><td>120 (AI 1)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Selects the third parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel. See parameter 3401.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3416</td><td>SIGNAL3 MIN</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>0.0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the minimum expected value for the third display parameter. See parameter 3402.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3417</td><td>SIGNAL3 MAX</td><td>Depends on selection</td><td>-</td><td>100.0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the maximum expected value for the third display parameter. See parameter 3403.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3418</td><td>OUTPUT3 DSP FORM</td><td>0…9</td><td>1</td><td>5 (+0.0)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the decimal point location for the third display parameter. See parameter 3404.</td></tr>
</table>

Group 34: Panel Display					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3419	**OUTPUT3 UNIT**	**0…127**	**1**	**11 (mA)**	
	Selects the units used with the third display parameter. See parameter 3405.				
3420	**OUTPUT3 MIN**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**0.0 mA**	
	Sets the minimum value displayed for the third display parameter. See parameter 3406.				
3421	**OUTPUT3 MAX**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**20.0 mA**	
	Sets the maximum value displayed for the third display parameter. See parameter 3407.				

Group 35: MOTOR TEMP MEAS

This group defines the detection and reporting for a particular potential fault – motor overheating, as detected by a temperature sensor. Typical connections are shown below.

One sensor | Three sensors



WARNING! IEC 60664 requires double or reinforced insulation between live parts and the surface of accessible parts of electrical equipment which are either non-conductive or conductive but not connected to the protective earth.

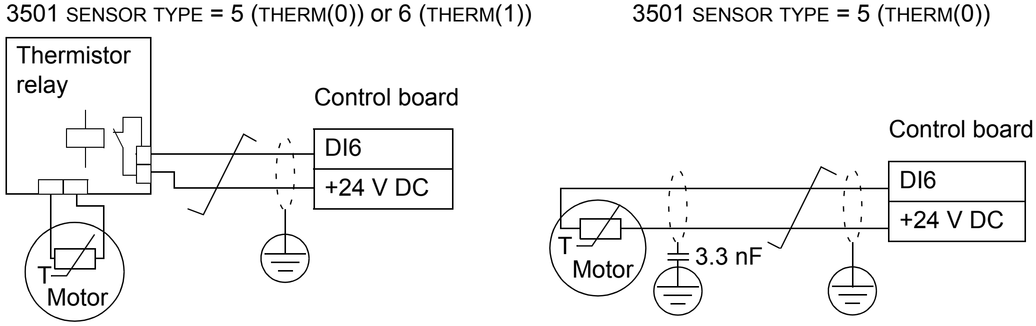
To fulfil this requirement, connect a thermistor (and other similar components) to the drive's control terminals using any of these alternatives:

- Separate the thermistor from live parts of the motor with double reinforced insulation.
- Protect all circuits connected to the drive's digital and analog inputs. Protect against contact, and insulate from other low voltage circuits with basic insulation (rated for the same voltage level as the drive's main circuit).
- Use an external thermistor relay. The relay insulation must be rated for the same voltage level as the drive's main circuit.

The figure below shows thermistor relay and PTC sensor connections using a digital input. At the motor end, the cable shield should be earthed through, eg a 3.3 nF capacitor. If this is not possible, leave the shield unconnected.

Thermistor relay
3501 SENSOR TYPE = 5 (THERM(0)) or 6 (THERM(1))

PTC sensor
3501 SENSOR TYPE = 5 (THERM(0))



For other faults, or for anticipating motor overheating using a model, see *Group 30: FAULT FUNCTIONS*.

Group 35: Motor Temp Meas

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3501	**SENSOR TYPE**	**0…6**	**1**	**0 (NONE)**	

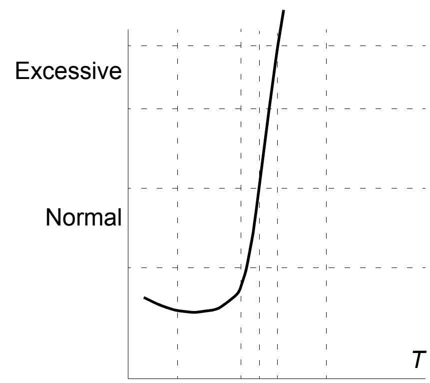
Identifies the type of the motor temperature sensor used, PT100 (°C), PTC (ohm) or thermistor.
See parameters 1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL and 1507 AO2 CONTENT SEL.
0 = NONE
1 = 1 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses one PT100 sensor.
- Analog output AO1 or AO2 feeds constant current through the sensor.
- The sensor resistance increases as the motor temperature rises, as does the voltage over the sensor.
- The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1 or AI2 and converts it to degrees Celsius.

2 = 2 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses two PT100 sensors.
- Operation is the same as for above 1 x PT100.

3 = 3 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses three PT100 sensors.
- Operation is the same as for above 1 x PT100.

4 = PTC – Sensor configuration uses one PTC.
- The analog output feeds a constant current through the sensor.
- The resistance of the sensor increases sharply as the motor temperature rises over the PTC reference temperature (T_{ref}), as does the voltage over the resistor. The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1 and converts it into ohms.
- The table below and the graph show typical PTC sensor resistance as a function of the motor operating temperature.

Temperature	Resistance
Normal	< 1.5 kohm
Excessive	> 4 kohm



5 = THERM(0) – Sensor configuration uses a thermistor.
- Motor thermal protection is activated through a digital input. Connect either a PTC sensor or a normally closed thermistor relay to a digital input.
- When the digital input is ‘0’, the motor is overheated.
- See the connection figure on page *1-140*.
- The table below and the graph show the resistance requirements for a PTC sensor connected between 24 V and a digital input as a function of the motor operating temperature.

Temperature	Resistance
Normal	< 3 kohm
Excessive	> 28 kohm

6 = THERM(1) – Sensor configuration uses a thermistor.
- Motor thermal protection is activated through a digital input. Connect a normally open thermistor relay to a digital input.
- When the digital input is ‘1’, the motor is overheated.
- See the connection figure on page *1-140*.

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3502	**INPUT SELECTION**	**1…8**	**1**	**1 (AI1)**	

Defines the input used for the temperature sensor.
1 = AI1 – PT100 and PTC.
2 = AI2 – PT100 and PTC.
3…8 = DI1…DI6 – Thermistor and PTC

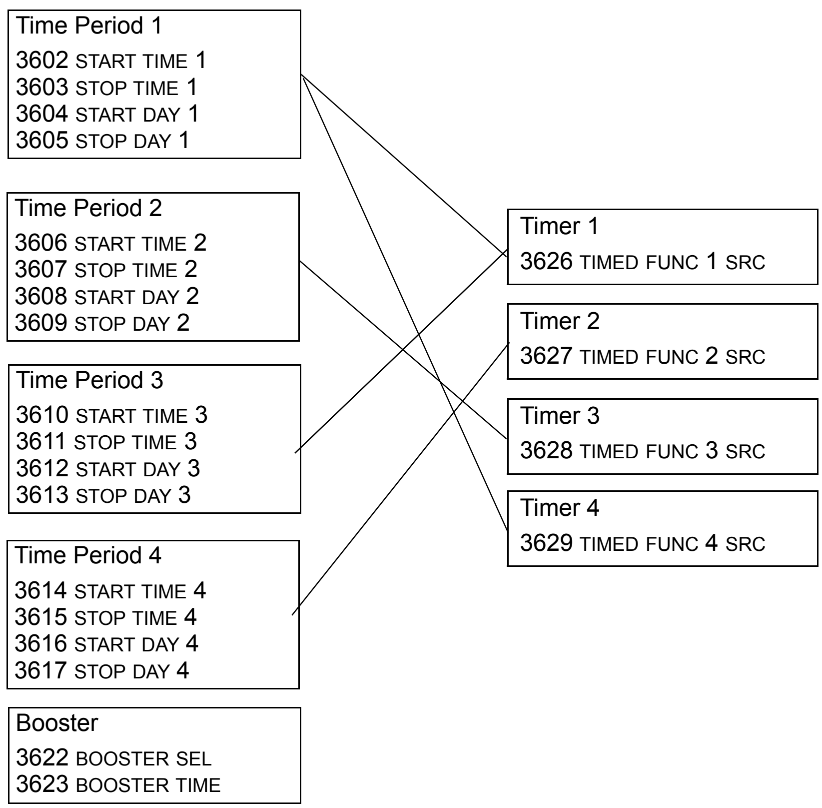
Group 35: Motor Temp Meas					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3503	**ALARM LIMIT**	**-10...200 °C / 0...5000 ohm / 0…1**	**1**	**110 °C / 1500 ohm / 0**	
	Defines the alarm limit for motor temperature measurement. • At motor temperatures above this limit, the drive displays an alarm (2010, MOTOR TEMP) For thermistors or PTC connected to a digital input: 0 – de-activated 1 – activated				
3504	**FAULT LIMIT**	**-10...200 °C / 0...5000 ohm / 0…1**	**1**	**130 °C / 4000 ohm / 0**	
	Defines the fault limit for motor temperature measurement. • At motor temperatures above this limit, the drive displays a fault (9, MOT OVERTEMP) and stops the drive. For thermistors or PTC connected to a digital input: 0 – de-activated 1 – activated				

Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS

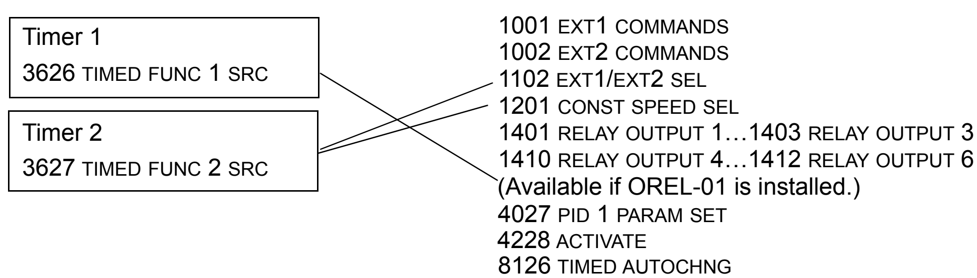
This group defines the timed functions. The timed functions include:

- four daily start and stop times
- four weekly start, stop and boost times
- four timers for collecting selected periods together.

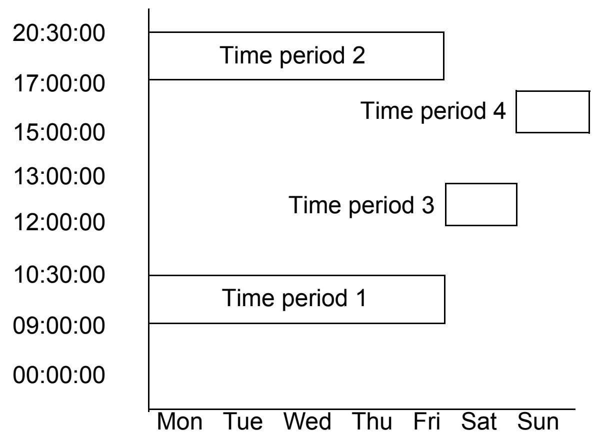
A timer can be connected to multiple time periods and a time period can be in multiple timers.



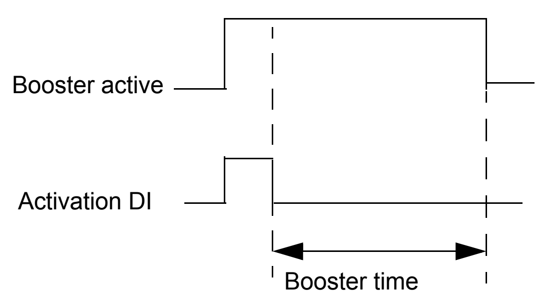
A parameter can be connected to only one timer.



You can use the Timed functions assistant for easy configuring.

Group 36: Timed Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3601	**TIMERS ENABLE**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Selects the source for the timer enable signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Timed functions are disabled. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the timed function enable signal. • The digital input must be activated to enable the timed function. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the timed function enable signal. 7 = ACTIVE – Timed functions are enabled. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the timed function enable signal. • This digital input must be de-activated to enable the timed function. • -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the timed function enable signal.				
3602	**START TIME 1**	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
	Defines the daily start time. • The time can be changed in steps of 2 seconds. • If parameter value is 07:00:00, the timer is activated at 7 a.m. • The figure shows multiple timers on different weekdays.  				
3603	**STOP TIME 1**	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
	Defines the daily stop time. • The time can be changed in steps of 2 seconds. • If the parameter value is 09:00:00, the timer is deactivated at 9 a.m.				
3604	**START DAY 1**	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
	Defines the weekly start day. 1 = MONDAY…7 = SUNDAY • If parameter value is 1, timer 1 weekly is active from Monday midnight (00:00:00).				
3605	**STOP DAY 1**	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
	Defines weekly stop day. 1 = MONDAY…7 = SUNDAY • If parameter value is 5, timer 1 weekly is deactivated on Friday midnight (23:59:58).				
3606	**START TIME 2**	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
	Defines timer2 daily start time. • See parameter 3602.				
3607	**STOP TIME 2**	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
	Defines timer 2 daily stop time. • See parameter 3603.				
3608	**START DAY 2**	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
	Defines timer 2 weekly start day. • See parameter 3604.				
3609	**STOP DAY 2**	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
	Defines timer 2 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605.				

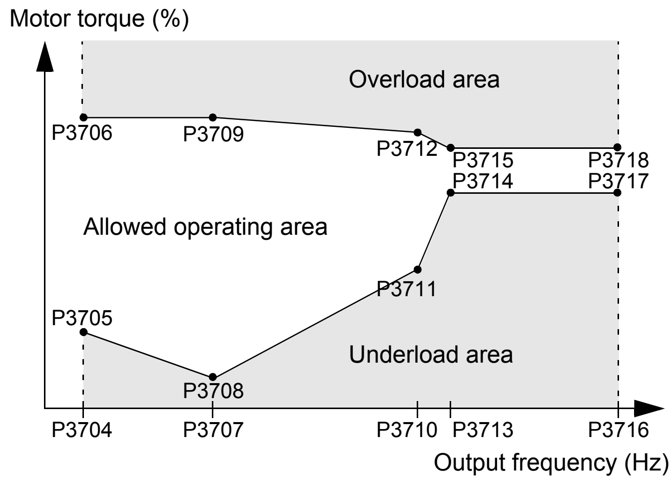
Group 36: Timed Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3610	**START TIME 3** Defines timer 3 daily start time. • See parameter 3602.	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
3611	**STOP TIME 3** Defines timer 3 daily stop time. • See parameter 3603.	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
3612	**START DAY 3** Defines timer 3 weekly start day. • See parameter 3604.	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
3613	**STOP DAY 3** Defines timer 3 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605.	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
3614	**START TIME 4** Defines timer 4 daily start time. • See parameter 3602.	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
3615	**STOP TIME 4** Defines timer 4 daily stop time. • See parameter 3603.	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**12:00:00 AM**	
3616	**START DAY 4** Defines timer 4 weekly start day. • See parameter 3604.	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
3617	**STOP DAY 4** Defines timer 4 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605.	**1…7**	**1**	**1 (MONDAY)**	
3622	**BOOSTER SEL** Selects the source for the booster signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Booster signal is disabled. 1 = DI1 – Defines DI1 as the booster signal. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines DI2…DI6 as the booster signal. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the booster signal. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the booster signal.	**-6…6**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
3623	**BOOSTER TIME** Defines the booster ON time. Time is started when booster sel signal is released. If parameter value is 01:30:00, booster is active for 1 hour and 30 minutes after activation DI is released.	**00:00:00…23:59:58**	**2 s**	**00:00:00**	



Group 36: Timed Functions					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3626	**TIMER 1 SRC**	**0…31**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the time periods used by the timer. 0 = NOT SEL – No time periods have been selected. 1 = P1 – Time Period 1 selected in the timer. 2 = P2 – Time Period 2 selected in the timer. 3 = P1+P2 – Time Periods 1 and 2 selected in the timer. 4 = P3 – Time Period 3 selected in the timer. 5 = P1+P3 – Time Periods 1 and 3 selected in the timer. 6 = P2+P3 – Time Periods 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 7 = P1+P2+P3 – Time Periods 1, 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 8 = P4 – Time Period 4 selected in the timer. 9 = P1+P4 – Time Periods 1 and 4 selected in the timer. 10 = P2+P4 – Time Periods 2 and 4 selected in the timer. 11 = P1+P2+P4 – Time Periods 1, 2 and 4 selected in the timer. 12 = P3+P4 – Time Periods 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 13 = P1+P3+P4 – Time Periods 1, 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 14 = P2+P3+P4 – Time Periods 2, 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 15 = P1+P2+P3+P4 – Time Periods 1, 2, 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 16 = BOOSTER – Booster selected in the timer. 17 = P1+B – Booster and Time Period 1 selected in the timer. 18 = P2+B – Booster and Time Period 2 selected in the timer. 19 = P1+P2+B – Booster and Time Periods 1 and 2 selected in the timer. 20 = P3+B – Booster and Time Period 3 selected in the timer. 21 = P1+P3+B – Booster and Time Periods 1 and 3 selected in the timer. 22 = P2+P3+B – Booster and Time Periods 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 23 = P1+P2+P3+B – Booster and Time Periods 1, 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 24 = P4+B – Booster and Time Period 4 selected in the timer. 25 = P1+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 1 and 4 selected in the timer. 26 = P2+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 2 and 4 selected in the timer. 27 = P1+P2+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 1, 2 and 4 selected in the timer. 28 = P3+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 29 = P1+P3+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 1, 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 30 = P2+P3+P4+B – Booster and Time Periods 2, 3 and 4 selected in the timer. 31 = P1+2+3+4+B – Booster and Time Periods 1, 2, 3 and 4 selected in the timer.				
3627	**TIMER 2 SRC**	**0…31**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	• See parameter 3626.				
3628	**TIMER 3 SRC**	**0…31**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	• See parameter 3626.				
3629	**TIMER 4 SRC**	**0…31**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	• See parameter 3626.				

Group 37: USER LOAD CURVE

This group defines supervision of user adjustable load curves (motor torque as a function of frequency). The curve is defined by five points.

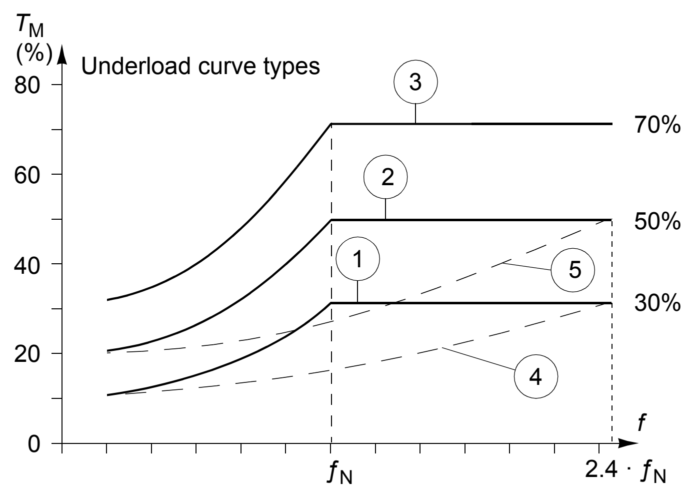
Group 37: User Load Curve					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3701	**USER LOAD C MODE**	**0…3**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Supervision mode for the user adjustable load curves. This functionality replaces the former underload supervision in *Group 30: FAULT FUNCTIONS*. To emulate it, see section *Correspondence with the obsolete underload supervision* on page *1-148*. 0 = NOT SEL – Supervision is not active. 1 = UNDERLOAD – Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve. 2 = OVERLOAD – Supervision for the torque exceeding the overload curve. 3 = BOTH – Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve or exceeding the overload curve.				
3702	**USER LOAD C FUNC**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 (FAULT)**	
	Action wanted during load supervision. 1 = FAULT – A fault is generated when the condition defined by 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than the time set by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME. 2 = ALARM – An alarm is generated when the condition defined by 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than half of the time defined by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME.				
3703	**USER LOAD C TIME**	**10…400 s**	**1 s**	**20 s**	
	Defines the time limit for generating a fault. • Half of this time is used as the limit for generating an alarm.				
3704	**LOAD FREQ 1**	**0…500 Hz**	**1 Hz**	**5 Hz**	
	Defines the frequency value of the first load curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3707 LOAD FREQ 2.				
3705	**LOAD TORQ LOW 1**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**10%**	
	Defines the torque value of the first underload curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3706 LOAD TORQ HIGH 1.				
3706	**LOAD TORQ HIGH 1**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**300%**	
	Defines the torque value of the first overload curve definition point.				
3707	**LOAD FREQ 2**	**0…500 Hz**	**1 Hz**	**25 Hz**	
	Defines the frequency value of the second load curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3710 LOAD FREQ 3.				
3708	**LOAD TORQ LOW 2**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**15%**	
	Defines the torque value of the second underload curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3709 LOAD TORQ HIGH 2.				
3709	**LOAD TORQ HIGH 2**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**300%**	
	Defines the torque value of the second overload curve definition point.				
3710	**LOAD FREQ 3**	**0…500 Hz**	**1 Hz**	**43 Hz**	
	Defines the frequency value of the third load curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3713 LOAD FREQ 4.				

Group 37: User Load Curve					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
3711	**LOAD TORQ LOW 3**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**25%**	
	Defines the torque value of the third underload curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3712 LOAD TORQ HIGH 3.				
3712	**LOAD TORQ HIGH 3**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**300%**	
	Defines the torque value of the third overload curve definition point.				
3713	**LOAD FREQ 4**	**0…500 Hz**	**1 Hz**	**50 Hz**	
	Defines the frequency value of the fourth load curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3716 LOAD FREQ 5				
3714	**LOAD TORQ LOW 4**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**30%**	
	Defines the torque value of the fourth underload curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3715 LOAD TORQ HIGH 4.				
3715	**LOAD TORQ HIGH 4**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**300%**	
	Defines the torque value of the fourth overload curve definition point.				
3716	**LOAD FREQ 5**	**0…500 Hz**	**1 Hz**	**500 Hz**	
	Defines the frequency value of fifth load curve definition point.				
3717	**LOAD TORQ LOW 5**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**30%**	
	Defines the torque value of the fifth underload curve definition point. • Must be smaller than 3718 LOAD TORQ HIGH 5.				
3718	**LOAD TORQ HIGH 5**	**0…600%**	**1%**	**300%**	
	Defines the torque value of the fifth overload curve definition point.				

Correspondence with the obsolete underload supervision

The now obsolete parameter 3015 UNDERLOAD CURVE provided five selectable curves shown in the figure. The parameter characteristics were as described below.

- If the load drops below the set curve for longer than the time set by parameter 3014 UNDERLOAD TIME (obsolete), the underload protection is activated.
- Curves 1…3 reach maximum at the motor rated frequency set by parameter 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ.
- T_M = nominal torque of the motor.
- f_N = nominal frequency of the motor.



If you want to emulate the behavior of an old underload curve with parameters as in the shaded columns, set the new parameters as in the white columns in the two tables below:

Underload supervision with parameters 3013…3015 (obsolete)	**Obsolete parameters**		**New parameters**		
	3013 UNDERLOAD FUNCTION	**3014** UNDERLOAD TIME	**3701** USER LOAD C MODE	**3702** USER LOAD C FUNC	**3703** USER LOAD C TIME
No underload functionality	0	-	0	-	-
Underload curve, fault generated	1	t	1	1	t
Underload curve, alarm generated	2	t	1	2	2 · t

Obs. par.	**New parameters**									
3015 UNDERLOAD CURVE	**3704** LOAD FREQ 1 (Hz)	**3705** LOAD TORQ LOW 1 (%)	**3707** LOAD FREQ 2 (Hz)	**3708** LOAD TORQ LOW 2 (%)	**3710** LOAD FREQ 3 (Hz)	**3711** LOAD TORQ LOW 3 (%)	**3713** LOAD FREQ 4 (Hz)	**3714** LOAD TORQ LOW 4 (%)	**3716** LOAD FREQ 5 (Hz)	**3717** LOAD TORQ LOW 5 (%)
1	6	10	38	17	50	23	60	30	500	30
2	6	20	37	30	50	40	60	50	500	50
3	6	30	37	43	50	57	60	70	500	70
4	6	10	88	17	117	23	144	30	500	30
5	6	20	86	30	119	40	144	50	500	50

Group 40: PROCESS PID SET 1

This group defines a set of parameters used with the Process PID (PID1) controller.

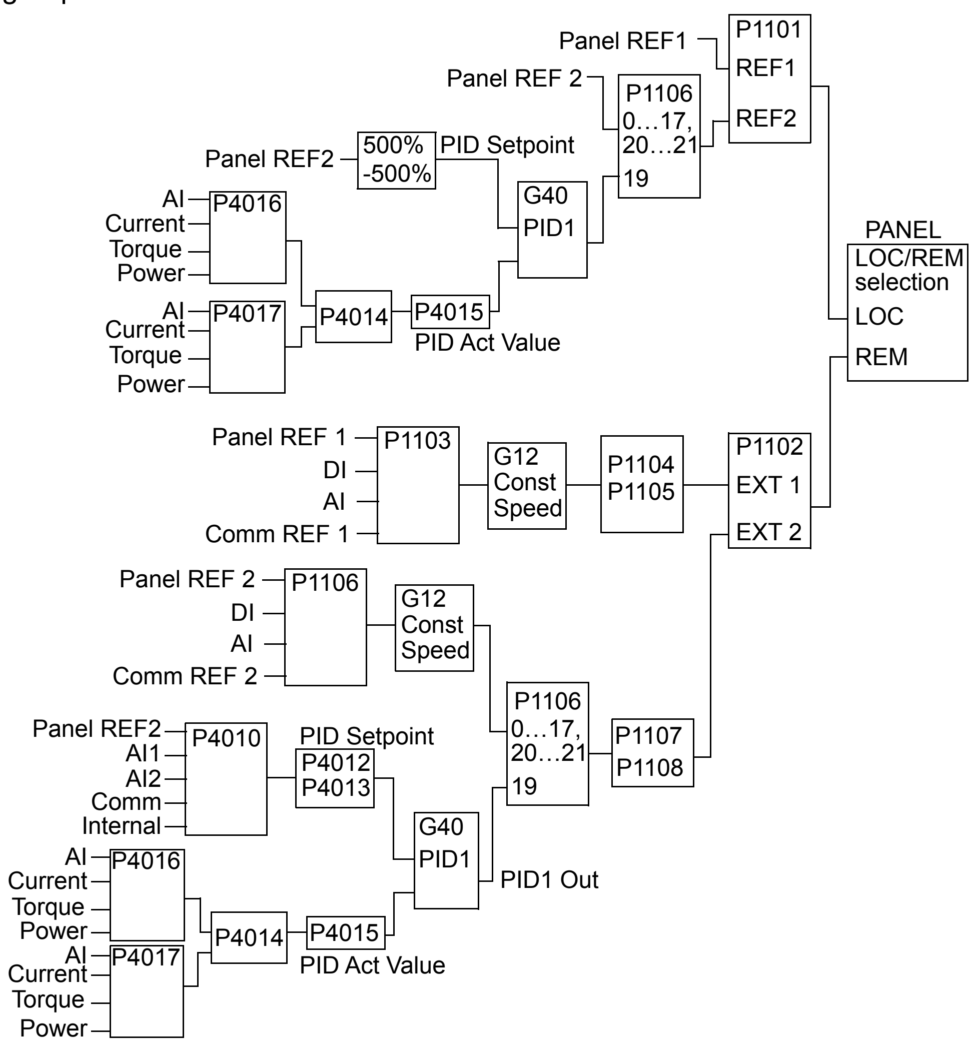
Typically only parameters in this group are needed.

PID controller – Basic setup

In PID control mode, the drive compares a reference signal (setpoint) to an actual signal (feedback) and automatically adjusts the speed of the drive to match the two signals. The difference between the two signals is the error value.

Typically PID control mode is used, when the speed of a motor needs to be controlled based on pressure, flow or temperature. In most cases – when there is only 1 transducer signal wired to the ACH550 – only parameter group 40 is needed.

The following is a schematic of setpoint/feedback signal flow using parameter group 40.



Note: In order to activate and use the PID controller, parameter 1106 must be set to value 19.

PID controller – Advanced

The ACH550 has two separate PID controllers:

- Process PID (PID1) and
- External PID (PID2)

Process PID (PID1) has 2 separate sets of parameters:

- Process PID (PID1) SET1, defined in *Group 40: PROCESS PID SET 1* and
- Process PID (PID1) SET2, defined in *Group 41: PROCESS PID SET 2*

You can select between the two different sets by using parameter 4027.

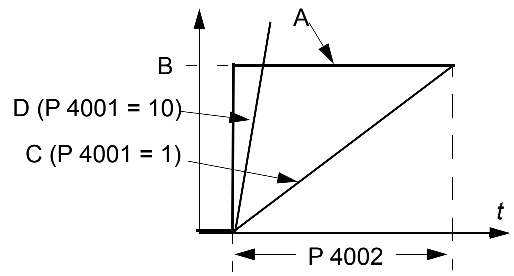
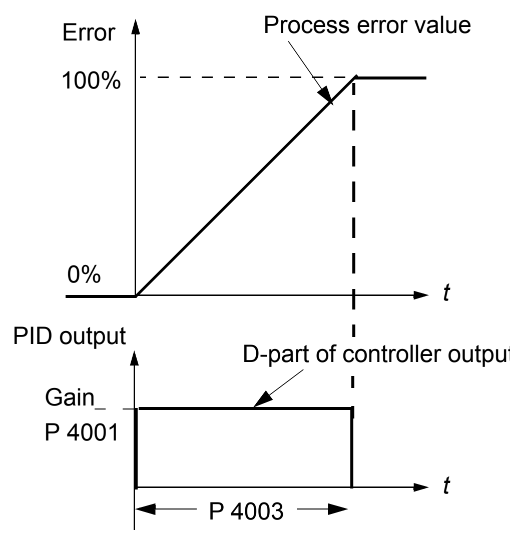
Typically two different PID controller sets are used when the load of the motor changes considerably from one situation to another.

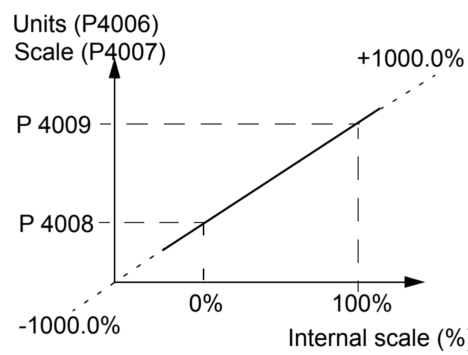
You can use External PID (PID2), defined in *Group 42: EXT / TRIM PID*, in two different ways:

- Instead of using additional PID controller hardware, you can set outputs of the ACH550 to control a field instrument like a damper or a valve. In this case, set parameter 4230 to value 0. (0 is the default value.)

You can use External PID (PID2) to trim or fine-tune the speed of the ACH550.

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4001	**GAIN**	**0.1…100.0**	**0.1**	**2.5**	
	Defines the PID controller's gain. • The setting range is 0.1… 100. • At 0.1, the PID controller output changes one-tenth as much as the error value. • At 100, the PID controller output changes one hundred times as much as the error value. Use the proportional gain and integration time values to adjust the responsiveness of the system. • A low value for proportional gain and a high value for integral time ensures stable operation, but provides sluggish response. If the proportional gain value is too large or the integral time too short, the system can become unstable. Procedure: • Initially, set: • 4001 GAIN = 2.5. • 4002 INTEGRATION TIME = 3.0 seconds. • Start the system and see if it reaches the setpoint quickly while maintaining stable operation. If not, increase GAIN (4001) until the actual signal (or drive speed) oscillates constantly. It may be necessary to start and stop the drive to induce this oscillation. • Reduce GAIN (4001) until the oscillation stops. • Set GAIN (4001) to 0.4 to 0.6 times the above value. • Decrease the INTEGRATION TIME (4002) until the feedback signal (or drive speed) oscillates constantly. It may be necessary to start and stop the drive to induce this oscillation. • Increase INTEGRATION TIME (4002) until the oscillation stops. • Set INTEGRATION TIME (4002) to 1.15 to 1.5 times the above value. • If the feedback signal contains high frequency noise, increase the value of parameter 1303 FILTER AI1 or 1306 FILTER AI2 until the noise is filtered from the signal.				

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4002	**INTEGRATION TIME**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**3.0 s**	
	Defines the PID controller's integration time. Integration time is, by definition, the time required to increase the output by the error value: • Error value is constant and 100%. • Gain = 1. • Integration time of 1 second denotes that a 100% change is achieved in 1 second. 0.0 = NOT SEL – Disables integration (I-part of controller). 0.1…3600.0 – Integration time (seconds). • See 4001 for adjustment procedure.  A = Error B = Error value step C = Controller output with Gain = 1 D = Controller output with Gain = 10				
4003	**DERIVATION TIME**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s**	
	Defines the PID controller's derivation time. • You can add the derivative of the error to the PID controller output. The derivative is the error value's rate of change. For example, if the process error value changes linearly, the derivative is a constant added to the PID controller output. • The error-derivative is filtered with a 1-pole filter. The time constant of the filter is defined by parameter 4004 PID DERIV FILTER. 0.0…10.0 – Derivation time (seconds).  				
4004	**PID DERIV FILTER**	**0.0…10.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**1.0 s**	
	Defines the filter time constant for the error-derivative part of the PID controller output. • Before being added to the PID controller output, the error-derivative is filtered with a 1-pole filter. • Increasing the filter time smooths the error-derivative, reducing noise. 0.0…10.0 – Filter time constant (seconds).				
4005	**ERROR VALUE INV**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (NO)**	
	Selects either a normal or inverted relationship between the feedback signal and the drive speed. 0 = NO – Normal, a decrease in feedback signal increases drive speed. Error = Ref - Fbk 1 = YES – Inverted, a decrease in feedback signal decreases drive speed. Error = Fbk - Ref				
4006	**UNITS**	**0…127**	**1**	**4 (%)**	
	Selects the unit for the PID controller actual values. (PID1 parameters 0128, 0130 and 0132). • See parameter 3405 for list of available units.				

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 40: Process PID Set 1</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4007</td><td>UNIT SCALE</td><td>0…4</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines the decimal point location in PID controller actual values.
• Enter the decimal point location counting in from the right end of the entry.
• See the table for an example using pi (3.14159).
<table>
<tr><th>4007 value</th><th>Entry</th><th>Display</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>00003</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>00031</td><td>3.1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>00314</td><td>3.14</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>03142</td><td>3.142</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>31416</td><td>3.1416</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4008</td><td>0% VALUE</td><td>Depends on Units and Scale</td><td>-</td><td>0.0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines (together with the next parameter) the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values (PID1 parameters 0128, 0130 and 0132).
• Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007.

</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4009</td><td>100% VALUE</td><td>Depends on Units and Scale</td><td>-</td><td>100.0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Defines (together with the previous parameter) the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values.
• Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007. See parameter 4008.</td></tr>
</table>

Group 40: Process PID Set 1

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4010	**SET POINT SEL**	**0…2, 8…17, 19…20**	**1**	**0 (KEYPAD)**	✓

Defines the reference signal source for the PID controller.
- Parameter has no significance when the PID regulator is by-passed (see 8121 REG BYPASS CTRL).

0 = KEYPAD – Control panel provides reference.
1 = AI1 – Analog input 1 provides reference.
2 = AI2 – Analog input 2 provides reference.
8 = COMM – Fieldbus provides reference.
9 = COMM+AI1 – Defines a fieldbus and analog input 1 (AI1) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
10 = COMM*AI1 – Defines a fieldbus and analog input 1 (AI1) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
11 = DI3U,4D(RNC) – Digital inputs, acting as a motor potentiometer control, provide reference.
- DI3 increases the speed (the U stands for "up")
- DI4 decreases the reference (the D stands for "down").
- Parameter 2205 ACCELER TIME 2 controls the reference signal's rate of change.
- R = Stop command resets the reference to zero.
- NC = Reference value is not copied.

12 = DI3U,4D(NC) – Same as DI3U,4D(RNC) above, except:
- Stop command does not reset reference to zero. At restart the motor ramps up, at the selected acceleration rate, to the stored reference.

13 = DI5U,6D(NC) – Same as DI3U,4D(NC) above, except:
- Uses digital inputs DI5 and DI6.

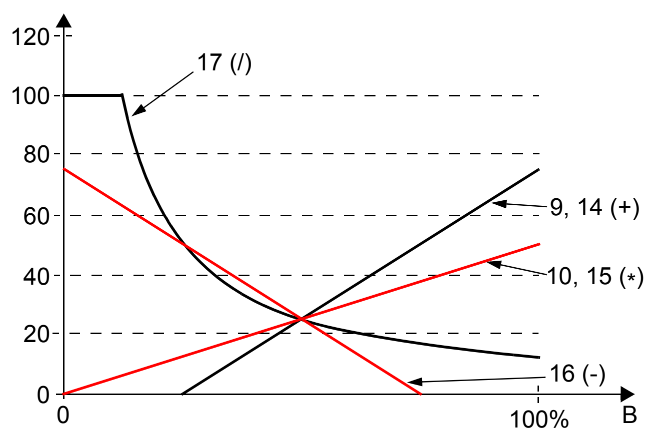
14 = AI1+AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
15 = AI1*AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
16 = AI1-AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
17 = AI1/AI2 – Defines an analog input 1 (AI1) and analog input 2 (AI2) combination as the reference source. See Analog input reference correction below.
19 = INTERNAL – A constant value set using parameter 4011 provides reference.
20 = PID2OUT – Defines PID controller 2 output (parameter 0127 PID 2 OUTPUT) as the reference source.

Analog input reference correction
Parameter values 9, 10 and 14…17 use the formula in the following table.

Value setting	Calculation of the AI reference
C + B	C value + (B value - 50% of reference value)
C * B	C value · (B value / 50% of reference value)
C - B	(C value + 50% of reference value) - B value
C / B	(C value · 50% of reference value) / B value

Where:
- C = Main reference value (= COMM for values 9, 10 and = AI1 for values 14…17)
- B = Correcting reference (= AI1 for values 9, 10 and = AI2 for values 14…17).

Example:
The figure shows the reference source curves for value settings 9, 10 and 14…17, where:
- C = 25%.
- P 4012 SETPOINT MIN = 0.
- P 4013 SETPOINT MAX = 0.
- B varies along the horizontal axis.



Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4011	**INTERNAL SETPNT**	**Depends on Units and Scale**	**-**	**40.0%**	
	Sets a constant value used for the process reference. • Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007.				
4012	**SETPOINT MIN**	**-500.0%…500.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets the minimum value for the reference signal source. • See parameter 4010.				
4013	**SETPOINT MAX**	**-500.0%…500.0%**	**0.1%**	**100.0%**	
	Sets the maximum value for the reference signal source. • See parameter 4010.				
4014	**FBK SEL**	**1…13**	**1**	**1 (ACT1)**	
	Defines the PID controller feedback (actual signal). • You can define a combination of two actual values (ACT1 and ACT2) as the feedback signal. • Use parameter 4016 to define the source for actual value 1 (ACT1). • Use parameter 4017 to define the source for actual value 2 (ACT2). 1 = ACT1 – Actual value 1 (ACT1) provides the feedback signal. 2 = ACT1-ACT2 – ACT1 minus ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 3 = ACT1+ACT2 – ACT1 plus ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 4 = ACT1*ACT2 – ACT1 times ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 5 = ACT1/ACT2 – ACT1 divided by ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 6 = MIN(ACT1,2) – The smaller of ACT1 or ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 7 = MAX(ACT1,2) – The greater of ACT1 or ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 8 = sqrt(ACT1-2) – Square root of the value for ACT1 minus ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 9 = sqA1+sqA2 – Square root of ACT1 plus the square root of ACT2 provides the feedback signal. 10 = sqrt(ACT1) – Square root of ACT1 provides the feedback signal. 11 = COMM FBK 1 – Signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 provides the feedback signal. 12 = COMM FBK 2 – Signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 provides the feedback signal. 13 = AVE(ACT1,2) – The average of ACT1 and ACT2 provides the feedback signal.				
4015	**FBK MULTIPLIER**	**-32.768…32.767**	**0.001**	**0.000 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines an extra multiplier for the PID feedback value FBK defined by parameter 4014. • Used mainly in applications where the flow is calculated from the pressure difference. 0.000 = NOT SEL – The parameter has no effect (1.000 used as the multiplier). -32.768…32.767 – Multiplier applied to the signal defined by parameter 4014 FBK SEL. **Example:** $\mathrm{FBK} = \mathrm{Multiplier} \times \sqrt{\mathrm{A1} - \mathrm{A2}}$				
4016	**ACT1 INPUT**	**1…7**	**1**	**2 (AI2)**	✓
	Defines the source for actual value 1 (ACT1). See also parameter 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM. 1 = AI1 – Uses analog input 1 for ACT1. 2 = AI2 – Uses analog input 2 for ACT1. 3 = CURRENT – Uses current for ACT1. 4 = TORQUE – Uses torque for ACT1. 5 = POWER – Uses power for ACT1. 6 = COMM ACT 1 – Uses value of signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 for ACT1. 7 = COMM ACT 2 – Uses value of signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 for ACT1.				
4017	**ACT2 INPUT**	**1…7**	**1**	**2 (AI2)**	✓
	Defines the source for actual value 2 (ACT2). See also parameter 4020 ACT2 MINIMUM. 1 = AI1 – Uses analog input 1 for ACT2. 2 = AI2 – Uses analog input 2 for ACT2. 3 = CURRENT – Uses current for ACT2. 4 = TORQUE – Uses torque for ACT2. 5 = POWER – Uses power for ACT2. 6 = COMM ACT 1 – Uses value of signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 for ACT2. 7 = COMM ACT 2 – Uses value of signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 for ACT2.				

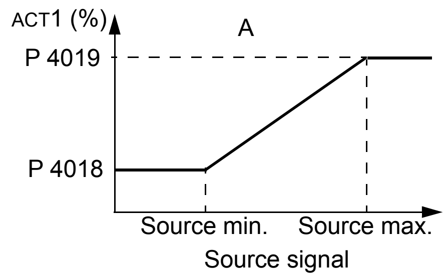
Group 40: Process PID Set 1

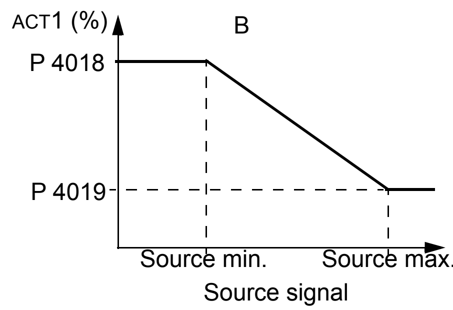
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4018	**ACT1 MINIMUM**	**-1000…1000%**	**1%**	**0%**	

Sets the minimum value for ACT1.
- Scales the source signal used as the actual value ACT1 (defined by parameter 4016 ACT1 INPUT). For parameter 4016 values 6 (COMM ACT 1) and 7 (COMM ACT 2) scaling is not done.

Par 4016	Source	Source min.	Source max.
1	Analog input 1	1301 MINIMUM AI1	1302 MAXIMUM AI1
2	Analog input 2	1304 MINIMUM AI2	1305 MAXIMUM AI2
3	Current	0	2 · nominal current
4	Torque	-2 · nominal torque	2 · nominal torque
5	Power	-2 · nominal power	2 · nominal power

- See the figure: A= Normal; B = Inversion (ACT1 MINIMUM > ACT1 MAXIMUM)





Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4019	**ACT1 MAXIMUM**	**-1000…1000%**	**1%**	**100%**	

Sets the maximum value for ACT1.
- See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4020	**ACT2 MINIMUM**	**-1000…1000%**	**1%**	**0%**	

Sets the minimum value for ACT2.
- See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4021	**ACT2 MAXIMUM**	**-1000…1000%**	**1%**	**100%**	

Sets the maximum value for ACT2.
- See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.

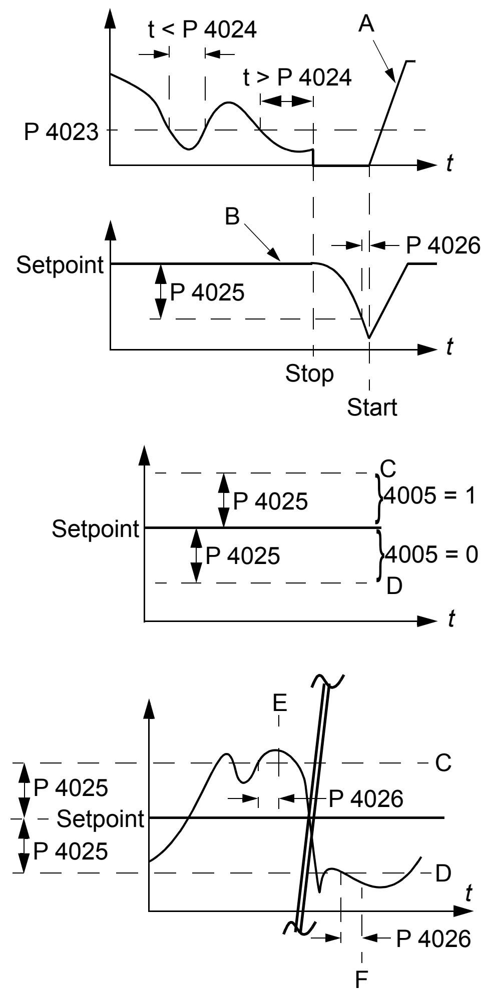
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4022	**SLEEP SELECTION**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	

Defines the control for the PID sleep function.
0 = NOT SEL– Disables the PID sleep control function.
1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for the PID sleep function.
- Activating the digital input activates the sleep function.
- De-activating the digital input restores PID control.

2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for the PID sleep function.
- See DI1 above.

7 = INTERNAL – Defines the output rpm/frequency, process reference and process actual value as the control for the PID sleep function. Refer to parameters 4025 WAKE-UP DEV and 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL.
-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for the PID sleep function.
- De-activating the digital input activates the sleep function.
- Activating the digital input restores PID control.

-2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for the PID sleep function.
- See DI1(INV) above.

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4023	**PID SLEEP LEVEL**	**0.0…500.0 Hz / 0…30000 rpm**	**0.1 Hz / 1 rpm**	**0.0 Hz / 0 rpm**	
	Sets the motor speed / frequency that enables the PID sleep function – a motor speed / frequency below this level, for at least the time period 4024 PID SLEEP DELAY enables the PID sleep function (stopping the drive). • Requires 4022 = 7 (INTERNAL). • See the figure: A = PID output level; B = PID process feedback. 				
4024	**PID SLEEP DELAY**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**60.0 s**	
	Sets the time delay for the PID sleep function – a motor speed / frequency below 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL for at least this time period enables the PID sleep function (stopping the drive). • See 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL above.				

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4025	**WAKE-UP DEV**	**Depends on Units and Scale**	**-**	**0.0%**	
	Defines the wake-up deviation – a deviation from the setpoint greater than this value, for at least the time period 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY, re-starts the PID controller. • Parameters 4006 and 4007 define the units and scale. • Parameter 4005 = 0, Wake-up level = Setpoint - Wake-up deviation. • Parameter 4005 = 1, Wake-up level = Setpoint + Wake-up deviation. • Wake-up level can be above or below setpoint. See the figures with parameter 4023: • C = Wake-up level when parameter 4005 = 1 • D = Wake-up level when parameter 4005 = 0 • E = Feedback is above wake-up level and lasts longer than 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY – PID function wakes up. • F = Feedback is below wake-up level and lasts longer than 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY – PID function wakes up.				
4026	**WAKE-UP DELAY**	**0.00…60.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.50 s**	
	Defines the wake-up delay – a deviation from the setpoint greater than 4025 WAKE-UP DEV, for at least this time period, re-starts the PID controller.				
4027	**PID 1 PARAM SET**	**-6…14**	**1**	**0 (SET1)**	
	Process PID (PID1) has two separate sets of parameters, PID set 1 and PID set 2. • PID set 1 uses parameters 4001…4026. • PID set 2 uses parameters 4101…4126. PID 1 PARAM SET defines which set is selected. 0 = SET 1 – PID Set 1 (parameters 4001…4026) is active. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for PID Set selection. • Activating the digital input selects PID Set 2. • De-activating the digital input selects PID Set 1. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for PID Set selection. • See DI1 above. 7 = SET 2 – PID Set 2 (parameters 4101…4126) is active. 8…11 = TIMED FUNC 1…4 – Defines the Timed function as the control for the PID Set selection (Timed function de-activated = PID Set 1; Timed function activated = PID Set 2) • See *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*. 12 = 2-ZONE MIN – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. The drive will control the zone (and select the set) that has a larger difference. • A positive difference (a setpoint higher than the feedback) is always larger than a negative difference. This keeps feedback values at or above the setpoint. • Controller does not react to the situation of feedback above setpoint if another zone's feedback is closer to its setpoint. 13 = 2-ZONE MAX – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. The drive will control the zone (and select the set) that has a smaller difference. • A negative difference (a setpoint lower than the feedback) is always smaller than a positive difference. This keeps feedback values at or below the setpoint. • Controller does not react to the situation of feedback below setpoint if another zone's feedback is closer to its setpoint. 14 = 2-ZONE AVE – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. In addition, it calculates the average of the deviations and uses it to control zone 1. Therefore one feedback is kept above its setpoint and another is kept as much below its setpoint. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for PID Set selection. • Activating the digital input selects PID Set 1. • De-activating the digital input selects PID Set 2. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for PID Set selection. • See DI1(INV) above.				

Group 41: PROCESS PID SET 2

Parameters of this group belong to PID parameter set 2. The operation of parameters 4101…4126 is analogous with set 1 parameters 4001…4026.

PID parameter set 2 can be selected by parameter 4027 PID 1 PARAM SET.

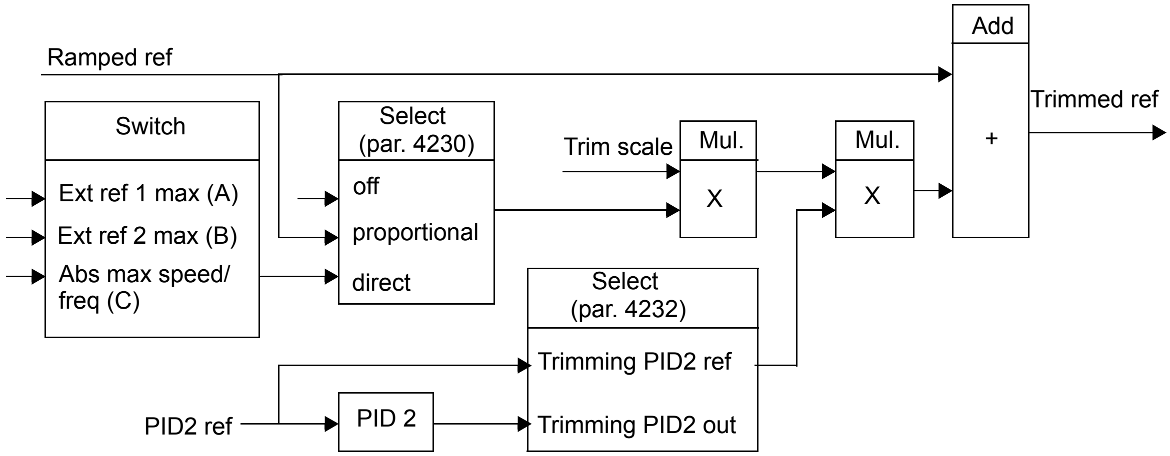
Group 41: Process PID Set 2					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4101 … 4126	See 4001 …4026				

Group 42: EXT / TRIM PID

This group defines the parameters used for the second PID controller (PID2), which is used for the External / Trimming PID.

The operation of parameters 4201...4221 is analogous with Process PID set 1 (PID1) parameters 4001…4021.

Group 42: Ext / Trim PID					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4201 … 4221	See 4001 …4021 **Note:** The Default value for parameter 4201 is 1.0. The Default value for parameter 4202 is 60.0 s. The Default value for parameter 4210 is 1 (AI1).				
4228	**ACTIVATE**	**-6…12**	**-**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the source for enabling the external PID function. • Requires 4230 TRIM MODE = 0 (NOT SEL). 0 = NOT SEL – Disables external PID control. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for enabling external PID control. • Activating the digital input enables external PID control. • De-activating the digital input disables external PID control. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Defines digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for enabling external PID control. • See DI1 above. 7 = DRIVE RUN – Defines the start command as the control for enabling external PID control. • Activating the start command (drive is running) enables external PID control. 8 = ON – Defines the power-on as the control for enabling external PID control. • Activating power to the drive enables external PID control. 9…12 = TIMED FUNC 1…4 – Defines the Timed function as the control for enabling external PID control (Timed function active enables external PID control). • See *Group 36: TIMED FUNCTIONS*. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for enabling external PID control. • Activating the digital input disables external PID control. • De-activating the digital input enables external PID control. -2…-6 = DI2(INV)…DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2…DI6 as the control for enabling external PID control. • See DI1(INV) above.				
4229	**OFFSET**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Defines the offset for the PID output. • When PID is activated, output starts from this value. • When PID is deactivated, output resets to this value. • Parameter is active when 4230 TRIM MODE = 0 (trim mode is not active).				
4230	**TRIM MODE**	**0…2**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Selects the type of trim, if any. Using the trim it is possible to combine a corrective factor to the drive reference. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the trim function. 1 = PROPORTIONAL – Adds a trim factor that is proportional to the rpm/Hz reference. 2 = DIRECT – Adds a trim factor based on the control loop's maximum limit.				
4231	**TRIM SCALE**	**-100.0%…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Defines the multiplier (as a percent, plus or minus) used in the trim mode.				

Group 42: Ext / Trim PID					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4232	**CORRECTION SRC**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 (PID2REF)**	
	Defines the trimming reference for the correction source. 1 = PID2REF – Uses appropriate REF MAX (SWITCH A OR B): • 1105 REF1 MAX when REF1 is active (A). • 1108 REF2 MAX when REF2 is active (B). 2 = PID2OUTPUT – Uses the absolute maximum speed or frequency (Switch C): • 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED if 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 1 (VECTOR:SPEED) or 2 (VECTOR:TORQ). • 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ if 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ). 				

Group 45: ENERGY SAVING

This group defines the setup of calculation and optimization of energy savings.

Note: The values of saved energy parameters 0174 SAVED KWH, 0175 SAVED MWH, 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1, 0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 and 0178 SAVED CO2 are derived from subtracting the drive's energy consumed from the direct-on-line (DOL) consumption calculated on the basis of parameter 4508 PUMP POWER. As such, the accuracy of the values is dependent on the accuracy of the power estimate entered in that parameter.

Group 45: Energy Saving					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
4502	**ENERGY PRICE**	**0.00…655.35**	**0.01**	**0.00**	
	Price of energy per kWh. • Used for reference when energy savings are calculated. • See parameters 0174 SAVED KWH, 0175 SAVED MWH, 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1, 0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 and 0178 SAVED CO2 (reduction of carbon dioxide emissions in tons).				
4507	**CO2 CONV FACTOR**	**0.0…1.0 tn/MWH**	**0.1 tn/MWh**	**0.5 tn/MWh**	
	Conversion factor for converting energy into CO2 emissions (kg/kWh or tn/MWh). Used for multiplying the saved energy in MWh to calculate the value of parameter 0178 SAVED CO2 (reduction of carbon dioxide emissions in tons).				
4508	**PUMP POWER**	**0.0…1000.0%**	**0.1%**	**100.0%**	
	Pump power (as a percentage of the nominal motor power) when connected directly to supply (DOL). • Used for reference when energy savings are calculated. • See parameters 0174 SAVED KWH, 0175 SAVED MWH, 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1, 0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 and 0178 SAVED CO2. • It is possible to use this parameter as the reference power also for other applications than pumps. The reference power can also be some other constant power than a motor connected directly online.				
4509	**ENERGY RESET**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DONE)**	
	Resets energy calculators 0174 SAVED KWH, 0175 SAVED MWH, 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1, 0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 and 0178 SAVED CO2.				

Group 51: EXT COMM MODULE

This group defines set-up variables for a fieldbus adapter (FBA) communication module. For more information on these parameters, refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Group 51: Ext Comm Module					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
5101	**FBA TYPE**	**0000...FFFF hex**	**-**	**0000 hex (NOT DEFINED)**	
	Displays the type of the connected fieldbus adapter module. 0000 = NOT DEFINED – Module not found, or not properly connected, or parameter 9802 is not set to 4 (EXT FBA). 0001 = PROFIBUS-DP 0015 = LONWORKS 0020 = CANopen 0025 = DEVICENET 0065 = CONTROLNET 0080 = ETHERNET				
5102 … 5126	**FB PAR 2…FB PAR 26**	**0...65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Refer to communication module documentation for more information on these parameters.				
5127	**FBA PAR REFRESH**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (DONE)**	✓
	Validates any changed fieldbus parameter settings. 0 = DONE – Refreshing done. 1 = REFRESH – Refreshing. • After refreshing, the value reverts automatically to DONE.				
5128	**FILE CPI FW REV**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Displays the CPI firmware revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter configuration file. Format is 0xyz where: • x = major revision number • y = minor revision number • z = correction number **Example:** 0107 = revision 1.07				
5129	**FILE CONFIG ID**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Displays the revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter module's configuration file identification. • File configuration information is drive application program-dependent.				
5130	**FILE CONFIG REV**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Contains the revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter module configuration file. **Example:** 0001 = revision 1				
5131	**FBA STATUS**	**0…6**	**1**	**0 (IDLE)**	
	Contains the status of the adapter module. 0 = IDLE – Adapter not configured. 1 = EXECUT INIT – Adapter is initializing. 2 = TIME OUT – A timeout has occurred in the communication between the adapter and the drive. 3 = CONFIG ERROR – Adapter configuration error. • The revision code of the adapter's CPI firmware revision is older than required CPI firmware version defined in the drive's configuration file (parameter 5132 < 5128). 4 = OFF-LINE – Adapter is off-line. 5 = ON-LINE – Adapter is on-line. 6 = RESET – Adapter is performing a hardware reset.				
5132	**FBA CPI FW REV**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Contains the revision of the module's CPI program. Format is 0xyz where: • x = major revision number • y = minor revision number • z = correction number **Example:** 0107 = revision 1.07				

Group 51: Ext Comm Module					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
5133	**FBA APPL FW REV**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Contains the revision of the module's application program. Format is 0xyz (see parameter 5132).				

Group 52: PANEL COMM

This group defines the communication settings for the control panel port on the drive. Normally, when using the supplied control panel, there is no need to change settings in this group.

In this group, parameter modifications take effect on the next power-up.

Group 52: Panel Communication					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
5201	**STATION ID**	**1…247**	**1**	**1**	
	Defines the address of the drive. • Two units with the same address are not allowed on-line. • Range: 1…247				
5202	**BAUD RATE**	**9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 115.2 kb/s**	**-**	**9.6 kb/s**	
	Defines the communication speed of the drive in kbits per second (kb/s). 9.6 kb/s 19.2 kb/s 38.4 kb/s 57.6 kb/s 115.2 kb/s				
5203	**PARITY**	**0…3**	**1**	**0 (8 NONE 1)**	
	Sets the character format to be used with the panel communication. 0 = 8 NONE 1 – 8 data bits, no parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8 NONE 2 – 8 data bits, no parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8 EVEN 1 – 8 data bits, even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8 ODD 1 – 8 data bits, odd parity, one stop bit.				
5204	**OK MESSAGES**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains a count of valid Modbus messages received by the drive. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.				
5205	**PARITY ERRORS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains a count of the characters with a parity error that is received from the bus. For high counts, check: • Parity settings of devices connected on the bus – they must not differ. • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors.				
5206	**FRAME ERRORS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains a count of the characters with a framing error that the bus receives. For high counts, check: • Communication speed settings of devices connected on the bus – they must not differ. • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors.				
5207	**BUFFER OVERRUNS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains a count of the characters received that cannot be placed in the buffer. • Longest possible message length for the drive is 128 bytes. • Received messages exceeding 128 bytes overflow the buffer. The excess characters are counted.				
5208	**CRC ERRORS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**-**	
	Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error that the drive receives. For high counts, check: • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors. • CRC calculations for possible errors.				

Group 53: EFB PROTOCOL

This group defines set-up variables used for an embedded fieldbus (EFB) communication protocol. The standard EFB protocol in the ACH550 is Modbus. See chapter *Embedded fieldbus* page *1-185*.

Group 53: EFB Protocol					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
5301	**EFB PROTOCOL ID**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol. • Format: XXYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.				
5302	**EFB STATION ID**	**0…65535**	**1**	**1**	✓
	Defines the node address of the RS485 link. • The node address on each unit must be unique.				
5303	**EFB BAUD RATE**	**1.2, 2.4, 4.8, 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 76.8 kb/s**	**-**	**9.6 kb/s**	
	Defines the communication speed of the RS485 link in kbits per second (kb/s). 1.2 kb/s 2.4 kb/s 4.8 kb/s 9.6 kb/s 19.2 kb/s 38.4 kb/s 57.6 kb/s 76.8 kb/s				
5304	**EFB PARITY**	**0…3**	1	**0 (8 NONE 1)**	
	Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the RS485 link communication. • The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. 0 = 8 NONE 1 – 8 data bits, no parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8 NONE 2 – 8 data bits, no parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8 EVEN 1 – 8 data bits, even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8 ODD 1 – 8 data bits, odd parity, one stop bit.				
5305	**EFB CTRL PROFILE**	**0…2**	1	**0 (ABB DRV LIM)**	
	Selects the communication profile used by the EFB protocol. 0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to ABB Drives Profile (limited), as used in ACH400 and ACH550. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to ABB Drives Profile (full).				
5306	**EFB OK MESSAGES**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Contains a count of valid messages received by the drive. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.				
5307	**EFB CRC ERRORS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error received by the drive. For high counts, check: • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors. • CRC calculations for possible errors.				
5308	**EFB UART ERRORS**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Contains a count of the messages with a character error received by the drive.				

Group 53: EFB Protocol					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
5309	**EFB STATUS**	**0…7**	**1**	**0 (IDLE)**	
	Contains the status of the EFB protocol. 0 = IDLE – EFB protocol is configured, but not receiving any messages. 1 = EXECUT INIT – EFB protocol is initializing. 2 = TIME OUT – A timeout has occurred in the communication between the network master and the EFB protocol. 3 = CONFIG ERROR – EFB protocol has a configuration error. 4 = OFF-LINE – EFB protocol is receiving messages that are NOT addressed to this drive. 5 = ON-LINE – EFB protocol is receiving messages that are addressed to this drive. 6 = RESET – EFB protocol is performing a hardware reset. 7 = LISTEN ONLY – EFB protocol is in listen-only mode.				
5310	**EFB PAR 10**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40005.				
5311	**EFB PAR 11**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40006.				
5312	**EFB PAR 12**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40007.				
5313	**EFB PAR 13**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40008.				
5314	**EFB PAR 14**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40009.				
5315	**EFB PAR 15**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40010.				
5316	**EFB PAR 16**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40011.				
5317	**EFB PAR 17**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus Register 40012.				
5318	**EFB PAR 18**	**0…65535**	**1**	**0**	
	For Modbus: Sets additional delay in milliseconds before the ACH550 begins transmitting response to the master request.				
5319	**EFB PAR 19**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	ABB Drives profile (ABB DRV LIM or ABB DRV FULL) Control Word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Control Word.				
5320	**EFB PAR 20**	**0000…FFFF hex**	**1**	**0000 hex**	
	ABB Drives profile (ABB DRV LIM or ABB DRV FULL) Status Word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Status Word.				

Group 64: LOAD ANALYZER

This group defines the load analyzer, which can be used for analyzing the customer's process and sizing the drive and the motor.

The peak value is logged at 2 ms level, and the distribution loggers are updated on 0.2 s (200 ms) time level. Three different values can be logged.

1. Amplitude logger 1: The measured current is logged continuously. The distribution as a percentage of the nominal current I_{2n} is shown in ten classes.
2. Peak value logger: One signal in group 1 can be logged for the peak (maximum) value. The peak value of the signal, peak time (time when the peak value was detected) as well the frequency, current and DC voltage at the peak time are shown.
3. Amplitude logger 2: One signal in group 1 can be logged for amplitude distribution. The base value (100% value) can be set by the user.

The first logger cannot be reset. The other two loggers can be reset by a user-defined method. They are also reset if either of the signals or the peak value filter time is changed.

Group 64: Load Analyzer					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
6401	**PVL SIGNAL**	**100…178**	**1**	**103 (OUTPUT FREQ)**	
	Defines (by number) the signal logged for the peak value. • Any parameter number in *Group 01: OPERATING DATA* can be selected. Eg 102 = parameter 0102 SPEED. 100 = NOT SELECTED – No signal (parameter) logged for the peak value. 101…178 – Logs parameter 0101…0178.				
6402	**PVL FILTER TIME**	**0.0…120.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.1 s**	
	Defines the filter time for peak value logging. • 0.0…120.0 – Filter time (seconds).				
6403	**LOGGERS RESET**	**-6…7**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Defines the source for the reset of peak value logger and amplitude logger 2. 0 = NOT SEL – No reset selected. 1 = DI1 – Reset loggers on the rising edge of digital input DI1. 2…6 = DI2…DI6 – Reset loggers on the rising edge of digital input DI2…DI6. 7 = RESET – Reset loggers. Parameter is set to NOT SEL. -1 = DI1(INV) – Reset loggers on the falling edge of digital input DI1. -2…-6 = DI2(INV) …DI6(INV) – Reset loggers on the falling edge of digital input DI2…DI6.				
6404	**AL2 SIGNAL**	**101…178**	**1**	**103 (OUTPUT FREQ)**	
	Defines the signal logged for amplitude logger 2. • Any parameter number in *Group 01: OPERATING DATA* can be selected. Eg 102 = parameter 0102 SPEED. 100 = NOT SELECTED – No signal (parameter) logged for amplitude distribution (amplitude logger 2). 101…178 – Logs parameter 0101…0178.				
6405	**AL2 SIGNAL BASE**	**Depends on selection**	**-**	**60.0 Hz**	
	Defines the base value from which the percentage distribution is calculated. • Representation and default value depends on the signal selected with parameter 6404 AL2 SIGNAL.				
6406	**PEAK VALUE**	**-**	**-**	**-**	
	Detected peak value of the signal selected with parameter 6401 PVL SIGNAL.				
6407	**PEAK TIME 1**	**Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days**	**1 d**	**-**	
	Date of the peak value detection. • Format: Date if the real time clock is operating (dd.mm.yy). / The number of days elapsed after the power-on if the real time clock is not used, or was not set (xx d).				

Group 64: Load Analyzer					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
6408	**PEAK TIME 2**	**Time hh.mm.ss**	**2 s**	**-**	
	Time of the peak value detection. • Format: hours:minutes:seconds.				
6409	**CURRENT AT PEAK**	**0.0…6553.5 A**	**0.1 A**	**-**	
	Current at the moment of the peak value (amperes).				
6410	**UDC AT PEAK**	**0…65535 V**	**1 V**	**-**	
	DC voltage at the moment of the peak value (volts).				
6411	**FREQ AT PEAK**	**0.0…6553.5 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**-**	
	Output frequency at the moment of the peak value (herzes).				
6412	**TIME OF RESET 1**	**Date dd.mm.yy / power-on time in days**	**1 d**	**-**	
	Last reset date of the peak logger and amplitude logger 2. • Format: Date if the real time clock is operating (dd.mm.yy). / The number of days elapsed after the power-on if the real time clock is not used, or was not set (xx d).				
6413	**TIME OF RESET 2**	**Time hh.mm.ss**	**2 s**	**-**	
	Last reset time of the peak logger and amplitude logger 2. • Format: hours:minutes:seconds.				
6414	**AL1RANGE0TO10**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 0…10% distribution.				
6415	**AL1RANGE10TO20**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 10…20% distribution.				
6416	**AL1RANGE20TO30**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 20…30% distribution.				
6417	**AL1RANGE30TO40**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 30…40% distribution.				
6418	**AL1RANGE40TO50**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 40…50% distribution.				
6419	**AL1RANGE50TO60**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 50…60% distribution.				
6420	**AL1RANGE60TO70**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 60…70% distribution.				
6421	**AL1RANGE70TO80**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 70…80% distribution.				
6422	**AL1RANGE80TO90**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) 80…90% distribution.				
6423	**AL1RANGE90TO**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current I_{2n}) over 90% distribution.				
6424	**AL2RANGE0TO10**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 0…10% distribution.				
6425	**AL2RANGE10TO20**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 10…20% distribution.				
6426	**AL2RANGE20TO30**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 20…30% distribution.				

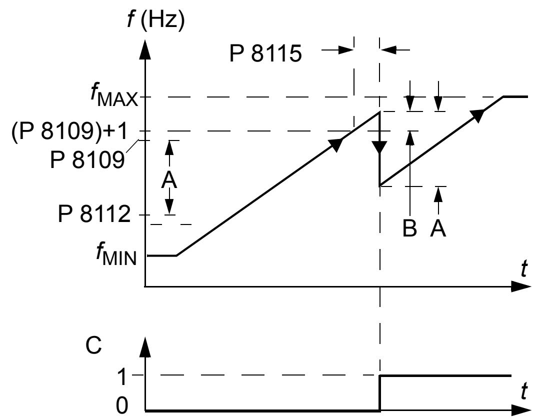
Group 64: Load Analyzer					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
6427	**AL2RANGE30TO40**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 30…40% distribution.				
6428	**AL2RANGE40TO50**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 40…50% distribution.				
6429	**AL2RANGE50TO60**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 50…60% distribution.				
6430	**AL2RANGE60TO70**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 60…70% distribution.				
6431	**AL2RANGE70TO80**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 70…80% distribution.				
6432	**AL2RANGE80TO90**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) 80…90% distribution.				
6433	**AL2RANGE90TO**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**-**	
	Amplitude logger 2 (signal selection with parameter 6404) over 90% distribution.				

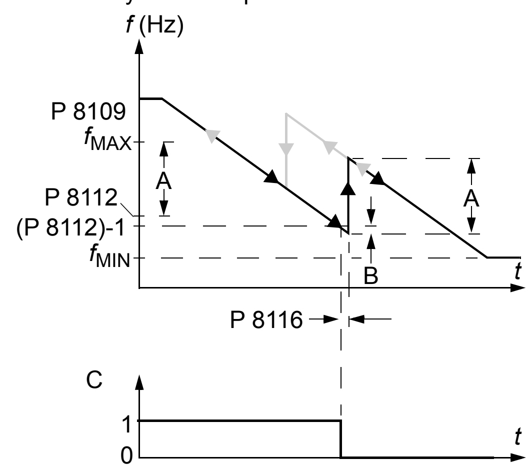
Group 81: PFA CONTROL

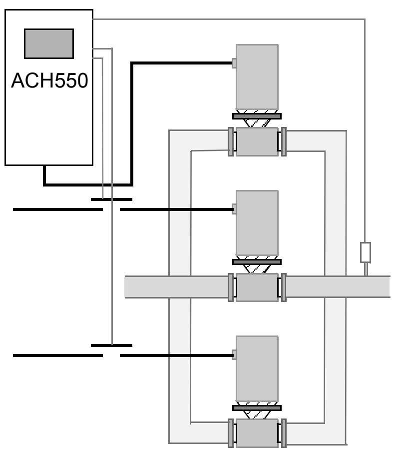
This group defines a Pump-Fan Alternation (PFA) mode of operation. The major features of PFA control are:

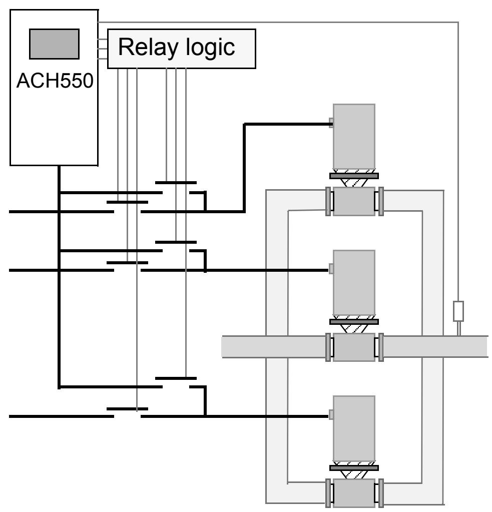
- The ACH550 controls the motor of pump no. 1, varying the motor speed to control the pump capacity. This motor is the speed regulated motor.
- Direct line connections power the motor of pump no. 2 and pump no.3, etc. The ACH550 switches pump no. 2 (and then pump no. 3, etc.) on and off as needed. These motors are auxiliary motors.
- The ACH550 PID control uses two signals: a process reference and an actual value feedback. The PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference.
- When demand (defined by the process reference) exceeds the first motor's capacity (user defined as a frequency limit), the PFA control automatically starts an auxiliary pump. The PFA also reduces the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's addition to total output. Then, as before, the PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference. If demand continues to increase, PFA adds additional auxiliary pumps, using the same process.
- When demand drops, such that the first pump speed falls below a minimum limit (user defined by a frequency limit), the PFA control automatically stops an auxiliary pump. The PFA also increases the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's missing output.
- An Interlock function (when enabled) identifies off-line (out of service) motors, and the PFA control skips to the next available motor in the sequence.
- An Autochange function (when enabled and with the appropriate switchgear) equalizes duty time between the pump motors. Autochange periodically increments the position of each motor in the rotation – the speed regulated motor becomes the last auxiliary motor, the first auxiliary motor becomes the speed regulated motor, etc.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 81: PFA Control</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td>8103</td><td>REFERENCE STEP 1</td><td>0.0…100.0%</td><td>0.1%</td><td>0.0%</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference.
• Applies only when <u>at least one</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motor is running.
• Default value is 0%.
Example: An ACH550 operates three parallel pumps that maintain water pressure in a pipe.
• 4011 INTERNAL SETPNT sets a constant pressure reference that controls the pressure in the pipe.
• The speed regulated pump operates alone at low water consumption levels.
• As water consumption increases, first one constant speed pump operates, then, the second.
• As flow increases, the pressure at the output end of the pipe drops relative to the pressure measured at the input end. As auxiliary motors step in to increase the flow, the adjustments below correct the reference to more closely match the output pressure.
• When the first auxiliary pump operates, increase the reference with parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1.
• When two auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1 + parameter 8104 REFERENCE STEP 2.
• When three auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1 + parameter 8104 REFERENCE STEP 2 + parameter 8105 REFERENCE STEP 3.</td></tr>
</table>

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8104	**REFERENCE STEP 2**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. • Applies only when <u>at least two</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running. • See parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1.				
8105	**REFERENCE STEP 3**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**0.0%**	
	Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. • Applies only when <u>at least three</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running. • See parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1.				
8109	**START FREQ 1**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**60.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to start the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor starts if: • No auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8109 + 1 Hz. • Output frequency stays above a relaxed limit (8109 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D. After the first auxiliary motor starts: • Output frequency decreases by the value = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1). • In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor drops to compensate for the input from the auxiliary motor. See the figure, where: • A = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1) • B = Output frequency increase during the start delay. • C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency increases (1 = On). **Note:** 8109 START FREQ 1 value must be between: • 8112 LOW FREQ 1 • (2008 MAXIMUM FREQ) -1.  				
8110	**START FREQ 2**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**60.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to start the second auxiliary motor. • See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The second auxiliary motor starts if: • One auxiliary motor is running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8110 + 1. • Output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (8110 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D.				
8111	**START FREQ 3**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**60.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to start the third auxiliary motor. • See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The third auxiliary motor starts if: • Two auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8111 + 1 Hz. • Output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (8111 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D.				

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8112	**LOW FREQ 1**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**30.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to stop the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor stops if: • Only one (the first) auxiliary motor is running. • ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8112 - 1. • Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8112 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D. After the first auxiliary motor stops: • Output frequency increases by the value = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1). • In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor increases to compensate for the loss of the auxiliary motor. See the figure, where: • A = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1) • B = Output frequency decrease during the stop delay. • C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency decreases (1 = On). • Grey path = Shows hysteresis – if time is reversed, the path backwards is not the same. For details on the path for starting, see the diagram at 8109 START FREQ 1.  **Note:** 8112 LOW FREQ 1 value must be between: • (2007 MINIMUM FREQ) +1. • 8109 START FREQ 1				
8113	**LOW FREQ 2**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**30.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to stop the second auxiliary motor. • See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The second auxiliary motor stops if: • Two auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8113 - 1. • Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8113 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D.				
8114	**LOW FREQ 3**	**0.0…500.0 Hz**	**0.1 Hz**	**30.0 Hz (US)**	
	Sets the frequency limit used to stop the third auxiliary motor. • See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The third auxiliary motor stops if: • Three auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8114 - 1. • Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8114 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D.				
8115	**AUX MOT START D**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**5.0 s**	
	Sets the Start Delay for the auxiliary motors. • The output frequency must remain above the start frequency limit (parameter 8109, 8110, or 8111) for this time period before the auxiliary motor starts. • See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation.				
8116	**AUX MOT STOP D**	**0.0…3600.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**3.0 s**	
	Sets the Stop Delay for the auxiliary motors. • The output frequency must remain below the low frequency limit (parameter 8112, 8113, or 8114) for this time period before the auxiliary motor stops. • See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation.				

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Group 81: PFA Control</th></tr>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Description</th><th>Range</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Default</th><th>S</th></tr>
<tr><td>8117</td><td>NR OF AUX MOT</td><td>0…4</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>✓</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">
Sets the number of auxiliary motors.
• Each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals.
• The Autochange function, if used, requires an additional relay output for the speed regulated motor.
• The following describes the set-up of the required relay outputs.
Relay outputs
As noted above, each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals. The following describes how the drive keeps track of motors and relays.
• The ACH550 provides relay outputs RO1…RO3.
• An external digital output module (OREL-01) can be added to provide relay outputs RO4…RO6.
• Parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 define, respectively, how relays RO1…RO6 are used – the parameter value 31 PFA defines the relay as used for PFA.
• The ACH550 assigns auxiliary motors to relays in ascending order. If the Autochange function is disabled, the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, and so on. If the Autochange function is used, the assignments rotate. Initially, the speed regulated motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the second relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, and so on.


Standard PFA mode


PFA with Autochange mode
• The fourth auxiliary motor uses the same reference step, low frequency and start frequency values as the third auxiliary motor.
</td></tr>
</table>

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**

• The table below shows the ACH550 PFA motor assignments for some typical settings in the Relay Output parameters (1401…1403 and 1410…1412), where the settings are either =31 (PFA), or =X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is disabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0).

Parameter setting							ACH550 Relay assignment					
							Autochange disabled					
1401	**1402**	**1403**	**1410**	**1411**	**1412**	**8117**	**RO1**	**RO2**	**RO3**	**RO4**	**RO5**	**RO6**
31	X	X	X	X	X	1	Aux.	X	X	X	X	X
31	31	X	X	X	X	2	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	X
31	31	31	X	X	X	3	Aux.	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X
X	31	31	X	X	X	2	X	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X
X	X	X	31	X	31	2	X	X	X	Aux.	X	Aux.
31	31	X	X	X	X	1*	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	X

* = One additional relay output for the PFA that is in use. One motor is in "sleep" when the other is rotating.

• The table below shows the ACH550 PFA motor assignments for some typical settings in the Relay Output parameters (1401…1403 and 1410…1412), where the settings are either =31 (PFA), or =X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is enabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = value > 0.0).

Parameter setting							ACH550 Relay assignment					
							Autochange enabled					
1401	**1402**	**1403**	**1410**	**1411**	**1412**	**8117**	**RO1**	**RO2**	**RO3**	**RO4**	**RO5**	**RO6**
31	31	X	X	X	X	1	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X
31	31	31	X	X	X	2	PFA	PFA	PFA	X	X	X
X	31	31	X	X	X	1	X	PFA	PFA	X	X	X
X	X	X	31	X	31	1	X	X	X	PFA	X	PFA
31	31	X	X	X	X	0**	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X

** = No auxiliary motors, but the autochange function is in use. Working as a standard PID-control.

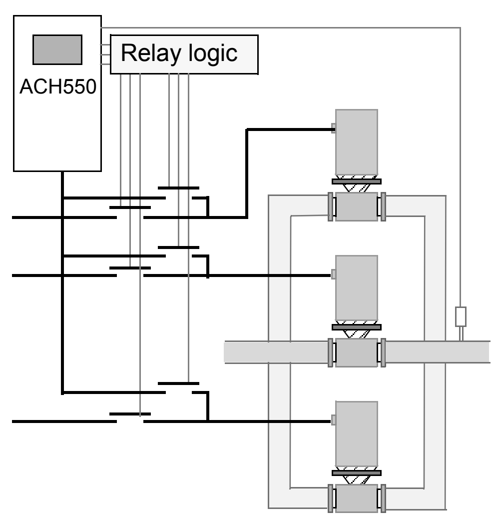
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
8118	**AUTOCHNG INTERV**	**-0.1…336.0 h**	**0.1 h**	**0.0 h (NOT SEL)**	✓

Controls operation of the Autochange function and sets the interval between changes.

- The Autochange time interval only applies to the time when the speed regulated motor is running.
- See parameter 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL for an overview of the Autochange function.
- The drive always coasts to stop when autochange is performed.
- Autochange enabled requires parameter 8120 INTERLOCKS = value > 0.

-0.1 = TEST MODE – Forces the interval to value 36…48 s.
0.0 = NOT SEL – Disables the Autochange function.
0.1…336 – The operating time interval (the time when the start signal is on) between automatic motor changes.

WARNING! When enabled, the Autochange function requires the interlocks (8120 INTERLOCKS = value > 0) enabled. During autochange the power output is interrupted and the drive coasts to stop, preventing damage to the contacts.



PFA with Autochange mode

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8119	**AUTOCHNG LEVEL**	**0.0…100.0%**	**0.1%**	**50.0%**	

Sets an upper limit, as a percent of output capacity, for the autochange logic. When the output from the PID/PFA control block exceeds this limit, autochange is prevented. For example, use this parameter to deny autochange when the Pump-Fan system is operating near maximum capacity.

Autochange overview

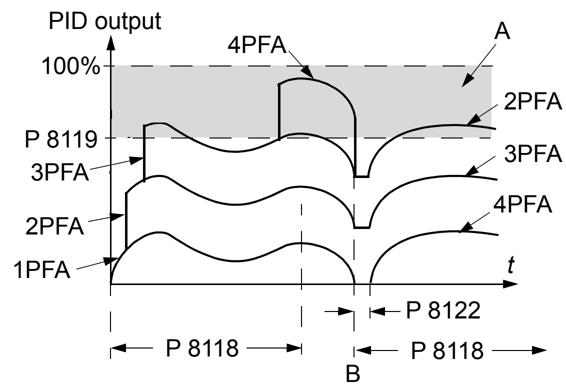
The purpose of the autochange operation is to equalize duty time between multiple motors used in a system. At each autochange operation:
- A different motor takes a turn connected to the ACH550 output – the speed regulated motor.
- The starting order of the other motors rotates.

The Autochange function requires:
- External switchgear for changing the drive's output power connections.
- Parameter 8120 INTERLOCKS = value > 0.

Autochange is performed when:
- The running time since the previous autochange reaches the time set by 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV.
- The PFA input is below the level set by this parameter, 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL.

Note: The ACH550 always coasts to stop when autochange is performed.

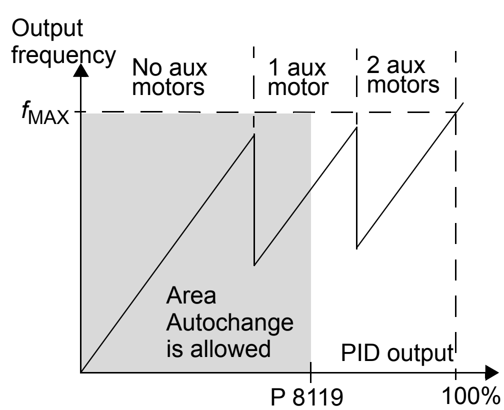
In an autochange, the Autochange function does all of the following (see the figure):
- Initiates a change when the running time, since the last autochange, reaches 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV, and PFA input is below limit 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL.
- Stops the speed regulated motor.
- Switches off the contactor of the speed regulated motor.
- Increments the starting order counter, to change the starting order for the motors.
- Identifies the next motor in line to be the speed regulated motor.
- Switches off the above motor's contactor, if the motor was running. Any other running motors are not interrupted.
- Switches on the contactor of the new speed regulated motor. The autochange switchgear connects this motor to the ACH550 power output.
- Delays motor start for the time 8122 PFA START DELAY.
- Starts the speed regulated motor.
- Identifies the next constant speed motor in the rotation.
- Switches the above motor on, but only if the new speed regulated motor had been running (as a constant speed motor) – This step keeps an equal number of motors running before and after autochange.
- Continues with normal PFA operation.



A = Area above 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL – autochange not allowed.
B = Autochange occurs.
1PFA, etc. = PID output associated with each motor.

Starting order counter

The operation of the starting-order counter:
- The relay output parameter definitions (1401…1403 and 1410…1412) establish the initial motor sequence. (The lowest parameter number with a value 31 (PFA) identifies the relay connected to 1PFA, the first motor, and so on.)
- Initially, 1PFA = speed regulated motor, 2PFA = 1st auxiliary motor, etc.
- The first autochange shifts the sequence to: 2PFA = speed regulated motor, 3PFA = 1st auxiliary motor, …, 1PFA = last auxiliary motor.
- The next autochange shifts the sequence again, and so on.
- If the autochange cannot start a needed motor because all inactive motors are interlocked, the drive displays an alarm (2015, PFA I LOCK).
- When ACH550 power supply is switched off, the counter preserves the current Autochange rotation positions in permanent memory. When power is restored, the Autochange rotation starts at the position stored in memory.
- If the PFA relay configuration is changed (or if the PFA enable value is changed), the rotation is reset. (See the first bullet above.)



Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8120	**INTERLOCKS**	**0…6**	**1**	**4 (DI4)**	✓

Defines operation of the Interlock function. When the Interlock function is enabled:
- An interlock is active when its command signal is absent.
- An interlock is inactive when its command signal is present.
- The ACH550 will not start if a start command occurs when the speed regulated motor's interlock is active – the control panel displays an alarm (2015, PFA I LOCK).

Wire each Interlock circuit as follows:
- Wire a contact of the motor's On/Off switch to the Interlock circuit – the drive's PFA logic can then recognize that the motor is switched off and start the next available motor.
- Wire a contact of the motor thermal relay (or other protective device in the motor circuit) to the Interlock input – the drive's PFA logic can then recognize that a motor fault is activated and stop the motor.

0 = NOT SEL – Disables the Interlock function. All digital inputs are available for other purposes.
- Requires 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0 (The Autochange function must be disabled if Interlock function is disabled.)

1 = DI1 – Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI1) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:
- the number of PFA relays [number of parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 with value = 31 (PFA)]
- the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).

No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled (P 8118)	Autochange enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2…DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3…DI6: Free	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2…DI6: Free
2	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4…DI6: Free	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3…DI6: Free
3	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4…DI6: Free
4	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free
5	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5: Fifth PFA Relay DI6: Free
6	Not allowed	DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5: Fifth PFA Relay DI6: Sixth PFA Relay

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
	2 = DI2 – Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI2) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on: • the number of PFA relays [number of parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 with value = 31 (PFA)] • the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).				

No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled (P 8118)	Autochange enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3…DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4…DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3…DI6: Free
2	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4…DI6: Free
3	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free
4	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free
5	Not allowed	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay
6	Not allowed	Not allowed

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**

3 = DI3 – Enables the Interlocks function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI3) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:
- the number of PFA relays [number of parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 with value = 31 (PFA)]
- the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).

No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled (P 8118)	Autochange enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4…DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4…DI6: Free
2	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free
3	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Third PFA Relay	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free
4	Not allowed	DI1…DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay
5…6	Not allowed	Not allowed

4 = DI4 – Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI4) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:
- the number of PFA relays [number of parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 with value = 31 (PFA)]
- the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).

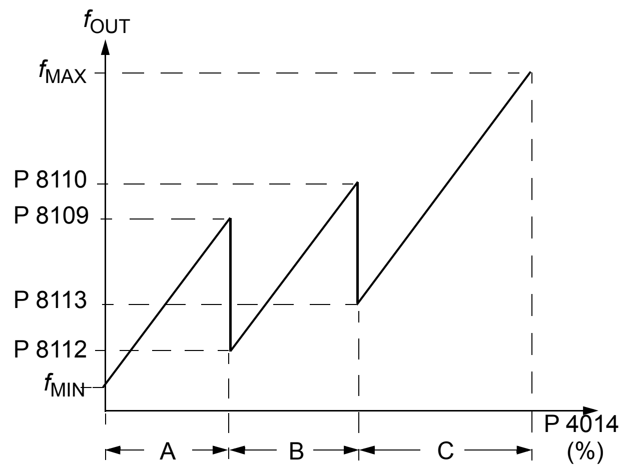
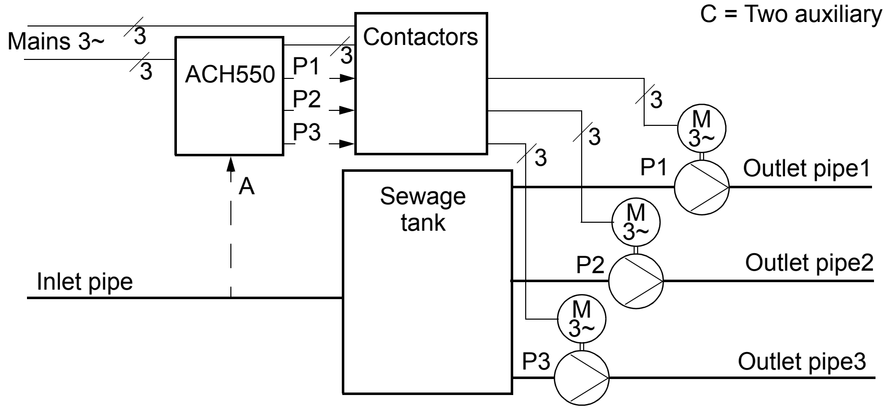
No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled (P 8118)	Autochange enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5…DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5…DI6: Free
2	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Second PFA Relay	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Free
3	Not allowed	DI1…DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Third PFA Relay
4…6	Not allowed	Not allowed

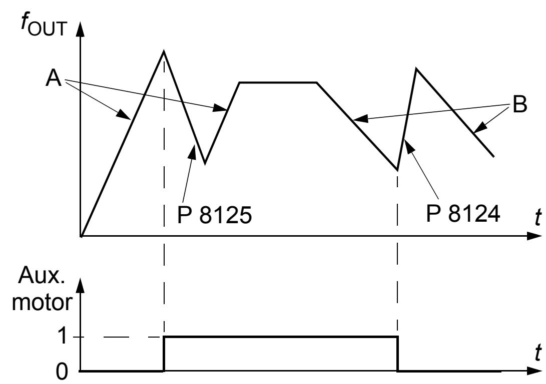
Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
	5 = DI5 – Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI5) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on: • the number of PFA relays [number of parameters 1401…1403 and 1410…1412 with value = 31 (PFA)] • the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).				

No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled (P 8118)	Autochange enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1…DI4: Free DI5: Speed Reg Motor DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1…DI4: Free DI5: Speed Reg Motor DI6: First PFA Relay	DI1…DI4: Free DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Free
2	Not allowed	DI1…DI4: Free DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Second PFA Relay
3…6	Not allowed	Not allowed

6 = DI6 – Enables the Interlock function and assigns digital input DI6 to the interlock signal for the speed regulated motor.
• Requires 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0.

No. PFA relays	Autochange disabled	Autochange enabled
0	DI1…DI5: Free DI6: Speed Reg Motor	Not allowed
1	Not allowed	DI1…DI5: Free DI6: First PFA Relay
2…6	Not allowed	Not allowed

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8121	**REG BYPASS CTRL**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (NO)**	
	Selects Regulator by-pass control. When enabled, Regulator by-pass control provides a simple control mechanism without a PID regulator. • Use Regulator by-pass control only in special applications. 0 = NO – Disables Regulator by-pass control. The drive uses the normal PFA reference: 1106 REF2 SELECT. 1 = YES – Enables Regulator by-pass control. • The process PID regulator is bypassed. Actual value of PID is used as the PFA reference (input). Normally EXT REF2 is used as the PFA reference. • The drive uses the feedback signal defined by 4014 FBK SEL (or 4114) for the PFA frequency reference. • The figure shows the relation between the control signal 4014 FBK SEL (OR 4114) and the speed regulated motor's frequency in a three-motor system. **Example:** In the diagram below, the pumping station's outlet flow is controlled by the measured inlet flow (A).  A = No auxiliary motors running B = One auxiliary motor running C = Two auxiliary motors running 				
8122	**PFA START DELAY**	**0.00…10.00 s**	**0.01 s**	**0.50 s**	
	Sets the start delay for speed regulated motors in the system. Using the delay, the drive works as follows: • Switches on the contactor of the speed regulated motor – connecting the motor to the ACH550 power output. • Delays motor start for the time 8122 PFA START DELAY. • Starts the speed regulated motor. • Starts auxiliary motors. See parameter 8115 for delay. **WARNING!** Motors equipped with star-delta starters require a PFA Start Delay. • After the ACH550 relay output switches a motor on, the star-delta starter must switch to the star-connection and then back to the delta-connection before the drive applies power. • So, the PFA Start Delay must be longer than the time setting of the star-delta starter.				

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8123	**PFA ENABLE**	**0, 1**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects PFA control. When enabled, PFA control: • Switches in, or out, auxiliary constant speed motors as output demand increases or decreases. Parameters 8109 START FREQ 1 to 8114 LOW FREQ 3 define the switch points in terms of the drive output frequency. • Adjusts the speed regulated motor output down, as auxiliary motors are added, and adjusts the speed regulated motor output up, as auxiliary motors are taken off line. • Provides Interlock functions, if enabled. • Requires 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:FREQ). 0 = NOT SEL – Disables PFA control. 1 = ACTIVE – Enables PFA control.				
8124	**ACC IN AUX STOP**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s (NOT SEL)**	
	Sets the PFA acceleration time for a zero-to-maximum frequency ramp. This PFA acceleration ramp: • Applies to the speed regulated motor, when an auxiliary motor is switched off. • Replaces the acceleration ramp defined in *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL*. • Applies only until the output of the regulated motor increases by an amount equal to the output of the switched off auxiliary motor. Then the acceleration ramp defined in *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL* applies. 0 = NOT SEL. 0.1…1800 – Activates this function using the value entered as the acceleration time. • A = speed regulated motor accelerating using *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL* parameters (2202 or 2205). • B = speed regulated motor decelerating using *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL* parameters (2203 or 2206). • At aux. motor start, speed regulated motor decelerates using 8125 DEC IN AUX START. • At aux. motor stop, speed regulated motor accelerates using 8124 ACC IN AUX STOP.  				
8125	**DEC IN AUX START**	**0.0…1800.0 s**	**0.1 s**	**0.0 s (NOT SEL)**	
	Sets the PFA deceleration time for a maximum-to-zero frequency ramp. This PFA deceleration ramp: • Applies to the speed regulated motor, when an auxiliary motor is switched on. • Replaces the deceleration ramp defined in *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL*. • Applies only until the output of the regulated motor decreases by an amount equal to the output of the auxiliary motor. Then the deceleration ramp defined in *Group 22: ACCEL/DECEL* applies. 0 = NOT SEL. 0.1…1800 – Activates this function using the value entered as the deceleration time. • See parameter 8124.				
8126	**TIMED AUTOCHNG**	**0…4**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	
	Sets the autochange using a Timed function. See parameter 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL. 0 = NOT SEL. 1 = TIMED FUNC 1 – Enables autochange when Timed function 1 is active. 2…4 = TIMED FUNC 2…4 – Enables autochange when Timed function 2…4 is active.				
8127	**MOTORS**	**1…7**	**1**	**2**	✓
	Sets the actual number of PFA controlled motors (maximum 7 motors, 1 speed regulated, 3 connected direct-on-line and 3 spare motors). • This value includes also the speed regulated motor. • This value must be compatible with the number of relays allocated to PFA if the Autochange function is used. • If Autochange function is not used, the speed regulated motor does not need to have a relay output allocated to PFA but it needs to be included in this value.				

Group 81: PFA Control					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
8128	**AUX START ORDER**	**1, 2**	**1**	**1 (EVEN RUNTIME)**	✓
	Sets the start order of the auxiliary motors. 1 = EVEN RUNTIME – Time sharing is active. Evens out the cumulative run time of the auxiliary motors. The start order depends on the run time: The auxiliary motor whose cumulative run time is shortest is started first, then the motor whose cumulative run time is the second shortest etc. When the demand drops, the first motor to be stopped is the one whose cumulative run time is longest. 2 = RELAY ORDER – The start order is fixed to be the order of the relays.				

Group 98: OPTIONS

This group configures for options, in particular, enabling serial communication with the drive.

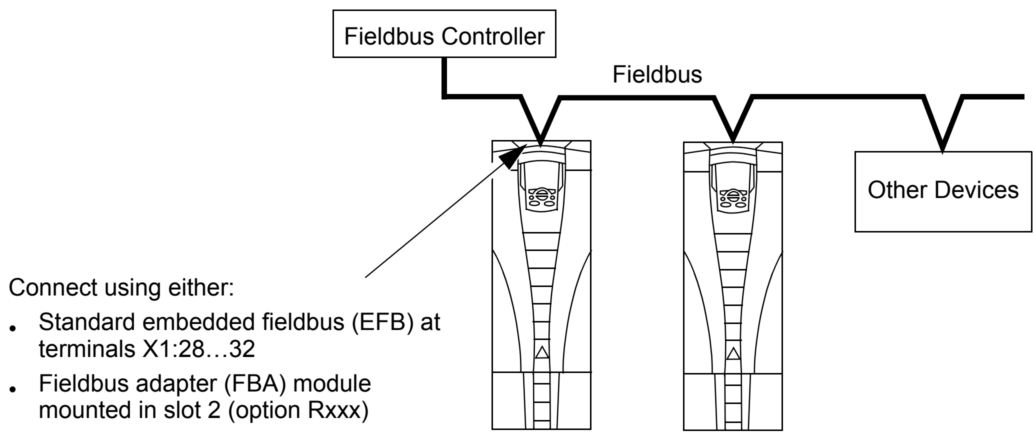
Group 98: Options					
Code	**Description**	**Range**	**Resolution**	**Default**	**S**
9802	**COMM PROT SEL**	**0…5**	**1**	**0 (NOT SEL)**	✓
	Selects the communication protocol. 0 = NOT SEL – No communication protocol selected. 1 = STD MODBUS – The drive communicates with Modbus via the RS485 channel (X1-communications, terminal). • See also *Group 53: EFB PROTOCOL*. 2 = N2 – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using Metasys N2 protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal). 3 = FLN – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using FLN protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal). 4 = EXT FBA – The drive communicates via a fieldbus adapter module in option slot 2 of the drive. • See also *Group 51: EXT COMM MODULE*. 5 = BACNET – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using BACnet protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal).				

Embedded fieldbus

Overview

The ACH550 can be set up to accept control from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ACH550 can either:

- Receive all of its control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – Using the RS485 interface at terminals X1:28…32 on the control board, a control system can communicate with the drive using any of the following protocols:
  - Modbus®
  - Metasys® N2
  - APOGEE® FLN
  - BACnet®
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – See section *Fieldbus adapter* on page *1-259*.

Control interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

<table>
<tr><th>Protocol</th><th>Control Interface</th><th>Reference for more information</th></tr>
<tr><td>Modbus</td><td>• Output Words
– Control word
– Reference1
– Reference2
• Input Words
– Status word
– Actual value 1
– Actual value 2
– Actual value 3
– Actual value 4
– Actual value 5
– Actual value 6
– Actual value 7
– Actual value 8</td><td>The content of these words is defined by profiles. For details on the profiles used, see ABB control profiles technical data</td></tr>
<tr><td>N2</td><td>• Binary output objects
• Analog output objects
• Binary input objects
• Analog input objects</td><td>N2 protocol technical data</td></tr>
<tr><td>FLN</td><td>• Binary output points
• Analog output points
• Binary input points
• Analog input points</td><td>FLN protocol technical data</td></tr>
<tr><td>BACnet</td><td>• Device management
• Binary output objects
• Analog output objects
• Binary input objects
• Analog input objects</td><td>BACnet protocol technical data</td></tr>
</table>

Note: The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the drive and appears as an input from the drive point of view.

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent down to the drives?
- What feedback information must be sent from the drives to the controlling system?

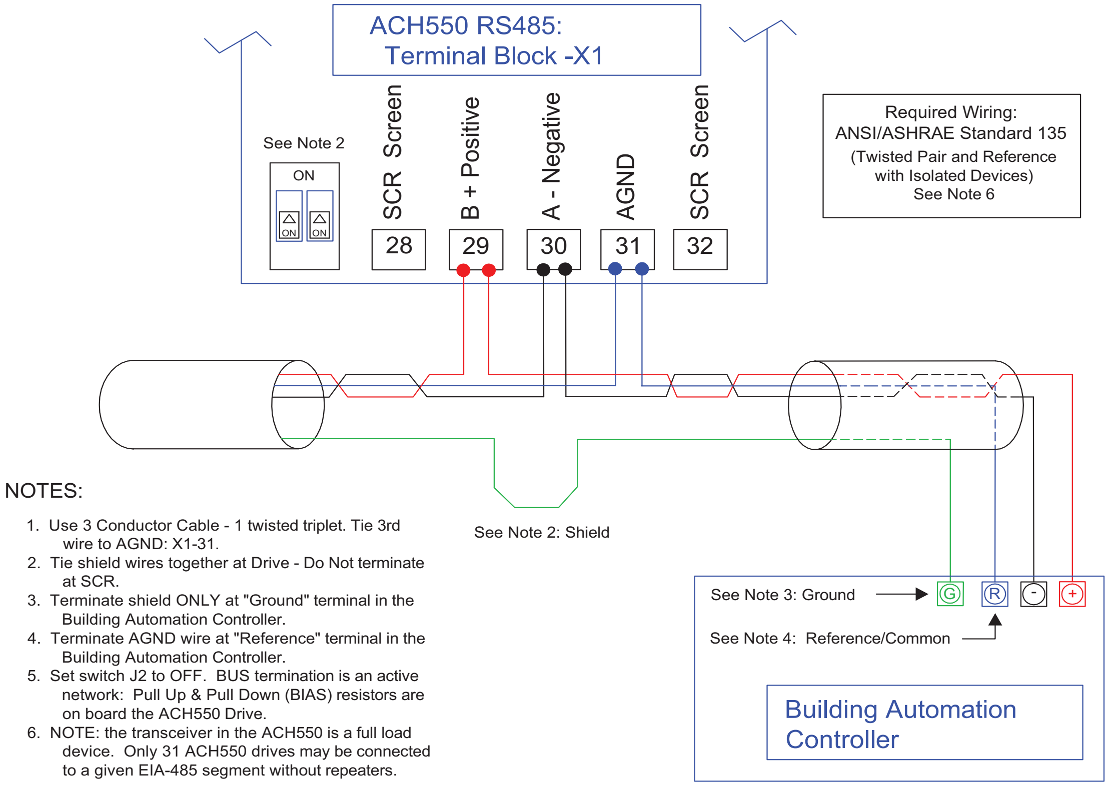
Mechanical and electrical installation – EFB

Warning! Connections should be made only while the drive is disconnected from the power source.

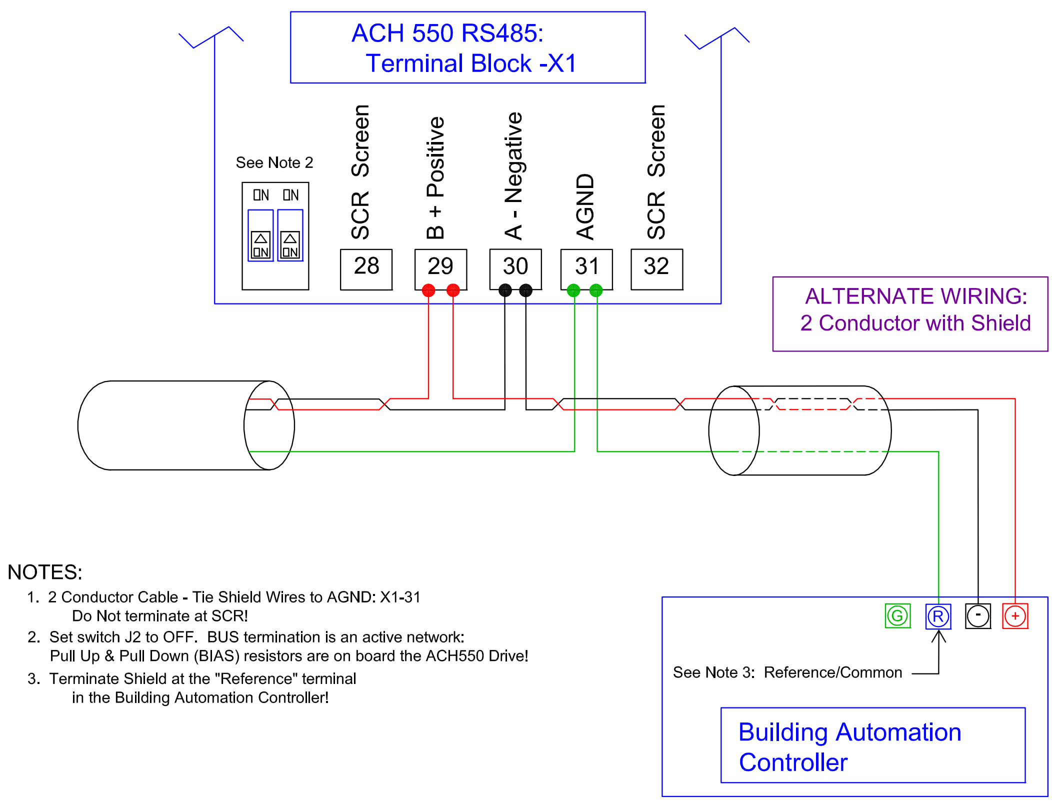
Drive terminals 28...32 are for RS485 communications.

- Use Belden 9842 or equivalent. Belden 9842 is a dual twisted, shielded pair cable with a wave impedance of 120 Ω.
- Use one of these twisted shielded pairs for the RS485 link. Use this pair to connect all A (-) terminals together and all B (+) terminals together.
- Use one of the wires in the other pair for the reference/common (terminal 31), leaving one wire unused.
- Do not directly ground the RS485 network at any point. Ground all devices on the network using their corresponding earthing terminals.
- As always, the grounding wires should not form any closed loops, and all the devices should be earthed to a common ground.
- Connect the RS485 link in a daisy-chained bus, without dropout lines.
- To reduce noise on the network, terminate the RS485 network using 120 Ω resistors at both ends of the network. Use the DIP switch to connect or disconnect the termination resistors. See following wiring diagram. The ACH550 termination resistor (J-2) are active terminators. This active circuit includes bins ("Pull-up" and "Pull-down") resistors.
- Connect the shield at each end of the cable to a drive. On one end, connect the shield to terminal 28, and on the other end connect to terminal 32. Do not connect the incoming and outgoing cable shields to the same terminals, as that would make the shielding continuous.
- For configuration information see the following:
  - *Communication setup – EFB* on page *1-189*.
  - *Activate drive control functions – EFB* on page *1-193*.
  - The appropriate EFB protocol specific technical data. For example, *Modbus protocol technical data* on page *1-239*.

Preferred wiring diagram



Alternate wiring diagram



Communication setup – EFB

Serial communication selection

To activate the serial communication, set parameter 9802 COMM PROTOCOL SEL =

- 1 (STD MODBUS).
- 2 (N2)
- 3 (FLN)
- 5 (BACNET)

Note: If you cannot see the desired selection on the panel, your drive does not have that protocol software in the application memory.

Serial communication configuration

Setting 9802 automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined below. In particular, note that the station ID may require adjustment.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Code</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="4">EFB Protocol Reference</th></tr>
<tr><th>Modbus</th><th>N2</th><th>FLN</th><th>BACnet</th></tr>
<tr><td>5301</td><td>EFB PROTOCOL ID
Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol.</td><td colspan="4">Do not edit. Any non-zero value entered for parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL, sets this parameter automatically. The format is: XXYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">5302</td><td rowspan="2">EFB STATION ID
Defines the node address of the RS485 link.</td><td colspan="3">When one of these protocols is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 1</td><td>When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 128</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Set each drive on the network with a unique value for this parameter.
Note: For a new address to take affect, the drive power must be cycled OR 5302 must first be set to 0 before selecting a new address. Leaving 5302 = 0 places the RS485 channel in reset, disabling communication.</td></tr>
</table>

Note: For the BACnet protocol, the ACH550 will function as a Master with MAC IDs in the range of 1 - 127. With MAC ID settings of 128 - 254, the drive is in Slave only behavior.

Code	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5303	EFB BAUD RATE Defines the communication speed of the RS485 link in kbits per second (kbits/s). 1.2 kbits/s 2.4 kbits/s 4.8 kbits/s 9.6 kbits/s 19.2 kbits/s 38.4 kbits/s 57.6 kbits/s 76.8 kbits/s	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is 9.6	9.6 Do not edit.	4.8 Do not edit.	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 38400.
5304	EFB PARITY Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the RS485 link communication. • The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. 0 = 8N1 – 8 data bits, No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – 8 data bits, No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – 8 data bits, Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – 8 data bits, Odd parity, one stop bit.	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 1	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0 Do not edit.		
5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE Selects the communication profile used by the EFB protocol. 0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to ABB Drives Profile (limited), as used in ACH400/550. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to ABB Drives Profile (full).	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0	N/A. When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0. Changing the value for this parameter has no affect on this protocol’s behavior.		
5306	EFB OK MESSAGES	This parameter indicates the number of valid application messages received at this drive. This count does not include MS/TP token passing and polling messages. (For such messages, see 5316).			
5307	EFB CRC ERRORS	This parameter indicates the number of CRC errors detected, in either the header or data CRCs.			
5308	EFB UART ERRORS	This parameter indicates the number of UART-related errors (framing, parity) detected.			

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Code</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="4">EFB Protocol Reference</th></tr>
<tr><th>Modbus</th><th>N2</th><th>FLN</th><th>BACnet</th></tr>
<tr><td>5309</td><td>EFB STATUS</td><td colspan="4">This parameter indicates the internal status of the EFB Protocol as follows:
• IDLE – EFB Protocol is configured but not receiving messages.
• TIMEOUT – Time between valid messages has exceeded the interval set by parameter 3019.
• OFFLINE – EFB Protocol is receiving messages NOT addressed to this drive.
• ONLINE – EFB Protocol is receiving messages addressed to this drive.
• RESET – EFB Protocol is in reset.
• LISTEN ONLY – EFB Protocol is in listen-only mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">5310</td><td rowspan="2">EFB PAR10</td><td rowspan="2">Not used for Comm setup.</td><td colspan="3">Sets the response turnaround time in milliseconds in addition to any fixed delay imposed by the protocol. When this protocol is selected, the default value is:</td></tr>
<tr><td>3 ms</td><td>0 ms</td><td>5 ms</td></tr>
<tr><td>5311</td><td>EFB PAR11</td><td colspan="3">Not used for Comm setup.</td><td>This parameter, together with parameter 5317, EFB PAR 17, sets BACnet Device Object Instance IDs:
• For the range 1 to 65,535: This parameter sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0.
• For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5311’s value plus 10,000 times 5317’s value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5314</td><td>EFB PAR14</td><td colspan="4">Not used for Comm setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5315</td><td>EFB PAR15</td><td colspan="4">Not used for Comm setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5316</td><td>EFB PAR 16</td><td colspan="3">Not used for Comm setup.</td><td>This parameter indicates the count of MS/TP tokens passed to this drive.</td></tr>
</table>

Code	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5317	EFB PAR17				This parameter works with parameter 5311 to set BACnet Device Object Instance IDs. See parameter 5311.

Note: After any changes to the communication settings, protocol must be reactivated by either cycling the drive power, or by setting parameter 5302 EFB STATION ID to 0 and then restoring the station ID (5302) or use Reinitialize Device Service.

Activate drive control functions – EFB

Controlling the drive

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. For the protocol-specific details, see the document supplied with the FBA module.

Start/stop direction control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Note: EXT1 = REF1 typically used for follower;
EXT2 = REF2 typically used for PID setpoint.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus[1]		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 selected.	40001 bits 0…3	40031 bits 0, 1	BO1	24	BV10
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext2 selected.	40001 bits 0…3	40031 bits 0, 1	BO1	24	BV10
1003	DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	Direction by fieldbus.	4002/ 4003[2]	40031 bit 3	BO2	22	BV11

1. For Modbus, the protocol reference can depend on the profile used, hence two columns in these tables. One column refers to the ABB Drives profile, selected when parameter 5305 = 0 (ABB DRV LIM) or 5305 = 2 (ABB DRV FULL). The other column refers to the DCU profile selected when parameter 5305 = 1 (DCU PROFILE). See *ABB control profiles technical data* section.
2. The reference provides direction control – a negative reference provides reverse rotation.

Input reference select

Using the fieldbus to provide input references to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Reference set selection by fieldbus.	40001 bit 11	40031 bit 5	BO5	26	BV13
1103	REF1 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 1 by fieldbus.	40002		AO1	60	AV16
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 2 by fieldbus.	40003		AO2	61	AV17

Reference scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the following, as appropriate:

- Modbus Register *40002* in the *Modbus protocol technical data* section.
- *Reference scaling* in the *ABB control profiles technical data* section.
- *N2 analog output objects* in the *N2 protocol technical data* section.
- The slope of points 60 and 61 in the *FLN protocol technical data* section.

Miscellaneous drive control

Using the fieldbus for miscellaneous drive control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1601	RUN ENABLE	7 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Run enable by fieldbus.	40001 bit 3	40031 bit 6 (inverted)	BO4	35	BV12
1604	FAULT RESET SEL	8 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus.	40001 bit 7	40031 bit 4	BO6	94	BV14
1606	LOCAL LOCK	8 (COMM)	Source for local lock selection is the fieldbus.	Does not apply	40031 bit 14			
1607	PARAM SAVE	1 (SAVE)	Saves altered parameters to memory (then value returns to 0).	41607	40032 bit 2	BO18	N/A[1]	
1608	START ENABLE 1	7 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 1 is the fieldbus Command word.	Does not apply.	40032 bit 2			BV20
1609	START ENABLE 2	7 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 2 is the fieldbus Command word.		40032 bit 3			BV21
2013	MIN TORQUE SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for minimum torque selection is the fieldbus.		40031 bit 15			
2014	MAX TORQUE SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for maximum torque selection is the fieldbus.					
2201	ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for ramp pair selection is the fieldbus.		40031 bit 10			

1. Use Memorize Point command.

Relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 0 or 00033		BO7	40	BO0
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 1 or 00034		BO8	41	BO1
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 2 or 00035		BO9	42	BO2
1410[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 4	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 3 or 00036		BO10	43	BO3
1411[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 5	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 4 or 00037		BO11	44	BO4
1412[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 6	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 5 or 00038		BO12	45	BO5

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

For example: To control relays 1 and 2 using serial communication:
Set parameters 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 and 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 35 (COMM).

Then, for example using N2:

- To turn Relay 1 On: Force object B07 to On.
- To turn Relay 2 On: Force object B08 to On.
- To turn both Relay 1 and 2 On: Force objects B07 and B08 On.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	40122	0122		BI4… BI6	76… 78	BI0… BI2
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4…6 status.	40123	0123		BI7… BI9	79… 81	BI3… BI5

Analog output control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–		–	–	–
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		40135		AO14	46	AO0
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–		–	–	–
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		40136		AO15	47	AO1

PID control setpoint source

Use the following settings to select the fieldbus as the setpoint source for PID loops:

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
4010	SET POINT SEL (Set 1)	8 (COMM VALUE 1) 9 (COMM + AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Setpoint is either: • Input Reference 2 (+/-/* AI1). Control requires parameter 1106 value = comm. • Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = pid1 out and parameter 4010 value = comm.	40003		AO2	61	AV17
4110	SET POINT SEL (Set 2)							
4210	SET POINT SEL (Ext/ Trim)							

Communication fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the drive's action if serial communication is lost.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description
3018	COMM FAULT FUNC	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)	Set for appropriate drive response.
3019	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.	

Feedback from the drive – EFB

Pre-defined feedback

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see input word/point/object listings in the technical data for the appropriate protocol starting on page 1-205.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0102	SPEED	40102	AI3	5	AV0
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	40103	AI1	2	AV1
0104	CURRENT	40104	AI4	6	AV4
0105	TORQUE	40105	AI5	7	AV5
0106	POWER	40106	AI6	8	AV6
0107	DC BUS VOLT	40107	AI11	13	AV2
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	40109	AI12	14	AV3
0115	KWH COUNTER	40115	AI8	10	AV8
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	40118	BI10, BI11, BI12,	70, 71, 72	BI6, BI7, BI8
0122	RO1-3 STATUS	40122	BI4, BI5, BI6	76, 77, 78	BI0, BI1, BI2
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	40301 bit 0	BI1	23	BV0
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	40301 bit 2	BI2	21	BV1

Note: With Modbus, any parameter can be accessed using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Mailbox read/write

The ACH550 provides a “Mailbox” function to access parameters that have not been pre-defined by the protocol. Using mailbox, any drive parameter can be identified and read. Mailbox can also be used to adjust parameter settings by writing a value to any parameter identified. The following table describes the use of this function.

Name	Description	Protocol Reference			
		Modbus[1]	N2	FLN	BACnet
Mailbox Parameter	Enter the number of the drive parameter to access.	Does not apply.	AO19	95	AV25
Mailbox Data	Contains the parameter value after a read, or enter the desired parameter value for a write.		AO20	96	AV26
Mailbox Read	A binary value triggers a read – the value of the "Mailbox Parameter" appears in "Mailbox data".		BO19	97	BV15
Mailbox Write	A binary value triggers a write – the drive value for the "Mailbox Parameter" changes to the value in "Mailbox data".		BO20	98	BV16

1. As noted above, Modbus provides direct access to all parameters using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Actual value scaling

The scaling of actual values can be protocol dependent. In general, for Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See *Complete parameter descriptions* section for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the *Complete parameter descriptions* section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm[1]	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz[2]	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Although Actual Value scaling could differ from the above for the N2 and FLN protocols, it currently does not. To confirm, see the following sections, as appropriate:

- *N2 analog input objects* in the *N2 protocol technical data* section.
- *Scaling drive feedback values* in the *FLN protocol technical data* section.

Scaling does not apply for the BACnet protocol.

Diagnostics – EFB

Fault queue for drive diagnostics

For general ACH550 diagnostics information, see *Diagnostics* on page *1-279*. The three most recent ACH550 faults are reported to the fieldbus as defined below. For specific ACH550 fault codes, see *Fault listing* on page *1-280*.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0401	Last Fault	40401	17	90	AV18
0412	Previous Fault 1	40402	18	91	AV19
0413	Previous Fault 2	40403	19	92	AV20

Serial communication diagnostics

Network problems can be caused by multiple sources. Some of these sources are:

- Loose connections
- Incorrect wiring (including swapped wires)
- Bad grounding
- Duplicate station numbers
- Incorrect setup of drives or other devices on the network

The major diagnostic features for fault tracing on an EFB network include Group 53 EFB Protocol parameters 5306…5309. The *Complete parameter descriptions* section describes these parameters in detail.

Diagnostic situations

The sub-sections below describe various diagnostic situations – the problem symptoms and corrective actions.

Normal operation

During normal network operation, 5306…5309 parameter values act as follows at each drive:

- 5306 EFB OK MESSAGES advances (advances for each application message properly received and addressed to this drive).
- 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when an invalid message CRC is received).
- 5308 EFB UART ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when character format errors are detected, such as parity or framing errors).
- 5309 EFB status value varies depending on network traffic.
- BACnet protocol: 5316 EFB PAR 16 (MS/TP token counter) advances for each token passed to this drive. (Does not apply for other protocols.)

Loss of communication

The action taken by the ACH550, if communication is lost, is configured in *Communication fault*. The parameters are 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME. The *Complete parameter descriptions* section on page *1-80* describes these parameters.

No master station on line

If no master station is on line: Neither the EFB OK MESSAGES nor the errors (5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS) increase on any of the stations.

To correct:

- Check that a network master is connected and properly programmed on the network.
- Verify that the cable is connected, and is not cut or short circuited.

Duplicate stations

If two or more stations have duplicate numbers:

- Two or more drives cannot be addressed.
- Every time there is a read or write to one particular station, the value for 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS or 5308 EFB UART ERRORS advances.

To correct: Check all station numbers and edit conflicting values.

Swapped wires

If the communication wires are swapped (terminal A on one drive is connected to terminal B on another):

- The value of 5306 EFB OK MESSAGES does not advance.
- The values of 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS are advancing.

To correct: Check that the EIA-485 lines are not swapped.

Fault 28 – Serial 1 Err

If the drive's control panel shows fault code 28 "SERIAL 1 ERR", check for either of the following:

- The master system is down. To correct, resolve problem with master system.
- The communication connection is bad. To correct, check communication connection at the drive.
- The time-out selection for the drive is too short for the given installation. The master is not polling the drive within the specified time-out delay. To correct, increase the time set by parameter 3019 COMM FAULT TIME.

Fault 31 – EFB1

For BACnet: If the drive's control panel shows fault code 31 "EFB1", the drive has an invalid Device Object Instance ID. To correct, use parameters 5311 and 5317 and establish a unique drive ID that is in the range 1 to 4,194,303.

Faults 31…33 – EFB1…EFB3

Except as noted above, these three EFB fault codes (listed for the drive in *Diagnostics* on page *1-279*, fault codes 31…33) are not used.

Intermittent off-line occurrences

The problems described above are the most common problems encountered with ACH550 serial communication. Intermittent problems might also be caused by:

- Marginally loose connections,
- Wear on wires caused by equipment vibrations,
- Insufficient grounding and shielding on both the devices and on the communication cables.
- Two conductor wire (plus shield) is in use instead of the recommended three conductor wire (plus shield), see page *1-188*.

Troubleshooting

The troubleshooting table below should be followed in order from top to bottom by parameter number. Begin the troubleshooting process by displaying the first parameter in the table (5308) and determining if the display on the panel exhibits the symptom. If it does, review the possible cause(s) and take the necessary corrective action(s). Once the symptom for this parameter is eliminated, continue to the next parameter and repeat the process until you have reached the end.

Parameter Number	Display on Panel (Symptom)	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
5308 UART ERRORS	Rapidly Increasing Numeric Value [1]	1. Duplicate Addresses	1. Ensure EFB PROTOCOL parameters 5302 [also 5311 & 5317 when using BACnet] are unique. 5302 must be a unique address on the segment. [5311 & 5317 must be unique addresses on the network when using BACnet.]
		2. Swapped Wires	2. Swap wires B(+) & A(-).
		3. Incorrect Baud Rate	3. Adjust parameter 5303 & Cycle power.
		4. Incorrect Parity	4. Change parity using parameter 5304 & cycle power.
		5. Too many devices on wire	5. Limit to 31 devices on 1 segment.
		6. Incorrect Bias	6. Turn off VFD termination resistors (move jumpers). Install loose resistor recommended by the DCS controls company. (Terminate final device on the trunk.)
		7. Noise on EIA-485 wire	7. Install EIA-485 (3 conductor shielded) data grade cable communications wire. See drawings on page 1-188.
		8. Blown EIA-485 transceiver	8. Find and correct ground loop or high voltage problems before replacing any component assemblies. Perform the following steps to determine if the EIA-485 transceiver is damaged. a. Power unit down. b. Remove bus wires and retighten connections. c. Turn bus termination ON. d. Measure impedance between B(+) & A(-). ACH550 164 ohms +/- 5% If measurements are not within the specified range the EIA-485 transceiver is bad, replace the assembly containing the EIA-485 port.
5307 (5007) DV CRC ERR	Rapidly Increasing Numeric Value [1]	1. Duplicate Addresses	1. See Corrective Action 1. Parameter Number 5308
		2. Too many devices on wire	2. Limit to 31 unit loads on 1 segment (ACH550 = 1 unit load)
		3. Noise on EIA-485 wire	3. See Corrective Action 7. Parameter Number 5308

Parameter Number	Display on Panel (Symptom)	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
5309 (5009) DV STATUS	IDLE	1. No network connection 2. Blown EIA-485 transceiver 3. Wrong application number (FLN only)	1. Land communication wires as shown in drawings on page 1-188. Check Repeater (if installed onsite). 2. See Corrective Action 8. Parameter Number 5308. 3. Change application number in the Siemens field panel.
5316 (5016) DV PAR 16 (BACnet Only)	Not Increasing Numeric Value	1. Drive device address parameter 5302 is set to 128 or greater. 2. Max Masters is set too low on all drives.	1. Change parameter 5302 to a unique value below 128. 2. Change Max Masters property at all devices on bus to 127.
5306 (5006) DV OK MSG	OK Message Counter not increasing [1]	1. Master/Client not communicating with drive. 2. Failed router	1. Add device and points to the building control system. 2. Replace router.

1. Reset by pressing UP & DOWN arrows simultaneously in edit mode. Save change by pressing ENTER.

N2 protocol technical data

Overview

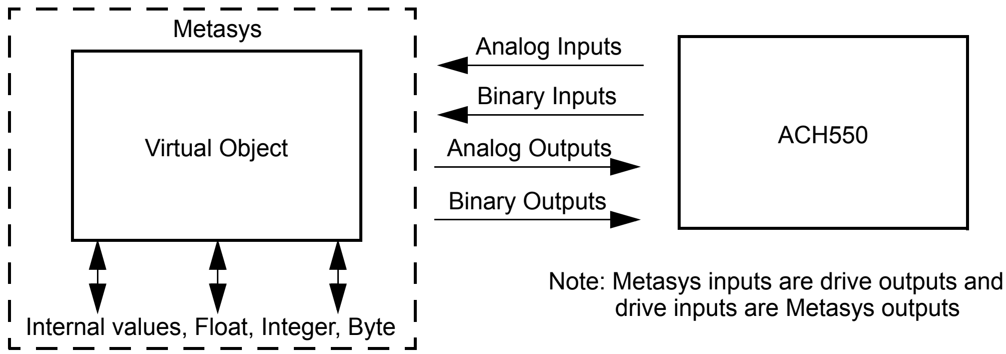
The N2 Fieldbus connection to the ACH550 drives is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The N2 Fieldbus protocol is a master-slave type, serial communication protocol, used by the Johnson Controls Metasys® system. In the Metasys architecture the N2 Fieldbus connects object interfaces and remote controllers to Network Control Units (NCUs).

The N2 Fieldbus can also be used to connect ACH550 drives to the Metasys Companion product line.

This section describes the use of the N2 Fieldbus with the ACH550 drives’ connection and does not describe the protocol in detail.

Supported features

In the N2 Fieldbus protocol the ACH550 drive appears as a “virtual object”.



A virtual object is made up of:

- Analog Inputs
- Binary Inputs
- Analog Outputs
- Binary Outputs
- Internal values for Floating point, Integer, and Byte values.

The ACH550 drive does not support N2 Fieldbus communication “internal values”.

All of the Analog and Binary I/O objects are listed below, starting with *N2 analog input objects* below.

Analog Input – The analog input objects support the following features:

- Analog Input actual value in engineering units
- Low Alarm limit
- Low Warning limit
- High Warning limit
- High Alarm limit
- Differential value for the hysteresis of the Alarms and Warnings

- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Alarm Enabled
- Warning Enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Binary Input – The binary input objects support the following features:

- Binary Input actual value
- Normal / Alarm state specification
- Alarm Enabled
- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Analog Output – The analog output objects support the following features:

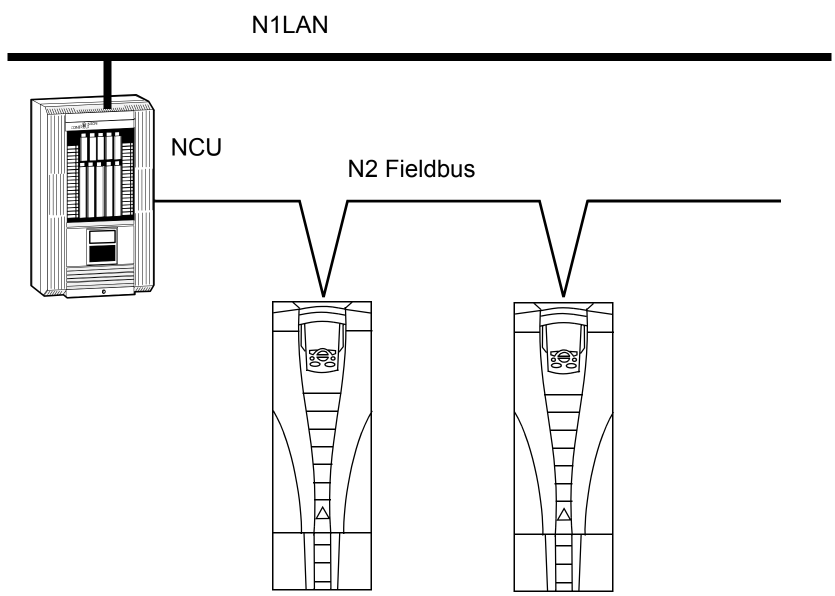
- Analog Output value in engineering units
- Override value is used to change the Analog Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

Binary Output – The binary output objects support the following features:

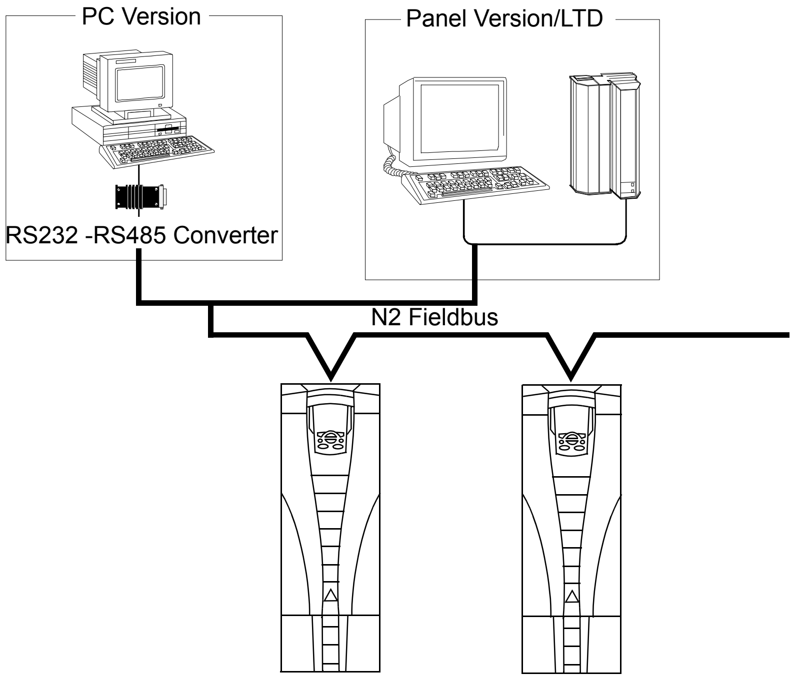
- Binary Output value
- Override value is used to change the Binary Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

Metasys integration

The following diagram shows the drives' integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys system.



The following diagram shows the drives' integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys Companion system.



On the N2 Fieldbus each ACH550 drive can be accessed by the full complement of Metasys FMS features, including Change-of-State (COS) monitoring, alarm notification, scheduling, trend, and totalization.

On one N2 Fieldbus segment there can be up to 32 nodes while integrating ACH550 drives with Johnson Controls Metasys.

Drive device type

For the Metasys and Metasys Companion products, the device type for the ACH550 drive is VND.

N2 analog input objects

The following table lists the N2 Analog Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI1	OUTPUT FREQUENCY	0103	10	Hz	0…250
AI2	RATED SPEED	Note 1	10	%	0 …100
AI3	SPEED	0102	1	rpm	0 …9999
AI4	CURRENT	0104	10	A	0…9999
AI5	TORQUE	0105	10	%	-200…200
AI6	POWER	0106	10	kW	0…9999
AI7	DRIVE TEMPERATURE	0110	10	°C	0 …125
AI8	KILOWATT HOURS	0115	1	kWh	0…65535

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI9	MEGAWATT HOURS	0141	1	MWh	0…65535
AI10	RUN TIME	0114	1	H	0…65535
AI11	DC BUS VOLTAGE	0107	1	V	0…999
AI12	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	0109	1	V	0…999
AI13	PRC PID FEEDBACK	0130	10	%	0…100
AI14	PRC PID DEVIATION	0132	10	%	0…100
AI15	EXT PID FEEDBACK	0131	10	%	0…100
AI16	EXT PID DEVIATION	0133	10	%	0…100
AI17	LAST FAULT	0401	1		fault code
AI18	PREV FAULT	0402	1		fault code
AI19	OLDEST FAULT	0403	1		fault code
AI20	AI 1 ACTUAL	0120	10	%	0…100
AI21	AI 2 ACTUAL	0121	10	%	0…100
AI22	AO 1 ACTUAL	0124	10	mA	0…20
AI23	AO 2 ACTUAL	0125	10	mA	0…20
AI24	MOTOR TEMP	0145	1	°C	0…200
AI25	REVOLUTION CNT	0142	1	MREV	0…32767

1. RATED SPEED is a percent of maximum frequency (parameter 2008) if the drive is in scalar mode, and is a percent of maximum speed (parameter 2002) in speed mode.

N2 binary input objects

The following table lists the N2 Binary Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI1	STOP/RUN	Status Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Drive Running
BI2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Status Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BI3	FAULT STATUS	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = Drive Fault
BI4	RELAY 1 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI5	RELAY 2 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI6	RELAY 3 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI7	RELAY 4 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI8	RELAY 5 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI9	RELAY 6 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI10	INPUT 1 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI11	INPUT 2 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI12	INPUT 3 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI13	INPUT 4 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI14	INPUT 5 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI15	INPUT 6 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI16	EXTERNAL 2 SELECT	Status Word	0 = EXT1 = EXT2
BI17	HAND/AUTO	Status Word	0 = AUTO, 1 = HAND
BI18	ALARM	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = ALARM
BI19	MAINTENANCE REQ	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = MAINT REQ
BI20	DRIVE READY	Status Word	0 = Not Ready, 1 = Ready
BI21	AT SETPOINT	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = At Setpoint
BI22	RUN ENABLED	Status Word	0 = Not Enabled, 1 = Enabled
BI23	N2 LOCAL MODE	Status Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2 Local
BI24	N2 CONTROL SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI25	N2 REF1 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI26	N2 REF2 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes

N2 analog output objects

The following table lists the N2 Analog Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Outputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AO1	REFERENCE 1	Reference 1	10	%	0…100
AO2	REFERENCE 2	Reference 2	10	%	0…100
AO3	ACCEL TIME 1	2202	10	s	0.1…1800
AO4	DECEL TIME 1	2203	10	s	0.1…1800
AO5	CURRENT LIMIT	2003	10	A	0…1.3*I_{2N}
AO6	PID1-CONT GAIN	4001	10	%	0.1…100
AO7	PID1-CONT I-TIME	4002	10	s	0.1…600
AO8	PID1-CONT D-TIME	4003	10	s	0…10
AO9	PID1-CONT D FILTER	4004	10	s	0…10
AO10	PID2-CONT GAIN	4101	10	%	0.1…100
AO11	PID2-CONT I-TIME	4102	10	s	0.1…600
AO12	PID2-CONT D-TIME	4103	10	s	0…10
AO13	PID2-CONT D FILTER	4104	10	s	0…10
AO14	COMMAND AO 1	135	10	%	0…100
AO15	COMMAND AO 2	136	10	%	0…100
AO16	EXT PID SETPOINT	4211	10	%	0…100
AO17	SPD OUT MIN	2001/2007	10	%	0…200
AO18	SPD OUT MAX	2002/2008	10	%	0…200
AO19	MAILBOX PARAMETER		1		0…65535
AO20	MAILBOX DATA		1		0…65535

N2 binary output objects

The following table lists the N2 Binary Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Outputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BO1	STOP/START	Command Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Start to Speed
BO2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Command Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BO3	PANEL LOCK	Command Word	0 = Open, 1 = Locked
BO4	RUN ENABLE	Command Word	0 = Enable, 1 = Disable
BO5	REF1/REF2 SELECT	Command Word	0 = Ref1, 1 = Ref2
BO6	FAULT RESET	Command Word	Change 0 -> 1 Resets
BO7	COMMAND RO 1	134 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO8	COMMAND RO 2	134 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO9	COMMAND RO 3	134 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO10	COMMAND RO 4	134 (bit mask 08)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO11	COMMAND RO 5	134 (bit mask 10)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO12	COMMAND RO 6	134 (bit mask 20)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO13	RESET RUN TIME	114 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset Run Time)
BO14	RESET KWH COUNT	115 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset kWh Count)
BO15	PRC PID SELECT	4027 (indirectly)	0 = SET2, 1 = SET2
BO16	N2 LOCAL CTL (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO17	N2 LOCAL REF (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO18	SAVE PARAMETERS	1607 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Save Parameters)
BO19	READ MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes
BO20	WRITE MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes

1. N2 LOCAL CTL and N2 LOCAL REF have priority over drive input terminals. Use these binary outputs for temporary N2 control of the drive when COMM is not the selected control source.

DDL file for NCU

The listing below is the Data Definition Language (DDL) file for ACH550 drives used with the Network Control Units.

This listing is useful when defining drive I/O objects to the Network Controller Units.

Below is the ACH550.DDL file listing.

```
*******************************************************************
*  ABB Drives, ACH 550 Variable Frequency Drive
*******************************************************************
CSMODEL "ACH_550","VND"

AITITLE "Analog_Inputs"
BITITLE "Binary_Inputs"
AOTITLE "Analog_Outputs"
BOTITLE "Binary_Outputs"
```

```
CSAI "AI1",N,N,"FREQ_ACT","Hz"
CSAI "AI2",N,N,"PCT_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI3",N,N,"SPEED","RPM"
CSAI "AI4",N,N,"CURRENT","A"
CSAI "AI5",N,N,"TORQUE","%"
CSAI "AI6",N,N,"POWER","kW"
CSAI "AI7",N,N,"DRV_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI8",N,N,"ENERGY_k","kWh"
CSAI "AI9",N,N,"ENERGY_M","MWh"
CSAI "AI10",N,N,"RUN_TIME","H"
CSAI "AI11",N,N,"DC_VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI12",N,N,"VOLT_ACT","V"
CSAI "AI13",N,N,"PID1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI14",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI15",N,N,"PID2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI16",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI17",N,N,"LAST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI18",N,N,"PREV_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI19",N,N,"1ST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI20",N,N,"AI_1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI21",N,N,"AI_2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI22",N,N,"AO_1_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI23",N,N,"AO_2_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI24",N,N,"MTR_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI25",N,N,"REVL_CNT",""

CSBI "BI1",N,N,"STOP/RUN","STOP","RUN"
CSBI "BI2",N,N,"FWD/REV","FWD","REV"
CSBI "BI3",N,N,"FAULT","OK","FLT"
CSBI "BI4",N,N,"RELAY_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI5",N,N,"RELAY_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI6",N,N,"RELAY_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI7",N,N,"RELAY_4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI8",N,N,"RELAY_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI9",N,N,"RELAY_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI10",N,N,"INPUT_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI11",N,N,"INPUT_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI12",N,N,"INPUT_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI13",N,N,"INPUT_4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI14",N,N,"INPUT_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI15",N,N,"INPUT_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI16",N,N,"EXT1/2","EXT1","EXT2"
CSBI "BI17",N,N,"HND/AUTO","HAND","AUTO"
CSBI "BI18",N,N,"ALARM","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI19",N,N,"MNTNCE_R","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI20",N,N,"DRV_REDY","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI21",N,N,"AT_SETPT","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI22",N,N,"RUN_ENAB","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI23",N,N,"N2_LOC_M","AUTO","N2_L"
CSBI "BI24",N,N,"N2_CTRL","NO","YES"
```

```
CSBI "BI25",N,N,"N2_R1SRC","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI26",N,N,"N2_R2SRC","NO","YES"
CSAO "AO1",Y,Y,"REF_1","%"
CSAO "AO2",Y,Y,"REF_2","%"
CSAO "AO3",Y,Y,"ACCEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO4",Y,Y,"DECEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO5",Y,Y,"CURR_LIM","A"
CSAO "AO6",Y,Y,"PID1_GN","%"
CSAO "AO7",Y,Y,"PID1_I","s"
CSAO "AO8",Y,Y,"PID1_D","s"
CSAO "AO9",Y,Y,"PID1_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO10",Y,Y,PID2_GN","%"
CSAO "AO11",Y,Y,"PID2_I","s"
CSAO "AO12",Y,Y,"PID2_D","s"
CSAO "AO13",Y,Y,"PID2_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO14",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_1","%"
CSAO "AO15",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_2","%"
CSAO "AO16",Y,Y,"PI2_STPT","%"
CSAO "AO17",Y,Y,"MIN_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO18",Y,Y,"MAX_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO19",Y,Y,"MB_PARAM",""
CSAO "AO20",Y,Y,"MB_DATA",""
CSBO "BO1",Y,Y,"START","STOP","START"
CSBO "BO2",Y,Y,"REVERSE","FWD","REV"
CSBO "BO3",Y,Y,"PAN_LOCK","OPEN","LOCKED"
CSBO "BO4",Y,Y,"RUN_ENAB","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO5",Y,Y,"R1/2_SEL","EXT_1","EXT_2"
CSBO "BO6",Y,Y,"FLT_RSET","-","RESET"
CSBO "BO7",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_1","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO8",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_2","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO9",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_3","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO10",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_4","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO11",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_5","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO12",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_6","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO13",Y,Y,"RST_RTIM","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO14",Y,Y,"RST_KWH","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO15",Y,Y,"PID_SEL","SET1","SET2"
CSBO "BO16",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_C","AUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO17",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_R","EUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO18",Y,Y,"SAV_PRMS","OFF","SAVE"
CSBO "BO19",Y,Y,"READ_MB","NO","READ"
CSBO "BO20",Y,Y,"WRITE_MB","NO","WRITE"
```

FLN protocol technical data

Overview

The FLN fieldbus connection to the ACH550 drives is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The FLN (Floor Level Network) Fieldbus protocol is a serial communication protocol, used by the Siemens APOGEE® system. The ACH550 interface is specified in Siemens application 2734.

Supported features

The ACH550 supports all required FLN features.

Reports

The ACH550 provides seven pre-defined reports. Using a report request generated from the FLN fieldbus controller, select one of the following sets of points. By providing views of selected points, these reports are often easier to work with than views of the full point database.

ABB ACH 550

FLN ABB ACH 550 Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
02	LAO	APPLICATION	
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	
29	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	

Startup

FLN Startup Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
21	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
22	LDO	FWD.REV CMD	
23	LDI	STOP.RUN	
24	LDO	CMD STP.STRT	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
26	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
35	LDO	ENA.DIS CMD	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	
60	LAO	INPUT REF1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF2	
68	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	
69	LDO	FLN LOC REF	

FLN Startup Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
94	LDO	RESET FAULT	

Overview

FLN Overview Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
03	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
04	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	
05	LAI	SPEED	
06	LAI	CURRENT	
07	LAI	TORQUE	
08	LAI	POWER	
09	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	
10	LAI	DRIVE KWH	
11	LAI	DRIVE MWH	
12	LAI	RUN TIME	
13	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	
14	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	
17	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	
18	LAI	MREV COUNTER	
21	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	
23	LDI	STOP.RUN	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
27	LDI	DRIVE READY	
28	LDI	AT SETPOINT	
33	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	
37	LDI	FLN CTL SRC	
38	LDI	FLN REF1 SRC	
39	LDI	FLN REF2 SRC	
86	LDI	OK.ALARM	
87	LDI	OK.MAINT	
93	LDI	OK.FAULT	

Drive I/O

FLN Drive I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
40	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
41	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	
42	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	
43	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	
44	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	
45	LDO	RO 6 COMMAND	
46	LAO	AO 1 COMMAND	
47	LAO	AO 2 COMMAND	
70	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	
71	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	
72	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	
73	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	
74	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	
75	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	
76	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	
77	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	
78	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	
79	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	
80	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	
81	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Drive Config

FLN Drive Config. Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	
48	LDO	RST RUN TIME	
49	LDO	RESET KWH	
59	LDO	LOCK PANEL	
66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	

FLN Drive Config. Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	
95	LAO	MBOX PARAM	
96	LAO	MBOX DATA	
97	LDO	MBOX READ	
98	LDO	MBOX WRITE	

Process PID

FLN Process PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
15	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
16	LAI	PRC PID DEV	
50	LAO	PRC PID GAIN	
51	LAO	PRC PID ITIM	
52	LAO	PRC PID DTIM	
53	LAO	PRC PID DFIL	
54	LDO	PRC PID SEL	
60	LAO	INPUT REF1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF2	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

External PID

FLN External PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
55	LAO	EXT PID GAIN	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
56	LAO	EXT PID ITIM	
57	LAO	EXT PID DTIM	
58	LAO	EXT PID DFIL	
62	LAO	EXT PID STPT	
63	LAI	EXT PID FBCK	
64	LAI	EXT PID DEV	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	

FLN External PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Scaling drive feedback values

Feedback values are provided with units of percent, where 0% and 100% correspond to the range of the sensor being used to measure the control variable. These points have default units in Hz. If other units are required:

- Unbundle these points with appropriate slopes and intercepts.
- The new intercept equals the lowest value of the desired range.
- Calculate the new slope as follows:

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range, i.e. high - low values) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{(60 Hz - 0 Hz) x (0.01)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.006$$

Example – You are controlling water temperature from a cooling tower using the ACH550 to control a fan. The temperature sensor has a range of 30 to 250 degrees Fahrenheit.

To unbundle the set point (INPUT REF 2), for commanding in degrees Fahrenheit, where 0…60 Hz is equal to 30…250° F:

New Intercept = 30 (the temperature that corresponds to 0%)

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{(250^\circ\text{ F - }30^\circ\text{ F) x (0.1)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.22$$

To unbundle the feedback (PRC PID FBCK) for monitoring in degrees Fahrenheit:

New Intercept = 30

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{(250^\circ\text{ F - }30^\circ\text{ F) x (0.01)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.022$$

Loop gains

PRC PID GAIN (Point 50) and PRC PID ITIM (Point 51) are PID parameters similar to the P and I gains in the APOGEE TECs. Because the ABB PI loop and the Siemens loop are structured differently, there is no a one-to-one correspondence between the gains. The following formulas allow translation from ABB gains to Siemens gains and vice versa:

- To convert from ABB PI gains to Siemens P and I gains:

$$P\ GAIN_{Siemens} = PI\ GAIN_{ABB} \times 0.0015$$

$$I\ GAIN_{Siemens} = \frac{PI\ GAIN_{ABB}}{PI\ GAIN_{ABB}} \times 0.0015$$

- To convert from Siemens P and I gains to ABB PI gains:

$$P\ GAIN_{ABB} = PI\ GAIN_{Siemens} \times 667$$

$$I\ GAIN_{ABB} = \frac{PI\ GAIN_{Siemens}}{PI\ GAIN_{Siemens}} \times 667$$

Point database

The following table lists the point database for FLN / ACH550 (Application 2734).

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	99	-	1	0	-	-
02	LAO	APPLICATION	2734	-	1		-	-
{03}	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	0	Hz	0.1	0	-	-
{04}	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{05}	LAI	SPEED	0	RPM	1	0	-	-
{06}	LAI	CURRENT	0	A	0.1		-	-
{07}	LAI	TORQUE	0	PCT	0.1	-200	-	-
{08}	LAI	POWER	0 (0)	HP (KW)	0.134 0.1	0 0	-	-
{09}	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	77 (25)	° F (° C)	0.18 (0.1)	32 0	-	-
{10}	LAI	DRIVE KWH	0	KWH	1		-	-
{11}	LAI	DRIVE MWH	0	MWH	1		-	-
{12}	LAI	RUN TIME	0	HRS	1		-	-
{13}	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{14}	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{15}	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{16}	LAI	PRC PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{17}	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	77(25)	° F (° C)	1.8 (1)	32 0	-	-
{18}	LAI	MREV COUNTER	0	MREV	1	0	-	-
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	1	hrs	1	0	-	-
{21}	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD
{22}	LDO	FWD.REV CMD	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{23}	LDI	RUN.STOP ACT	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{24}	LDO	RUN.STOP CMD	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{25}	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{26}	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{27}	LDI	DRIVE READY	NOTRDY	-	1	0	READY	NOTRDY
{28}	LDI	AT SETPOINT	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{29}	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	DAY	-	1	0	NIGHT	DAY
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	0	A	0.1	0	-	-
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
{33}	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	HAND	AUTO
{34}	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	DISABL	-	1	0	ENABLE	DISABL
{35}	LDO	ENA.DIS CMD	DISABL	-	1	0	ENABLE	DISABL
{36}	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{37}	LDI	FLN CTL SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{38}	LDI	FLN REF1 SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{39}	LDI	FLN REF2 SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{40}	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{41}	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{42}	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{43}	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{44}	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{45}	LDO	RO 6 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{46}	LAO	AO 1 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{47}	LAO	AO 2 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
48	LDO	RST RUN TIME	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
49	LDO	RESET KWH	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
50	LAO	PRC PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
51	LAO	PRC PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
52	LAO	PRC PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
53	LAO	PRC PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1	0	-	-

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
54	LDO	PRC PID SEL	SET1	-	1	0	SET2	SET1
55	LAO	EXT PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
56	LAO	EXT PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
57	LAO	EXT PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
58	LAO	EXT PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
59	LDO	LOCK PANEL	UNLOCK	-	1	0	LOCK	UNLOCK
{60}	LAO	INPUT REF 1	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{61}	LAO	INPUT REF 2	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{62}	LAO	EXT PID STPT	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{63}	LAI	EXT PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{64}	LAI	EXT PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	1000	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{68}	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{69}	LDO	FLN LOC REF	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{70}	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{71}	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{72}	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{73}	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{74}	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{75}	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{76}	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{77}	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{78}	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{79}	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{80}	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{81}	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{82}	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{83}	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{84}	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
{85}	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
{86}	LDI	OK.ALARM	OK	-	1	0	ALARM	OK
{87}	LDI	OK.MAINT	OK	-	1	0	MAINT	OK
{88}	LAI	ALARM WORD 1	-	-	1	0	-	-
{89}	LAI	ALARM WORD 2	-	-	1	0	-	-
{90}	LAI	LAST FAULT	-	-	1	0	-	-

FLN Point Database									
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{91}	LAI	PREV FAULT 1	-	-	1	0	-	-
{92}	LAI	PREV FAULT 2	-	-	1	0	-	-
{93}	LDI	OK.FAULT	OK	-	1	0	FAULT	OK
{94}	LDO	RESET FAULT	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
{95}	LAO	MBOX PARAM	-	-	1	0	-	-
{96}	LAO	MBOX DATA	-	-	1	0	-	-
{97}	LDO	MBOX READ	DONE	-	1	0	READ	DONE
{98}	LDO	MBOX WRITE	DONE	-	1	0	WRITE	DONE
{99}	LAO	ERROR STATUS	-	-	1	0	-	-

a. Points not listed are not used in this application.
b. A single value in a column means that the value is the same in English units and in SI units.
c. Point numbers that appear in brackets { } may be unbundled at the field panel.

Detailed point descriptions

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
1	CTRL ADDRESS	The FLN address of the drive. It can be set by FLN and by the panel.	5302
2	APPLICATION	The Application ID for FLN on the ACH550. This ID is assigned by Siemens for each unique application. It correlates directly to a particular point list approved at the time of release. Therefore, this point list shall remain fixed once approval is granted. Any changes to the point list shall require a new Application ID and re-approval by Siemens. The Application ID assigned to ACH550 is 2734.	
3	FREQ OUTPUT	The output frequency applied to the motor, in Hertz.	0103
4	PCT OUTPUT	The ratio of output frequency or speed to the corresponding maximum rating, depending on control mode. • For scalar mode, it is the ratio of Output Frequency (parameter 0103) to Maximum Frequency (parameter 2008). • For speed mode, it is the ratio Speed (parameter 0102) to Maximum Speed (2002).	None. This ratio is calculated by the FLN application.
5	SPEED	The calculated speed of the motor, in RPM.	0102
6	CURRENT	The measured output current.	0104
7	TORQUE	The calculated output torque of the motor as a percentage of nominal torque.	0105
8	POWER	The measured output power in KW. The FLN point definition also supports horsepower by selecting English units.	0106
9	DRIVE TEMP	The measured heatsink temperature, in ° C. The FLN point definition also supports ° F by selecting English units.	0110

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		**Description**	**Drive Parameter**
10	DRIVE KWH	The drive's cumulative power consumption in kilowatt-hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 49, RESET KWH.	0115
11	DRIVE MWH	The drive's cumulative power consumption in megawatt hours. This value cannot be reset.	0141
12	RUN TIME	The drive's cumulative run time in hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 48, RESET RUN TIME.	0114
13	DC BUS VOLT	The DC bus voltage level of the drive.	0107
14	OUTPUT VOLT	The AC output voltage applied to the motor.	0109
15	PRC PID FBCK	The Process PID feedback signal.	0130
16	PRC PID DEV	The deviation of the Process PID output signal from its setpoint.	0132
17	MOTOR TEMP	The measured motor temperature as set up in Group 35.	0145
18	ROTATION CNT	The motor's cumulative revolution count, in mega-revolutions.	0142
19	N/A		
20	OVRD TIME	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None
21	FWD.REV ACT	Indicates the rotational direction of the motor, regardless of control source (1 = REV, 0 = FWD).	
22	FWD.REV CMD	Commanded by FLN to change the rotational direction of the drive. • Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT1. • Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT2.	
23	RUN.STOP ACT	Indicates the drive's run status, regardless of control source (1 = RUN, 0 = STOP).	
24	RUN.STOP CMD	Commanded by FLN to start the drive. • Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the run state of the drive by EXT1. • Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
25	EXT1.2 ACT	Indicates whether External 1 or External 2 is the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1).	
26	EXT1.2 CMD	Commanded by FLN to select External 1 or External 2 as the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1). Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
27	DRIVE READY	Indicates the drive is ready to accept a run command (1 = READY, 0 = NOTRDY).	
28	AT SETPOINT	Indicates the drive has reached its commanded setpoint (1 = YES, 0 = NO)	
29	DAY.NIGHT	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
30	CURRENT LIM	Sets the output current limit of the drive.	2003
31	ACCEL TIME 1	Sets the acceleration time for Ramp 1.	2202
32	DECEL TIME 1	Sets the deceleration time for Ramp 1.	2203
33	HANDAUTO ACT	Indicates whether the drive is in Hand or Auto control (1 = HAND, 0 = AUTO).	
34	ENA.DIS ACT	Indicates the status of the Run Enable command, regardless of its source (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL).	
35	ENA.DIS CMD	Commanded by FLN to assert the Run Enable command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Parameter 1601 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
36	FLN LOC ACT	Indicates if the drive has been placed in "FLN LOCAL" mode by commanding either point 68 (FLN LOC CTL) or point 69 (FLN LOC REF). Commanding either of these points to FLN (1) "steals" control from its normal source and places in under FLN control. Note that the HAND mode of the panel has priority over FLN local control.	
37	FLN CTL SRC	Indicates if FLN is a source for control inputs (1 = YES, 0 = NO). Note that this status point is true if any of the following control inputs are from FLN: Run/Stop, Ext1/2 Select or Run Enable.	
38	FLN REF1 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 1 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
39	FLN REF2 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 2 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
40	RO1 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 1. Parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 0
41	RO2 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 2. Parameter 1402 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 1
42	RO3 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 3. Parameter 1403 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 2
43	RO4 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 4. Access to relay 4 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1410 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 3
44	RO5 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 5. Access to relay 5 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1411 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 4
45	RO6 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 6. Access to relay 6 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1412 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 5

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
46	AO1 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 1. Parameter 1501 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0135 (COMM VALUE 1)
47	AO2 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 2. Parameter 1507 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0136 (COMM VALUE 2)
48	RESET RUN TIME	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative run timer (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
49	RESET KWH	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative kilowatt-hour counter (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
50	PRC PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
51	PRC PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4002 (SET1) 4102 (SET2)
52	PRC PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
53	PRC PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4004 (SET1) 4104 (SET2)
54	PRC PID SEL	Selects the active Process PID set (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4027
55	EXT PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the External PID controller.	4201
56	EXT PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the External PID controller.	4202
57	EXT PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the External PID controller.	4203
58	EXT PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the External PID controller.	4204
59	LOCK PANEL	Command by FLN to lock the panel and prevent parameter changes (1 = LOCK, 0 = UNLOCK).	1602
60	INPUT REF 1	Sets Input Reference 1. Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
61	INPUT REF 2	Sets Input Reference 2. Parameter 1106 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
62	EXT PID STPT	The setpoint for the External PID controller. The function of this point requires parameter 4210, PID Setpoint Select, to be set to 19 (Internal).	4211

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		**Description**	**Drive Parameter**
63	EXT PID FBCK	The External PID feedback signal.	0131
64	EXT PID DEV	The deviation of the External PID output signal from its setpoint.	0133
65	N/A		
66	SPD OUT MIN	Sets the minimum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2007 (SCALAR) 2001 (SPEED)
67	SPD OUT MAX	Sets the maximum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2008 (SCALAR) 2002 (SPEED)
68	FLN LOC CTL	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" start/stop control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the digital inputs or some other internal control functionality.	
69	FLN LOC REF	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" input reference control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the reference control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the analog inputs or some other internal control functionality.	
70	DI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 2
71	DI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 1
72	DI 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 0
73	DI 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 2
74	DI 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 1
75	DI 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 0
76	RO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 2
77	RO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 1
78	RO 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 0
79	RO 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 2
80	RO 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 1
81	RO 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 0
82	AI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 1.	0120
83	AI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 2.	0121
84	AO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 1.	0124
85	AO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 2.	0125

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
86	OK.ALARM	Indicates the current alarm state of the drive (1 = ALARM, 0 = OK).	
87	OK.MAINT	Indicates the current maintenance state of the drive (1 = MAINT, 0 = OK). Maintenance triggers are configured in drive parameter Group 29.	
88	ALARM WORD1	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive.	0308
89	ALARM WORD2	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive.	0309
90	LAST FAULT	This point is first in the drive's fault log and indicates the most recent fault declared.	0401
91	PREV FAULT 1	This point is second in the drive's fault log and indicates the previous fault declared.	0412
92	PREV FAULT 2	This point is last in the drive's fault log and indicates the oldest fault in the log.	0413
93	OK.FAULT	Indicates the current fault state of the drive (1 = FAULT, 0 = OK).	
94	RESET FAULT	Command by FLN to reset a faulted drive (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). Parameter 1604 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this state. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This “momentary” operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
95	MBOX PARAM	Sets the parameter to be used by the mailbox function.	
96	MBOX DATA	Sets or indicates the data value of the mailbox function.	
97	MBOX READ	Command by FLN to read the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The parameter value is returned in Point 96, MBOX DATA. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This “momentary” operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
98	MBOX WRITE	Command by FLN to write the data value specified by Point 96, MBOX DATA, to the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This “momentary” operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
99	ERROR STATUS	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

BACnet protocol technical data

Binary input object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BI0	RO 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI1	RO 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI2	RO 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI3	RO 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	R
BI4	RO 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI5	RO 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI6	DI 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI7	DI 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI8	DI 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI9	DI 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 4.	ON/OFF	R
BI10	DI 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 5.	ON/OFF	R
BI11	DI 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 6.	ON/OFF	R

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary output object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO0	RO1 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 1. This control requires that parameter 1401 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO1	RO2 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 2. This control requires that parameter 1402 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO2	RO3 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 3. This control requires that parameter 1403 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO3	RO4 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 4. This control requires that parameter 1410 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO4	RO5 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 5. This control requires that parameter 1411 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO5	RO6 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 6. This control requires that parameter 1412 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary value object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV0	RUN/STOP ACT	This object indicates the drive Run Status, regardless of the control source.	RUN/STOP	R
BV1	FWD/REV ACT	This object indicates the motor's rotation direction, regardless of the control source.	REV/FWD	R
BV2	FAULT ACT	this object indicates the drive's fault status.	FAULT/OK	R
BV3	EXT 1/2 ACT	This object indicates which control source is active: External 1 or External 2.	EXT2/EXT1	R
BV4	HAND/AUTO ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is under Hand or Auto control.	HAND/AUTO	R
BV5	ALARM ACT	This object indicates the drive's alarm status.	ALARM/OK	R
BV6	MAINT REQ	This object indicates the drive's maintenance status. Refer to Group 29 in the drive's parameter descriptions.	MAINT/OK	R
BV7	DRIVE READY	This object indicates whether the drive is ready to accept a run command.	READY/NOT READY	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV8	AT SETPOINT	This object indicates whether the drive is at the commanded setpoint.	YES/NO	R
BV9	ENABLE ACT	This object indicates the System Enable command status (the combination of all Run and Start Enables), regardless of the control source.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	R
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD	This object commands a drive start. Control requires either: • Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or • Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2.	RUN/STOP	C
BV11	FWD/REV CMD	This object commands a motor rotation direction change. Control requires 1003 = REQUEST and either: • Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or • Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2.	REV/FWD	C
BV12	RUN ENA CMD	This object commands Run Enable. Control requires parameter 1601 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV13	EXT 1/2 CMD	This object selects ext1 or ext2 as the active control source. Control requires parameter 1102 value = COMM.	EXT2/EXT1	C
BV14	FAULT RESET	This object resets a faulted drive. The command is rising-edge triggered. Control requires parameter 1604 value = COMM.	RESET/NO	C
BV15	MBOX READ	This object reads a parameter (defined by AV25 MBOX PARAM) and returns it in AV26 MBOX DATA.	READ/RESET	W
BV16	MBOX WRITE	This object writes the data value specified by AV26, MBOX DATA, to a parameter (defined by AV25, MBOX PARAM).	WRITE/RESET	W
BV17	LOCK PANEL	This object locks the panel and prevents parameter changes. The corresponding drive parameter is 1602.	LOCK/UNLOCK	W

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV18	CTL OVERRIDE CMD	This object commands the drive into BACnet Control Override. In this mode, BACnet takes drive control from the normal source. However, the control panel's HAND mode has priority over BACnet Control Override.	ON/OFF	C
BV19	CTL OVERRIDE ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is in BACnet Control Override. (See BV18.)	ON/OFF	R
BV20	START ENABLE 1	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1608 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV21	START ENABLE 2	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1609 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog input object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AI0	ANALOG INPUT 1	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0120.	Percent	R
AI1	ANALOG INPUT 2	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0121.	Percent	R

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog output object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AO0	AO 1 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0135, COMM VALUE 1. Control requires parameter 1501 value = 135.	Percent	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AO1	AO 2 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0136, COMM VALUE 2. Control requires parameter 1507 value = 136.	Percent	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog value object instance summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV0	OUTPUT SPEED	This object indicates the calculated motor speed in RPM. The corresponding drive parameter is 0102.	RPM	R
AV1	OUTPUT FREQ	This object indicates the output frequency applied to the motor in Hz. The corresponding drive parameter is 0103.	Hertz	R
AV2	DC BUS VOLT	This object indicates the drive's DC bus voltage level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0107.	Volts	R
AV3	OUTPUT VOLT	This object indicates the AC output voltage applied to the motor. The corresponding drive parameter is 0109.	Volts	R
AV4	CURRENT	This object indicates the measured output current. The corresponding drive parameter is 0104.	Amps	R
AV5	TORQUE	This object indicates the calculated motor output torque as a percentage of nominal torque. The corresponding drive parameter is 0105.	Percent	R
AV6	POWER	This object indicates the measured output power in kW. The corresponding drive parameter is 0106.	Kilowatts	R
AV7	DRIVE TEMP	This object indicates the measured heatsink temperature in °C. The corresponding drive parameter is 0110.	°C	R
AV8	KWH (R)	This object indicates, in kW hours, the drive's accumulated energy usage since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0115.	kWh	W
AV9	KWH (NR)	This object indicates the drive's accumulated energy usage in kW hours. The value cannot be reset.	kWh	R
AV10	PRC PID FBCK	This object is the Process PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0130.	Percent	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV11	PRC PID DEV	This object is the Process PID output signal's deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0132.	Percent	R
AV12	EXT PID FBCK	This object is the External PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0131.	Percent	R
AV13	EXT PID DEV	This object is the External PID output signal's deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0133.	Percent	R
AV14	RUN TIME (R)	This object indicates, in hours, the drive's accumulated run time since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0114.	Hours	W
AV15	MOTOR TEMP	This object indicates the drive's motor temperature, as set up in parameter Group 35. The corresponding drive parameter is 0145.	°C	R
AV16	INPUT REF 1	This object sets Input Reference 1. Control requires parameter 1103 value = COMM.	Percent	C
AV17	INPUT REF 2	This object sets either: • Input Reference 2. Control requires parameter 1106 value = COMM. • Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = PID1 OUT and parameter 4010 value = COMM.	Percent	C
AV18	LAST FLT	This object indicates the most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0401.	None	R
AV19	PREV FLT 1	This object indicates the second most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0412.	None	R
AV20	PREV FLT 2	This object indicates the third most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0413.	None	R
AV21	AO 1 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 1's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0124.	Milliamps	R
AV22	AO 2 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 2's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0125.	Milliamps	R
AV23	ACCEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 acceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2202.	Seconds	W
AV24	DECEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 deceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2203.	Seconds	W
AV25	MBOX PARAM	This object defines the parameter to be read or written to by the mailbox function. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV26	MBOX DATA	This object holds the mailbox function's parameter value – a value that was read, or is to be written. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W
AV27	EXT PID STPT	This object sets the External PID controller setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 4211. Control requires parameter 4210, PID SETPOINT SEL, value = 19 (INTERNAL).	Percent	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

BACnet quick-start sequence

The following steps summarize the process for enabling and configuring BACnet on the ACH550:

1. Enable BACnet protocol: Set drive parameter 9802, COMM PROTOCOL SEL = BACNET (5).

Note: If you cannot see the desired selection on the panel, your drive does not have that protocol software in the application memory.

- To confirm this selection, read drive parameter 5301, EFB PROTOCOL ID. It should read x5xx (where "x" is any value).

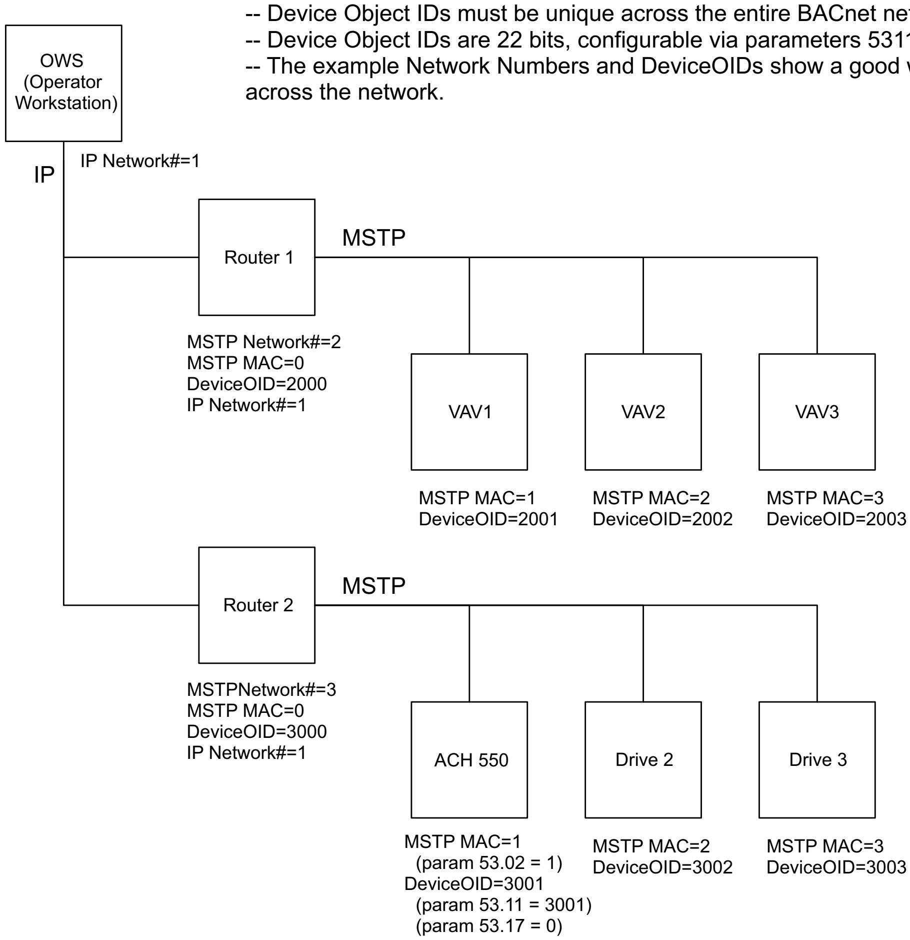
2. Place the BACnet channel in "reset": Set drive parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = 0.
   - This setting holds the BACnet communication channel in reset while remaining settings are completed.
3. Define the MS/TP baud rate.
   - Set drive parameter 5303, EFB BAUD RATE = appropriate value.
4. Define the Device Object Instance ID.
   - To define a specific device object instance value, use drive parameters 5311 and 5317 (object instance values must be unique and in the range 1 to 4,194,303).
   - To use the drive's MS/TP MAC ID as the device object instance value, set drive parameter 5311 and 5317 = 0.
   - BACnet requires a unique Device Object ID for each device on the BACnet network.
5. Define a unique MS/TP MAC ID. Set drive parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = appropriate value.
   - Once this parameter is set to a non-zero value, current BACnet settings are "latched" and used for communication until the channel is reset.

- In order to participate in MS/TP token passing, the MAC ID used must be within the limits defined by other masters’ “Max Master” property.

6. Confirm proper BACnet communication.
   - When BACnet communication is operating properly, drive parameter 5316, EFB PAR 16 (the MS/TP token counter), should be continually increasing.
   - Drive parameter 5306, UART ERRORS, should be stable. (With autobaud detection, this parameter may increase until the proper baud rate is detected.)
7. Configure the Device Object Name.
   - BACnet requires a unique name for each device on the BACnet network. Write the Object Name of the Device Object of the drive to a unique text string using the operator workstation or software tool capable of writing BACnet properties. The Object Name cannot be modified with the ABB display panel and only the Device Object name is writable in this product. We do not support writing of Device Description.

BACnet Device Address Rules

-- MSTP MAC Addresses must be unique for all devices connected to the same RS485 network.
-- MSTP MAC Address is configurable via parameter 5302 in ACH550.
1..127 = range of supported Master addresses for ACH550
-- Network Number must be unique for each network (IP and MSTP)
-- Network Number of 0 is reserved for broadcasts
-- Device Object IDs must be unique across the entire BACnet network, all IP and MSTP subnetworks.
-- Device Object IDs are 22 bits, configurable via parameters 5311 and 5317 in ACH550.
-- The example Network Numbers and DeviceOIDs show a good way to maintain unique DeviceOIDs across the network.



Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS)

PICS summary

BACnet Standard Device Profile. This version of ACH550 BACnet fully conforms to the 'Application-Specific Controller' standard device profile (B-ASC).

Services Supported. The following services are supported by the ACH550:

- I-Am (Response to Who-Is, also broadcast on power-up & other reset)
- I-Have (Response to Who-Has)
- ReadProperty
- WriteProperty
- DeviceCommunicationControl
- ReinitializeDevice

Data Link Layer. The ACH550 implements MS/TP (Master) Data Link Layer. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported (9600, 19200, 38400 & 76800).

MAC ID / Device Object Instance. The ACH550 supports separate MAC ID and Device Object Instance parameters:

- Set the MAC ID using drive parameter 5302. Default: 5302 = 128.
- Set the Device Object Instance ID using drive parameters 5311 and 5317. Default: Both 5311 and 5317 = 0, which causes the MAC ID to “double” as the Device Object Instance. For Device Object Instance values not linked to the MAC ID, set ID values using 5311 and 5317:
  - For IDs in the range 1 to 65,535: Parameter 5311 sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49,134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0.
  - For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5311's value plus 10,000 times 5317's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71,234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7.

Max Info Frames Property. Configure the Device Object Max Info Frames property using drive parameter 5312. Default: 5312 = 1.

Max Master Property. Configure the Device Object Max Master property using drive parameter 5313. Default: 5313 = 127.

MS/TP token counter

Parameter 5316 stores the count of MS/TP tokens passed to the associated node.

Statement

This statement is part of this Standard and is required for its use.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Date:	February 5, 2009
Vendor Name:	ABB, Inc
Product Name:	Low Voltage AC Motor Drive
Product Model Number:	ACH550
Applications Software Version:	050F
Firmware Revision:	312B
BACnet Protocol Revision:	4
Product Description:	The ACH550 is a high-performance adjustable frequency drive specifically designed for commercial automation applications. This product supports native BACnet, connecting directly to the MS/TP LAN. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported, as well as master mode functionality. Over BACnet, the drive can be fully controlled as a standard adjustable frequency drive. In addition, up to 16 configurable I/O ports are available over BACnet for user applications.
BACnet Standardized Device Profile (Annex L):	☐ BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) ☐ BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) ☐ BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) ☒ BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) ☐ BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) ☐ BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA)
List all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks Supported (Annex K):	DS-RP-B, DS-WP-B, DM-DDB-B, DM-DOB-B, DM-DCC-B, DM-RD-B.
Segmentation Capability:	☐ Segmented requests supported. Window Size ____ ☐ Segmented responses supported. Window Size ____
Standard Object Types Supported: An object type is supported if it may be present in the device. For each standard Object Type supported provide the following data: 1) Whether objects of this type are dynamically creatable using the CreateObject service 2) Whether objects of this type are dynamically detectable using the DeleteObject service 3) List of the optional properties supported 4) List of all properties that are writable where not otherwise required by this standard 5) List of proprietary properties and for each its property identifier, datatype, and meaning 6) List of any property range restrictions	See table at *Object/property support matrix* on page *1-238*.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Data Link Layer Options:	☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J) ☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J), Foreign Device ☐ ISO 8802-3, Ethernet (Clause 7) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, 2.5 Mb. ARCNET (Clause 8) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, EIA-485 ARCNET (Clause 8), baud rate(s) ___ ☒ MS/TP master (Clause 9), baud rate(s): 9600, 19200, 38400, 76800 ☐ MS/TP slave (Clause 9), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, EIA 232 (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, modem, (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ LonTalk, (Clause 11), medium: __________ ☐ Other: __________
Device Address Binding: Is static device binding supported? (This is currently necessary for two-way communication with MS/TP slaves and certain other devices.)	☐ Yes ☒ No
Networking Options:	☐ Router, Clause 6 - List all routing configurations, e.g., ARCNET-Ethernet, Ethernet-MS/TP, etc. ☐ Annex H, BACnet Tunneling Router over IP ☐ BACnet/IP Broadcast Management Device (BBMD)
Does the BBMD support registrations by Foreign Devices?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Character Sets Supported: Indicating support for multiple character sets does not imply that they can all be supported simultaneously.	☒ ANSI X3.4 ☐ IBM™/Microsoft™ DBCS ☐ ISO 8859-1 ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-2) ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-4) ☐ JIS C 6226
If this product is a communication gateway, describe the types of non-BACnet equipment/network(s) that the gateway supports:	

BACnet Object Definitions

Object/property support matrix

The following table summarizes the Object Types/Properties Supported:

Property	Object Type						
	Device	Binary Input	Binary Output	Binary Value	Analog Input	Analog Output	Analog Value
Object Identifier	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Name	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Type	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
System Status	✓						
Vendor Name	✓						
Vendor Identifier	✓						
Model Name	✓						
Firmware Revision	✓						
Appl Software Revision	✓						
Protocol Version	✓						
Protocol Revision	✓						
Services Supported	✓						
Object Types Supported	✓						
Object List	✓						
Max APDU Length	✓						
Segmentation Support	✓						
APDU Timeout	✓						
Number APDU Retries	✓						
Max Master	✓						
Max Info Frames	✓						
Device Address Binding	✓						
Database Revision	✓						
Present Value		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Status Flags		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Event State		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Out-of-Service		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Units					✓	✓	✓
Priority Array			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Relinquish Default			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Polarity		✓	✓				
Active Text		✓	✓	✓			
Inactive Text		✓	✓	✓			

* For commandable values only.

Modbus protocol technical data

Overview

The Modbus® protocol was introduced by Modicon, Inc. for use in control environments featuring Modicon programmable controllers. Due to its ease of use and implementation, this common PLC language was quickly adopted as a de-facto standard for integration of a wide variety of master controllers and slave devices.

Modbus is a serial, asynchronous protocol. Transactions are half-duplex, featuring a single Master controlling one or more Slaves. While RS232 can be used for point-to-point communication between a single Master and a single Slave, a more common implementation features a multi-drop RS485 network with a single Master controlling multiple Slaves. The ACH550 features RS485 for its Modbus physical interface.

RTU

The Modbus specification defines two distinct transmission modes: ASCII and RTU. The ACH550 supports RTU only.

Feature summary

The following Modbus function codes are supported by the ACH550.

Function	Code (Hex)	Description
Read Coil Status	0x01	Read discrete output status. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Read Discrete Input Status	0x02	Read discrete inputs status. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the status word are mapped to Inputs 1…16 or 1…32, depending on the active profile. Terminal inputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Input 33 (e.g. DI1=Input 33).
Read Multiple Holding Registers	0x03	Read multiple holding registers. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read Multiple Input Registers	0x04	Read multiple input registers. For the ACH550, the 2 analog input channels are mapped as input registers 1 & 2.
Force Single Coil	0x05	Write a single discrete output. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Single Holding Register	0x06	Write single holding register. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Diagnostics	0x08	Perform Modbus diagnostics. Subcodes for Query (0x00), Restart (0x01) & Listen Only (0x04) are supported.
Force Multiple Coils	0x0F	Write multiple discrete outputs. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x10	Write multiple holding registers. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read/Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x17	This function combines functions 0x03 and 0x10 into a single command.

Mapping summary

The following table summarizes the mapping between the ACH550 (parameters and I/0) and Modbus reference space. For details, see *Modbus addressing* below.

ACH550	Modbus Reference	Supported Function Codes
• Control Bits • Relay Outputs	Coils(0xxxx)	• 01 – Read Coil Status • 05 – Force Single Coil • 15 – Force Multiple Coils
• Status Bits • Discrete Inputs	Discrete Inputs(1xxxx)	• 02 – Read Input Status
• Analog Inputs	Input Registers(3xxxxx)	• 04 – Read Input Registers
• Parameters • Control/Status Words • References	Holding Registers(4xxxx)	• 03 – Read 4X Registers • 06 – Preset Single 4X Register • 16 – Preset Multiple 4X Registers • 23 – Read/Write 4X Registers

Communication profiles

When communicating by Modbus, the ACH550 supports multiple profiles for control and status information. Parameter 5305 (EFB CTRL PROFILE) selects the profile used.

- ABB DRV LIM – The primary (and default) profile is the ABB DRV LIM profile, which standardizes the control interface with ACH400 and ACH550 drives. This profile is based on the PROFIBUS interface, and is discussed in detail in the following sections.
- DCU PROFILE – Another profile is called the DCU PROFILE profile. It extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, and is the internal interface between the main drive application and the embedded fieldbus environment.
- ABB DRV FULL – This profile standardizes the control interface with ACS600 and ACS800 drives. This profile is also based on the PROFIBUS interface, and supports two control word bits not supported by the ABB DRV LIM profile.

Modbus addressing

With Modbus, each function code implies access to a specific Modbus reference set. Thus, the leading digit is not included in the address field of a Modbus message.

Note: The ACH550 supports the zero-based addressing of the Modbus specification. Holding register 40002 is addressed as 0001 in a Modbus message. Similarly, coil 33 is addressed as 0032 in a Modbus message.

Refer again to the “Mapping Summary” above. The following sections describe, in detail, the mapping to each Modbus reference set.

0xxxx Mapping – Modbus Coils. The drive maps the following information to the 0xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Coils:

- Bit-wise map of the CONTROL WORD (selected using parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 coils are reserved for this purpose.
- Relay output states, numbered sequentially beginning with coil 00033.

The following table summarizes the 0xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV LIM (5305 = 0)	DCU PROFILE (5305 = 1)	ABB DRV FULL (5305 = 2)
00001	CONTROL WORD – Bit 0	OFF1*	STOP	OFF1*
00002	CONTROL WORD – Bit 1	OFF2*	START	OFF2*
00003	CONTROL WORD – Bit 2	OFF3*	REVERSE	OFF3*
00004	CONTROL WORD – Bit 3	START	LOCAL	START
00005	CONTROL WORD – Bit 4	N/A	RESET	RAMP_OUT_ZERO*
00006	CONTROL WORD – Bit 5	RAMP_HOLD*	EXT2	RAMP_HOLD*
00007	CONTROL WORD – Bit 6	RAMP_IN_ZERO*	RUN_DISABLE	RAMP_IN_ZERO*
00008	CONTROL WORD – Bit 7	RESET	STPMODE_R	RESET
00009	CONTROL WORD – Bit 8	N/A	STPMODE_EM	N/A
00010	CONTROL WORD – Bit 9	N/A	STPMODE_C	N/A
00011	CONTROL WORD – Bit 10	N/A	RAMP_2	REMOTE_CMD*
00012	CONTROL WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	RAMP_OUT_0	EXT2
00013	CONTROL WORD – Bit 12	N/A	RAMP_HOLD	N/A
00014	CONTROL WORD – Bit 13	N/A	RAMP_IN_0	N/A
00015	CONTROL WORD – Bit 14	N/A	REQ_LOCALLOCK	N/A
00016	CONTROL WORD – Bit 15	N/A	TORQLIM2	N/A
00017	CONTROL WORD – Bit 16	Does not apply	FBLOCAL_CTL	Does not apply
00018	CONTROL WORD – Bit 17		FBLOCAL_REF	
00019	CONTROL WORD – Bit 18		START_DISABLE1	
00020	CONTROL WORD – Bit 19		START_DISABLE2	
00021… **0**0032	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
00033	RELAY OUTPUT 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1
00034	RELAY OUTPUT 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2
00035	RELAY OUTPUT 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3
00036	RELAY OUTPUT 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4
00037	RELAY OUTPUT 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5
00038	RELAY OUTPUT 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6

* = Active low

For the 0xxxx registers:

- Status is always readable.
- Forcing is allowed by user configuration of the drive for fieldbus control.
- Additional relay outputs are added sequentially.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for coils:

Function Code	Description
01	Read coil status
05	Force single coil
15 (0x0F Hex)	Force multiple coils

1xxxx Mapping – Modbus Discrete Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 1xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Discrete Inputs:

- Bit-wise map of the STATUS WORD (selected using parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 inputs are reserved for this purpose.
- Discrete hardware inputs, numbered sequentially beginning with input 33.

The following table summarizes the 1xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV (5305 = 0 or 2)	DCU PROFILE (5305 = 1)
10001	STATUS WORD – Bit 0	RDY_ON	READY
10002	STATUS WORD – Bit 1	RDY_RUN	ENABLED
10003	STATUS WORD – Bit 2	RDY_REF	STARTED
10004	STATUS WORD – Bit 3	TRIPPED	RUNNING
10005	STATUS WORD – Bit 4	OFF_2_STA*	ZERO_SPEED
10006	STATUS WORD – Bit 5	OFF_3_STA*	ACCELERATE
10007	STATUS WORD – Bit 6	SWC_ON_INHIB	DECELERATE
10008	STATUS WORD – Bit 7	ALARM	AT_SETPOINT
10009	STATUS WORD – Bit 8	AT_SETPOINT	LIMIT
10010	STATUS WORD – Bit 9	REMOTE	SUPERVISION
10011	STATUS WORD – Bit 10	ABOVE_LIMIT	REV_REF
10012	STATUS WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	REV_ACT
10013	STATUS WORD – Bit 12	RUN_ENABLE	PANEL_LOCAL
10014	STATUS WORD – Bit 13	N/A	FIELDBUS_LOCAL
10015	STATUS WORD – Bit 14	N/A	EXT2_ACT
10016	STATUS WORD – Bit 15	N/A	FAULT
10017	STATUS WORD – Bit 16	Reserved	ALARM
10018	STATUS WORD – Bit 17	Reserved	REQ_MAINT
10019	STATUS WORD – Bit 18	Reserved	DIRLOCK
10020	STATUS WORD – Bit 19	Reserved	LOCALLOCK
10021	STATUS WORD – Bit 20	Reserved	CTL_MODE
10022	STATUS WORD – Bit 21	Reserved	Reserved
10023	STATUS WORD – Bit 22	Reserved	Reserved
10024	STATUS WORD – Bit 23	Reserved	Reserved
10025	STATUS WORD – Bit 24	Reserved	Reserved
10026	STATUS WORD – Bit 25	Reserved	Reserved
10027	STATUS WORD – Bit 26	Reserved	REQ_CTL

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV **(5305 = 0 or 2)**	DCU PROFILE **(5305 = 1)**
10028	STATUS WORD – Bit 27	Reserved	REQ_REF1
10029	STATUS WORD – Bit 28	Reserved	REQ_REF2
10030	STATUS WORD – Bit 29	Reserved	REQ_REF2EXT
10031	STATUS WORD – Bit 30	Reserved	ACK_STARTINH
10032	STATUS WORD – Bit 31	Reserved	ACK_OFF_ILCK
10033	DI1	DI1	DI1
10034	DI2	DI2	DI2
10035	DI3	DI3	DI3
10036	DI4	DI4	DI4
10037	DI5	DI5	DI5
10038	DI6	DI6	DI6

* = Active low

For the 1xxxx registers:

- Additional discrete inputs are added sequentially.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for discrete inputs:

Function Code	Description
02	Read input status

3xxxx Mapping – Modbus Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 3xxxx Modbus addresses called Modbus input registers:

- Any user defined analog inputs.

The following table summarizes the input registers:

Modbus Reference	Internal Location (All Profiles)	Remarks
30001	AI1	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 1 (0…100%).
30002	AI2	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 2 (0…100%).

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for 3xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
04	Read 3xxxx input status

4xxxx Register Mapping. The drive maps its parameters and other data to the 4xxxx holding registers as follows:

- 40001…40099 map to drive control and actual values. These registers are described in the table below.
- 40101…49999 map to drive parameters 0101…9999. Register addresses that do not correspond to drive parameters are invalid. If there is an attempt to read or write outside the parameter addresses, the Modbus interface returns an exception code to the controller.

The following table summarizes the 4xxxx drive control registers 40001…40099 (for 4xxxx registers above 40099, see the drive parameter list, e.g. 40102 is parameter 0102):

Modbus Register		Access	Remarks
40001	CONTROL WORD	R/W	Maps directly to the profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB Drives profile). Parameter 5319 holds a copy in hex format.
40002	Reference 1	R/W	Range = 0…+20000 (scaled to 0…1105 REF1 MAX), or -20000…0 (scaled to 1105 REF1 MAX…0).
40003	Reference 2	R/W	Range = 0…+10000 (scaled to 0…1108 REF2 MAX), or -10000…0 (scaled to 1108 REF2 MAX…0).
40004	STATUS WORD	R	Maps directly to the profile's STATUS WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB Drives profile). Parameter 5320 holds a copy in hex format.
40005	Actual 1 (select using 5310)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0103 OUTPUT FREQ. Use parameter 5310 to select a different actual value for this register.
40006	Actual 2 (select using 5311)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0104 CURRENT. Use parameter 5311 to select a different actual value for this register.
40007	Actual 3 (select using 5312)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5312 to select an actual value for this register.
40008	Actual 4 (select by 5313)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5313 to select an actual value for this register.
40009	Actual 5 (select using 5314)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5314 to select an actual value for this register.
40010	Actual 6 (select using 5315)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5315 to select an actual value for this register.
40011	Actual 7 (select using 5316)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5316 to select an actual value for this register.
40012	Actual 8 (select using 5317)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5317 to select an actual value for this register.
40031	ACH550 CONTROL WORD LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0301.
40032	ACH550 CONTROL WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0302.
40033	ACH550 STATUS WORD LSW	R	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0303.
40034	ACH550 STATUS WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0304.
40045	ACH550 REF1 LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF1. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0111.
40046	ACH550 REF1 MSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF1. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0111.

Modbus Register		Access	Remarks
40047	ACH550 REF2 LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF2. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0112.
40048	ACH550 REF2 MSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF2. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0112.

For the Modbus protocol, drive parameters in group 53 report the parameter mapping to 4xxxx Registers.

Code	Description
5310	EFB PAR 10 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40005.
5311	EFB PAR 11 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40006.
5312	EFB PAR 12 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40007.
5313	EFB PAR 13 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40008.
5314	EFB PAR 14 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40009.
5315	EFB PAR 15 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40010.
5316	EFB PAR 16 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40011.
5317	EFB PAR 17 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40012.
5318	Reserved.
5319	EFB PAR 19 Holds a copy (in hex) of the CONTROL WORD, Modbus register 40001.
5320	EFB PAR 20 Holds a copy (in hex) of the STATUS WORD, Modbus register 40004.

Except where restricted by the drive, all parameters are available for both reading and writing. The parameter writes are verified for the correct value, and for a valid register addresses.

Note: Parameter writes through standard Modbus are always volatile i.e. modified values are not automatically stored to permanent memory. Use parameter 1607 PARAM. SAVE to save all altered values.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for 4xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
03	Read holding 4xxxx registers
06	Preset single 4xxxx register
16 (0x10 Hex)	Preset multiple 4xxxx registers
23 (0x17 Hex)	Read/write 4xxxx registers

Actual values

The contents of the register addresses 40005…40012 are ACTUAL VALUES and are:

- Specified using parameters 5310…5317.
- Read-only values containing information on the operation of the drive.
- 16-bit words containing a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- When negative values, written as the two's complement of the corresponding positive value.
- Scaled as described earlier in *Actual value scaling*.

Exception codes

Exception codes are serial communication responses from the drive. The ACH550 supports the standard Modbus exception codes defined below.

Exception Code	Name	Meaning
01	ILLEGAL FUNCTION	Unsupported Command
02	ILLEGAL DATA ADDRESS	The data address received in the query is not allowable. It is not a defined parameter/group.
03	ILLEGAL DATA VALUE	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for the ACH550, because it is one of the following: • Outside min. or max. limits. • Parameter is read-only. • Message is too long. • Parameter write not allowed when start is active. • Parameter write not allowed when factory macro is selected.

ABB control profiles technical data

Overview

ABB drives profile

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including Modbus and the protocols available on the FBA module. Two implementations of the ABB Drives profile are available:

- ABB DRV FULL – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACS600 and ACS800 drives.
- ABB DRV LIM – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACH400 and ACH550 drives. This implementation does not support two control word bits supported by ABB DRV FULL.

Except as noted, the following "ABB Drives Profile" descriptions apply to both implementations.

DCU profile

The DCU profile extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, and is the internal interface between the main drive application and the embedded fieldbus environment.

Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus master station sends the CONTROL WORD to the drive. The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD (ABB Drives profile version) requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.
- The serial communication channel is defined as the source for controlling commands (set using parameters 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS, 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS and 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL).
- The serial communication channel used is configured to use an ABB control profile. For example, to use the control profile ABB DRV FULL, requires both parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 1 (STD MODBUS), and parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE = 2 (ABB DRV FULL).

ABB drives profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCHON INHIBITED
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED **WARNING! Be sure motor and driven equipment can be stopped using this mode.**
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also actives the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	Unused (**ABB DRV LIM**)			
	RAMP_OUT_ ZERO (**ABB DRV FULL**)	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8…9	Unused			
10	Unused (**ABB DRV LIM**)			
	REMOTE_CMD (**ABB DRV FULL**)	1		Fieldbus control enabled.
		0		• CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. • CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. • Ref and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12…15	Unused			

DCU profile

The following tables describe the CONTROL WORD content for the DCU profile.

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0301)				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Command/Req.**	**Comments**
0	STOP	1	Stop	Stops according to either the stop mode parameter or the stop mode requests (bits 7 and 8). Simultaneous STOP and START commands result in a stop command.
		0	(no op)	
1	START	1	Start	
		0	(no op)	
2	REVERSE	1	Reverse direction	This bit XOR'd with the sign of the reference defines direction.
		0	Forward direction	
3	LOCAL	1	Local mode	When the fieldbus sets this bit, it steals control and the drive moves to fieldbus local control mode.
		0	External mode	
4	RESET	-> 1	Reset	Edge sensitive.
		other	(no op)	
5	EXT2	1	Switch to EXT2	
		0	Switch to EXT1	
6	RUN_DISABLE	1	Run disable	Inverted run enable.
		0	Run enable on	
7	STPMODE_R	1	Normal ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0301)				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Command/Req.**	**Comments**
8	STPMODE_EM	1	Emergency ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
9	STPMODE_C	1	Coast stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
10	RAMP_2	1	Ramp pair 2	
		0	Ramp pair 1	
11	RAMP_OUT_0	1	Ramp output to 0	
		0	(no op)	
12	RAMP_HOLD	1	Ramp freeze	
		0	(no op)	
13	RAMP_IN_0	1	Ramp input to 0	
		0	(no op)	
14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	1	Local mode lock	In lock, drive will not switch to local mode.
		0	(no op)	
15	TORQLIM2	1	Torque limit pair 2	
		0	Torque limit pair 1	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0302)				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Function**	**Comments**
16…26	Reserved			
27	REF_CONST	1	Constant speed ref.	These bits are only for supervision purposes.
		0	(no op)	
28	REF_AVE	1	Average speed ref.	
		0	(no op)	
29	LINK_ON	1	Master is detected in link	
		0	Link is down	
30	REQ_STARTINH	1	Start inhibit request is pending	
		0	Start inhibit request is OFF	
31	OFF_INTERLOCK	1	Panel OFF button pressed	For the control panel (or PC tool) this is the OFF button interlock.
		0	(no op)	

Status Word

The contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station.

ABB drives profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0…1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 INACTIVE
		0	**OFF2 ACTIVE**
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 INACTIVE
		0	**OFF3 ACTIVE**
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See “Alarm Listing” in the “Diagnostics” section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING**.** Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter’s value ≥ supervision high limit. Bit remains “1” until supervised parameter’s value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter’s value < supervision low limit. Bit remains “0” until supervised parameter’s value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13… 15	Unused		

DCU profile

The following tables describe the STATUS WORD content for the DCU profile.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD (See Parameter 0303)			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Status**
0	READY	1	Drive is ready to receive start command.
		0	Drive is not ready.
1	ENABLED	1	External run enable signal received.
		0	No external run enable signal received.
2	STARTED	1	Drive has received start command.
		0	Drive has not received start command.
3	RUNNING	1	Drive is modulating.
		0	Drive is not modulating.
4	ZERO_SPEED	1	Drive is at zero speed.
		0	Drive has not reached zero speed.
5	ACCELERATE	1	Drive is accelerating.
		0	Drive is not accelerating.
6	DECELERATE	1	Drive is decelerating.
		0	Drive is not decelerating.
7	AT_SETPOINT	1	Drive is at setpoint.
		0	Drive has not reached setpoint.
8	LIMIT	1	Operation is limited by Group 20 settings.
		0	Operation is within Group 20 settings.
9	SUPERVISION	1	A supervised parameter (Group 32) is outside its limits.
		0	All supervised parameters are within limits.
10	REV_REF	1	Drive reference is in reverse direction.
		0	Drive reference is in forward direction.
11	REV_ACT	1	Drive is running in reverse direction.
		0	Drive is running in forward direction.
12	PANEL_LOCAL	1	Control is in control panel (or PC tool) local mode.
		0	Control is not in control panel local mode.
13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	1	Control is in fieldbus local mode (steals control panel local).
		0	Control is not in fieldbus local mode.
14	EXT2_ACT	1	Control is in EXT2 mode.
		0	Control is in EXT1 mode.
15	FAULT	1	Drive is in a fault state.
		0	Drive is not in a fault state.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD (See Parameter 0304)			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Status**
16	ALARM	1	An alarm is on.
		0	No alarms are on.
17	REQ_MAINT	1	A maintenance request is pending.
		0	No maintenance request is pending.
18	DIRLOCK	1	Direction lock is ON. (Direction change is locked out.)
		0	Direction lock is OFF.
19	LOCALLOCK	1	Local mode lock is ON. (Local mode is locked out.)
		0	Local mode lock is OFF.
20	CTL_MODE	1	Drive is in vector control mode.
		0	Drive is in scalar control mode.
21…25	Reserved		
26	REQ_CTL	1	Copy the control word
		0	(no op)
27	REQ_REF1	1	Reference 1 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 1 is not requested in this channel.
28	REQ_REF2	1	Reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
29	REQ_REF2EXT	1	External PID reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	External PID reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
30	ACK_STARTINH	1	A start inhibit from this channel is granted.
		0	A start inhibit from this channel is not granted.
31	ACK_OFF_ILCK	1	Start inhibit due to OFF button
		0	Normal operation

State Diagram

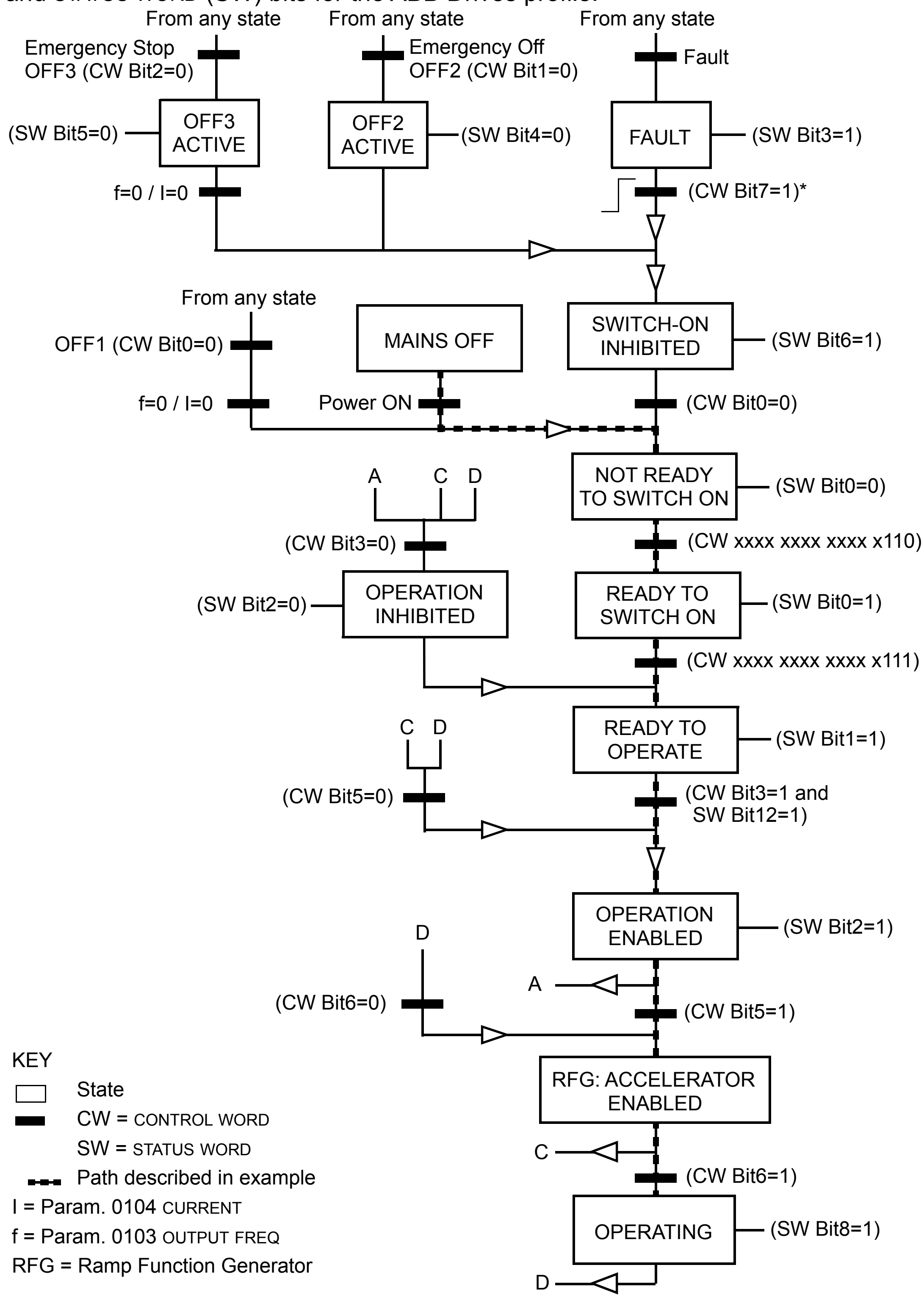
ABB drives profile

To illustrate the operation of the state diagram, the following example (ABB DRV LIM implementation of the ABB Drives profile) uses the control word to start the drive:

- First, the requirements for using the CONTROL WORD must be met. See above.
- When the power is first connected, the state of the drive is not ready to switch on. See dotted lined path (▪▪▪) in the state diagram below.
- Use the CONTROL WORD to step through the state machine states until the OPERATING state is reached, meaning that the drive is running and follows the given reference. See table below.

Step	CONTROL WORD **Value**	**Description**
1	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0110 bit 15 … bit 0	This CW value changes the drive state to READY TO SWITCH ON.
2		Wait at least 100 ms before proceeding.
3	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0111	This CW value changes the drive state to READY TO OPERATE.
4	CW = 0000 0000 0000 1111	This CW value changes the drive state to OPERATION ENABLED. The drive starts, but will not accelerate.
5	CW = 0000 0000 0010 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the drive state to RFG: ACCELERATOR ENABLED.
6	CW = 0000 0000 0110 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the drive state to OPERATING. The drive accelerates to the given reference and follows the reference.

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits for the ABB Drives profile.



*This state transition also occurs if the fault is reset from any other source (e.g. digital input).

Reference scaling

ABB drives and DCU profiles

The following table describes REFERENCE scaling for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles				
Reference	**Range**	**Reference Type**	**Scaling**	**Remarks**
REF1	-32767 … +32767	Speed or frequency	-20000 = -**(par. 1105)** 0 = 0 +20000 = **(par. 1105)** (20000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
REF2	-32767 … +32767	Speed or frequency	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1107/1108. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
		Torque	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 2015/2017 (torque1) or 2016/2018 (torque2).
		PID Reference	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 4012/4013 (PID set1) or 4112/4113 (PID set2).

Note: The setting of parameter 1104 REF1 MIN and 1107 REF2 MIN has no effect on the scaling of references.

When parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT or 1106 REF2 SELECT is set to COMM+AI1 or COMM*AI1, the reference is scaled as follows:

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles		
Reference	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
REF1	COMM+AI1	COMM (%) +(AI (%) - 0.5*REF1 MAX (%))

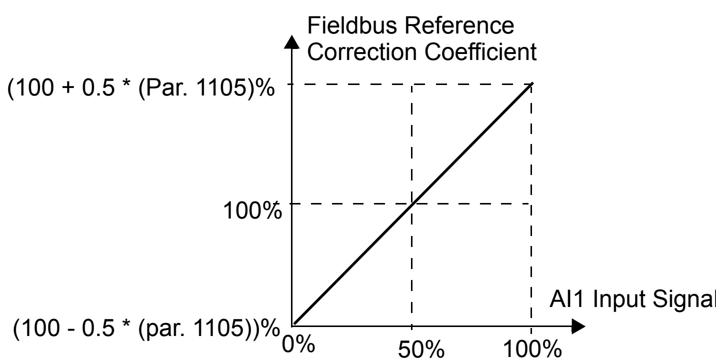
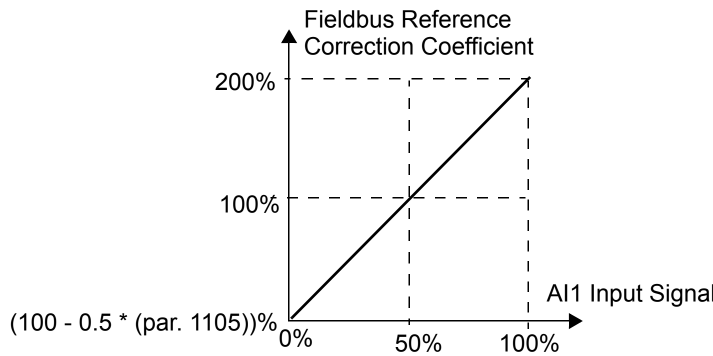
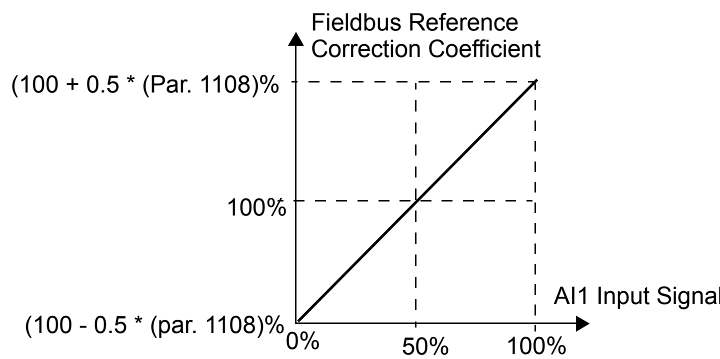
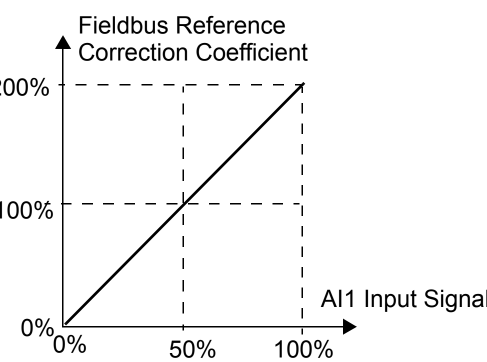
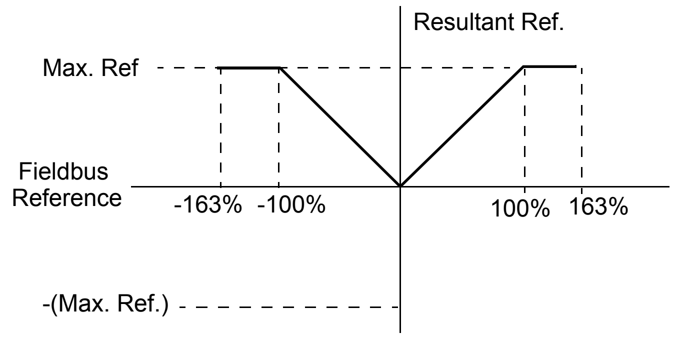
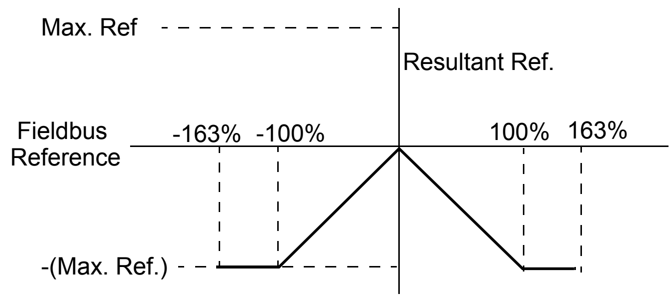
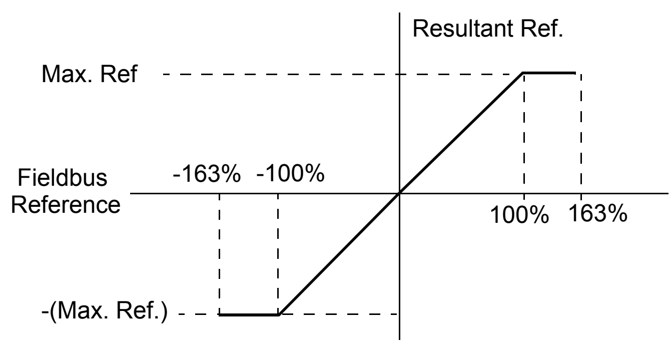


ABB Drives and DCU Profiles		
Reference	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
REF1	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF1 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM+AI1	COMM (%) + (AI (%) - 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 

Reference handling

Use group 10 parameters to configure for control of rotation direction for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2). The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus reference interact to produce REFERENCE values (REF1 and REF2). Note, fieldbus references are bipolar, that is they can be positive or negative.

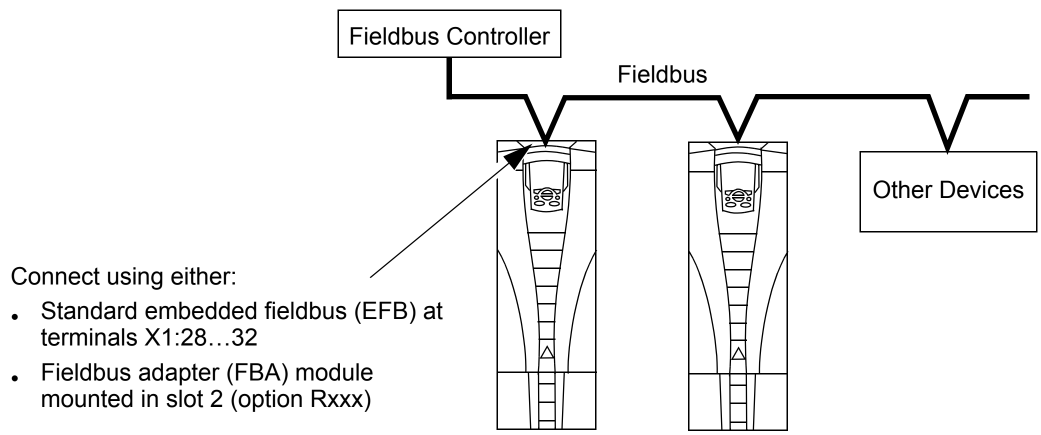
ABB Drives Profile		
Parameter	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
1003 DIRECTION	1 (FORWARD)	
1003 DIRECTION	2 (REVERSE)	
1003 DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	

Fieldbus adapter

Overview

The ACH550 can be set up to accept control from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ACH550 can either:

- Receive all of its control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – See *Embedded fieldbus* on page *1-185*.
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – With one of the optional FBA modules in the drive's expansion slot 2, the drive can communicate to a control system using one of the following protocols:
  - Profibus-DP®
  - LonWorks®
  - CANopen®
  - DeviceNet®
  - ControlNet®
  - Ethernet®

The ACH550 detects automatically which communication protocol is used by the plug-in fieldbus adapter. The default settings for each protocol assume that the profile used is the protocol's industry-standard drive profile (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet). All of the FBA protocols can also be configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Configuration details depend on the protocol and profile used. These details are provided in a user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Details for the ABB Drives profile (which apply for all protocols) are provided in *ABB drives profile technical data* on page *1-269*.

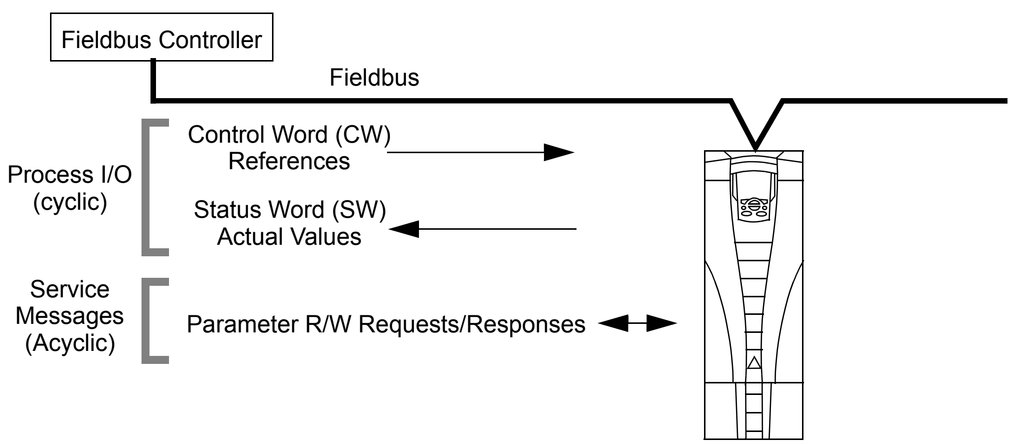
Control interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

- Output Words:
  - CONTROL WORD
  - REFERENCE (speed or frequency)
  - Others: The drive supports a maximum of 15 output words. Protocols limits may further restrict the total.
- Input Words:
  - STATUS WORD
  - Actual Value (speed or frequency)
  - Others: The drive supports a maximum of 15 input words. Protocols limits may further restrict the total.

Note: The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the drive and appears as an input from the drive point of view.

The meanings of the controller interface words are not restricted by the ACH550. However, the profile used may set particular meanings.



Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus controller sends the CONTROL WORD to the drive. The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.

- The serial communication channel is defined as the source for controlling commands from EXT1 (set using parameters 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS and 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL).
- The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is activated:
  - Parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 4 (EXT FBA).
  - The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is configured to use the drive profile mode or drive profile objects.

The content of the CONTROL WORD depends on the protocol/profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the *ABB drives profile technical data*.

Status Word

The STATUS WORD is a 16-bit word containing status information, sent by the drive to the fieldbus controller. The content of the STATUS WORD depends on the protocol/ profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the *ABB drives profile technical data* section.

Reference

The contents of each REFERENCE word:

- Can be used, as speed or frequency reference.
- Is a 16-bit word comprised of a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- Negative references (indicating reversed rotation direction) are indicated by the two's complement of the corresponding positive reference value.

The use of a second reference (REF2) is supported only when a protocol is configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Reference scaling is fieldbus type specific. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the following sections as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Actual Values

Actual Values are 16-bit words containing information on selected operations of the drive. Drive Actual Values (for example, group 01 parameters) can be mapped to Input Words using group 51 parameters (protocol-dependent, but typically parameters 5104…5126).

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent down to the drives?
- What feedback information must be sent from the drives to the controlling system?

Mechanical and electrical installation – FBA

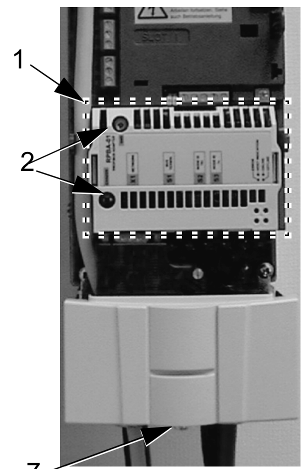
Warning! Connections should be made only while the drive is disconnected from the power source.

Overview

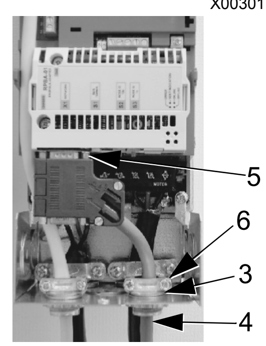
The FBA (fieldbus adapter) is a plug-in module that fits in the drive's expansion slot 2. The module is held in place with plastic retaining clips and two screws. The screws also ground the shield for the module cable, and connect the module GND signals to the drive control board.

On installation of the module, electrical connection to the drive is automatically established through the 34-pin connector.

Mounting procedure



X00301



X00302

Note: Install the input power and motor cables first.

1. Insert the module carefully into the drive expansion slot 2 until the retaining clips lock the module into position.
2. Fasten the two screws (included) to the stand-offs.

Note: Correct installation of the screws is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.

3. Open the appropriate knockout in the conduit box and install the cable clamp for the network cable.
4. Route the network cable through the cable clamp.
5. Connect the network cable to the module's network connector.
6. Tighten the cable clamp.
7. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).
8. For configuration information see the following:
   - *Communication setup – FBA* on page *1-263*.
   - *Activate drive control functions – FBA* on page *1-263*.
   - The protocol specific documentation provided with the module.

Communication setup – FBA

Serial communication selection

To activate the serial communication, use parameter 9802 COMM PROTOCOL SEL. Set 9802 = 4 (EXT FBA).

Serial communication configuration

Setting 9802, together with mounting a particular FBA module, automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined in the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

- Parameter 5101 is automatically configured.
- Parameters 5102…5126 are protocol-dependent and define, for example, the profile used, and additional I/O words. These parameters are referred to as the fieldbus configuration parameters. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module for details on the fieldbus configuration parameters.
- Parameter 5127 forces the validation of changes to parameters 5102…5126. If parameter 5127 is not used, changes to parameters 5102…5126 take affect only after the drive power is cycled.
- Parameters 5128…5133 provide data about the FBA module currently installed (e.g. component versions and status).

The *Parameters* section lists the group 51 parameters.

Activate drive control functions – FBA

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. The last column in each table below is deliberately blank. See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module for the appropriate entry.

Start/stop direction control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop controlled by fieldbus with Ext1 selected.	

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by controlled fieldbus with Ext2 selected.	
1003	DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	Direction controlled by fieldbus.	

Input reference select

Using the fieldbus to provide input reference to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter value set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Ref. selected by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	
1103	REF1 SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Input reference 1supplied by fieldbus.	
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI) 10 (COMM*AI)	Input reference 1 supplied by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	

Note: Multiple references are supported only when using the ABB Drives profile.

Scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the *Reference scaling* in the following sections, as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

System control

Using the fieldbus for miscellaneous drive control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1601	RUN ENABLE	7 (COMM)	Run enable by fieldbus.	
1604	FAULT RESET SEL	8 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus.	
1607	PARAM SAVE	1 (SAVE)	Saves altered parameters to memory (then value returns to 0).	

Relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied, binary coded, relay command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM) 36 (COMM(-1))	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2		Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3		Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	
1410[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 4		Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	
1411[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 5		Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	
1412[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 6		Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Protocol Reference
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4…6 status.	

Analog output control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control (e.g. PID setpoint) requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied analog value(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		
1502 … 1505	AO1 CONTENT MIN … MAXIMUM AO1	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1506	FILTER AO1		Filter time constant for AO1.	–
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		
1508 … 1511	AO2 CONTENT MIN … MAXIMUM AO2	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1512	FILTER AO2		Filter time constant for AO2.	–

PID control setpoint source

Using the fieldbus for the PID control setpoint requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied setpoint value in the appropriate location. (As defined in *Analog output control* above.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
4010	SETPOINT SEL	8 (COMM VALUE 1) 9 (COMM + AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Setpoint is 0135 value (+/-/* AI1)	–

Communication fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the drive's action if serial communication is lost.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
3018	COMM FAULT FUNC	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)	Set for appropriate drive response.	–
3019	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.		–

Feedback from the drive – FBA

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see all parameters listed in *Complete parameter descriptions*.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference
0102	SPEED	
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	
0104	CURRENT	
0105	TORQUE	
0106	POWER	
0107	DC BUS VOLT	
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	

Scaling

To scale the drive parameter values see the *Actual value scaling* in the following sections, as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Diagnostics – FBA

Fault handling

The ACH550 provides fault information as follows:

- The control panel display shows a fault code and text. See *Diagnostics* starting on page *1-279* for a complete description.
- Parameters 0401 LAST FAULT, 0402 PREVIOUS FAULT1 and 0403 PREVIOUS FAULT2 store the most recent faults.
- For fieldbus access, the drive reports faults as a hexadecimal value, assigned and coded according to the DRIVECOM specification. See table below. Not all profiles support requesting fault codes using this specification. For profiles that support this specification, the profile documentation defines the proper fault request process.

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
1	OVERCURRENT	2310h
2	DC OVERVOLT	3210h
3	DEV OVERTEMP	4210h
4	SHORT CIRC	2340h
5	Reserved	FF6Bh
6	DC UNDERVOLT	3220h
7	AI1 LOSS	8110h
8	AI2 LOSS	8110h
9	MOT TEMP	4310h
10	PANEL LOSS	5300h
11	ID RUN FAIL	FF84h
12	MOTOR STALL	7121h
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1	9000h
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2	9001h
16	EARTH FAULT	2330h
17	UNDERLOAD	FF6Ah
18	THERM FAIL	5210h
19	OPEX LINK	7500h
20	OPEX PWR	5414h
21	CURR MEAS	2211h

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
22	SUPPLY PHASE	3130h
23	ENCODER ERR	7301h
24	OVERSPEED	7310h
25	Reserved	FF80h
26	DRIVE ID	5400h
27	CONFIG FILE	630Fh
28	SERIAL 1 ERR	7510h
29	EFB CONFIG FILE	6306h
30	FORCE TRIP	FF90h
31	EFB 1	FF92h
32	EFB 2	FF93h
33	EFB 3	FF94h
34	MOTOR PHASE	FF56h
35	OUTPUT WIRING	FF95h
36	INCOMP SWTYPE	630Fh
101	SERF CORRUPT	FF55h
102	Reserved	FF55h
103	SERF MACRO	FF55h
104	Reserved	FF55h
105	Reserved	FF55h
201	DSP T1 OVERLOAD	6100h
202	DSP T2 OVERLOAD	6100h
203	DSP T3 OVERLOAD	6100h
204	DSP STACK ERROR	6100h
205	Reserved	5000h
206	OMIO ID ERROR	5000h
207	EFB LOAD ERR	6100h
1000	PAR HZRPM	6320h
1001	PAR PFAREFNG	6320h
1002	Reserved (obsolete)	6320h
1003	PAR AI SCALE	6320h
1004	PAR AO SCALE	6320h
1005	PAR PCU 2	6320h
1006	EXT ROMISSING	6320h
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING	6320h
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR	6320h
1009	PAR PCU 1	6320h
1010	PAR PFA OVERRIDE	6320h

Drive Fault Code		**Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)**
1011	PAR OVERRIDE PARS	6320h
1012	PAR PFC IO 1	6320h
1013	PAR PFC IO 2	6320h
1014	PAR PFC IO 3	6320h

Serial communication diagnostics

Besides the drive fault codes, the FBA module has diagnostic tools. Refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

ABB drives profile technical data

Overview

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including protocols available on the FBA module. This section describes the ABB Drives profile implemented for FBA modules.

Control Word

As described earlier in *Control interface* the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system.

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCHON INHIBITED

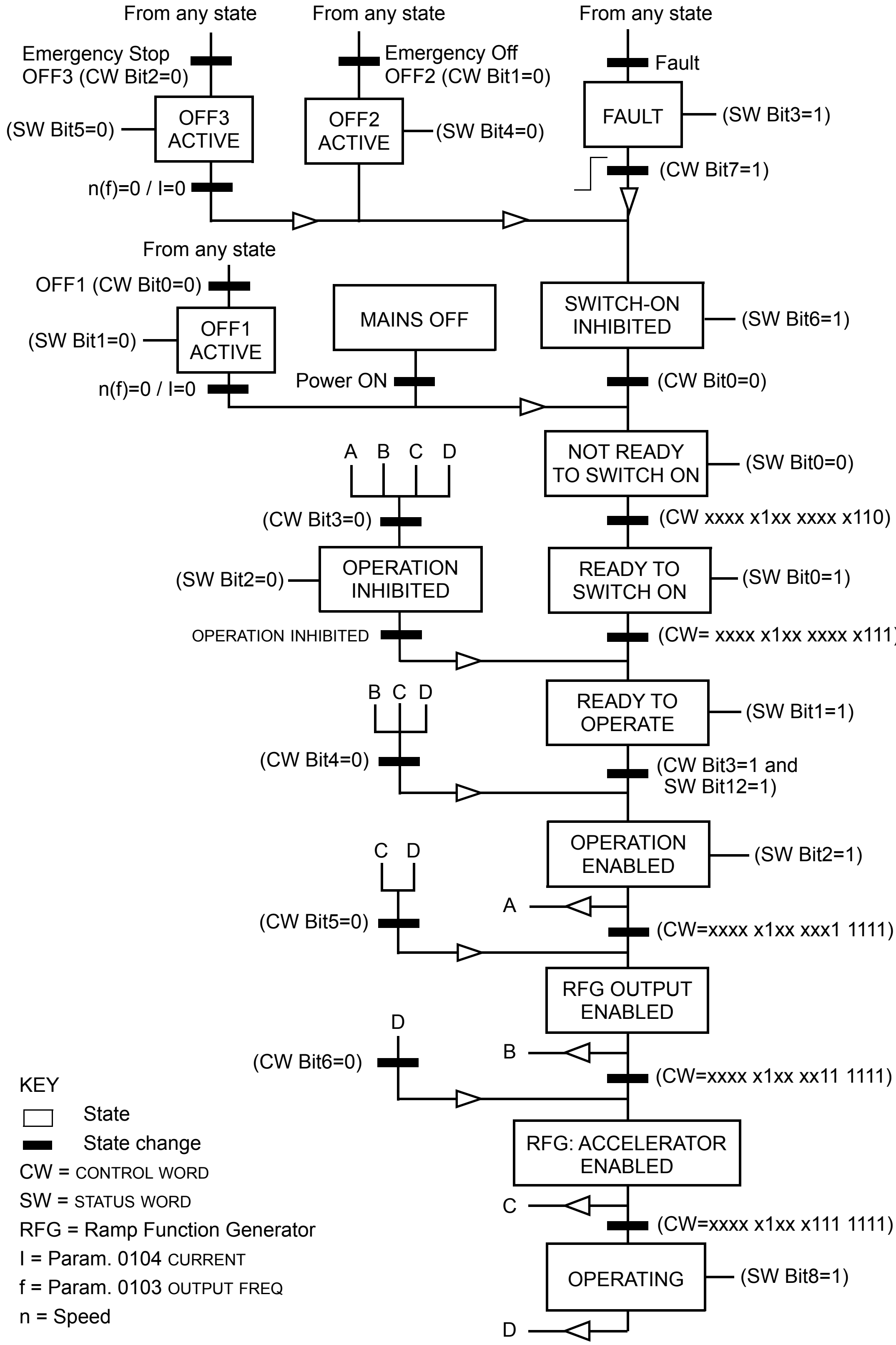
ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED **WARNING! Be sure motor and driven equipment can be stopped using this mode.**
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also actives the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	RAMP_OUT_ ZERO	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8…9	Unused			
10	REMOTE_CMD	1		Fieldbus control enabled
		0		• CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. • CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. • Ref and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12…15	Unused			

Status Word

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0…1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 inactive
		0	**OFF2 ACTIVE**
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 inactive
		0	**OFF3 ACTIVE**
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See *Alarm listing* in the *Diagnostics* section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING**.** Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter's value ≥ supervision high limit. Bit remains "1" until supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. Bit remains "0" until supervised parameter's value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13… 15	Unused		

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits.



Reference

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Reference scaling

The following table describes REFERENCE scaling for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)				
Reference	**Range**	**Reference Type**	**Scaling**	**Remarks**
REF1	-32767… +32767	Speed or frequency	-20000 = -**(par. 1105)** 0 = 0 +20000 = **(par. 1105)** (20000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
REF2	-32767… +32767	Speed or frequency	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1107/1108. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
		Torque	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 2015/2017 (torque1) or 2016/2018 (torque2).
		PID Reference	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 4012/4013 (PID set1) or 4112/4113 (PID set2).

Note: The setting of parameter 1104 REF1 MIN and 1107 REF2 MIN has no effect on the scaling of references.

When parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT or 1106 REF2 SELECT is set to COMM+AI1 or COMM*AI1, the reference is scaled as follows:

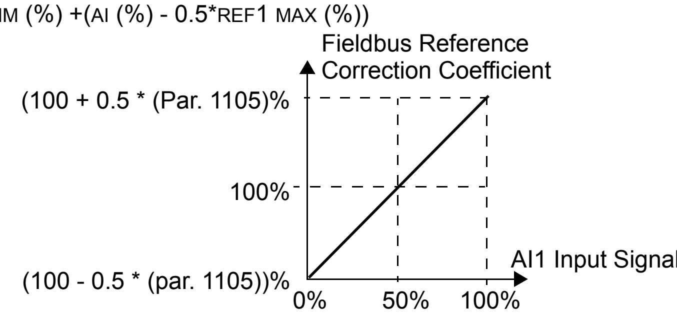
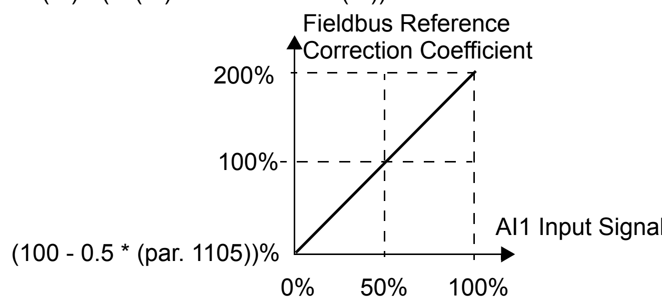
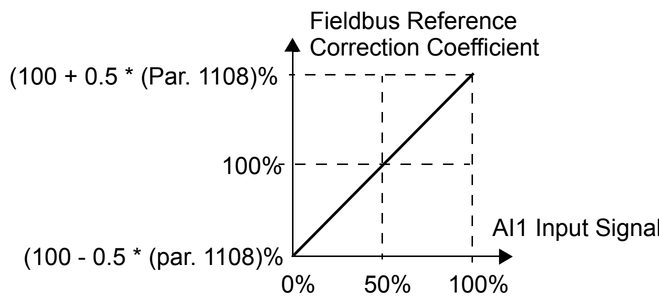
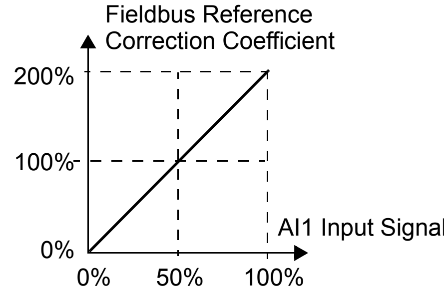
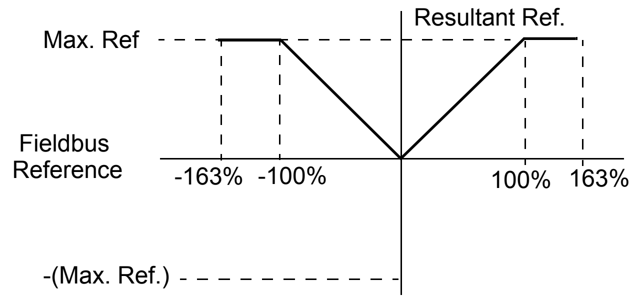
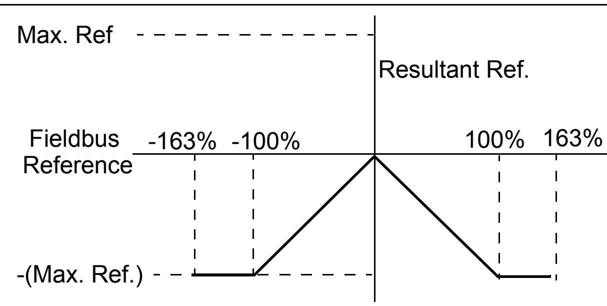
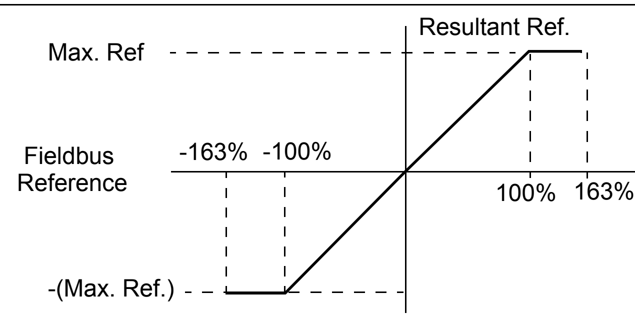
<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">ABB Drives Profile (FBA)</th></tr>
<tr><th>Reference</th><th>Value Setting</th><th>AI Reference Scaling</th></tr>
<tr><td>REF1</td><td>COMM+AI1</td><td>COMM (%) +(AI (%) - 0.5*REF1 MAX (%))

</td></tr>
</table>

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)		
Reference	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
REF1	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF1 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM+AI1	COMM (%) + (AI (%) - 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 

Reference handling

Use group 10 parameters to configure for control of rotation direction for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2). The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus reference interact to produce REFERENCE values (REF1 and REF2). Note, fieldbus references are bipolar, that is they can be positive or negative.

ABB Drives Profile		
Parameter	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
1003 DIRECTION	1 (FORWARD)	
1003 DIRECTION	2 (REVERSE)	
1003 DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	

Actual value

As described earlier in *Control interface*, Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual value scaling

The scaling of the integers sent to the fieldbus as Actual Values depends on the resolution of the selected drive parameter. Except as noted for Data Words 5 and 6 below, scale the feedback integer using the resolution listed for the parameter in the *Complete parameter descriptions* section. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Data words 5 and 6 are scaled as follows:

ABB Drives Profile		
Data Word	**Contents**	**Scaling**
5	ACTUAL SPEED	-20000 … +20000 = -(par. 1105) … +(par. 1105)
6	TORQUE	-10000 … +10000 = -100% … +100%

Actual value mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic profile technical data

Overview

The generic profile aims to fulfill the industry-standard drive profile for each protocol (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet).

Control Word

As described earlier in *Control interface* the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. For specific CONTROL WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Status Word

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. For specific STATUS WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Reference

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Note: REF2 is not supported by the Generic Drive profiles.

Reference scaling

REFERENCE scaling is fieldbus type specific. However, at the drive, the meaning of a 100% REFERENCE value is fixed as described in the table below. For a detailed description on the range and scaling of the REFERENCE, see the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic Profile				
Reference	**Range**	**Reference Type**	**Scaling**	**Remarks**
REF	Fieldbus specific	Speed	-100% = -**(par. 9908)** 0 = 0 +100 = **(par. 9908)**	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/ 2002 (speed).
		Frequency	-100% = -**(par. 9907)** 0 = 0 +100 = **(par. 9907)**	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2007/ 2008 (frequency).

Actual values

As described earlier in *Control interface*, Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual value scaling

For Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See *Complete parameter descriptions* section for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the *Complete parameter descriptions* section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm[1]	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz[2]	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Actual value mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Diagnostics

Warning! Do not attempt any measurement, parts replacement or other service procedure not described in this manual. Such action will void the warranty, may endanger correct operation, and increase downtime and expense.

Warning! All electrical installation and maintenance work described in this chapter should only be undertaken by qualified service personnel. The Safety instructions on the first pages of this manual must be followed.

Diagnostic displays

The drive detects error situations and reports them using:

- The green and red LED on the body of the drive
- The status LED on the control panel (if the HVAC control panel is attached to the drive)
- The control panel display (if the HVAC control panel is attached to the drive)
- The Fault Word and Alarm Word parameter bits (parameters 0305 to 0309). See *Group 03: ACTUAL SIGNALS* on page *1-87*.

The form of the display depends on the severity of the error. You can specify the severity for many errors by directing the drive to:

- Ignore the error situation.
- Report the situation as an alarm.
- Report the situation as a fault.

Red – faults

The drive signals that it has detected a severe error, or fault, by:

- Enabling the red LED on the drive (LED is either steady on or blinking).
- Setting an appropriate bit in a Fault Word parameter (0305 to 0307).
- Overriding the control panel display with the display of a fault code.
- Stopping the motor (if it was on).

The fault code on the control panel display is temporary. Pressing any of the following buttons removes the fault message: MENU, ENTER, UP button or DOWN button. The message reappears after a few seconds if the control panel is not touched and the fault is still active.

Flashing green – alarms

For less severe errors, called alarms, the diagnostic display is advisory. For these situations, the drive is simply reporting that it had detected something "unusual." In these situations, the drive:

- Flashes the green LED on the drive (does not apply to alarms that arise from control panel operation errors).
- Sets an appropriate bit in an Alarm Word parameter (0308 or 0309). See *Group 03: ACTUAL SIGNALS* on page *1-87* for the bit definitions.
- Overrides the control panel display with the display of an alarm code and/or name.

Alarm messages disappear from the control panel display after a few seconds. The message returns periodically as long as the alarm condition exists.

Correcting faults

The recommended corrective action for faults is:

- Use the *Fault listing* table below to find and address the root cause of the problem.
- Reset the drive. See *Fault resetting* on page *1-285*.

Fault listing

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
1	OVERCURRENT	Output current is excessive. Check for and correct: • Excessive motor load. • Insufficient acceleration time (parameters 2202 ACCELER TIME 1 and 2205 ACCELER TIME 2). • Faulty motor, motor cables or connections.
2	DC OVERVOLT	Intermediate circuit DC voltage is excessive. Check for and correct: • Static or transient overvoltages in the input power supply. • Insufficient deceleration time (parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2). • Verify that overvoltage controller is ON (using parameter 2005).
3	DEV OVERTEMP	Drive heatsink is overheated. Temperature is at or above limit. R1…R4 & R7/R8: 115 °C (239 °F) R5/R6: 125 °C (257 °F) Check for and correct: • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow. • Dirt or dust coating on the heat sink. • Excessive ambient temperature. • Excessive motor load.
4	SHORT CIRC	Fault current. Check for and correct: • A short-circuit in the motor cable(s) or motor. • Supply disturbances.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
5	RESERVED	Not used.
6	DC UNDERVOLT	Intermediate circuit DC voltage is not sufficient. Check for and correct: • Missing phase in the input power supply. • Blown fuse. • Undervoltage on mains.
7	AI1 LOSS	Analog input 1 loss. Analog input value is less than AI1FLT LIMIT (3021). Check for and correct: • Source and connection for analog input. • Parameter settings for AI1FLT LIMIT (3021) and 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.
8	AI2 LOSS	Analog input 2 loss. Analog input value is less than AI2FLT LIMIT (3022). Check for and correct: • Source and connection for analog input. • Parameter settings for AI2FLT LIMIT (3022) and 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.
9	MOT TEMP	Motor is too hot, based on either the drive's estimate or on temperature feedback. • Check for overloaded motor. • Adjust the parameters used for the estimate (3005…3009). • Check the temperature sensors and Group 35 parameters.
10	PANEL LOSS	Panel communication is lost and either: • Drive is in local control mode (the control panel displays HAND or OFF), or • Drive is in remote control mode (AUTO) and is parameterized to accept start/stop, direction or reference from the control panel. To correct check: • Communication lines and connections • Parameter 3002 PANEL COMM ERROR. • Parameters in Group 10: START/STOP/DIR and Group 11: REFERENCE SELECT (if drive operation is AUTO).
11	ID RUN FAIL	The motor ID run was not completed successfully. Check for and correct: • Motor connections • Motor parameters 9905…9909
12	MOTOR STALL	Motor or process stall. Motor is operating in the stall region. Check for and correct: • Excessive load. • Insufficient motor power. • Parameters 3010…3012.
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1	Digital input defined to report first external fault is active. See parameter 3003 EXTERNAL FAULT 1.
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2	Digital input defined to report second external fault is active. See parameter 3004 EXTERNAL FAULT 2.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
16	EARTH FAULT	Possible ground fault detected in the motor or motor cables. The drive monitors for ground faults while the drive is running and while the drive is not running. Detection is more sensitive when the drive is not running and can produce false positives. Possible corrections: • Check for/correct faults in the input wiring. • Verify that motor cable does not exceed maximum specified length. • A delta grounded input power supply and motor cables with high capacitance may result in erroneous error reports during non-running tests. To disable response to fault monitoring when the drive is not running, use parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT. To disable response to all ground fault monitoring, use parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT.
17	UNDERLOAD	Motor load is lower than expected. Check for and correct: • Disconnected load. • Group 37: USER LOAD CURVE.
18	THERM FAIL	Internal fault. The thermistor measuring the internal temperature of the drive is open or shorted. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
19	OPEX LINK	Internal fault. A communication-related problem has been detected on the fiber optic link between the OITF and OINT boards. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
20	OPEX PWR	Internal fault. Low voltage condition detected on OINT power supply. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
21	CURR MEAS	Internal fault. Current measurement is out of range. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
22	SUPPLY PHASE	Ripple voltage in the DC link is too high. Check for and correct: • Missing mains phase. • Blown fuse.
23	ENCODER ERR	Not used (Available only with encoder and parameter Group 50).
23	ENCODER ERR	The drive is not detecting a valid encoder signal. Check for and correct: • Encoder presence and proper connection (reverse wired, loose connection, or short circuit). • Voltage logic levels are outside of the specified range. • A working and properly connected Pulse Encoder Interface Module, OTAC-01. • Wrong value entered in parameter 5001 PULSE NR. A wrong value will only be detected if the error is such that the calculated slip is greater than 4 times the rated slip of the motor. • Encoder is not being used, but parameter 5002 ENCODER ENABLE = 1 (ENABLED).
24	OVERSPEED	Motor speed is greater than 120% of the larger (in magnitude) of 2001 MINIMUM SPEED or 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED. Check for and correct: • Parameter settings for 2001 and 2002. • Adequacy of motor braking torque. • Applicability of torque control. • Brake chopper and resistor.
25	RESERVED	Not used as of the publication of this manual.
26	DRIVE ID	Internal fault. Configuration Block Drive ID is not valid. Contact your local ABB sales representative.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
27	CONFIG FILE	Internal configuration file has an error. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
28	SERIAL 1 ERR	Fieldbus communication has timed out. Check for and correct: • Fault setup (3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME). • Communication settings (Group 51 or 53 as appropriate). • Poor connections and/or noise on line.
29	EFB CONFIG FILE	Error in reading the configuration file for the embedded fieldbus.
30	FORCE TRIP	Fault trip forced by the fieldbus. See the fieldbus User's Manual.
31	EFB 1	Fault code reserved for the embedded fieldbus (EFB) protocol application. These codes are not used as of the publication of this manual.
32	EFB 2	
33	EFB 3	
34	MOTOR PHASE	Fault in the motor circuit. One of the motor phases is lost. Check for and correct: • Motor fault. • Motor cable fault. • Thermal relay fault (if used). • Internal fault.
35	OUTPUT WIRING	Possible power wiring error detected. When the drive is not running it monitors for an improper connection between the drive input power and the drive output. Check for and correct: • Proper input wiring – line voltageis NOT connected to drive output. • The fault can be erroneously declared if the input power is a delta grounded system and motor cable capacitance is large. This fault can be disabled using parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT.
36	INCOMP SWTYPE	The drive cannot use the software. • Internal Fault. • The loaded software is not compatible with the drive. • Call support representative.
37	CB OVERTEMP	Drive control board is overheated. Check for and correct: • Excessive ambient temperatures • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow.
38	USER LOAD CURVE	Condition defined by parameter 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than the time defined by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME.
101	SERF CORRUPT	Error internal to the drive. Contact your local ABB sales representative and report the error number.
102	RESERVED	
103	SERF MACRO	
104	RESERVED	
105	RESERVED	

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
201	DSP T1 OVERLOAD	Error in the system. Contact your local ABB sales representative and report the error number.
202	DSP T2 OVERLOAD	
203	DSP T3 OVERLOAD	
204	DSP STACK ERROR	
205	RESERVED (obsolete)	
206	OMIO ID ERROR	
207	EFB LOAD ERR	
1000	PAR HZRPM LIMITS	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following: • 2001 MINIMUM SPEED > 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED. • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ > 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ. • 2001 MINIMUM SPEED / 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED is outside proper range (> 50) • 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED / 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED is outside proper range (> 50) • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ is outside proper range (> 50) • 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ is outside proper range (> 50)
1001	PAR PFAREFNG	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for the following: • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ is negative, when 8123 PFA ENABLE is active.
1002	RESERVED (Obsolete)	
1003	PAR AI SCALE	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following: • 1301 AI 1 MIN > 1302 AI 1 MAX. • 1304 AI 2 MIN > 1305 AI 2 MAX.
1004	PAR AO SCALE	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following: • 1504 AO 1 MIN > 1505 AO 1 MAX. • 1510 AO 2 MIN > 1511 AO 2 MAX.
1005	PAR PCU 2	Parameter values for power control are inconsistent: Improper motor nominal kVA or motor nominal power. Check for the following: • $1.1 \leq$ (9906 MOTOR NOM CURR * 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT * 1.73 / P_N) ≤ 3.0 • Where: P_N = 1000 * 9909 MOTOR NOM POWER (if units are kW) or P_N = 746 * 9909 MOTOR NOM POWER (if units are HP, e.g. in US)
1006	EXT ROMISSING	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for the following: • Extension relay module not connected and • 1410…1412 RELAY OUTPUTS 4…6 have non-zero values.
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING	Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for and correct: • A parameter is set for fieldbus control (e.g. 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS = 10 (COMM)), but 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 0.
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR	Parameter values are inconsistent – 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE must be = 3 (SCALAR: SPEED), when 8123 PFA ENABLE is activated.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
1009	PAR PCU1	Parameter values for power control are inconsistent: Improper motor nominal frequency or speed. Check for both of the following: • 1 $\leq$ (60 * 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ / 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED $\leq$ 16 • 0.8 $\leq$ 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED / (120 * 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ / Motor Poles) $\leq$ 0.992
1010	PAR PFA OVERRIDE	Both the override mode and PFA are activated at the same time. These modes are mutually incompatible, because PFA interlocks cannot be observed in the override mode.
1011	PAR OVERRIDE PARS	Overeride is enabled, but parameters are incompatible. Verify that 1701 is not zero, and (depending on 9904 value) 1702 or 1703 is not zero. Verify that 4010 is either AI1, AI2 or INTERNAL.
1012	PAR PFA IO 1	IO configuration is not complete – not enough relays are parameterized to PFA. Or, a conflict exists between Group 14, parameter 8117, NR OF AUX MOT, and parameter 8118, AUTOCHNG INTERV.
1013	PAR PFA IO 2	IO configuration is not complete – the actual number of PFA motors (parameter 8127, MOTORS) does not match the PFA motors in Group 14 and parameter 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV.
1014	PAR PFA IO 3	IO configuration is not complete – the drive is unable to allocate a digital input (interlock) for each PFA motor (parameters 8120 INTERLOCKS and 8127 MOTORS).

Fault resetting

The ACH550 can be configured to automatically reset certain faults. Refer to parameter Group 31: Automatic Reset.

Warning! If an external source for start command is selected and it is active, the ACH550 may start immediately after fault reset.

Flashing red LED

To reset the drive for faults indicated by a flashing red LED:

- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Red LED

To reset the drive for faults indicated by a red LED (on, not flashing), correct the problem and do one of the following:

- From the control panel, press RESET
- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Depending on the value of 1604, FAULT RESET SELECT, the following could also be used to reset the drive:

- Digital input
- Serial communication

When the fault has been corrected, the motor can be started.

History

For reference, the last three fault codes are stored into parameters 0401, 0412, 0413. For the most recent fault (identified by parameter 0401), the drive stores additional data (in parameters 0402…0411) to aid in troubleshooting a problem. For example, parameter 0404 stores the motor speed at the time of the fault.

To clear the fault history (all of the Group 04, Fault History parameters):

1. Using the control panel in Parameters mode, select parameter 0401.
2. Press EDIT.
3. Press UP and Down simultaneously.
4. Press SAVE.

Correcting alarms

The recommended corrective action for alarms is:

- Determine if the Alarm requires any corrective action (action is not always required).
- Use *Alarm listing* below to find and address the root cause of the problem.

Alarm listing

The following table lists the alarms by code number and describes each.

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2001	OVERCURRENT	Current limiting controller is active. Check for and correct: • Excessive motor load. • Insufficient acceleration time (parameters 2202 ACCELER TIME 1 and 2205 ACCELER TIME 2). • Faulty motor, motor cables or connections.
2002	OVERVOLTAGE	Over voltage controller is active. Check for and correct: • Static or transient overvoltages in the input power supply. • Insufficient deceleration time (parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2).
2003	UNDERVOLTAGE	Under voltage controller is active. Check for and correct: • Undervoltage on mains.
2004	DIR LOCK	The change in direction being attempted is not allowed. Either: • Do not attempt to change the direction of motor rotation, or • Change parameter 1003 DIRECTION to allow direction change (if reverse operation is safe).
2005	I/O COMM	Fieldbus communication has timed out. Check for and correct: • Fault setup (3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME). • Communication settings (Group 51 or 53 as appropriate). • Poor connections and/or noise on line.

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2006	AI1 LOSS	Analog input 1 is lost, or value is less than the minimum setting. Check: • Input source and connections • Parameter that sets the minimum (3021) • Parameter that sets the Alarm/Fault operation (3001)
2007	AI2 LOSS	Analog input 2 is lost, or value is less than the minimum setting. Check: • Input source and connections • Parameter that sets the minimum (3022) • Parameter that sets the Alarm/Fault operation (3001)
2008	PANEL LOSS	Panel communication is lost and either: • Drive is in local control mode (the control panel displays HAND or OFF), or • Drive is in remote control mode (AUTO) and is parameterized to accept start/stop, direction or reference from the control panel. To correct check: • Communication lines and connections • Parameter 3002 PANEL LOSS. • Parameters in Groups 10 START/STOP/DIR and 11: REFERENCE SELECT (if drive operation is AUTO).
2009	DEVICE OVERTEMP	Drive heatsink is hot. This alarm warns that a DEVICE OVERTEMP fault may be near. R1…R4 & R7/R8: 100 °C (212 °F) R5/R6: 110 °C (230 °F) Check for and correct: • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow. • Dirt or dust coating on the heat sink. • Excessive ambient temperature. • Excessive motor load.
2010	MOT OVERTEMP	Motor is hot, based on either the drive's estimate or on temperature feedback. This alarm warns that a Motor Underload fault trip may be near. Check: • Check for overloaded motor. • Adjust the parameters used for the estimate (3005…3009). • Check the temperature sensors and Group 35 parameters.
2011	UNDERLOAD	Motor load is lower than expected. This alarm warns that a Motor Underload fault trip may be near. Check: • Motor and drive ratings match (motor is NOT undersized for the drive) • Settings Group 37: USER LOAD CURVE
2012	MOTOR STALL	Motor is operating in the stall region. This alarm warns that a Motor Stall fault trip may be near.
2013 (note 1)	AUTORESET	This alarm warns that the drive is about to perform an automatic fault reset, which may start the motor. • To control automatic reset, use parameter Group 31: AUTOMATIC RESET.
2014 (note 1)	AUTOCHANGE	This alarm warns that the PFA autochange function is active. • To control PFA, use parameter Group 81: PFA CONTROL

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2015	PFA INTERLOCK	This alarm warns that the PFA interlocks are active, which means that the drive cannot start the following: • Any motor (when Autochange is used), • The speed regulated motor (when Autochange is not used).
2016	Reserved	
2017 (note 1)	OFF BUTTON	This alarm warns that parameter 1606 LOCAL LOCK is active and the drive is in the AUTO mode. When the OFF key is pressed, the drive remains in the AUTO mode but coasts to stop.
2018 (note 1)	PID SLEEP	This alarm warns that the PID sleep function is active, which means that the motor could accelerate when the PID sleep function ends. • To control PID sleep, use parameters 4022…4026 or 4122…4126.
2019	ID RUN	Performing ID run.
2020	OVERRIDE	This alarm warns that the Override function is active, which may start the motor.
2021	START ENABLE 1 MISSING	This alarm warns that the Start Enable 1 signal is missing. • To control Start Enable 1 function, use parameter 1608. To correct, check: • Digital input configuration. • Communication settings.
2022	START ENABLE 2 MISSING	This alarm warns that the Start Enable 2 signal is missing. • To control Start Enable 2 function, use parameter 1609. To correct, check: • Digital input configuration. • Communication settings.
2023	EMERGENCY STOP	Emergency stop activated.
2024	ENCODER ERROR	The drive is not detecting a valid encoder signal. Check for and correct: • Encoder presence and proper connection (reverse wired, loose connection, or short circuit). • Voltage logic levels are outside of the specified range. • A working and properly connected Pulse Encoder Interface Module, OTAC-01. • Wrong value entered in parameter 5001 PULSE NR. A wrong value will only be detected if the error is such that the calculated slip is greater than 4 times the rated slip of the motor. • Encoder is not being used, but parameter 5002 ENCODER ENABLE = 1 (ENABLED).
2025	FIRST START	Signals that a the drive is performing a First Start evaluation of motor characteristics. This is normal the first time the motor is run after motor parameters are entered or changed. See parameter 9910 (MOTOR ID RUN) for a description of motor models.
2026	RESERVED	Not used.
2027	USER LOAD CURVE	This alarm warns that the condition defined by parameter 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer that half of the time difined by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME.
2028	START DELAY	Shown during the Start delay. See parameter 2113 START DELAY.

Note 1. Even when the relay output is configured to indicate alarm conditions (e.g. parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 5 (ALARM) or 16 (FLT/ALARM)), this alarm is not indicated by a relay output.

Maintenance

Warning! Read *Safety* on page *1-3* before performing any maintenance on the equipment. Ignoring the safety instructions can cause injury or death.

Maintenance intervals

If installed in an appropriate environment, the drive requires very little maintenance. This table lists the routine maintenance intervals recommended by ABB.

Maintenance	Application	Interval	Instruction
Check/replace R7/R8 enclosure inlet air filter	R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosures	Check every 3 months. Replace as needed.	*Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 enclosure inlet air filter on page 293*
Check/replace R7/R8 enclosure exhaust air filter.	R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosures	Check every 6 months. Replace as needed.	*Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 enclosure exhaust filters on page 294*
Check and clean heatsink.	All	Depends on the dustiness of the environment (every 6…12 months).	See *Heatsink* below.
Check cable connections are secure and tighten as specified.	All	Every year.	See *Power & Control Connections on pages 307, 309 & 316*
Replace enclosure fan.	UL type 12 enclosures	Every three years.	See *Enclosure fan replacement – UL Type 12 enclosures on page 291*.
Replace drive module fan.	All	Every six years.	See *Drive module fan replacement on page 290*.
Change capacitor.	Frame sizes R5 and R6	Every ten years.	See *Capacitors on page 296*.
Replace battery in the Assistant control panel	All	Every ten years.	See *Control panel on page 296*.

Heatsink

The heatsink fins accumulate dust from the cooling air. Since a dusty heatsink is less efficient at cooling the drive, overtemperature faults become more likely. In a "normal" environment (not dusty, not clean) check the heatsink annually, in a dusty environment check more often.

Clean the heatsink as follows (when necessary):

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the cooling fan (see section *Drive module fan replacement* on page *1-290*).

3. Blow clean compressed air (not humid) from bottom to top and simultaneously use a vacuum cleaner at the air outlet to trap the dust.

Note: If there is a risk of the dust entering adjoining equipment, perform the cleaning in another room.

---

4. Replace the cooling fan.
5. Restore power.

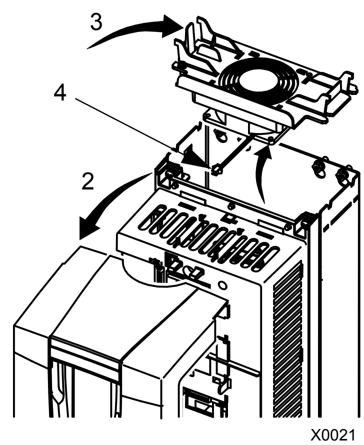
Drive module fan replacement

The drive module fan cools the heatsink. Fan failure can be predicted by the increasing noise from fan bearings and the gradual rise in the heatsink temperature in spite of heatsink cleaning. If the drive is operated in a critical part of a process, fan replacement is recommended once these symptoms start appearing. Replacement fans are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

To monitor the running time of the cooling fan, see *Group 29: MAINTENANCE TRIG* on page *1-127*.

Frame Sizes R1...R4

To replace the fan:

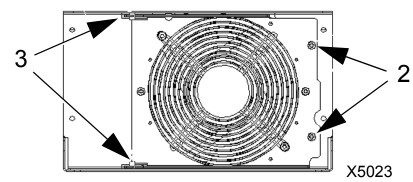


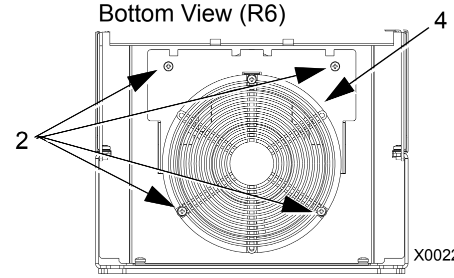
1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove drive cover.
3. For Frame Size:
   - R1, R2: Press together the retaining clips on the fan cover sides, and lift.
   - R3, R4: Press in on the lever located on the left side of the fan mount, and rotate the fan up and out.
4. Disconnect the fan cable.
5. Install the fan in reverse order.
6. Restore power.

Frame Sizes R5 and R6

To replace the fan:

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the screws attaching the fan.
3. Remove the fan:
   - R5: Swing the fan out on its hinges.
   - R6: Pull the fan out.
4. Disconnect the fan cable.
5. Install the fan in reverse order.
6. Restore power.





Frame Sizes R7 and R8

Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the fan kit.

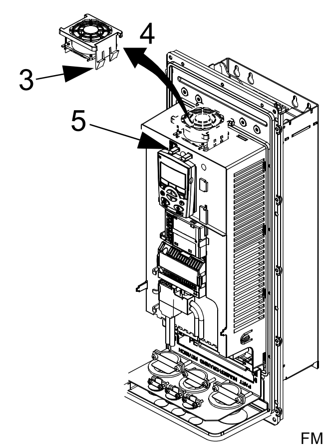
Enclosure fan replacement – UL Type 12 enclosures

UL type 12 enclosures include an additional fan (or fans) to move air through the enclosure.

Frame Sizes R1 to R4

To replace the internal enclosure fan in frame sizes R1 to R4:

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the front cover.
3. The housing that holds the fan in place has barbed retaining clips at each corner. Press all four clips toward the center to release the barbs.
4. When the clips/barbs are free, pull the housing up to remove from the drive.
5. Disconnect the fan cable.
6. Install the fan in reverse order, noting that:
   - The fan air flow is up (refer to arrow on fan).
   - The fan wire harness is toward the front.
   - The notched housing barb is located in the right-rear corner.
   - The fan cable connects just forward of the fan at the top of the drive.



Frame Sizes R5 and R6

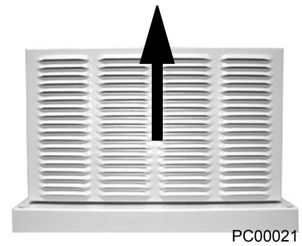
To replace the internal enclosure fan in frame sizes R5 or R6:

- Remove power from drive.

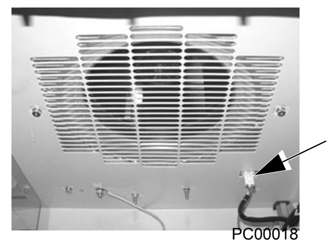
- Remove the front cover.
- Lift the fan out and disconnect the cable.
- Install the fan in reverse order.
- Restore power.

Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 enclosures

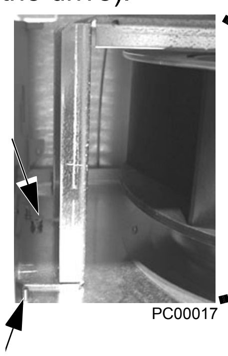
The enclosure fan is located in the exhaust box on top of the UL type 12 enclosure.

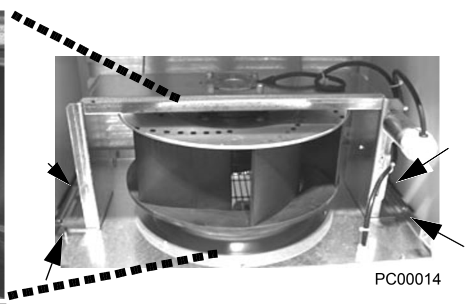

PC00021

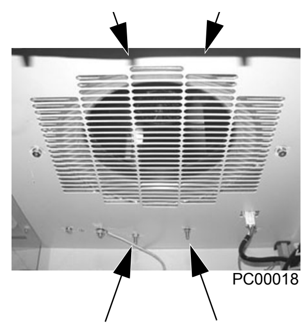
1. Remove the left and right filter frames of the exhaust fan box by lifting them upwards.


PC00018

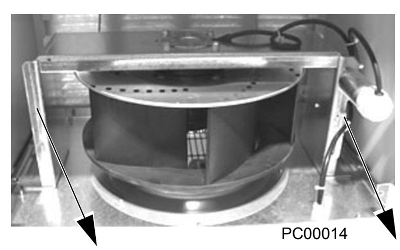
2. Disconnect the fan's electrical connector from the cabinet roof (top right inside the cabinet).
3. Undo the four fastening screws at the corners of the fan frame. The screws are through bolts with nuts on the inside of the cabinet. (Do not drop the hardware into the drive).


PC00017

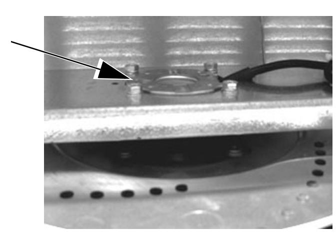

PC00014


PC00018

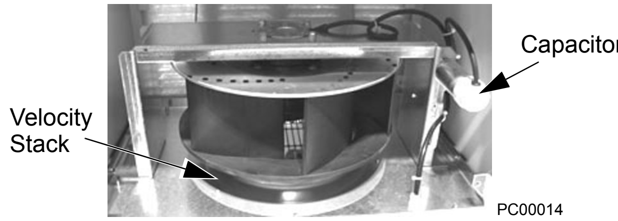
4. Remove the fan and fan frame as one unit.


PC00014

5. Disconnect the fan wiring and capacitor from the fan frame. Then remove the four screws attaching the fan to the fan frame. Remove the old fan.


PC00020

6. Install the new fan and capacitor with the replacement part for ABB in the reverse order of the above. Ensure the fan is centered on the velocity stack and rotates freely.



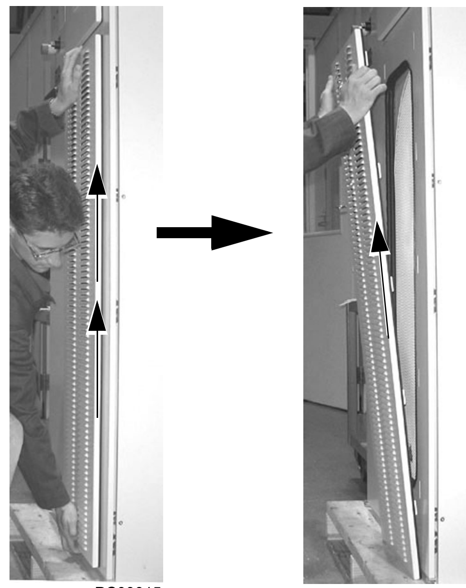
PC00014

Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type 12 enclosures

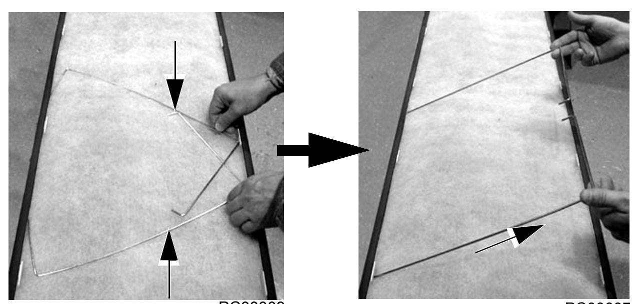
Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 enclosure inlet air filter

The inlet air filter for the R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosure is located in the enclosure front door.

1. While holding the top of the filter frame, pull up on the bottom of the frame. The filter frame will slide up approximately 3/4 inch and can then safely removed by tilting away from the cabinet and lifting up.


PC00015 PC00010

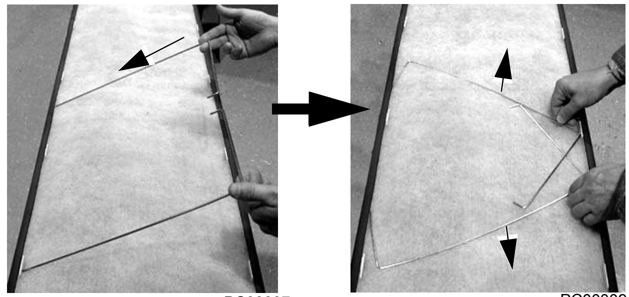
2. Lay the filter frame on a flat work surface. Remove the 3 retaining brackets by squeezing the tabbed corners in towards the middle of each bracket until the bracket clears the filter frame. Save these brackets for replacement. Remove and inspect the filter.


PC00009 PC00007

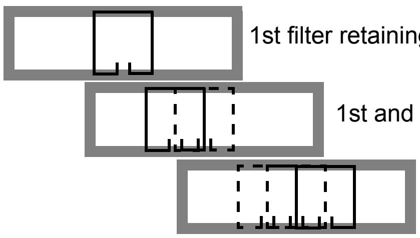
3. Install the replacement filter. Be sure to tuck the filter into the grove around the entire filter frame. This is very important for proper installation.


PC00013

4. Reinstall the 3 filter restraining brackets. These will prevent the filter from being pulled out of the filter frame.
   - Install the center bracket first.
   - Install the 2nd bracket overlapping the center bracket by 1/2 to the left.
   - Install the 3nd bracket overlapping the center bracket by 1/2 to the right.



PC00007 PC00009

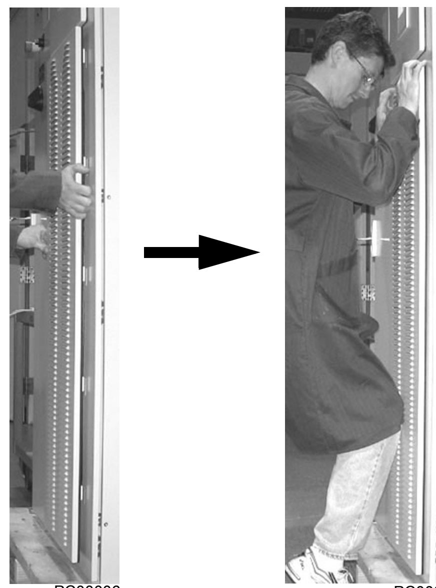


1st filter retaining bracket

1st and 2nd filter retaining brackets

All 3 filter retaining brackets

5. Install the filter frame back to the cabinet door. Carefully align the mounting hooks to the slots in the cabinet door. The hooks should be pointing down. Press in at the center of the filter frame with your knee and gently press down with your hands at the top of the frame. The filter frame will slide down approximately 3/4 inch and should be sealed securely to the door around the entire filter frame.



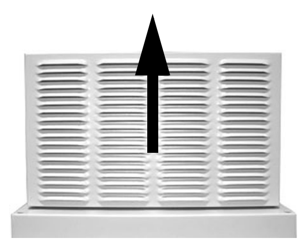
PC00006 PC00008

Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 enclosure exhaust filters

The exhaust filters in the R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosure are located in the exhaust box at the top of the enclosure.

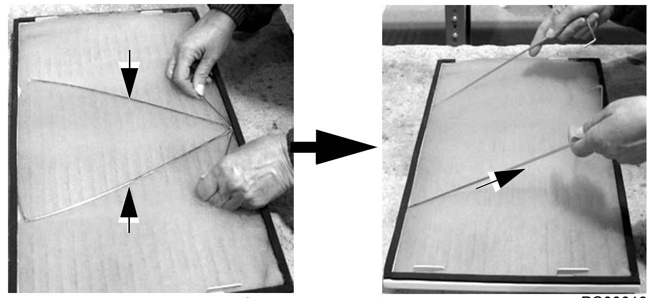
There are 2 filter frames attached to the exhaust box.

1. Remove power from the drive.
2. Wait 5 minutes to ensure the fan has stopped.
3. Remove each filter frame:
   - Lift up on the filter frame until it slides approximately 3/4 inch.
   - Pull away from the exhaust box to remove.



PC00021

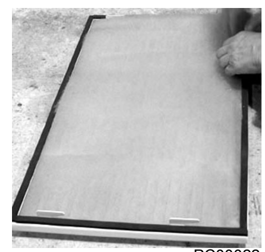
4. For each filter frame, remove the wire retainers that hold the filters in place:
   - Lay the filter frames on a flat work surface.
   - The wire retainers have a square “U” shape. Remove by squeezing the open end of the “U” towards the middle of the “square” until the retainer top (open end of “U”) clears the filter frame.
   - Save the retainers for reinstallation.



PC00001 PC00019

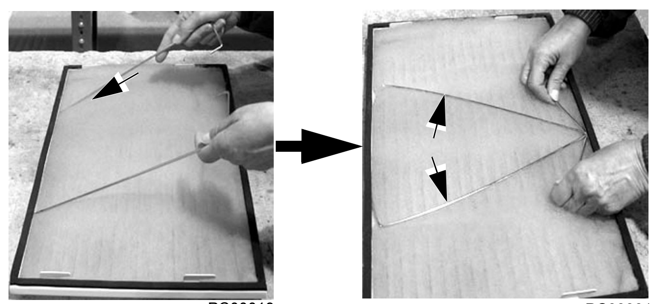
5. Remove and inspect the filter.
6. Install clean filters.

Note: When installing DUSTLOK® filter media, the white side must face to outside of the cabinet, and the orange side faces in.
Be sure to tuck the filter edges into the groove around the entire filter frame. This detail is very important for proper operation.



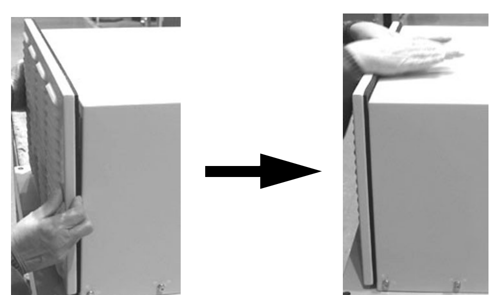
PC00022

7. Reinstall the filter restrainers.
   - Insert the base of a retainer (bottom of “U” shape) into a filter frame channel.
   - Squeeze the open end of the “U” until it clears the filter frame.
   - Seat the open end of the “U” in the filter frame channel.
   - Release the retainer to its relaxed, square shape.



PC00019 PC00001

8. Install each filter frame to the bonnet on top of the cabinet.
   - Carefully align the frame’s mounting hooks with the slots in the bonnet. (The hooks should be pointing down.)
   - Press down at the top of the filter frame. (The filter frame slides down approximately 3/4 inch).
   - Check all around the filter frame for a secure seal to the exhaust box.



PC00012 PC00011

Capacitors

The drive intermediate circuit employs several electrolytic capacitors. Their life span is from 35,000...90,000 hours depending on drive loading and ambient temperature. Capacitor life can be prolonged by lowering the ambient temperature.

It is not possible to predict a capacitor failure. Capacitor failure is usually followed by a input power fuse failure or a fault trip. Contact ABB if capacitor failure is suspected. Replacements for frame size R5 and R6 are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

Control panel

Cleaning

Use a soft damp cloth to clean the control panel. Avoid harsh cleaners which could scratch the display window.

Battery

A battery is only used in Assistant control panels that have the clock function available and enabled. The battery keeps the clock operating in memory during power interruptions.

The expected life for the battery is greater than ten years. To remove the battery, use a coin to rotate the battery holder on the back of the control panel. Replace the battery with type CR2032.

Note: The battery is NOT required for any control panel or drive function, except the clock.

Technical data

Ratings

By type code, the table below provides ratings for the ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive, including:

- IEC ratings
- NEMA ratings (shaded columns)
- Frame size

Ratings, 208…240 volt drives

Abbreviated column headers are described in *Symbols* on page *1-299*.

Type Code	Valid up to 40°C (104 °F)		Frame Size
ACH550-xx-see below	I_{2n} **A**	P_n **HP**	
Three-phase supply voltage, **208…240 V**			
-04A6-2	4.6	1.0	R1
-06A6-2	6.6	1.5	R1
-07A5-2	7.5	2.0	R1
-012A-2	11.8	3.0	R1
-017A-2	16.7	5.0	R1
-024A-2	24.2	7.5	R2
-031A-2	30.8	10.0	R2
-046A-2	46.2	15.0	R3
-059A-2	59.4	20.0	R3
-075A-2	74.8	25.0	R4
-088A-2	88.0	30.0	R4
-114A-2	114	40.0	R4
-143A-2	143	50.0	R6
-178A-2	178	60.0	R6
-221A-2	221	75.0	R6
-248A-2	248	100	R6

Ratings, 380…480 volt drives

Abbreviated column headers are described in *Symbols* on page *1-299*.

Type Code	Valid up to 40°C (104 °F)		Frame Size
ACH550-xx-see below	I_{2n} **A**	P_n **HP**	
Three-phase supply voltage, **380…480 V**			
-03A3-4	3.3	1.5	R1
-04A1-4	4.1	2	R1
-06A9-4	6.9	3	R1
-08A8-4	8.8	5	R1
-012A-4	11.9	7.5	R1
-015A-4	15.4	10	R2
-023A-4	23	15	R2
-031A-4	31	20	R3
-038A-4	38	25	R3
-045A-4 (Note 1)	44	30	R3
-044A-4 (Note 1)	44	30	R4
-059A-4	59	40	R4
-072A-4	72	50	R4
-078A-4 (Note 1)	77	60	R4
-097A-4 (Note 1)	96	75	R4
-077A-4 (Note 1)	77	60	R5
-096A-4 (Note 1)	96	75	R5
-125A-4 (Note 1)	124	100	R5
-124A-4 (Note 1)	124	100	R6
-157A-4	157	125	R6
-180A-4	180	150	R6
-246A-4 (Note 1)	245	200	R6
-245A-4 (Note 1)	245	200	R7
-316A-4	316	250	R8
-368A-4	368	300	R8
-414A-4	414	350	R8
-486A-4	486	400	R8
-526A-4	526	450	R8
-602A-4	602	500	R8
-645A-4	645	550	R8

1. The ACH550-xx-045A-4 (an R3 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-044A-4, similarly, ACH550-xx-078A-4 (an R4 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-077A-4, the ACH550-xx-097A-4 (an R4 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-096A-4, the ACH550-xx-125A-4 (an R5 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-124A-4, and the ACH550-xx-246A-4 (an R6 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-245A-4

Ratings, 500…600 volt drives

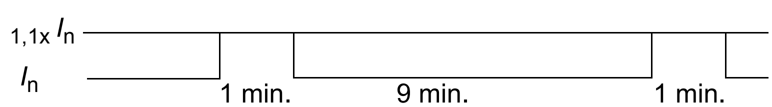
Abbreviated column headers are described in *Symbols* below.

Type Code	Normal Use		Frame Size
ACH550-xx- see below	**I_{2n} A**	**P_n HP**	
Three-phase supply voltage, **500**…**600 V**			
-02A7-6	2.7	2	R2
-03A9-6	3.9	3	R2
-06A1-6	6.1	5	R2
-09A0-6	9	7.5	R2
-011A-6	11	10	R2
-017A-6	17	15	R2
-022A-6	22	20	R3
-027A-6	27	25	R3
-032A-6	32	30	R4
-041A-6	41	40	R4
-052A-6	52	50	R4
-062A-6	62	60	R4
-077A-6	77	75	R6
-099A-6	99	100	R6
-125A-6	125	125	R6
-144A-6	144	150	R6

Symbols

Typical ratings:
Normal use (10% overload capability)

I_{2n} continuous rms current. 10% overload is allowed for one minute in ten minutes.



P_n typical motor power in normal use. The kilowatt power ratings apply to most IEC, 4-pole motors. The Horsepower ratings apply to most 4-pole NEMA motors.

Sizing

The current ratings are the same regardless of the supply voltage within one voltage range. To achieve the rated motor power given in the table, the rated current of the drive must be higher than or equal to the rated motor current.

Note 1: The ratings apply in ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

Derating

The load capacity (current and power) decreases for certain situations, as defined below. In such situations, where full motor power is required, oversize the drive so that the derated value provides sufficient capacity.

For example, if your application requires 15.4 A of motor current and a 12 kHz switching frequency, calculate the appropriate drive size requirement as follows:

The minimum size required = 15.4 A / 0.80 = 19.25 A

Where: 0.80 is the derating for 12 kHz switching frequency (see *Switching frequency derating* below).

Referring to I_{2n} in the ratings tables (page *1-297*), the following drives exceed the I_{2n} requirement of 19.25 A: ACH550-UH-023A-4, or ACH550-UH-024A-2

Temperature derating

In the temperature range +40 °C...50 °C (+104 °F...122 °F) the rated output current is decreased 1% for every 1 °C (1.8 °F) above +40 °C (+104 °F). Calculate the output current by multiplying the current given in the rating table by the derating factor.

<u>Example</u> If the ambient temperature is 50 °C (+122 °F) the derating factor is 100% - 1%/°C x 10 °C = 90% or 0.90.
The output current is then 0.90 x I_{2n}.

Altitude derating

In altitudes from 1000...4000 m (3300...13,200 ft) above sea level, the derating is 1% for every 100 m (330 ft). If the installation site is higher than 2000 m (6600 ft) above sea level, please contact your local ABB distributor or office for further information.

Single phase supply derating

For 208…240 Volt series drives, a single phase supply can be used. In that case, the derating is 50%.

Switching frequency derating

When using the 8 kHz switching frequency (parameter 2606) is used, either:

- Derate P_n and I_{2n} to 80% or
- Set parameter 2607 SW FREQ CTRL = 1 (ON) which allows the drive to reduce the switching frequency if/when the drive's internal temperature exceeds 90 °C. See the parameter description for 2607 for details.

When using the 12 kHz switching frequency (parameter 2606) is used, either:

- Derate:
  - P_n and I_{2n} to 65% (to 50% for 600 V R4 frame sizes, that is for ACH550-xx-032A-6…ACH550-xx-062A-6), and
  - Ambient temperature maximum to 30 °C (86 °F), or
- Set parameter 2607 SW FREQ CTRL = 1 (ON) which allows the drive to reduce the switching frequency if/when the drive's internal temperature exceeds 80 °C. See the parameter description for 2607 for details.

Input power connections

WARNING! Do not operate the drive outside the nominal input line voltage range. Over-voltage can result in permanent damage to the drive.

Input power specifications

Input Power Connection Specifications	
Voltage (U_1)	208/220/230/240 VAC 3-phase (or 1-phase) -15%…+10% for **ACH550-xx-**xxxx-2 units. 400/415/440/460/480 VAC 3-phase -15%…+10% for **ACH550-xx-**xxxx-4 units. 500/525/575/600 VAC 3-phase -15%…+10% for **ACH550-xx-**xxxx-6 units.
Prospective short-circuit current (IEC 629)	Maximum allowed prospective short-circuit current in the supply is 100 kA in a second providing that the drive's input power is protected with appropriate fuses. US: 100,000 AIC.
Frequency	48…63 Hz
Imbalance	Max. ± 3% of nominal phase to phase input voltage
Fundamental power factor (cos φ)	0.98 (at nominal load)
Minimum Cable Temperature Rating	60 °C (140 °F) for field wiring terminals for circuits of 100 A or less. 75 °C (167 °F) for field wiring terminals for circuits over 100 A.

Branch circuit protection

The ACH550 does not include a disconnect device. A means to disconnect input power must be installed between the AC power source and the ACH550. This branch circuit protection must:

- Be sized to conform to applicable safety regulations, including, but not limited to, both National and local electrical codes.
- Be locked in the open position during installation and maintenance work.

The disconnect device must not be used to control the motor. Instead use the control panel, or commands to the I/O terminals for motor control.

Fuses

The following tables provide fuse recommendations for short circuit protection on the drive's input power. These recommendations are not requirements if branch circuit protection is otherwise provided per NEC. UL508A manufacturers are not required to use the recommended fuses for the purpose of UL listing a panel that includes the ACH550.

Fuses with higher current rating than the recommended current rating must not be used. Fuses of the same class with lower current rating may be used.

208…240 volt, fuses

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current A	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-04A6-2	4.6	10	10	JJS-10
-06A6-2	6.6			
-07A5-2	7.5			
-012A-2	11.8	16	15	JJS-15
-017A-2	16.7	25	25	JJS-25
-024A-2	24.2		30	JJS-30
-031A-2	30.8	40	40	JJS-40
-046A-2	46.2	63	60	JJS-60
-059A-2	59.4		80	JJS-80
-075A-2	74.8	80	100	JJS-100
-088A-2	88.0	100	110	JJS-110
-114A-2	114	125	150	JJS-150
-143A-2	143	200	200	JJS-200
-178A-2	178	250	250	JJS-250
-221A-2	221	315	300	JJS-300
-248A-2	248		350	JJS-350

380…480 volt, fuses

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current (A)	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-03A3-4	3.3	10	10	JJS-10
-04A1-4	4.1			
-06A9-4	6.9			
-08A8-4	8.8		15	JJS-15
-012A-4	11.9	16		
-015A-4	15.4		20	JJS-20
-023A-4	23	25	30	JJS-30
-031A-4	31	35	40	JJS-40
-038A-4	38	50	50	JJS-50
-044A-4	44		60	JJS-60
-045A-4	44			
-059A-4	59	63	80	JJS-80
-072A-4	72	80	90	JJS-90
-077A-4	77		100	JJS-100
-078A-4	77			
-096A-4	96	125	125	JJS-125
-097A-4	96			

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current (A)	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-124A-4	124	160	175	JJS-175
-125A-4	124			
-157A-4	157	200	200	JJS-200
-180A-4	180	250	250	JJS-250
-246A-4	245	315	350	JJS-350
-245A-4	245	Does Not Apply	400	JJS-400
-316A-4	316		400	JJS-400
-368A-4	368		400	JJS-400
-414A-4	414		600	JJS-600
-486A-4	486		600	JJS-600
-526A-4	526		800	JJS-800
-602A-4	602		800	JJS-800
-645A-4	645		800	JJS-800

Fuses, 500…600 volt, fuses

ACH550-xx- see below	Input Current A	Mains Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-02A7-6	2.7	10	10	JJS-10
-03A9-6	3.9			
-06A1-6	6.1			
-09A0-6	9	16	15	JJS-15
-011A-6	11			
-017A-6	17	25	25	JJS-25
-022A-6	22			
-027A-6	27	35	40	JJS-40
-032A-6	32			
-041A-6	41	50	50	JJS-50
-052A-6	52	60	60	JJS-60
-062A-6	62	80	80	JJS-80
-077A-6	77		100	JJS-100
-099A-6	99	125	150	JJS-150
-125A-6	125	160	175	JJS-175
-144A-6	144	200	200	JJS-200

Emergency stop devices

The overall design of the installation must include emergency stop devices and any other safety equipment that may be needed. Pressing STOP on the drive's control panel does NOT:

- Generate an emergency stop of the motor.
- Separate the drive from dangerous potential.

Input power cables/wiring

Input wiring can be either:

- A four conductor cable (three phases and ground/protective earth) routed through conduit.
- Four insulated conductors routed through conduit.

Size wiring according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the drive's load current. In any case, the conductor must be less than the maximum limit defined by the terminal size (see *Drive's power connection terminals* on page *1-307*).

The table below lists copper and aluminum cable types for different load currents. These recommendations apply only for the conditions listed at the top of the table.

IEC				NEC	
Based on: • EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-2/2001 • PVC insulation • 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature • 70 °C (158 °F) surface temperature • Cables with concentric copper shield • Not more than nine cables laid on cable ladder side by side.				Based on: • NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires • 90 °C (194 °F) wire insulation • 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature • Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable, or earth (directly buried). • Copper cables with concentric copper shield	
Max Load Current (A)	**Cu Cable (mm^2)**	**Max Load Current (A)**	**Al Cable (mm^2)**	**Max Load Current (A)**	**Cu Wire Size (AWG/kcmil)**
14	3x1.5	Do not use aluminum cable with base drive (-UH) frame sizes R1…R4. Base drive terminals not rated for Al cable.		22.8	14
20	3x2.5			27.3	12
27	3x4			36.4	10
34	3x6			50.1	8
47	3x10			68.3	6
62	3x16			86.5	4
79	3x25			100	3
98	3x35	91	3x50	118	2
119	3x50	117	3x70	137	1
153	3x70	143	3x95	155	1/0
186	3x95	165	3x120	178	2/0
215	3x120	191	3x150	205	3/0
249	3x150	218	3x185	237	4/0
284	3x185	257	3x240	264	250 MCM or 2 x 1
		274	3x (3x50)	291	300 MCM or 2 x 1/0
		285	2x (3x95)	319	350 MCM or 2 x 2/0
				345	400 MCM or 2 x 2/0
				391	500 MCM or 2 x 3/0
				410	2 x 3/0

IEC					NEC	
Based on: • EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-2/2001 • PVC insulation • 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature • 70 °C (158 °F) surface temperature • Cables with concentric copper shield • Not more than nine cables laid on cable ladder side by side.					Based on: • NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires • 90 °C (194 °F) wire insulation • 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature • Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable, or earth (directly buried). • Copper cables with concentric copper shield	
Max Load Current (A)	**Cu Cable (mm^2)**		**Max Load Current (A)**	**Al Cable (mm^2)**	**Max Load Current (A)**	**Cu Wire Size (AWG/kcmil)**
					465	2x4/0
					474	2x250
					534	2x300
					615	2x350
					711	2x500

Ground connections

For personnel safety, proper operation and to reduce electromagnetic emission/pick-up, the drive and the motor must be grounded at the installation site.

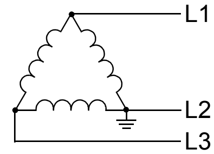
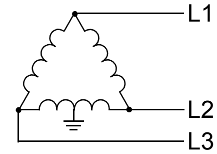
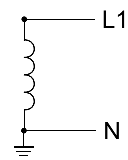
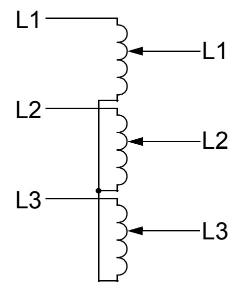
- Conductors must be adequately sized as required by safety regulations.
- Power cable shields must be connected to the drive PE terminal in order to meet safety regulations.
- Power cable shields are suitable for use as equipment grounding conductors only when the shield conductors are adequately sized as required by safety regulations.
- In multiple drive installations, do not connect drive terminals in series.

Unsymmetrically grounded networks

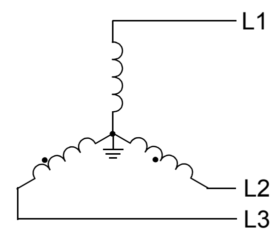
WARNING! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1 or EM3 screws while power is applied to the drive’s input terminals.

Unsymmetrically grounded networks are defined in the following table. In such networks, the internal connection provided by the EM3 screw (on frame sizes R1…R4 only) must be disconnected by removing EM3. If the grounding configuration of the network is unknown, remove EM3.

Note: ACH550-UH drives are shipped with the screw removed (but included in the conduit box).

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Unsymmetrically Grounded Networks – EM3 Must Be Out</th></tr>
<tr><td>Grounded at the corner of the delta</td><td>
</td><td>Grounded at the mid point of a delta leg</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single phase, grounded at an end point</td><td>
</td><td>Three phase “Variac” without solidly grounded neutral</td><td>
</td></tr>
</table>

EM3 (an M4x16 screw) makes an internal ground connection that reduces electro-magnetic emission. Where EMC (electro-magnetic compatibility) is a concern, and the network is symmetrically grounded, EM3 may be installed. For reference, the diagram at right illustrates a symmetrically grounded network.



Floating networks

WARNING! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive’s input terminals.

For floating networks (also known as IT, ungrounded, or impedance/resistance grounded networks):

- Disconnect the ground connection to the internal RFI filters:
  - Frame sizes R1…R4: Remove the EM1 screw (unit is shipped with EM3 removed, see *Connection diagrams* on page *1-20*).
  - Frame sizes R5…R6: Remove both the F1 and F2 screws (see page *1-21*).
- Where EMC requirements exist, check for excessive emission propagated to neighboring low voltage networks. In some cases, the natural suppression in transformers and cables is sufficient. If in doubt, use a supply transformer with static screening between the primary and secondary windings.
- Do NOT install an external RFI/EMC filter, such as one of the kits listed in *EN 61800-3 compliant motor cables* on page *1-312*. Using an RFI filter grounds the input power through the filter capacitors, which could be dangerous and could damage the unit.

Drive's power connection terminals

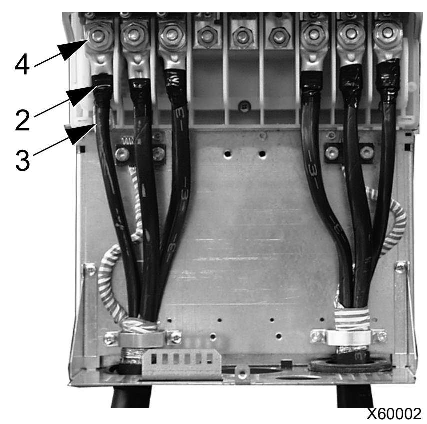
The following table provides specifications for the drive's power connection terminals.

Frame Size	U1, V1, W1 U2, V2, W2 BRK±, UDC± Terminals						Earthing PE Terminal			
	Min. Wire Size		Max. Wire Size		Torque		Max. Wire Size		Torque	
	mm²	*AWG*	*mm²*	*AWG*	Nm	lb-ft	*mm²*	*AWG*	Nm	lb-ft
R1 Note 1	0.75	18	10	8	1.4	1	10	8	1.4	1
R2 Note 1	0.75	18	10	8	1.4	1	10	8	1.4	1
R3 Note 1	2.5	14	25	3	2.5	1.8	16	6	1.8	1.3
R4 Note 1	6	10	50	1/0	5.6	4	25	3	2	1.5
R5	6	10	70	2/0	15	11	70	2/0	15	11
R6	95 Note 2	3/0	185	350 MCM	40	30	95	3/0	8	6
R7	16	6	185	350 MCM	40	30	Attach appropriate ring lugs to ground wires and mount with, up to five 13/32 bolts.			
R8	16	6	2x240	2x500 MCM	57	42				

1. Do not use aluminum cable with frame sizes R1…R4.
2. See the following section for smaller wire sizes on frame size R6.

Power terminal considerations – R6 Frame size

WARNING! For R6 power terminals, if compression lugs are supplied, they can only be used for wire sizes that are 95 mm² (3/0 AWG) or larger. Smaller wires will loosen and may damage the drive, and require ring lugs as described below.



Ring Lugs

On the R6 frame size, if the cable size used is less than 95 mm² (3/0 AWG) or if no compression lugs are supplied, use ring lugs according to the following procedure.

1. Select appropriate ring lugs from the following table.
2. Attach the supplied terminal lugs to the drive end of the cables.
3. Isolate the ends of the ring lugs with insulating tape or shrink tubing.

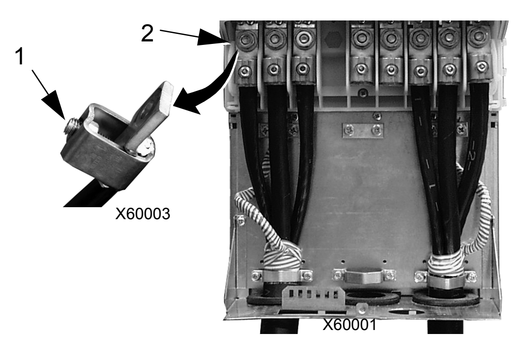
4. Attach terminal lug to the drive.

Wire Size		Manufacturer	Ring Lug	Crimping Tool	No. of Crimps
mm²	kcmil/ AWG				
16	**6**	Burndy	YAV6C-L2	MY29-3	1
		Ilsco	CCL-6-38	ILC-10	2
25	**4**	Burndy	YA4C-L4BOX	MY29-3	1
		Ilsco	CCL-4-38	MT-25	1
35	**2**	Burndy	YA2C-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRC-2	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-2-38	MT-25	1
50	**1**	Burndy	YA1C-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRA-1-38	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-1-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54148	TBM-8	3
55	**1/0**	Burndy	YA25-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRB-0	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-1/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54109	TBM-8	3
70	**2/0**	Burndy	YAL26T38	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRA-2/0	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-2/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54110	TBM-8	3
95	**3/0**	Burndy	YAL27T38	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRA-3/0	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-3/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54111	TBM-8	3
95	**3/0**	Burndy	YA28R4	MY29-3	2
		Ilsco	CRA-4/0	IDT-12	1
		Ilsco	CCL-4/0-38	MT-25	2
		Thomas & Betts	54112	TBM-8	4

Compression lugs

Use the following procedure to attach cables if compression lugs are supplied and can be used.

1. Attach the supplied compression lugs to the drive end of the cables.
2. Attach compression lug to the drive.



Motor connections

WARNING! Never connect line power to the drive output terminals: U2, V2 or W2. Line voltage applied to the output can result in permanent damage to the unit. If frequent bypassing is required, use mechanically interlocked switches or contactors.

WARNING! Do not connect any motor with a nominal voltage less than one half of the drive's nominal input voltage.

WARNING! Disconnect the drive before conducting any voltage tolerance (Hi-Pot) test or insulation resistance (Megger) test on the motor or motor cables. Do not conduct these tests on the drive.

Motor connection specifications

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Motor Connection Specifications</th></tr>
<tr><td>Voltage (U_2)</td><td colspan="5">0…U_1, 3-phase symmetrical, U_{max} at the field weakening point</td></tr>
<tr><td>Frequency</td><td colspan="5">0…500 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td>Frequency Resolution</td><td colspan="5">0.01 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td>Current</td><td colspan="5">See Ratings on page 1-297.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Field Weakening Point</td><td colspan="5">10…500 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td>Switching Frequency</td><td colspan="5">Selectable: 1, 4, 8, or 12 kHz
(1, 4, or 8 kHz for 600 V, R6 frame size, that is for ACH550-xx-077A-6 … ACH550-xx-144A-6)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Minimum Cable Temperature Rating</td><td colspan="5">60 °C (140 °F) for field wiring terminals for circuits of 100 A or less.
75 °C (167 °F) for field wiring terminals for circuits over 100 A.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Maximum Motor Cable Length</td><td rowspan="2">Frame Size</td><td colspan="4">Max. Motor Cable Length*</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">f_{sw} = 1 or 4 kHz</td><td colspan="2">f_{sw} = 8 kHz or 12 kHz</td></tr>
<tr><td>R1</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>R2</td><td>200 m</td><td>650 ft</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>R3…R4</td><td>200 m</td><td>650 ft</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>R5…R6</td><td>300 m</td><td>980 ft</td><td>150 m</td><td>490 ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>R6 (600 V)</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td><td>100 m</td><td>330 ft</td></tr>
<tr><td>R7…R8</td><td>300 m</td><td>980 ft</td><td colspan="2">Does not apply</td></tr>
</table>

* **WARNING!** Using a motor cable longer than specified in the table above may cause permanent damage to the drive. Additional distance may be achieved with the use of an appropriate output filter.

* **WARNING!** The above table refers only to the maximum motor cable distance that the drive can tolerate. Consult the motor manufacturer for any limitations on the distance that the motor can tolerate. The above table is not intended as a motor protection guide.

Ground fault protection

ACH550 internal fault logic detects ground faults in the drive, motor, or motor cable. This fault logic:

- Is NOT a personal safety or fire protection feature.
- Can be set to trigger only a warning using parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT.
- Could be tripped by leakage currents (input power to ground) associated with the use of an optional RFI/EMC filter.

Grounding and routing

Background

Motor cables require extra care in grounding and routing. The reasons have to do with the following factors:

- Parasitic capacitance – Capacitors are, essentially, conductors that don't touch, but are in close proximity to each other. So, for example, there is a weak capacitive connection between cables and any conductors they are near. Such unintentional, but inevitable conductive paths are called parasitic capacitors. Currents flowing through these paths often create problems. For example, current leaks to control cables can create noise interference, leaks to the motor can damage bearings, and leaks to the drive or other electronic cabinets can damage components.
- Proximity – As the conductors get closer together, capacitance increases.
- Proximal area – As the area in close proximity increases, the capacitance increases, e.g. close parallel paths increase parasitic capacitance between conductors.
- AC frequency – For a given capacitance, increased AC frequency increases current conductance. Hence, capacitive paths that are negligible at 50/60 Hz can be very significant conductors at 8,000 Hz. Motor cable signals are pulses at up to 8,000 Hz and the common mode frequency can reach 48,000 Hz (8k Hz x 3 phases x 2 pulse edges).
- Alternate paths – Where multiple paths exist, the most conductive path draws the most current. So, the ground wiring must be a significantly better path, in order to reduce the current in the alternate paths, the paths through parasitic capacitors.

The high frequencies associated with motor cables also increase the potential for electromagnetic noise radiation. See *Motor cable requirements for CE & C-Tick compliance* on page *1-311*.

Motor cable shielding

Motor cables require shielding using conduit, armored cable or shielded cable.

- Conduit – When using conduit:
  - Bridge joints with a ground conductor bonded to the conduit on each side of the joint.
  - Bond conduit run to the drive enclosure.
  - Use a separate conduit run for motor cables (also separate input power and control cables).
  - Use a separate conduit run for each drive.
- Armored Cable – When using armored cable:
  - Use six-conductor (3 phases and 3 grounds), type MC continuous corrugated aluminum armor cable with symmetrical grounds.
  - Armored motor cable can share a cable tray with input power cables, but not with control cables.
- Shielded Cable – For shielded cable details, see *Motor cable requirements for CE & C-Tick compliance* below.

Grounding

See *Ground connections* in *Input power connections* above.

For CE compliant installations and installations where EMC emissions must be minimized, see *Effective motor cable screens* on page *1-312*.

Drive's motor connection terminals

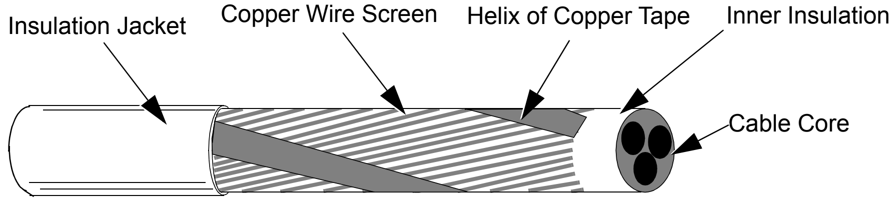
The drive's motor and input power terminals have the same specifications. See *Drive's power connection terminals* above.

Motor cable requirements for CE & C-Tick compliance

The requirements in this section apply for CE or C-Tick compliance.

Minimum requirement (CE & C-Tick)

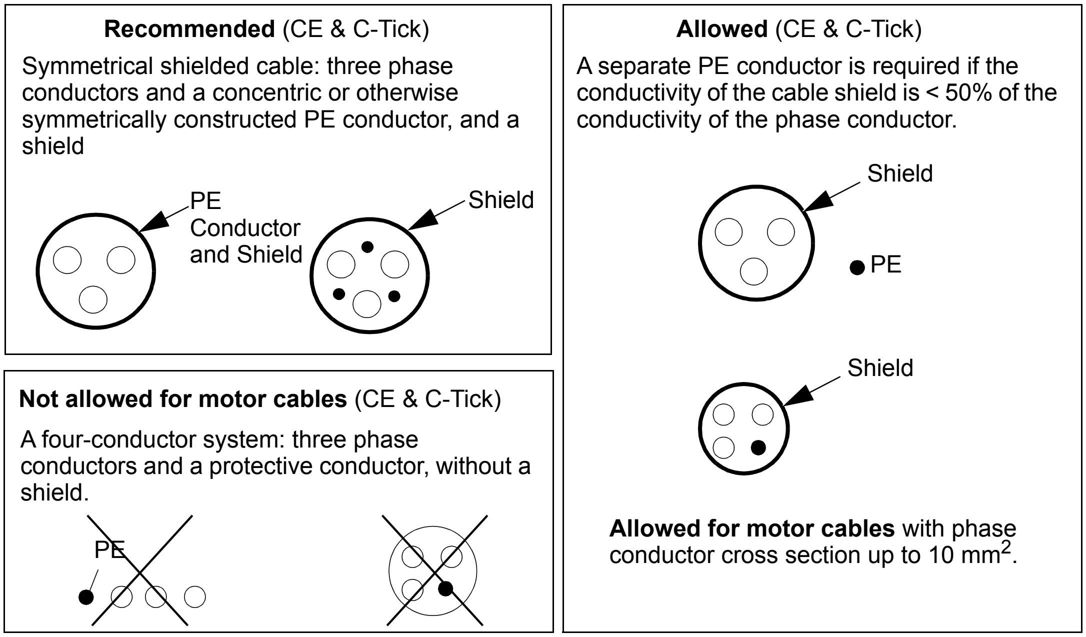
The motor cable must be a symmetrical three conductor cable with a concentric PE conductor or a four conductor cable with a concentric shield, however, a symmetrical constructed PE conductor is always recommended. The following figure shows the minimum requirement for the motor cable screen (for example, MCMK, NK Cables).



* Input filters designed for ACH550 cannot be used in an isolated, or high impedance earthed industrial distribution network.

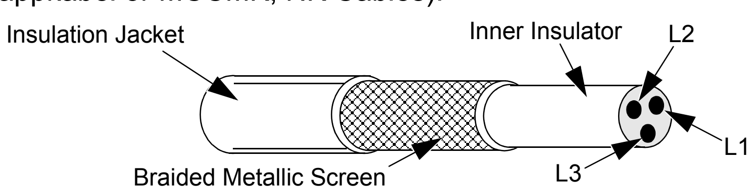
Recommendation for conductor layout

The following figure compares conductor layout features in motor cables.



Effective motor cable screens

The general rule for cable screen effectiveness is: the better and tighter the cable's screen, the lower the radiated emission level. The following figure shows an example of an effective construction (for example Ölflex-Servo-FD 780 CP, Lappkabel or MCCMK, NK Cables).



EN 61800-3 compliant motor cables

To comply with EN 61800-3 requirements:

- Motor cables must have an effective screen as described in *Effective motor cable screens* above.
- Motor cable screen wires must be twisted together into a bundle (the bundle length must be less than five times its width) and connected it to the terminal marked ⏚ (at the bottom right-hand corner of the drive).
- Motor cables must be grounded, at the motor end, with an EMC cable gland. The ground must contact the cable screen all the way around the cable.
- For EN 61800-3 First Environment, Restricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class A), and EN 61800-3 Second Environment compliance, the drive includes an internal filter that provides compliance for at least 30 m (100 ft.) motor cable lengths. For some drives, longer cable lengths require an additional, external RFI/EMC filter as specified in the table below. The RFI/EMC filters are separate options and

installation must conform to the instructions in the filter package for all cable screen connections.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">Maximum Cable Length for EN 61800-3 First Environment, Restricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class A) Compliance (Radiated and Conducted Emissions)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="3">Drive Type</th><th colspan="4">Switching Frequency (Parameter 2606)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">1 or 4 kHz (2606 = 1 or 4)</th><th colspan="2">8 kHz (2606 = 8)</th></tr>
<tr><th>Max. Length / Internal Filter</th><th>Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter</th><th>Max. Length / Internal Filter</th><th>Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter</th></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-03A3-4</td><td rowspan="5">R1</td><td rowspan="5">100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="5">Note 1</td><td rowspan="5">100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="5">Note 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-04A1-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-06A9-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-08A8-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-012A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-015A-4</td><td rowspan="2">R2</td><td rowspan="2">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="2">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3</td><td rowspan="2">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="2">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-023A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-031A-4</td><td rowspan="3">R3</td><td rowspan="3">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="3">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3</td><td rowspan="3">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="3">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-038A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-045A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-044A-4</td><td rowspan="5">R4</td><td rowspan="5">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="3">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3</td><td rowspan="5">30 m (100 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="3">100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-059A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-072A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-078A-4</td><td rowspan="2">Note 2</td><td rowspan="2">Note 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-097A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-077A-4</td><td rowspan="3">R5</td><td rowspan="3">100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="7">Note 1</td><td rowspan="2">100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td><td rowspan="2">Note 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-096A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-125A-4</td><td rowspan="5">Note 2</td><td rowspan="5">Note 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-124A-4</td><td rowspan="4">R6</td><td rowspan="4">100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-157A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-180A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-246A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-245A-4</td><td>R7</td><td>100 m (330 ft) / Internal</td><td>Note 1</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="8">Does Not Apply</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-316A-4</td><td rowspan="7">R8</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="7">—</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-368A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-414A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-486A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-526A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-602A-4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACH550-xx-645A-4</td></tr>
</table>

1. For any motor cable length (up to the 100 m [328 ft] maximum length limit) compliance does not require an additional filter.
2. Data not available at time of publication.

WARNING! Do not use RFI/EMC filters in a floating, or impedance grounded network.

- For EN 61800-3 First Environment, Unrestricted Distribution, (CISPR11 Class B) compliance with conducted emission limits, all drives require an additional, external RFI/EMC filter, and cable lengths are limited as specified in the table below. The RFI/EMC filters are separate options and installation must conform to the instructions in the filter package for all cable screen connections.

Note: The filter does not assure compliance with radiated emissions limits.

Maximum Cable Length for EN 61800-3 CE First Environment, Unrestricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class B) Compliance (Conducted Emissions Only)			
Drive Type		**Switching Frequency (Parameter 2606)**	
		1 or 4 kHz (2606 = 1 or 4)	**8 kHz (2606 = 8)**
		Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter	**Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter**
ACH550-xx-03A3-4	R1	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF11-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF11-3
ACH550-xx-04A1-4			
ACH550-xx-06A9-4			
ACH550-xx-08A8-4			
ACH550-xx-012A-4			
ACH550-xx-015A-4	R2	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3
ACH550-xx-023A-4			
ACH550-xx-031A-4	R3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3
ACH550-xx-038A-4			
ACH550-xx-045A-4			
ACH550-xx-044A-4	R4	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3
ACH550-xx-059A-4			
ACH550-xx-072A-4			
ACH550-xx-078A-4			
ACH550-xx-097A-4			

WARNING! Do not use RFI/EMC filters in a floating, or impedance grounded network.

Control connections

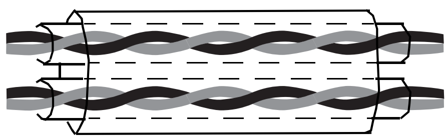
Control connection specifications

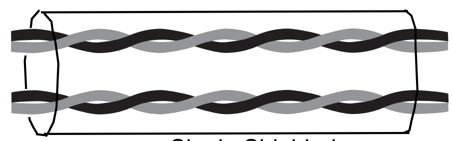
Control Connection Specifications	
Analog Inputs and Outputs	See table heading *Drive Control Terminal Description* on page *1-317*.
Digital Inputs	Digital input impedance 1.5 kΩ. Maximum voltage for digital inputs is 30 V.
Relays (Digital Outputs)	• Max. contact voltage: 30 V DC, 250 V AC • Max. contact current / power: 6 A, 30 V DC; 1500 VA, 250 V AC • Max. continuous current: 2 A rms (cos φ = 1), 1 A rms (cos φ = 0.4) • Minimum load: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA) • Contact material: Silver-nickel (AgN) • Isolation between relay digital outputs, test voltage: 2.5 kV rms, 1 minute

Control cables

General recommendations

Use multi-core cables with a braided copper wire screen, temperature rated at 60 °C (140 °F) or above:


Double Shielded
Example: JAMAK by Draka NK Cables


Single Shielded
Example: NOMAK by Draka NK Cables

At the drive end, twist the screen together into a bundle not longer than five times its width and connected to terminal X1-1 (for digital and analog I/O cables) or to either X1-28 or X1-32 (for RS485 cables).

Route control cables to minimize radiation to the cable:

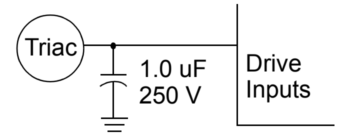
- Route as far away as possible from the input power and motor cables (recommend at least 20 cm [8 in] where practical).
- Where control cables must cross power cables make sure they are at an angle as near 90° as possible.
- Stay at least 20 cm (8 in) from the sides of the drive where practical.

Use care in mixing signal types on the same cable:

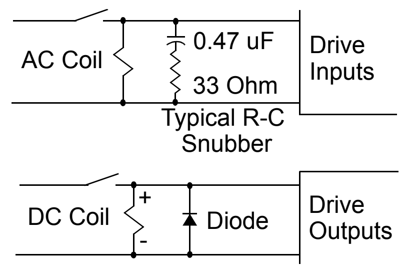
- Do not mix analog and digital input signals on the same cable.
- Run relay-controlled signals as twisted pairs (especially if voltage > 48 V). Relay-controlled signals using less than 48 V can be run in the same cables as digital input signals.

Note: Never mix 24 VDC and 115/230 VAC signals in the same cable.

Note: Triacs used as sources for drive inputs, may have excessive leakage current in the OFF state, enough to read as ON to drive inputs. Driving two or more inputs, divides the leakage current, reducing or eliminating the problem. An alternative is to add a small capacitive load – see figure.



WARNING! Relay coils generate noise spikes in response to steps in applied power. To avoid drive damage from such spikes, all AC relay coils mounted across drive inputs require R-C snubbers, and all DC relay coils mounted across drive outputs require diodes – see figure.



Analog cables

Recommendations for analog signal runs:

- Use double shielded, twisted pair cable.
- Use one individually shielded pair for each signal.
- Do not use a common return for different analog signals.

Digital cables

Recommendation for digital signal runs: A double shielded cable is the best alternative, but single-shielded, twisted, multi-pair cable is also usable.

Control panel cable

If the control panel is connected to the drive with a cable, use only Category 5 Patch ethernet cable.

Drive's control connection terminals

The following table provides specifications for the drive's control terminals

Frame Size	Control			
	Maximum Wire Size		Torque	
	mm²	*AWG*	Nm	lb-ft
All	1.5	16	0.4	0.3

Control terminal descriptions

The following full-page diagram provides a general description of the control terminals on the drive. For specific application details, see the *Application macros* on page *1-49*.

Note: Terminals 3, 6, and 9 are at the same potential.

Note: For safety reasons the fault relay signals a "fault" when the ACH550 is powered down.

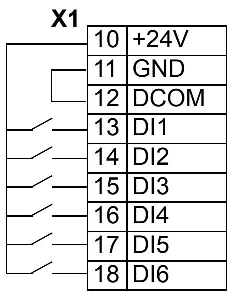
	X1		Drive Control Terminal Description
Analog I/O	1	SCR	Terminal for signal cable screen. (Connected internally to chassis ground.)
	2	AI1	Analog input channel 1, programmable. Default[2] = external reference. Resolution 0.1%, accuracy ±1%. J1:AI1 OFF: 0(2)…10 V (R_i = 312 kΩ) ON J1:AI1 ON: 0(4)…20 mA (R_i = 100 Ω) ON or, for OFF ON 1 2 for ON ON 1 2
	3	AGND	Analog input circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 MΩ).
	4	+10 V	Potentiometer reference source: 10 V ±2%, max. 10 mA (1kΩ $\leq$ R $\leq$ 10kΩ).
	5	AI2	Analog input channel 2, programmable. Default[2] = PID feedback. Resolution 0.1%, accuracy ±1%. J1:AI2 OFF: 0(2)…10 V (R_i = 312 kΩ) ON J1:AI2 ON: 0(4)…20 mA (R_i = 100 Ω) ON or, for OFF ON 1 2 for ON ON 1 2
	6	AGND	Analog input circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 MΩ).
	7	AO1	Analog output, programmable. Default[2] = frequency. 0…20 mA (load < 500 Ω). Accuracy ±3% full scale.
	8	AO2	Analog output, programmable. Default[2] = current. 0…20 mA (load < 500 Ω). Accuracy ±3% full scale.
	9	AGND	Analog output circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 MΩ).
Digital Inputs[1]	10	+24V	Auxiliary voltage output 24 VDC / 250 mA (reference to GND), short circuit protected.
	11	GND	Auxiliary voltage output common (connected internally as floating).
	12	DCOM	Digital input common. To activate a digital input, there must be ≥+10 V (or ≤-10 V) between that input and DCOM. The 24 V may be provided by the ACH550 (X1-10) or by an external 12…24 V source of either polarity.
	13	DI1	Digital input 1, programmable. Default[2] = start/stop.
	14	DI2	Digital input 2, programmable. Default[2] = not configured.
	15	DI3	Digital input 3, programmable. Default[2] = constant (preset) speed.
	16	DI4	Digital input 4, programmable. Default[2] = safety interlock.
	17	DI5	Digital input 5, programmable. Default[2] = not configured.
	18	DI6	Digital input 6, programmable. Default[2] = not configured.
Relay Outputs	19	RO1C	Relay output 1, programmable. Default[2] = Ready Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
	20	RO1A	
	21	RO1B	
	22	RO2C	Relay output 2, programmable. Default[2] = Running Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
	23	RO2A	
	24	RO2B	
	25	RO3C	Relay output 3, programmable. Default[2] = Fault (-1) Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
	26	RO3A	
	27	RO3B	

1 Digital input impedance 1.5 kΩ. Maximum voltage for digital inputs is 30 V.

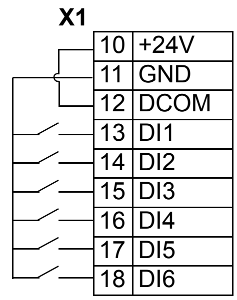
2 Default values depend on the macro used. Values specified are for the HVAC default macro. See *Application macros* on page *1-49*.

You can wire the digital input terminals in either a PNP or NPN configuration.

PNP connection (source)



NPN connection (sink)



Serial communications

Terminals 28...32 provide RS485 serial communication connections used to control or monitor the drive from a fieldbus controller. See *Embedded fieldbus* on page *1-185* for details.

Efficiency

Approximately 98% at nominal power level.

Cooling

Cooling Specifications	
Method	Internal fan, flow direction from bottom to top.
Requirement	• R1…R6: Free space above and below ACH550 drive: 200 mm (8 in). • R7/R8: Free space in front of enclosure: 152 mm (6 in). • R7/R8: Free space above enclosure: None required for cooling. • R7/R8: Free space at sides of enclosure: None required for cooling – ACH550 enclosures can be mounted side-by-side. • R7/R8: Also see *Additional free space recommendations* on page *1-324*.

Air flow, 208…240 volt drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 208…240 volt drives.

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	**Frame Size**	**W**	**BTU/Hr**	**m^3/h**	**ft^3/min**
-04A6-2	R1	55	189	44	26
-06A6-2	R1	73	249	44	26
-07A5-2	R1	81	276	44	26
-012A-2	R1	116	404	44	26
-017A-2	R1	161	551	44	26
-024A-2	R2	227	776	88	52
-031A-2	R2	285	373	88	52

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	**Frame Size**	**W**	**BTU/Hr**	**m^3/h**	**ft^3/min**
-046A-2	R3	420	1434	134	79
-059A-2	R3	536	1829	134	79
-075A-2	R4	671	2290	280	165
-088A-2	R4	786	2685	280	165
-114A-2	R4	1014	3463	280	165
-143A-2	R6	1268	4431	405	238
-178A-2	R6	1575	5379	405	238
-221A-2	R6	1952	6666	405	238
-248A-2	R6	2189	7474	405	238

Air flow, 380…480 volt drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 380…480 volt drives.

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	**Frame Size**	**W**	**BTU/Hr**	**m^3/h**	**ft^3/min**
-03A3-4	R1	40	137	44	26
-04A1-4	R1	52	177	44	26
-06A9-4	R1	97	331	44	26
-08A8-4	R1	127	433	44	26
-012A-4	R1	172	587	44	26
-015A-4	R2	232	792	88	52
-023A-4	R2	337	1150	88	52
-031A-4	R3	457	1560	134	79
-038A-4	R3	562	1918	134	79
-045A-4	R3	667	2276	134	79
-044A-4	R4	667	2276	280	165
-059A-4	R4	907	3096	280	165
-072A-4	R4	1120	3820	280	165
-078A-4	R4	1295	4420	280	165
-097A-4	R4	1440	4915	280	165
-077A-4	R5	1295	4420	168	99
-096A-4	R5	1440	4915	168	99
-125A-4	R5	1940	6621	168	99
-124A-4	R6	1940	6621	405	238
-157A-4	R6	2310	7884	405	238
-180A-4	R6	2810	9590	405	238
-246A-4	R6	3850	13000	405	238
-245A-4	R7	3850	13000	300	540
-316A-4	R8	5300	18000	700	1220

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	**Frame Size**	**W**	**BTU/Hr**	**m^3/h**	**ft^3/min**
-368A-4	R8	6850	23000	700	1220
-414A-4	R8	7000	24000	700	1220
-486A-4	R8	7600	26000	700	1220
-526A-4	R8	7800	27000	700	1220
-602A-4	R8	8100	28000	700	1220
-645A-4	R8	9100	31000	700	1220

Air flow, 500…600 volt drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 500…600 volt drives.

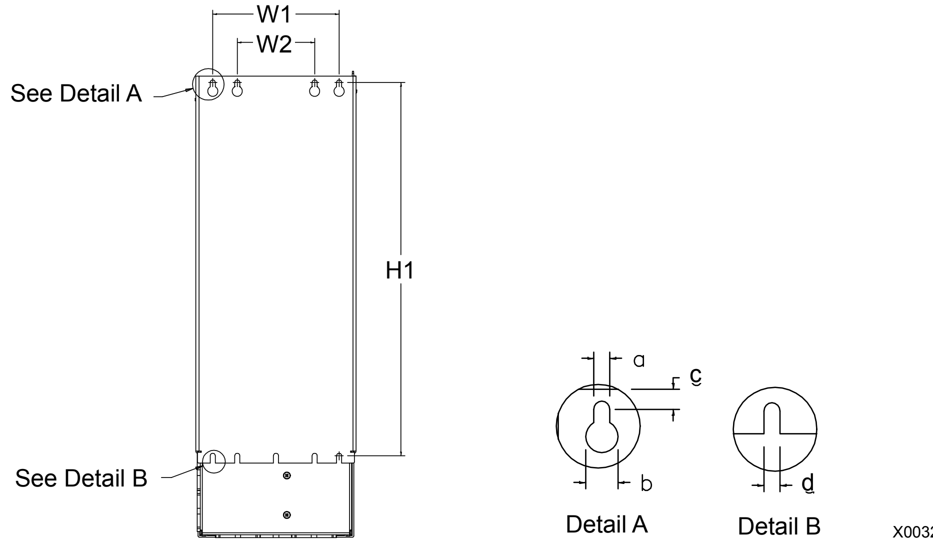
Type Code	Frame Size	Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-UH- see below		**W**	**BTU/Hr**	**m^3/h**	**ft^3/min**
Three-phase supply voltage, **500**…**600 V**					
-02A7-6	R2	46	157	88	52
-03A9-6	R2	68	232	88	52
-06A1-6	R2	124	423	88	52
-09A0-6	R2	170	581	88	52
-011A-6	R2	232	792	88	52
-017A-6	R2	337	1150	88	52
-022A-6	R3	457	1560	134	79
-027A-6	R3	562	1918	134	79
-032A-6	R4	667	2256	280	165
-041A-6	R4	907	3096	280	165
-052A-6	R4	1120	3820	280	165
-062A-6	R4	1295	4420	280	165
-077A-6	R6	1504	5136	405	238
-099A-6	R6	1821	6219	405	238
-125A-6	R6	2442	8339	405	238
-144A-6	R6	2813	9607	405	238

Dimensions and weights

The dimensions and mass for the ACH550 depend on the frame size and enclosure type. If unsure of frame size, first, find the "Type" code on the drive labels. Then look up that type code in the *Technical data* on page *1-297*, to determine the frame size. A complete set of dimensional drawings for ACH550 drives is located in the ACH550 Technical Reference manual.

Mounting dimensions

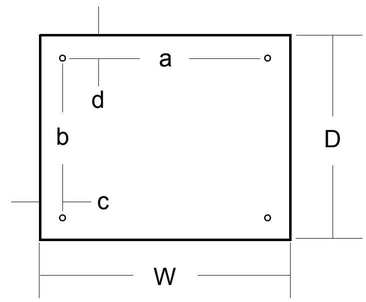
R1…R6 mounting dimensions



UL type 1 and UL type 12 – Dimensions for each Frame Size												
Ref.	**R1**		**R2**		**R3**		**R4**		**R5**		**R6**	
	mm	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**
W1*	98.0	3.9	98.0	3.9	160	6.3	160	6.3	238	9.4	263	10.4
W2*	--	--	--	--	98.0	3.9	98.0	3.9	--	--	--	--
H1*	318	12.5	418	16.4	473	18.6	578	22.8	588	23.2	675	26.6
a	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	9.0	0.35
b	10.0	0.4	10.0	0.4	13.0	0.5	13.0	0.5	14.0	0.55	14.0	0.55
c	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	8.0	0.3	8.0	0.3	8.5	0.3	8.5	0.3
d	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	6.5	0.25	6.5	025	6.5	0.25	9.0	0.35
Mounting Hardware												
	M5	#10	M5	#10	M5	#10	M5	#10	M6	1/4	M8	5/16

* Center to center dimension.

R7…R8 mounting dimensions

UL type 1 and UL type 12 – Dimensions for each Frame Size			
Ref.	**R7 & R8**		**Top View**
	mm	**in**	
W	806	31.7	
D	659	25.9	
a	675	26.6	
b	474.5	18.7	
c	61	2.4	
d	65.5	2.6	
Mounting Hardware			
	11 mm	13/32	

Weight

The following table lists typical maximum weights for each frame size. Variations within each frame size (due to components associated with voltage/current ratings, and options) are minor.

R1…R6

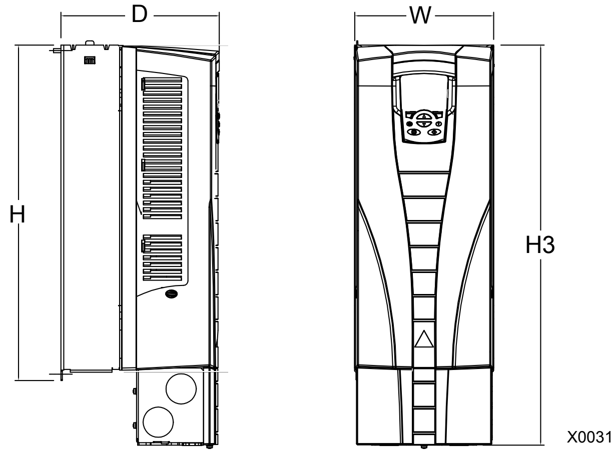
Enclosure	**Weight**											
	R1		**R2**		**R3**		**R4**		**R5**		**R6**	
	kg	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**
UL type 1	6.5	14.3	9.0	19.8	16	35.0	24	53.0	34	75	69	152
UL type 12	8.2	18.1	11.2	24.7	18.5	40.8	26.5	58.4	38.5	84.9	86	190

R7…R8

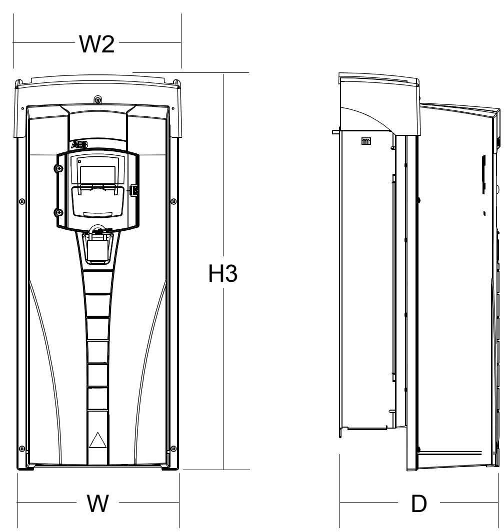
Enclosure	**Weight**			
	R7		**R8**	
	kg	**lb.**	**kg**	**lb.**
UL type 1	224	490	354	776
UL type 12	245	535	354	776

Outside dimensions – R1…R6

Outside dimensions depend on frame size and enclosure type, as defined below.



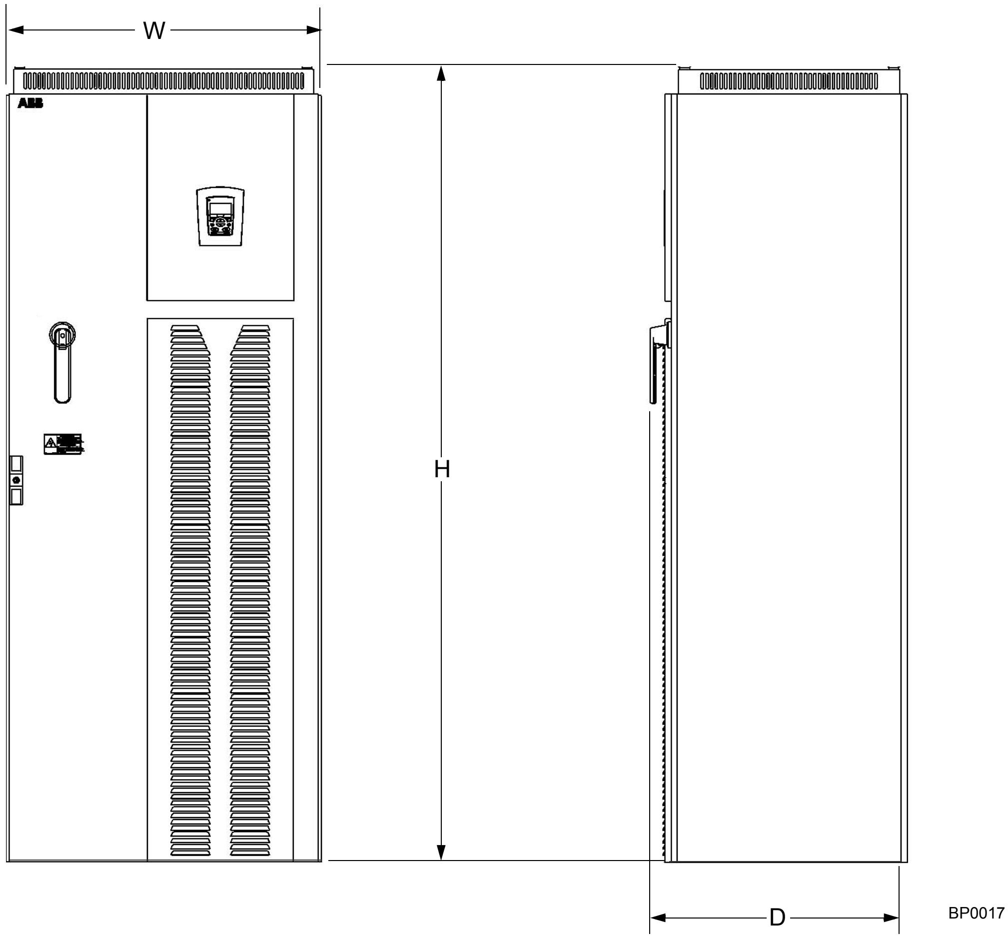
UL type 1 – Outside Dimensions by Frame Size (R1…R6)												
Ref.	**R1**		**R2**		**R3**		**R4**		**R5**		**R6**	
	mm	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**
W	125	4.9	125	4.9	203	8.0	203	8.0	265	10.4	300	11.8
H	330	13.0	430	16.9	490	19.2	596	23.4	602	23.7	700	27.6
H3	369	14.5	469	18.5	583	23.0	689	27.1	736	29.0	880	34.6
D	212	8.3	222	8.7	231	9.1	262	10.3	286	11.3	400	15.8



UL type 12 – Outside Dimensions by Frame Size (R1…R6)												
Ref.	**R1**		**R2**		**R3**		**R4**		**R5**		**R6**	
	mm	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**	**mm**	**in**
W	213	8.4	213	8.4	257	10.1	257	10.1	369	14.5	410	16.1
W2	222	8.7	222	8.7	267	10.5	267	10.5	369	14.5	410	16.1
H3	461	18.2	561	22.1	629	24.8	760	29.9	776	30.5	924	36.4
D	234	9.2	246	9.7	254	10.0	285	11.2	309	12.2	423	16.6

Outside dimensions – R7…R8

Outside dimensions for the R7 and R8 cabinets are defined below.



Outside Dimensions by Frame Size					
Enclosure	**Ref.**	**R7**		**R8**	
		mm	**in**	**mm**	**in**
UL type 1	**W**	806	31.7	806	31.7
	H	2125	83.7	2125	83.7
	D	659	25.9	659	25.9
UL type 12	**W**	806	31.7	806	31.7
	H	2318	91.3	2318	91.3
	D	659	25.9	659	25.9

Additional free space recommendations

In addition to the free space requirements for cooling (*Cooling* on page *1-318*), allow:

- 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of R7/R8 enclosures – room for the cabinet door to swing open.
- 305 mm (12 in) above R7/R8, IP54 / UL type 12 enclosures – room for fan replacement.

Degrees of protection

Available enclosures:

- UL type 1 (NEMA 1 / IP 21) enclosure. The site must be free of airborne dust, corrosive gases or liquids, and conductive contaminants such as condensation, carbon dust, and metallic particles.
- UL type 12 (NEMA 12 / IP 54) enclosure. This enclosure provides protection from airborne dust and light sprays or splashing water from all directions.

Compared to the UL type 1 enclosure, the UL type 12 enclosure has:

- The same internal plastic shell as the UL type 1 enclosure
- A different outer plastic cover
- An additional internal fan to improve cooling
- Larger dimensions
- The same rating (does not require a derating).

Plenum Rating: ACH550 drives (UL type 1 & 12) have been evaluated in accordance with the requirements of UL508, meets all of the requirements for plenum rated drives, and is "Suitable for Installation in a Compartment Handling Conditioned Air".

Ambient conditions

The following table lists the ACH550 environmental requirements.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Ambient Environment Requirements</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>Installation Site</th><th>Storage and Transportation in the protective package</th></tr>
<tr><td>Altitude</td><td>• 0…1000 m (0…3,300 ft)
• 1000…2000 m (3,300…6,600 ft) if P_N and I_2 derated 1% every 100 m above 1000 m (300 ft above 3,300 ft)</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Ambient temperature</td><td>• Min. -15 ºC (5 ºF) – no frost allowed
• Max. (fsw = 1 or 4) 40 ºC (104 ºF); 50 ºC (122 ºF) if P_N and I_2 derated to 90%
• Max. (fsw = 8) 40 ºC (104 ºF) if P_N and I_2 derated to 80%
• Max. (fsw = 12) 30 ºC (86 ºF) if P_N and I_2 derated to 65% (to 50% for 600 V, R4 frame sizes, that is for ACH550-xx-032A-6…Ach550-xx-062A-6).</td><td>-40…70 ºC (-40…158 ºF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Relative humidity</td><td colspan="2">< 95% (non-condensing)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Contamination levels (IEC 721-3-3)</td><td>• No conductive dust allowed.
• The ACH550 should be installed in clean air according to enclosure classification.
• Cooling air must be clean, free from corrosive materials and free from electrically conductive dust.
• Chemical gases: Class 3C2
• Solid particles: Class 3S2</td><td>Storage
• No conductive dust allowed.
• chemical gases: Class 1C2
• solid particles: Class 1S2
Transportation
• No conductive dust allowed.
• Chemical gases: Class 2C2
• Solid particles: Class 2S2</td></tr>
</table>

The following table lists the standard stress testing that the ACH550 passes.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Stress Tests</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>Without Shipping Package</th><th>Inside Shipping Package</th></tr>
<tr><td>Sinusoidal vibration</td><td>Mechanical conditions: In accordance with IEC 60721-3-3, Class 3M4
• 2…9 Hz 3.0 mm (0.12 in)
• 9…200 Hz 10 m/s^2 (33 ft/s^2)</td><td>In accordance with ISTA 1A and 1B specifications.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shock</td><td>Not allowed</td><td>In accordance with IEC 68-2-29: max. 100 m/s^2 (330 ft/s^2), 11ms (36 fts)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Free fall</td><td>Not allowed</td><td>• 76 cm (30 in), frame size R1
• 61cm (24 in), frame size R2
• 46 cm (18 in), frame size R3
• 31 cm (12 in), frame size R4
• 25 cm (10 in), frame size R5
• 15 cm (6 in), frame size R6</td></tr>
</table>

Materials

Material Specifications	
Drive enclosure	R1…R6: • PC/ABS 2.5 mm, color NCS 1502-Y (RAL 90021 / PMS 420 C and 425 C) • Hot-dip zinc coated steel sheet 1.5…2 mm, thickness of coating 100 micrometers • Cast aluminium AlSi • Extruded aluminium AlSi R7…R8: Sheet metal
Package	R1…R6: Corrugated board, expanded polystyrene, plywood, raw wood (heat dried). Package wrap consists of one or more of the following: PE-LD plastic wrap, PP or steel bands. R7…R8: Wood pallet
Disposal	The drive contains raw materials that should be recycled to preserve energy and natural resources. The package materials are environmentally compatible and recyclable. All metal parts can be recycled. The plastic parts can either be recycled or burned under controlled circumstances, according to local regulations. Most recyclable parts are marked with recycling marks. If recycling is not feasible, all parts excluding electrolytic capacitors and printed circuit boards can be landfilled. The DC capacitors contain electrolyte and the printed circuit boards contain lead, both of which will be classified as hazardous waste within the EU. They must be removed and handled according to local regulations. For further information on environmental aspects and more detailed recycling instructions, please contact your local ABB distributor.

Applicable standards

Drive compliance with the following standards is identified by the standards "marks" on the type code label.

Mark	Applicable Standards	
CE	EN 50178 (1997)	Electronic equipment for use in power installations
	EN 60204-1 (1997 + corrigendum Sep. 1998)	Safety of machinery. Electrical equipment of machines. Part 1: General requirements. *Provisions for compliance:* The final assembler of the machine is responsible for installing: • An emergency-stop device • A supply disconnecting device
	EN 60529 (1991 + corrigendum May 1993 + amendment A1:2000)	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
	EN 61800-3 (1996) + Amendment A11 (2000)	EMC product standard including specific test methods
	EN 61800-3 (1996) + Amendment A11 (2000)	EMC product standard including specific test methods
c UL us LISTED	UL 508C and C22.2 No. 14	UL Standard for Safety, Power Conversion Equipment, second edition and CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment
SP	C22.2 No. 14	CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment

Compliance is valid with the following provisions:

- The motor and control cables are chosen as specified in this manual.
- The installation rules of this manual are followed.

UL markings

When a UL mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of UL 508C.

When a CSA mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of C22.2 No. 14.

The ACH550 is UL and CSA labeled 100 kA RMS Symmetrical, 600V max. The section *Fuses* provides fuse recommendations. Branch circuit protection must to be provided per local code.

Fuses with higher current rating than the recommended current rating must not be used. Fuses of the same class with lower current rating may be used.

Note: UL508A manufactures are not required to use the fuse recommendations for the purpose of UL Listing a panel with an ACH550 AFD.

The ACH550 has an electronic motor protection feature that complies with the requirements of UL 508C and CSA C22.2 No. 14. When this feature is selected and properly adjusted, additional overload protection is not required unless more than one motor is connected to the drive or unless additional protection is required by applicable safety regulations. See parameters 3005 (MOT THERM PROT) and 3006 (MOT THERM TIME).

The drives are to be used in a controlled environment. See section *Ambient conditions* on page *1-326* for specific limits.

For open type enclosures, units must be mounted inside an enclosure per National Electrical Code and local electrical codes. Open type enclosures are IP21 / UL type 1 units without the conduit box and/or cover, or IP54 / UL type 12 units without the conduit plate and/or top cover.

EMC (Europe, Australia, and New Zealand)

This section describes conformance with EMC requirements (in Europe, Australia, and New Zealand).

CE Marking

When a CE mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of the European Low Voltage and EMC Directives (Directive 73/23/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC and Directive 89/336/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC). The corresponding declarations are available on request and can be found using the internet at: http://www.abb.com.

The EMC Directive defines the requirements for immunity and emissions of electrical equipment used in European Economic Area. The EMC product standard EN 61800-3 covers the requirements stated for drives, such as the ACH550. The drive complies with the First environment (restricted distribution) and Second Environment limits of EN/IEC 61800-3.

C-Tick Marking

When a C-Tick mark is attached to the ACH550 drive, it verifies compliance with the relevant standard, IEC 61800-3 (1996) – Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 3: EMC product standard including specific test methods, mandated by the Trans-Tasman Electromagnetic Compatibility Scheme. The drive complies with the First environment (restricted distribution) and Second Environment limits of EN/IEC 61800-3.

Electromagnetic Environments

Product standard EN 61800-3 (Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems - Part 3: EMC product standard including specific test methods) defines **First Environment** as environment that includes domestic premises. It also includes establishments directly connected without intermediate transformers to a low voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

Second Environment includes establishments other than those directly connected to a low voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

Liability limits

The manufacturer is not responsible for:

- Any costs resulting from a failure if the installation, commissioning, repair, alteration, or ambient conditions of the drive do not fulfil the requirements specified in the documentation delivered with the unit and other relevant documentation.
- Units subjected to misuse, negligence or accident.
- Units comprised of materials provided or designs stipulated by the purchaser.

In no event shall the manufacturer, its suppliers or subcontractors be liable for special, indirect, incidental or consequential damages, losses or penalties.

If you have any questions concerning your ABB drive, please contact the local distributor or ABB office. The technical data, information and specifications are valid at the time of printing. The manufacturer reserves the right to modifications without prior notice.

Index

M

N

T

ACH550 BCR/BDR/VCR/VDR
E-Clipse Bypass Drives
1…400 HP

User's Manual

Safety

Use of warnings and notes

There are two types of safety instructions throughout this manual:

- Notes draw attention to a particular condition or fact, or give information on a subject.
- Warnings caution you about conditions which can result in serious injury or death and/or damage to the equipment. They also tell you how to avoid the danger. The warning symbols are used as follows:

Electricity warning warns of hazards from electricity which can cause physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

General warning warns about conditions, other than those caused by electricity, which can result in physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

WARNING! The ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive should ONLY be installed by a qualified electrician.

WARNING! Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the power circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 (L1, L2, L3) and U2, V2, W2 (T1, T2 T3) and, depending on the frame size, UDC+ and UDC-, or BRK+ and BRK-.

WARNING! Dangerous voltage is present when input power is connected. After disconnecting the supply, wait at least 5 minutes (to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge) before removing the cover.

WARNING! Even when power is switched off from the input terminals of the ACH550, there may be dangerous voltage (from external sources) on the terminals of the relay outputs.

WARNING! When the control terminals of two or more drives are connected in parallel, the auxiliary voltage for these control connections must be taken from a single source which can either be one of the drives or an external supply.

WARNING! Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohm] power system).

WARNING! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive’s input terminals.

WARNING! Do not control the motor with the disconnecting device (disconnecting means); instead, use the control panel keys or commands via the I/O board of the drive. The maximum allowed number of charging cycles of the DC capacitors (i.e. power-ups by applying power) is five in ten minutes.

WARNING! Never attempt to repair a malfunctioning ACH550; contact the factory or your local Authorized Service Center for repair or replacement.

WARNING! The ACH550 will start up automatically after an input voltage interruption if the external run command is on.

WARNING! The heat sink may reach a high temperature.

Note: For more technical information, contact the factory or your local ABB representative.

Table of contents

Embedded fieldbus

Fieldbus adapter

Diagnostics

Technical data

Index

Installation

Study these installation instructions carefully before proceeding. **Failure to observe the warnings and instructions may cause a malfunction or personal hazard.**

WARNING! Before you begin read *Safety* on page *2-3*.

WARNING! When the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass is connected to the line power, the Motor Terminals T1, T2, and T3 are live even if the motor is not running. Do not make any connections when the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass is connected to the line. Disconnect and lock out power to the drive before servicing the drive. Failure to disconnect power may cause serious injury or death.

Application

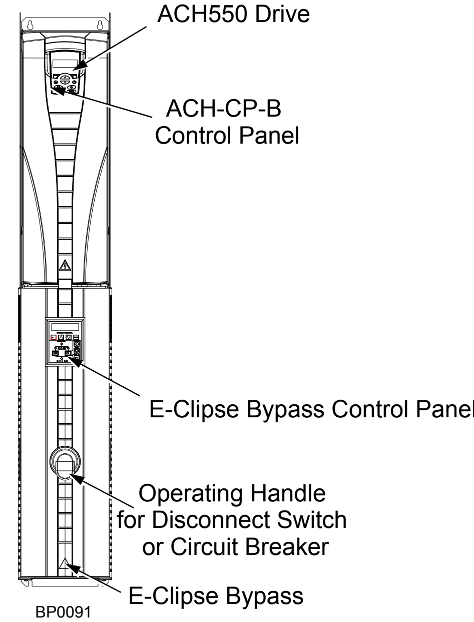
This manual is a supplement to the ACH550-UH User's Manual and documents E-Clipse Bypass configurations.

E-Clipse bypass features and functions

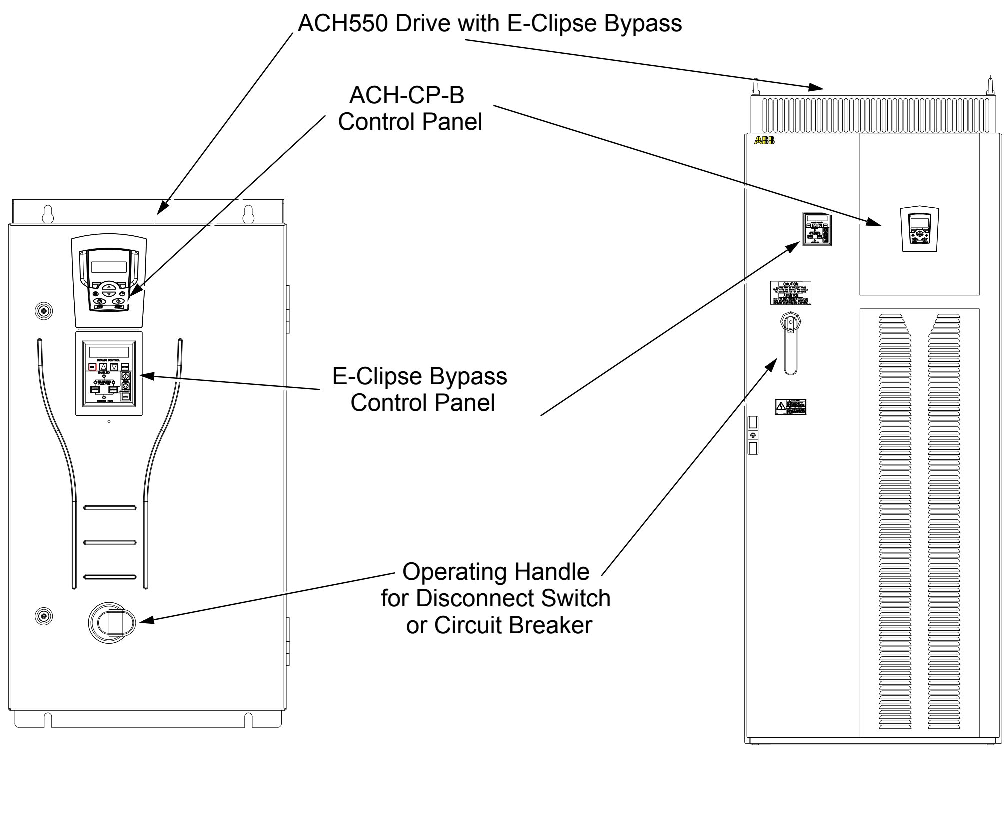
The ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass is an ACH550 AC adjustable frequency drive in an integrated UL type 1, UL type 12 or UL type 3R package with a bypass motor starter. The ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass provides:

- Disconnect switch or circuit breaker with door mounted control lever. The lever can be padlocked in the OFF position (padlock not supplied).
- Bypass starter.
- Motor overload protection.
- Local operator panel with indicating lights and multifunction display.
- Provisions for external control connections.
- Embedded communications for major BMS protocols including BACnet, Johnson Controls International N2, Siemens Building Technologies FLN, and Modbus
- Optional fieldbus adapters for connection to additional BMS protocols including LonWorks and Ethernet
- Optional drive service switch (drive input disconnect), the functional equivalent of a three-contactor bypass arrangement.

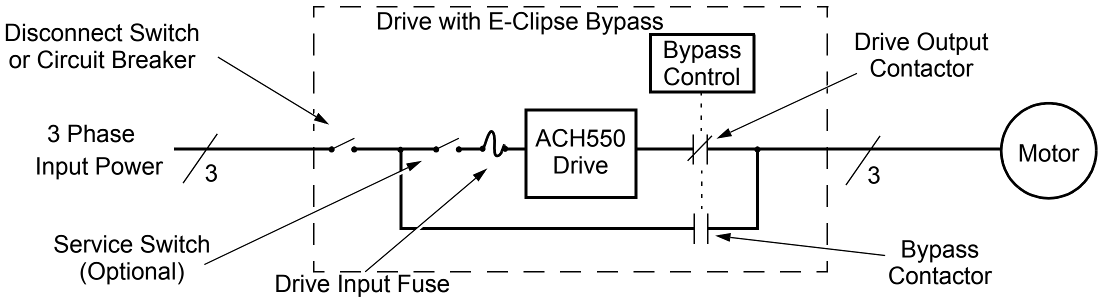
The following shows the front view of the ACH550 E-Clipse Bypass vertical configuration, and identifies the major components.



The following shows the front view of the ACH550 E-Clipse Bypass standard configurations, and identifies the major components.



The following is a typical power diagram.



Installation flow chart

The installation of E-Clipse Bypass Configurations for ACH550 drives follows the outline below. The steps must be carried out in the order shown. At the right of each step are references to the detailed information needed for the correct installation of the unit.

Task	Reference in ACH550-UH User's Manual ***Installation*** section	Reference in this Manual
PREPARE for installation	*Preparing for installation*	*Drive identification* on page 2-10. *Suitable mounting location (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)* on page 2-11
PREPARE the mounting location	*Prepare the mounting location*	—
MOUNT the unit	*Mount the drive*	—
REMOVE the covers from Vertical E-Clipse Bypass Unit	*Remove front cover*	—
INSTALL wiring	*Wiring overview* and *Install the wiring*	*Installing the wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)* starting on page 2-11.
CHECK jumpers and switches	—	*Check E-Clipse Bypass jumpers and switches* on page 2-28.
CHECK installation	*Check installation*	*Initial settings and checks* on page 2-22.
RE-INSTALL the covers	*Re-install cover*	—
APPLY power	*Apply power*	—
START-UP	*Start-up*	*Start-up* on page 2-33.

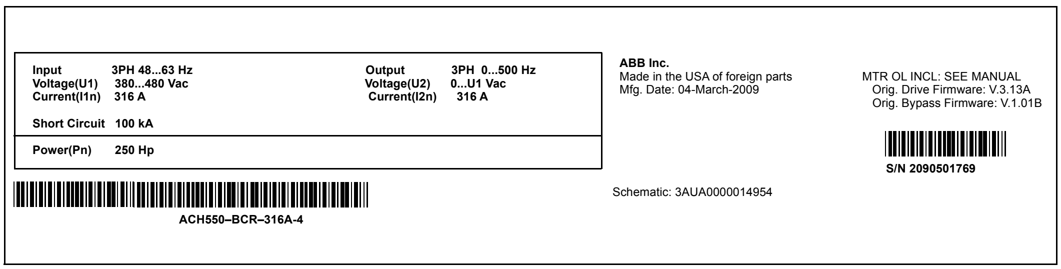
Preparing for installation (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Drive identification

Drive labels

To determine the type of drive you are installing, refer to either:

- Serial number label attached on upper part of the chokeplate between the mounting holes.
- Type code label attached on the heat sink – on the right side of the unit cover.



Type code

Use the following chart to interpret the type code found on either label.

ACH550-BCR-316A-4+…+…

AC, HVAC Drive – 550 product series

Construction
- UH = Base drive
- BCR = E-Clipse Bypass with circuit breaker
- BDR = E-Clipse Bypass with disconnect switch
- PCR = Drive with circuit breaker
- PDR = Drive with disconnect switch
- VCR = Vertical E-Clipse Bypass with circuit breaker
- VDR = Vertical E-Clipse Bypass with disconnect switch

Output current rating (See *Ratings* for details on page *1-297*)

Voltage rating
- 2 = 208…240 VAC
- 4 = 380…480 VAC
- 6 = 500…600 VAC

Enclosure protection class
- No specification = IP 21 / UL type 1
- +B055 = IP 54 / UL type 12
- +B058 = IP 58 / UL type 3R

Line reactor
- +E213 = Line Reactor

Service Switch
- +F267 = Service switch

Fieldbus Adapters
- +K451 = DeviceNet Adapter
- +K452 = LonWorks Adapter
- +K454 = Profibus Adapter
- +K466 = EtherNet Adapter

Ratings and frame size

The chart in the *Ratings* section of the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-297* lists technical specifications, and identifies the drive's frame size – significant, since some instructions in this document vary, depending on the drive's frame size. To read the Ratings table, you need the "Output current rating" entry from the *Type code* (see above). Also, when using the Ratings tables, note that there are three tables based on the drive's "Voltage rating".

Suitable mounting location (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

In selecting a suitable mounting location for E-Clipse Bypass configurations, refer to the *Technical data* on page *2-239* in this manual for the appropriate information on:

- Branch circuit protection
- Dimensions and weights
- UL Type 3R, BX3R-1...BX3R-4 enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

Installing the wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

WARNING!

- Do not connect or disconnect input or output power wiring, or control wires, when power is applied.
- Never connect line voltage to drive output Terminals T1, T2, and T3.
- Do not make any voltage tolerance tests (Hi Pot or Megger) on any part of the unit. Disconnect motor wires before taking any measurements in the motor or motor wires.
- Make sure that power factor correction capacitors are not connected between the drive and the motor.

Wiring requirements

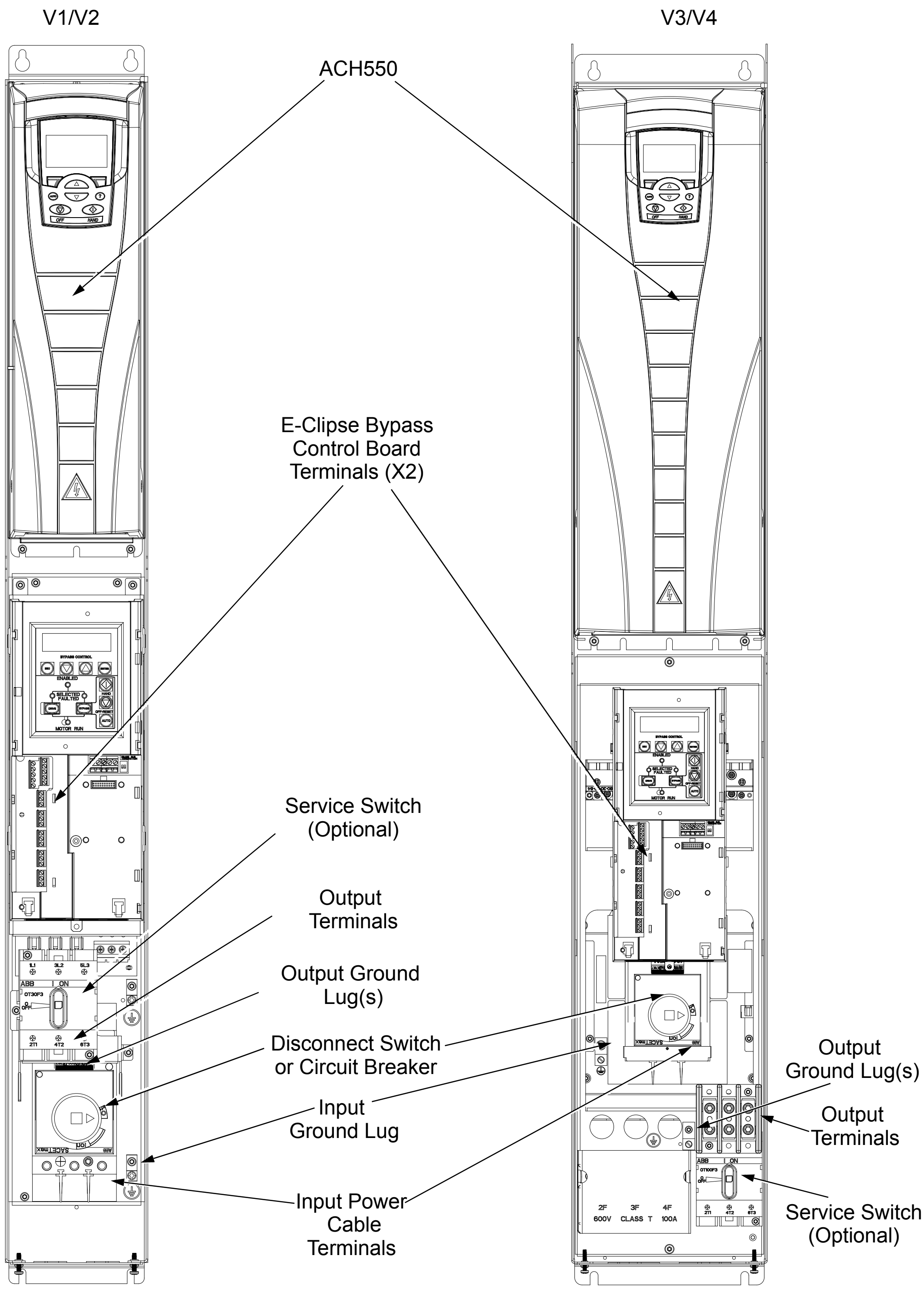
Refer to the *Wiring requirements* on page *1-18* in the ACH550-UH User's Manual. The requirements apply to all ACH550 drives. In particular:

- Use separate, metal conduit runs to keep these three classes of wiring apart:
  - Input power wiring.
  - Motor wiring.
  - Control/communications wiring.
- Properly and individually ground the drive, the motor and cable shields.
- Use wire ties to permanently affix control/communications wiring to the hooked wire race tie points provided maintaining a minimum 6 mm (1/4") spacing from power wiring.
- Use a separate motor conduit run for each motor.

Wiring overview (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

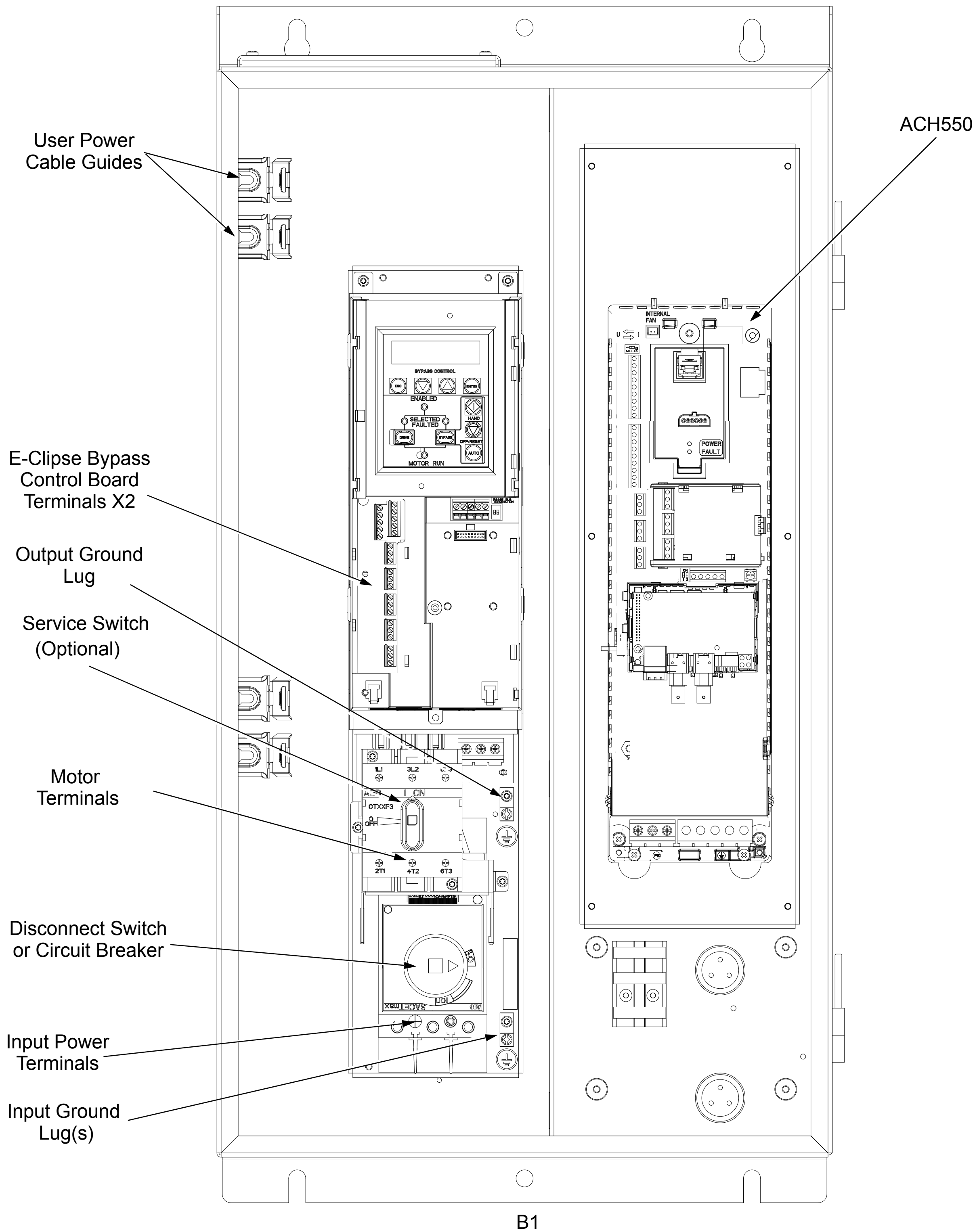
Connection diagrams – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass

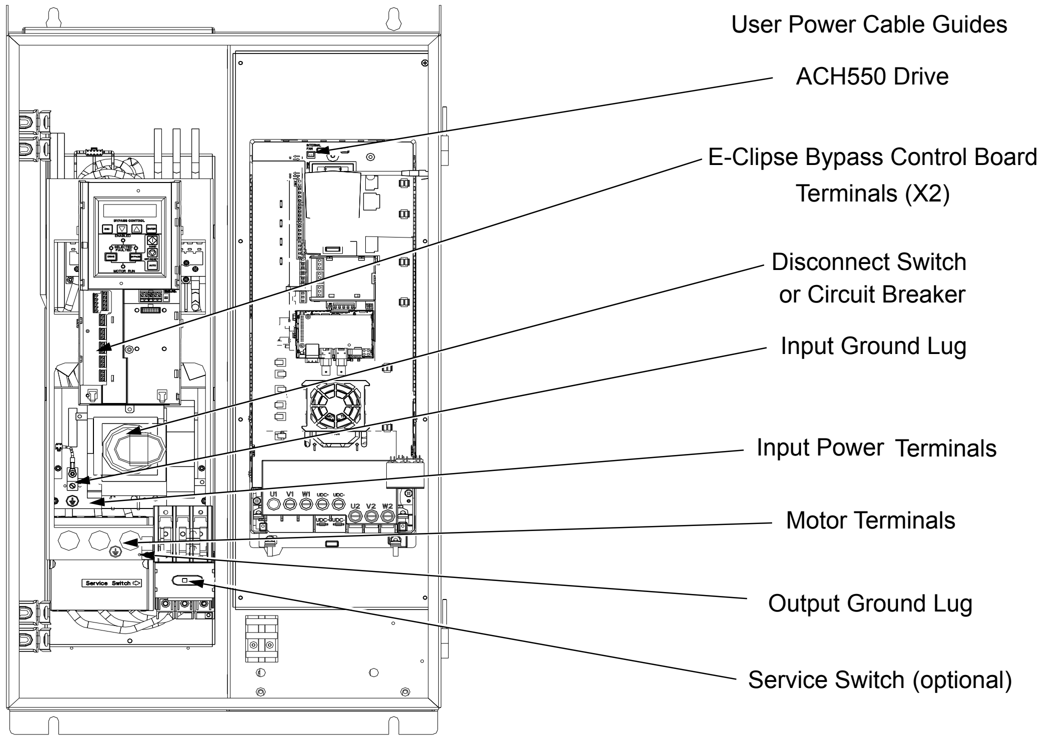
ACH550 Vertical E-Clipse Bypass units are configured for wiring access from the bottom only. The following figure shows the Vertical E-Clipse Bypass wiring connection points. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page 1-315 for control connections to the drive.



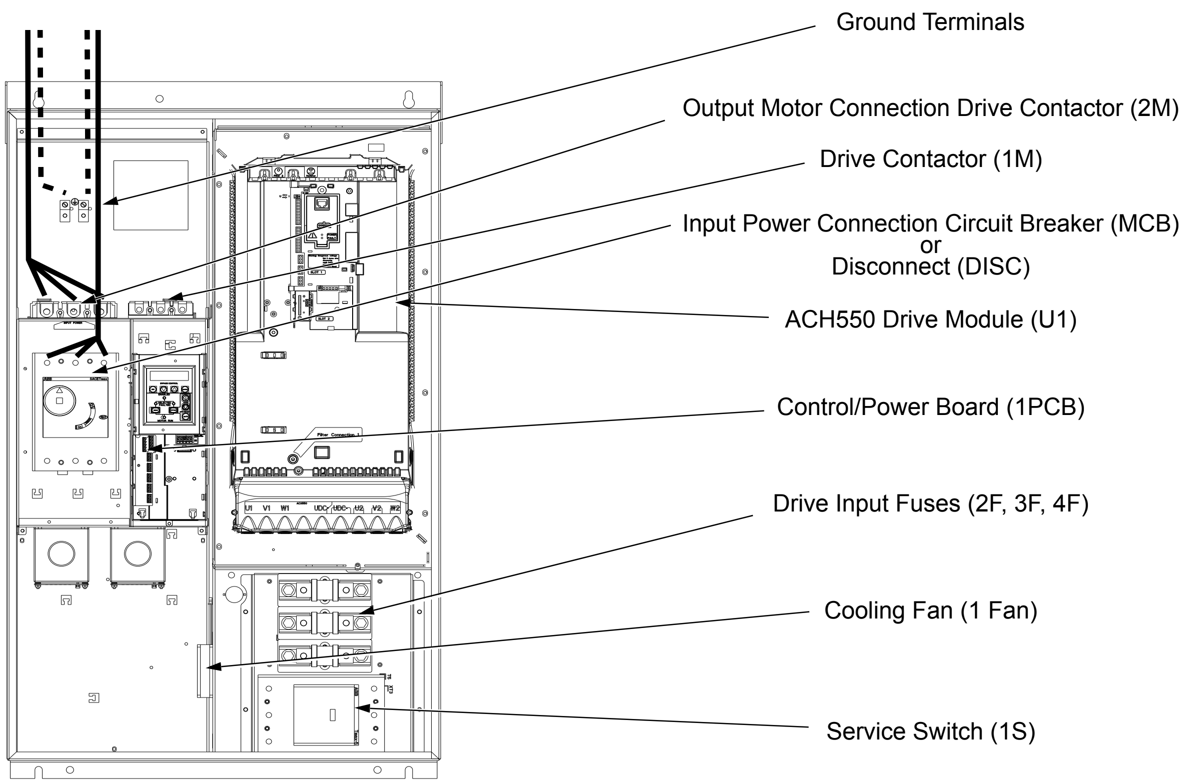
Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (wall mounted)

ACH550 Standard E-Clipse Bypass units are configured for wiring access from the top. The following figure shows the Standard E-Clipse Bypass (wall mounted) wiring connection points. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-315* for control connections to the drive.




User Power Cable Guides
ACH550 Drive
E-Clipse Bypass Control Board Terminals (X2)
Disconnect Switch or Circuit Breaker
Input Ground Lug
Input Power Terminals
Motor Terminals
Output Ground Lug
Service Switch (optional)

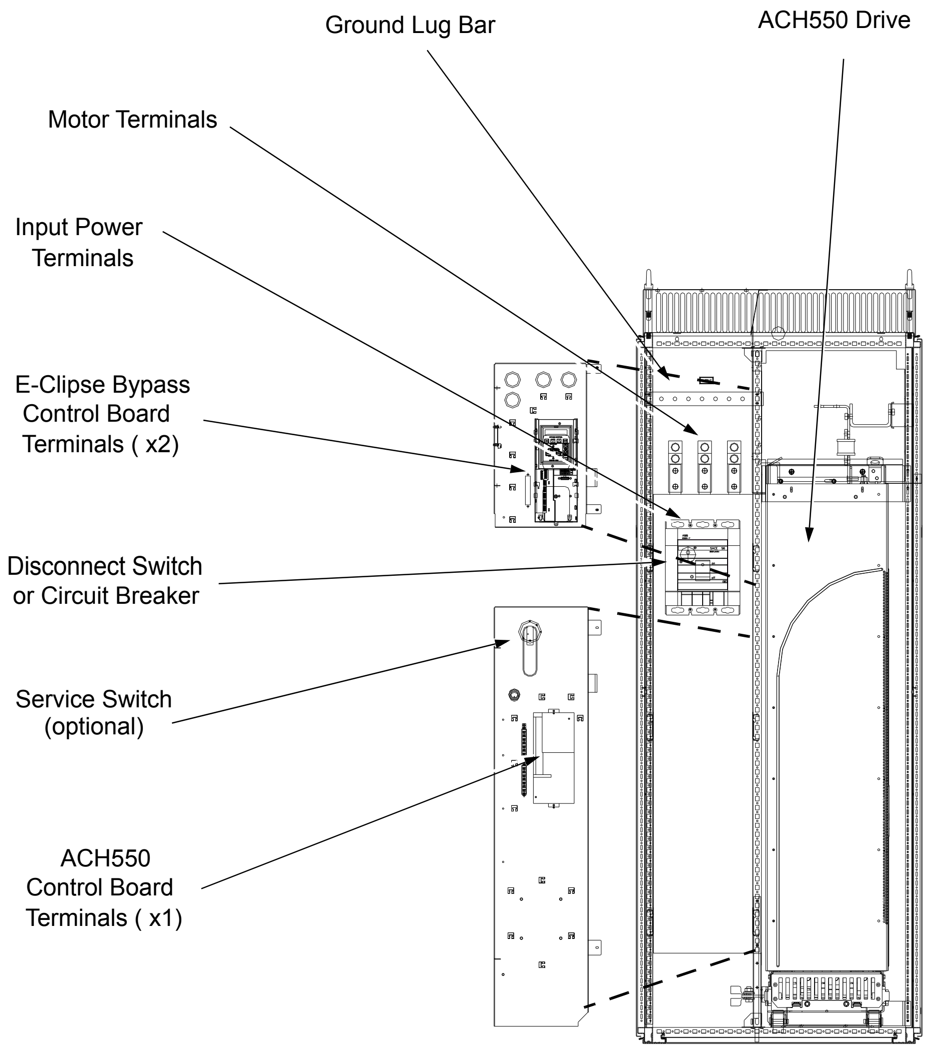
B2


Ground Terminals
Output Motor Connection Drive Contactor (2M)
Drive Contactor (1M)
Input Power Connection Circuit Breaker (MCB) or Disconnect (DISC)
ACH550 Drive Module (U1)
Control/Power Board (1PCB)
Drive Input Fuses (2F, 3F, 4F)
Cooling Fan (1 Fan)
Service Switch (1S)

B3

Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (R8, floor mounted)

ACH550 Standard E-Clipse Bypass units are configured for wiring access from the top. The following figure shows the Standard E-Clipse Bypass (floor mounted) wiring connection points. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-315* for control connections to the drive.

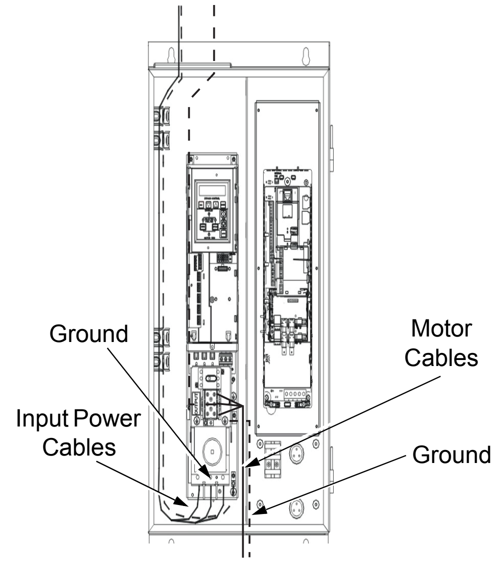


B4

Power connections – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass configurations

Line input connections

Connect the input power to the terminals at the bottom of the disconnect switch or circuit breaker as shown below. Also see *Connection diagrams – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass* on page *2-12*. Connect the equipment grounding conductor to the ground lug near the input power connection point.



Motor connections

Connect the motor cables to the terminals at the bottom of the bypass section as shown in the figure. Also see *Connection diagrams – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass* on page *2-15*. Connect the motor grounding conductor to the ground lug near the motor cable terminal block connection point.

Power connections – Standard E-Clipse Bypass configurations (wall mounted)

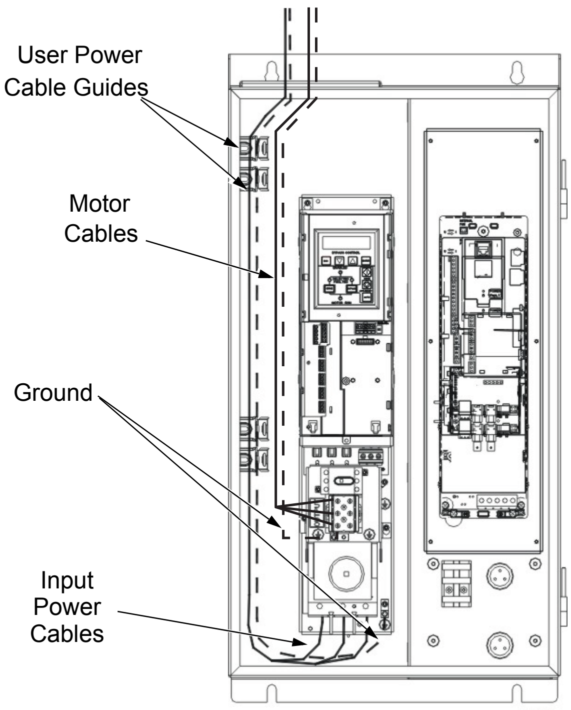
Line input connections

Connect input power to the terminals of the disconnect switch or circuit breaker. Connect the equipment grounding conductor to the ground lug at the top of the enclosure. The figure below shows the connection points for Standard E-Clipse Bypass configurations. Also see *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (wall mounted)* on page *2-13* and *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (R8, floor mounted)* on page *2-15*.

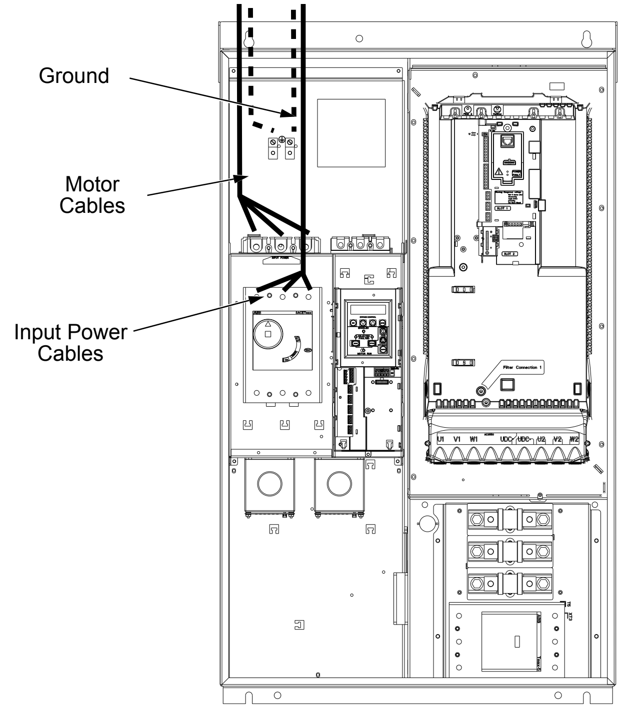
Motor connections

Connect the motor cables to the output terminal block as shown in the figure below. Also see *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (wall mounted)* on page *2-13* and *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (R8, floor mounted)* on page *2-15*. The motor grounding conductor can be connected to the ground lug near the terminal block.

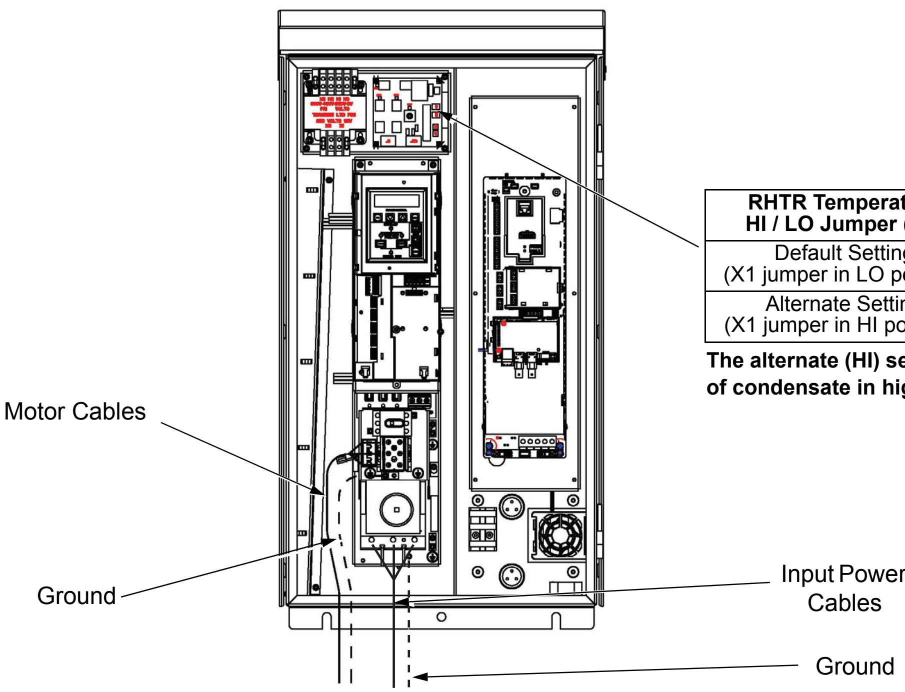
Note: Route cables through the cable guides on the left side of the enclosure. Use separate conduits for input power and motor cables. Follow the guides to separate the cables from each other.



Standard Configuration (B1/B2)



Standard Configuration (B3)



RHTR Temperature HI / LO Jumper (X1)	Heater ON Temperature	Heater OFF Temperature
Default Setting (X1 jumper in LO position)	14.4 °C 58 °F	21.4 °C 70.5 °F
Alternate Setting (X1 jumper in HI position)	17.8 °C 64 °F	24.7 °C 76.5 °F

The alternate (HI) setting further reduces the likelihood of condensate in high humidity environments.

UL Type 3R Configuration (B1/B2)

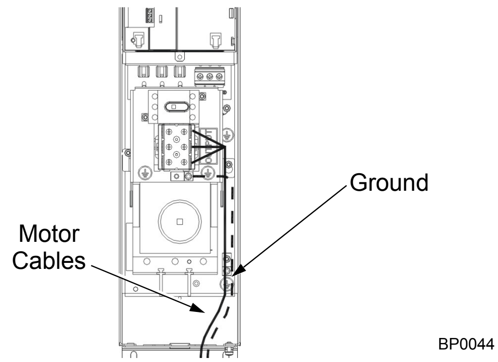
Note: UL Type 3R, B1/B2 enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

WARNING! Check the motor and motor wiring insulation before connecting the ACH550 to line power. Follow the procedure in the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page 1-23. Before proceeding with the insulation resistance measurements, check that the ACH550 is disconnected from incoming line power. Failure to disconnect line power could result in death or serious injury.

Install the motor wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Motor connections – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass configurations

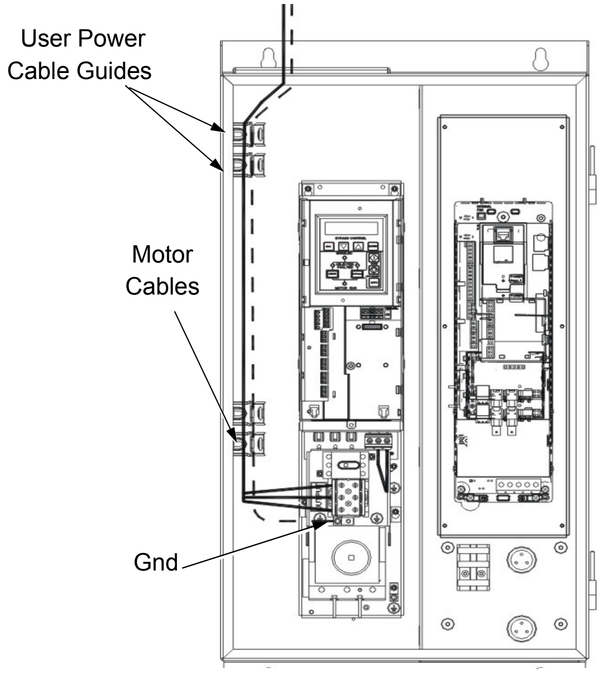
Connect the motor cables to the terminals at the bottom of the bypass section as shown in the figure below. Also see *Connection diagrams – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass* on page 2-12. Connect the motor grounding conductor to the ground lug near the motor cable terminal block connection point.



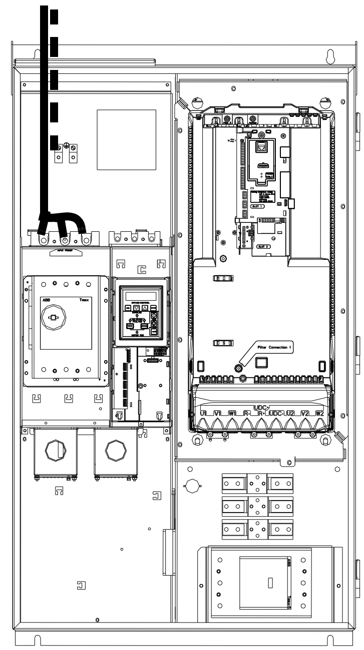
Motor connections – Standard E-Clipse Bypass configurations (wall mounted)

Connect the motor cables to the output terminal block as shown in the figure below. Also see *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (wall mounted)* on page 2-13 and *Connection diagrams – Standard E-Clipse Bypass (R8, floor mounted)* on page 2-15. The motor grounding conductor can be connected to the ground lug near the terminal block.

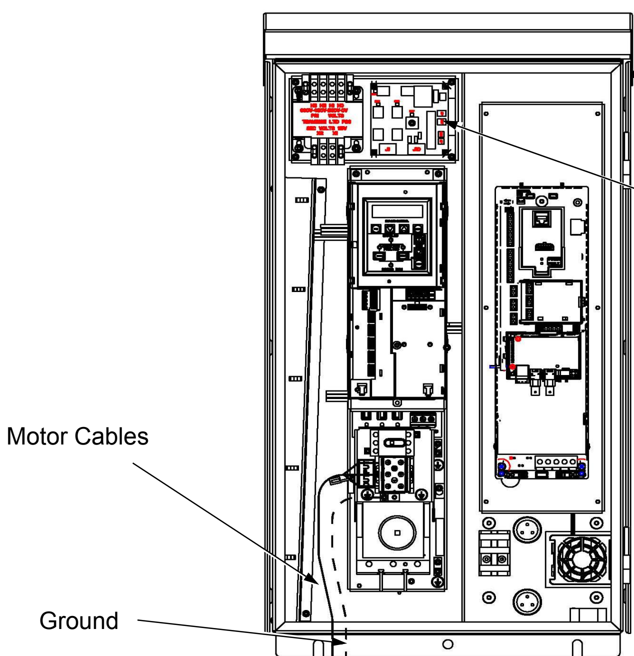
Note: Route cables through the cable guides on the left side of the enclosure. Use separate conduits for input power and motor cables. Follow the guides to separate the cables from each other.



Standard Configuration (B1/B2)



Standard Configuration (B3)



UL Type 3R Configuration (B1/B2)

RHTR Temperature HI / LO Jumper (X1)	Heater ON Temperature	Heater OFF Temperature
Default Setting (X1 jumper in LO position)	14.4 °C 58 °F	21.4 °C 70.5 °F
Alternate Setting (X1 jumper in HI position)	17.8 °C 64 °F	24.7 °C 76.5 °C

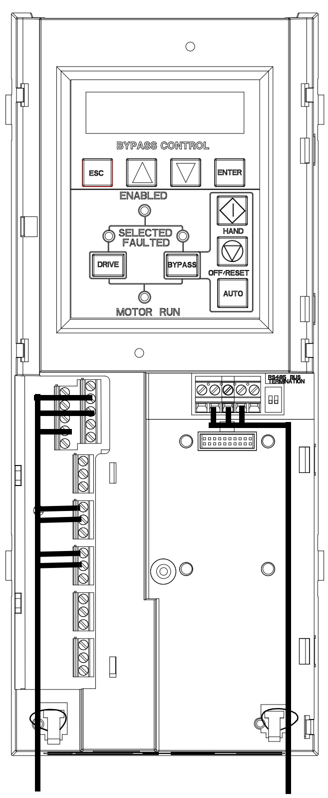
The alternate (HI) setting further reduces the likelihood of condensate in high humidity environments.

Install the control wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Connect control wiring to terminal block X1 on the ACH550 control board and to terminal block X2 on the E-Clipse Bypass control board. For more information on these connections, refer to the following:

- X1 terminal block location and terminal data are defined in the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-316*.
- X2 terminal block location is illustrated in the figures starting with *Connection diagrams – Vertical E-Clipse Bypass* on page *2-12*.
- X2 terminal data are provided in *Basic control connections for E-Clipse HVAC Default* on page *2-21*.
- Basic connections are described in the following paragraphs.
- Alternate configurations using the E-Clipse Bypass macro are described in *Application macros* on page *2-53*.
- On Terminal Block X1 inside the ACH550, analog inputs and outputs and additional digital input and relay output connections (AI1, AI2, AO1, AO2, DI1…DI6 and RO1…RO6) are available for use. Refer to the *ACH550-UH User's Manual* for information about control connections on Terminal Block X1 on page *1-316*.

Note: The E-Clipse Bypass control circuitry uses serial communications connections (X1:28…X1:32) inside the ACH550. These connections are not available for any other purpose and must not be reconfigured.



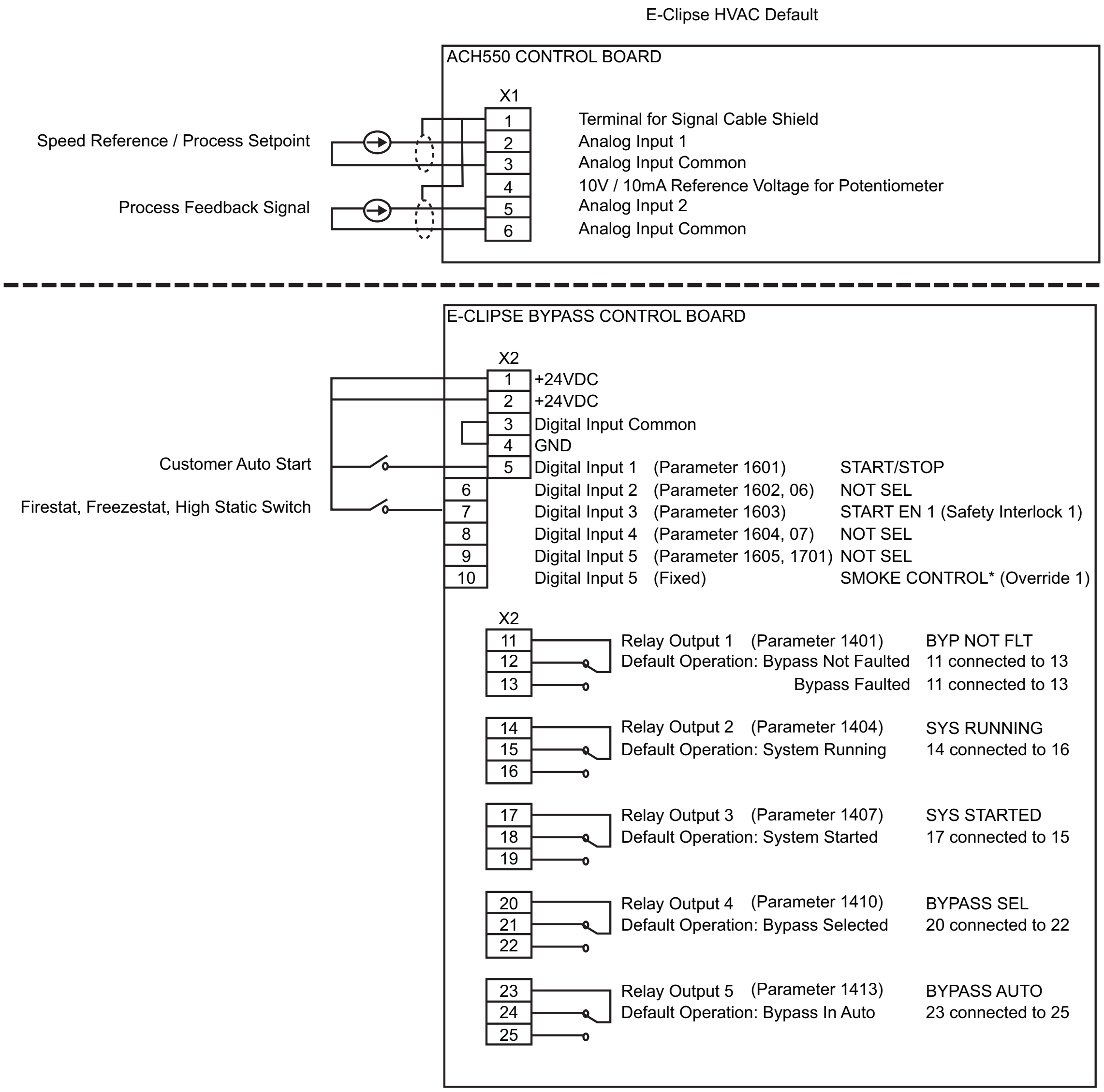
Basic connections

The figure on page *2-21* shows the basic control connections for use with the E-Clipse Bypass HVAC Default macro. These connections are described in the following paragraphs.

In typical installations, only analog input wires connect to the ACH550 terminal block, with other control connections made on the E-Clipse Bypass control board.

Use wire ties to permanently affix control/communications wiring to the hooked wire race tie points provided, maintaining a minimum 6 mm (1/4") spacing from power wiring.

Basic control connections for E-Clipse HVAC Default



Parameters Changed Relative to E-Clipse HVAC Default

Parameter Number	Description	Setting

* Smoke Control (Override1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 **will** place the E-Clipse Bypass in Smoke Control mode which may reassign the function of the other Digital Inputs. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override1) documentation.

Initial settings and checks

Control panel settings and checks

Apply power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit. The ACH550 Control Panel should show the operating status of the drive. If the E-Clipse Bypass Control Panel displays a PHASE SEQ (Phase Sequence) fault, remove power, wait at least 5 minutes and then swap any two input phase wires. If the motor is a standard 208 V, 60 Hz motor connected to a 208 V drive or a 460 V, 60 Hz motor connected to a 480 V drive, the default parameter settings should be suitable for the initial tests described below. If the motor's rating is not 208 V or 460 V, 60 Hz, the MOTOR NOM VOLT and MOTOR NOM FREQ parameters will need to be properly set before proceeding. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual and set the parameters as required.

Note: The settings for ALL external serial communication between the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass and any Building Automation System are configured using the E-Clipse Bypass operator panel. DO NOT attempt to configure the external serial communication connection using the ACH550 operator panel!

The settings for internal communication between the ACH550 and the E-Clipse Bypass are configured at the factory and require no adjustment.

Drive Link recovery procedure

If the ACH550 Drive communication settings are unintentionally changed during setup a "Drive Link Fault", "Drive Link Error" or "Drive Setup" alarm may be displayed. Should this occur, accomplish the following steps in order.

Using the ACH550 Drive Keypad

1. Set Parameter 9802 to "STD MODBUS"
2. Set Parameter 9902 to "E-CLIPSE"
3. Cycle Power

Following the above steps, in order, should restore proper communications between the ACH550 Drive and the E-Clipse Bypass. Should the E-Clipse Keypad continue to display a "Drive Link Fault", "Drive Link Error" or "Drive Setup" alarm, check the following parameter settings to ensure they have been recovered. If necessary, individually set the correct parameter settings as indicated below and cycle power.

The only ACH550 Drive macro that provides the proper configuration settings by default is the E-Clipse Bypass macro. If any other ACH550 Drive macro is used, that macro should be selected after completing the initial tests. When using any other macro the following ACH550 Drive parameter values must be set and power cycled or the E-Clipse Bypass will not function properly:

- Parameter 9802 must be set to "STD MODBUS"
- Parameter 1001 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 1002 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 1601 must be set to "Comm"

- Parameter 1608 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 5303 must be set to "76.8 kb/s"
- Parameter 5304 must be set to "8 EVEN 1"
- Parameter 5305 must be set to "DCU PROFILE"
- Parameter 5310 must be set to "103"
- Parameter 5311 must be set to "104"
- Power must be cycled

Refer to the *ACH550-UH User's Manual* for additional information.

Note: Run motor from drive before attempting bypass operation.

System check: motor connected to ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass

After performing the control panel checks and setting the ACH550 Drive Start-up Data parameters, check the operation of the ACH550 Drive with E-Clipse Bypass with the motor connected as follows:

1. Disconnect and lock out power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit, wait at least five minutes before disconnecting power.
2. Connect the motor to the output terminals.

CAUTION: If the Advanced Override (Override 2) input contact is closed, the motor will start as soon as power is applied.

If the Safety Interlock and Run Enable input contacts are closed and the Smoke Control (Override 1) input contact is closed, the motor will start across the line as soon as power is applied.

If the Start/Stop, Safety Interlock and Run Enable input contacts are closed and the system is in the Bypass mode and in either Hand or Auto, the motor will start across the line as soon as power is applied.

If the Start/Stop, Safety Interlock and Run Enable input contacts are closed and the system is in the Drive mode with the drive in either Hand or Auto mode, the motor will start on the drive as soon as power is applied.

In order to prevent the motor from starting, the system should be in the Drive mode and the drive should be OFF when the power is disconnected at the end of the previous series of control panel settings and checks.

In order to prevent the motor from running without disconnecting the motor, open the Run Enable and Safety Interlock contacts on bypass control board terminals X2:2, X2:3 and X2:4 before applying power. Set the bypass to Drive mode and the drive to OFF.

---

3. Apply power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit. The ACH550 Control Panel display should be illuminated. On the bypass control panel, both the display and Enabled LED should be illuminated. If the Enabled LED is not illuminated solid green, check to see that closed contacts or jumpers connect terminal X2:3 to X2:4 and X2:2 to X2:7 on the bypass control board.
4. The Drive Selected LED should be illuminated. If not, press the Drive Select key to switch to Drive mode. Leave the system in the Drive mode when proceeding to the next step.
5. Press the Hand key on the ACH550 Control Panel. Press and hold the UP key until the motor just starts rotating.

Note: If the ACH550 Control Panel displays an OVERCURRENT or EARTH FAULT, disconnect and lock out power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit. Wait at least 5 minutes. Disconnect the motor leads from the E-Clipse Bypass unit and Megger each motor lead to ground to determine if the motor is good. Check the power leads from the Drive / Bypass to the motor for damaged or improper wiring. If the ACH550 Control Panel displays any other drive faults, correct the fault condition before proceeding to the next step.

CAUTION: Check motor rotation direction as soon as the motor begins to move. If motor does not rotate in the correct direction, shut down the drive, disconnect and lock out power to the drive and wait five minutes. Swap any two motor output wires (T1, T2, and T3). Incorrect motor rotation direction may cause equipment damage.

6. Increase the speed to 60 Hz or the highest safe operating speed.
7. Press the OFF key on the drive control panel. The motor should stop.

   If the drive does not operate according to these steps, refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual.

   If the drive operates according to these steps, your ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass is ready to use with preset or modified macro settings.

Note: The settings for ALL external serial communication between the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass and any Building Automation System are configured using the E-Clipse Bypass operator panel. DO NOT attempt to configure the external serial communication connection using the ACH550 operator panel!

The settings for internal communication between the ACH550 and the E-Clipse Bypass are configured at the factory and require no adjustment.

Note: Both the ACH550 Drive and the E-Clipse Bypass include preset application macros. The only ACH550 Drive macro that provides the proper configuration settings by default is the *E-Clipse HVAC Default macro* (9902 = 15). If any other ACH550 drive macro or any modified setting of the *E-Clipse HVAC Default macro* is used the following ACH550 Drive parameter values must be set and power cycled or the E-Clipse Bypass will not function properly:

- Parameter 9802 must be set to "STD MODBUS"
- Parameter 1001 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 1002 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 1601 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 1608 must be set to "Comm"
- Parameter 5303 must be set to "76.8 kb/s"
- Parameter 5304 must be set to "8 EVEN 1"
- Parameter 5305 must be set to "DCU PROFILE"
- Parameter 5310 must be set to "103"
- Parameter 5311 must be set to "104"
- Power must be cycled

Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual for programming instructions.

Note: Run motor from drive before attempting bypass operation.

System check: motor disconnected from the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass

If you are familiar with the E-Clipse Bypass operation, you may skip the following section. Otherwise, after performing the system checks and setting the ACH550 Drive Start-up Data parameters, become familiar with the operation of the ACH550 Drive with E-Clipse Bypass without the motor connected as follows:

1. Disconnect and lock out power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit, wait at least five minutes after disconnecting power.
2. Disconnect the motor from the E-Clipse Bypass unit.
3. Apply power to the E-Clipse Bypass unit by turning on the branch circuit disconnect device and the bypass disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
4. The ACH550 Control Panel display should be illuminated. On the E-Clipse Bypass control panel, both the display and *Enabled* LED should be illuminated. If the *Enabled* LED is not illuminated solid green, check to see that closed contacts or jumpers connect terminal X2:3 to X2:4 and X2:2 to X2:7 on the bypass control board.

5. On the E-Clipse Bypass control panel, either the *Drive Selected* or *Bypass Selected* LED should be illuminated. Pressing the *Drive Select* or *Bypass Select* key should switch the bypass back and forth between the *Drive* mode and the *Bypass* mode as indicated by the LEDs above each button. Check that the bypass control panel switches the system between modes. Leave the system in the Bypass mode when proceeding to the next step.
6. Check to see that pressing the:
   - *Auto* key on the bypass control panel causes the bottom line on the E-Clipse Bypass display to indicate “*Bypass in Auto*”
   - Hand key on the bypass control panel generates a Motor Phase Fault.
   - Under normal conditions (motor connected) pressing the Hand key on the bypass control panel causes the bottom line on the E-Clipse Bypass display to indicate “Hand #A Run”
   - OFF key on the bypass control panel causes the bottom line on the E-Clipse Bypass display to indicate “Off Stop”
7. For Steps 8 through 14, ACH550 Drive Parameter 9904 must be set to “Scalar: Freq”. After successful completion of Step 13, Parameter 9904 may be set to “Vector: Speed” if very specific application requirements make it necessary to use this type of motor control. Operation using the “Vector: Speed” setting is unnecessary for control of almost all fan and pump applications. Refer to the ACH550-UH User’s Manual on page *1-35* for details on setting parameters.
8. Press the *Drive Select* key on the E-Clipse Bypass control panel. The *Drive Select* LED should be illuminated.
9. Check to see that pressing the:
   - *Auto* key on the bypass control panel causes the E-Clipse Bypass display to indicate “*Bypass in Auto*”
   - *Hand* key on the bypass control panel causes no change to the E-Clipse Bypass display
   - *OFF* key on the bypass control panel causes the E-Clipse Bypass display to indicate “*Bypass in Off”*
10. Press the *HAND* key on the drive control panel. Note that the top line of the control panel display indicates “HAND” and run as a clockwise rotating arrow. The *Drive Run* LED on the E-Clipse Bypass control panel should be illuminated.
11. Press the *UP* arrow on the drive control panel. Note that the speed reference indication in the top line of the drive control panel display increases from “0.0% SP.”
12. In the middle line of the drive control panel display, the output current indication should indicate “0.0 A.”
13. Press the *DOWN* arrow on the drive control panel until the speed and frequency indications return to “0.0.”
14. Press the *OFF* key on the drive control panel. Note that the bottom line of the drive contol panel display indicates “Off.”

If the ACH550 Drive and E-Clipse Bypass operate according to these steps, and you have familiarized yourself with their operation, disconnect and lock out power to prepare for the next test.

WARNING! Wait at least five minutes after disconnecting power from the drive before you attempt to service the drive. Bus capacitors in the intermediate DC circuit must discharge before servicing the drive. Using a meter rated for 1000 VDC, check for zero volts at:

- Terminals BRK+ to GND and BRK- to GND (frame size R1/R2)
- Terminals UC+ and UC- (frame size R3…R8).

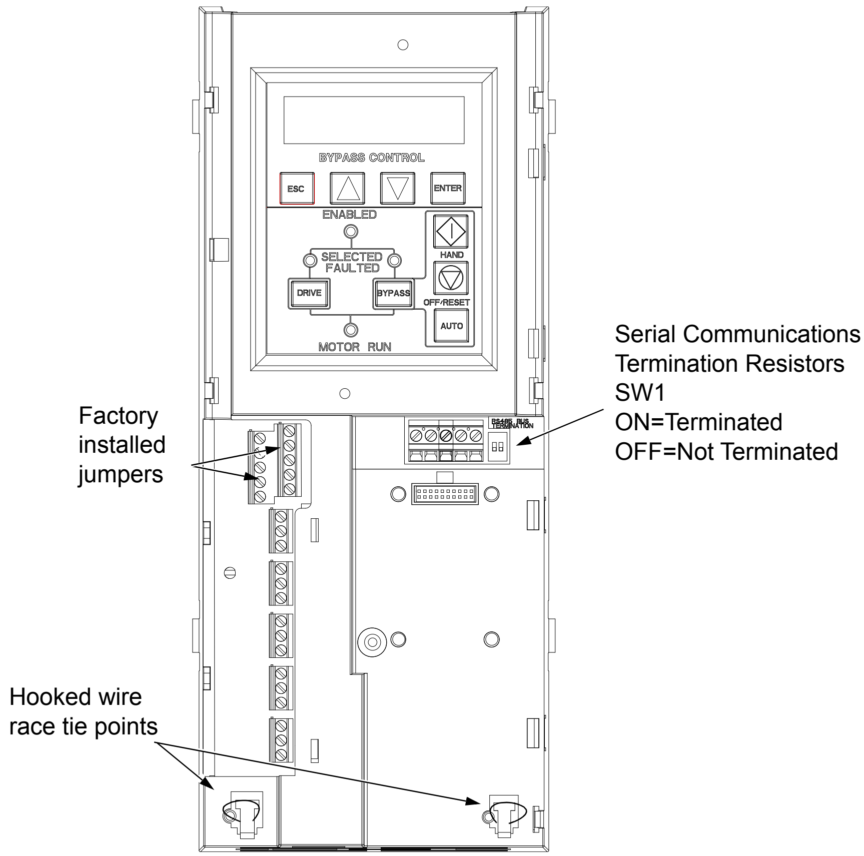
If the drive does not operate according to these steps, refer to the ACH550-UH User’s Manual.

Check E-Clipse Bypass jumpers and switches

The settings described in this section are factory set and, for most situations, do not require adjustment. However, it is a good practice to review these settings to confirm that they are appropriate for the configuration installed.

Jumper and switch locations

The figure below shows the locations of the SW1 DIP switch on the E-Clipse Bypass control board. The function and setting of this switch is explained in the following paragraph.



DIP switch settings

The DIP switch is used to configure the serial communications termination resistors.

To reduce noise on the serial communications network, terminate the EIA-485 network using 120 ohm resistors at both ends of the network. Use the DIP switches to connect or disconnect the on-board termination resistors. Both switches must be positioned in the ON or OFF position to correctly configure the termination resistors.

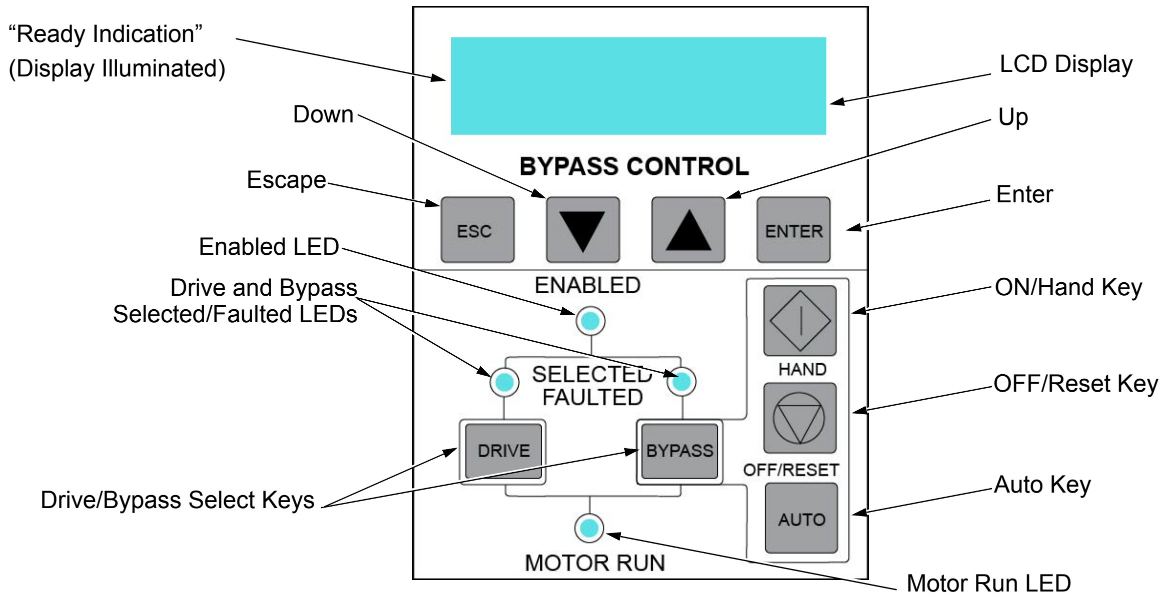
Circuit breaker settings

On some ACH550 E-Clipse Bypasses, the circuit breaker has adjustable settings for instantaneous current protection. The factory default settings are practical for most applications. Refer to the "ABB SACE Instruction Sheet" (supplied with these units) for additional information on the adjustment of these settings.

Control panel

Bypass control panel features

The figure below shows the bypass control panel and identifies the keys and LED indicating lights. The functions of the various keys and LEDs are described in the following paragraphs.



Ready (Power On) Indication

The *Ready (Power On) indication* is provided by the bypass control panel. The bypass control panel display will be illuminated and text will be displayed when the disconnect switch or circuit breaker is closed and control power is applied to the bypass.

Enabled LED

The *Enabled LED* is illuminated green under the following conditions:

- Both the Safety Interlock(s) and Run Enable contacts are closed.
- The Safety Interlock contact(s) are closed with no Start command present.

The Enabled LED flashes green if the Run Enable contact is open and when the Safety Interlock contact(s) are closed and a Start command is present.

The Enabled LED is illuminated red when the Safety Interlock contact(s) are open.

Motor Run LED

The *Motor Run LED* is illuminated green when the motor is running in either bypass mode or in drive mode. The Motor Run LED flashes green to indicate the system has been placed in an Override condition.

Bypass Faulted LED

The *Bypass Faulted LED* is illuminated or flashes red when the motor or bypass protection functions have shut down the bypass. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the bypass control display. Refer to the *Diagnostics* section of this manual for more details.

Drive Selected LED

The *Drive Selected LED* is illuminated green when the drive has been selected as the power source for the motor and no drive fault is present.

Bypass Selected LED

The *Bypass Selected LED* is illuminated or flashes green when the bypass has been selected as the power source for the motor and no bypass fault is present.

Drive Faulted LED

The *Drive Faulted LED* is illuminated red when the bypass has lost its communications link with the drive or when the motor or drive protection functions have shut down the drive. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the drive control panel display. Refer to the *Diagnostics* section on page *1-279* of the ACH550-UH User’s Manual for more details.

Automatic Transfer

The *Automatic Transfer* indication is provided on the bypass control panel. The bypass control display will continuously flash an alarm to indicate the system has automatically transferred to Bypass after a Drive fault. The Bypass Selected LED flashes green when the system has automatically transferred to bypass operation. The bypass event log will also record this event.

Auto Indication

The *Auto Indication* is provided on the bypass control panel default display when the bypass control panel Auto key is pressed. Normally this indicates that the Auto Start contact or serial communications has been selected as the means for starting and stopping the motor in the bypass mode.

Off Indication

The *Off Indication* is provided on the bypass control panel default display when bypass control panel Off key is pressed.

Hand Indication

The *Hand Indication* is provided on the bypass control panel default display when the motor has been started manually in the bypass mode.

Drive Select Key

The *Drive Select Key* selects the drive as the power source for the motor.

Bypass Select Key

The *Bypass Select Key* selects the bypass as the power source for the motor.

Off/Reset Key

The *Off/Reset Key* may be used to manually stop the motor if the motor has been running on bypass power. The Off/Reset key also resets most bypass faults. It may take several minutes before the bypass can be reset after an overload trip. If a bypass fault condition is present the second press of this key places the bypass in the OFF mode.

Auto Key

The *Auto Key* selects the Auto Start contact or serial communications as the means for starting and stopping the motor in the bypass mode.

Hand Key

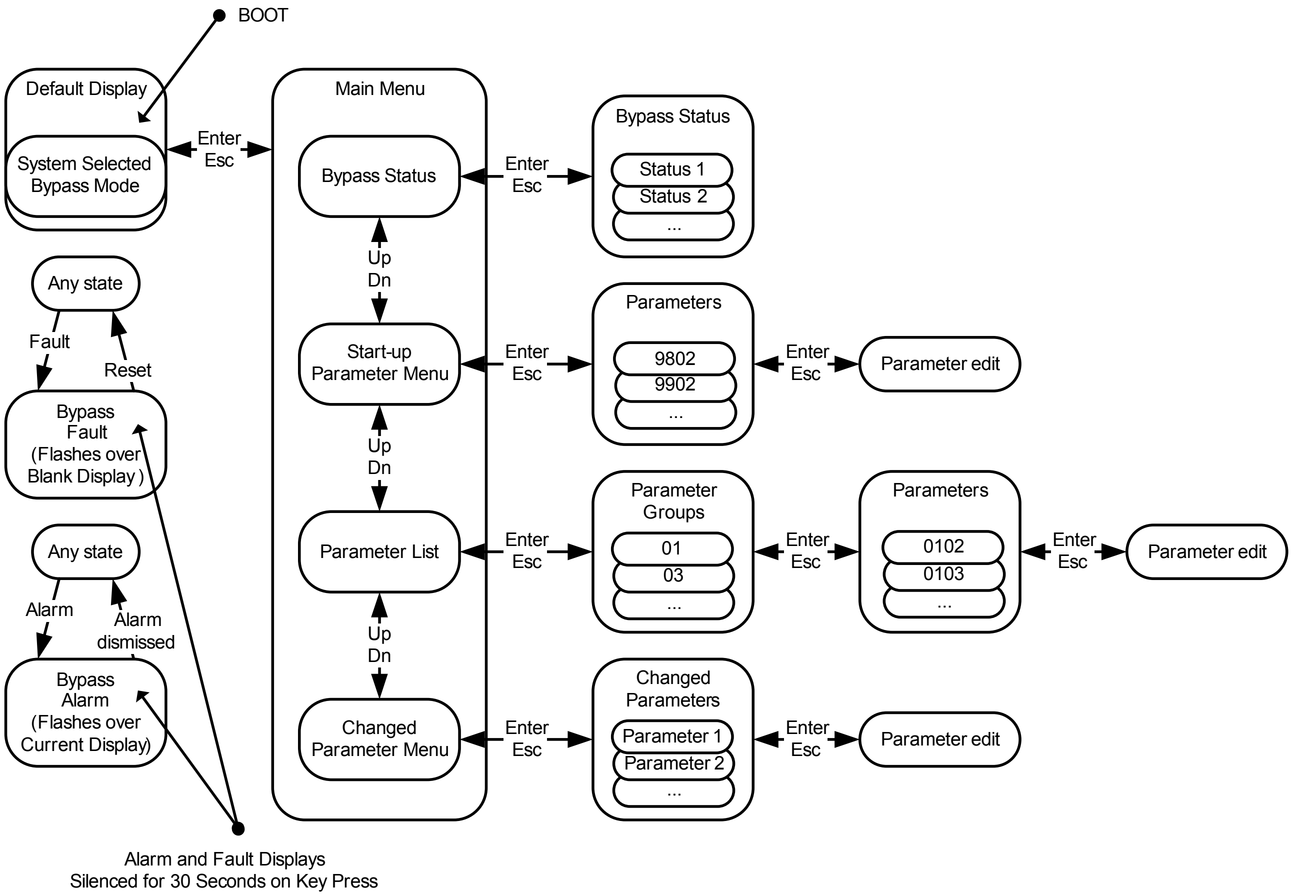
The *Hand Key* can be used to manually start the motor when the bypass has been selected as the power source for the motor.

Bypass control panel modes

The HVAC Bypass Control Panel has several different modes for configuring, operating and diagnosing the bypass. The modes are:

- Default Display mode – Provides (HAND/OFF/AUTO) indication of the bypass operating control mode.
- Bypass Status mode – Provides status indications of the current system operating conditions.
- Start-Up Parameter Mode – Provides a list of parameters or operating conditions that may be configured or viewed during startup.
- Parameter List mode – Used to edit parameter values individually.
- Changed Parameter mode – Displays changed parameters.
- Bypass Fault Display mode – If there is an active bypass fault, the control panel will flash the fault number and fault diagnostic indication in English.
- Bypass Alarm Display mode – If there is an active bypass alarm, the control panel will flash the alarm number and alarm diagnostic indication in English.

The different modes are accessed through the HVAC Bypass Control Panel's menu structure illustrated on the following page.



Bypass Control Panel's Menu Structure

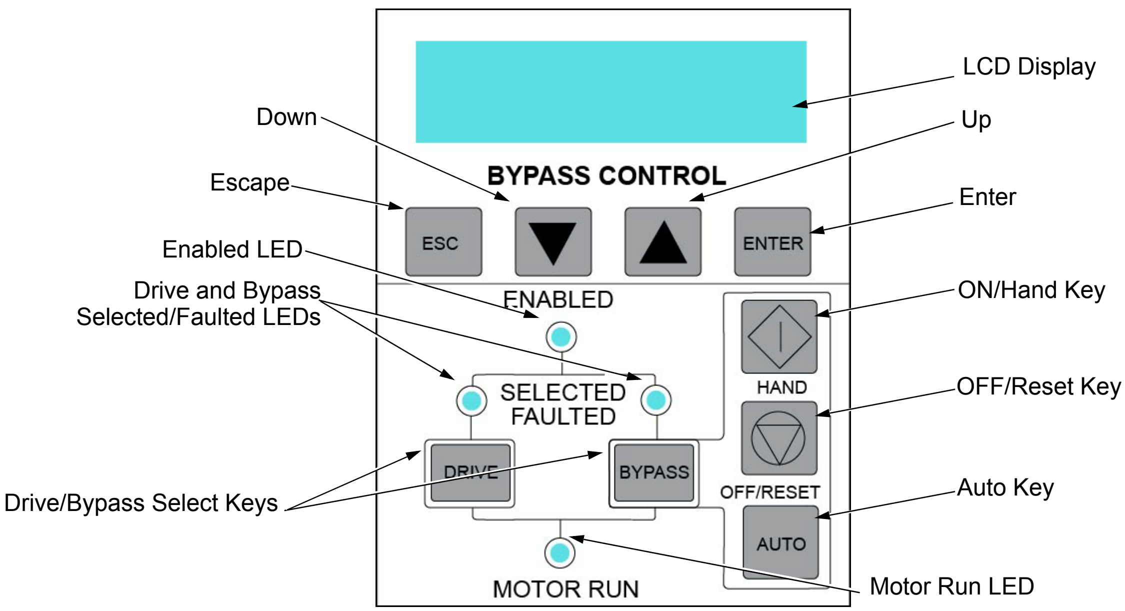
Start-up

Start-up

Start-Up can be performed in two ways:

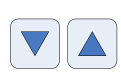
- Using the Start-Up Parameter List
- Changing the parameters individually from the Full Parameter List.

Note: Run motor from drive before attempting bypass operation.



Start-up by changing the parameters from the start-up list

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	The **Default Display** indicates the **Bypass Control** mode.		DRIVE SELECTED BYPASS IN OFF
2	Press **ENTER** to enter the **Main Menu.**	ENTER	*BYPASS STATUS STARTUP PARAMS
3	Select the **Startup Params** with the **Up/Down** arrows and press **ENTER**.	 ENTER	BYPASS STATUS *STARTUP PARAMS

4	Select the appropriate **Parameter** with the **Up/Down** arrows and press **ENTER**.	▼ ▲ ENTER	*1601 START/STOP 1613 BP DISABLE
5	Press the **Up/Down** arrows to change the **Parameter Value**.	▼ ▲	1601 START/STOP [1:DI1]
6	Press **ENTER** to store the modified value or press **ESC** to leave the **Parameter Edit** mode.	ENTER or ESC	*1601 START/STOP 1613 BP DISABLE
7	Press **ESC** to return to the **Main Menu**, and again to return to the. **Default Display**.	ESC	DRIVE SELECTED BYPASS IN OFF

Start-up by changing the parameters individually from the parameter list

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	The **Default Display** indicates the **Bypass Control** mode.		DRIVE SELECTED BYPASS IN OFF
2	Press **ENTER** to enter the **Main Menu.**	ENTER	*BYPASS STATUS STARTUP PARAMS
3	Select the **Parameter List** with the **Up/ Down** arrows and press **ENTER**.	▼ ▲ ENTER	STARTUP PARAMS *PARAMETER LIST
4	Select the appropriate **Parameter Group** with the **Up/Down** arrows and press **ENTER**.	▼ ▲ ENTER	14 RELAY OUT *16 SYSTEM CTRL
5	Select the appropriate **Parameter** in a group with the **Up/Down** arrows and press **ENTER**.	▼ ▲ ENTER	*1601 START/STOP 1602 RUN ENABLE
6	Press the **Up/Down** arrows to change the **Parameter Value**.	▼ ▲	1601 START/STOP [1:DI1]
7	Press **ENTER** to store the modified value or press **ESC** to leave the **Parameter Edit** mode.	ENTER or ESC	*1601 START/STOP 1602 RUN ENABLE
8	Press **ESC** to return to the listing of **Parameter Groups**, and again to return to the **Main Menu**.	ESC ESC	*16 SYSTEM CTRL 17 OVERRIDE
9	Press **ESC** to return to the **Default Display** from the **Main Menu.**	ESC	DRIVE SELECTED BYPASS IN OFF

Note: In the Parameter Edit mode the current parameter value appears below the parameter name.

Note: To view the default parameter value, press the **Up/Down** arrows simultaneously. Press **Enter** to restore the default parameter value or press **ESC** to leave the **Parameter Edit** mode.

Bypass functions overview

Operating modes

Note: For normal operation with the bypass, place the drive control panel in the Auto mode.

Drive Mode

Under normal conditions the system is in the *Drive* mode. The drive provides power to the motor and controls its speed. The source of the drive's start/stop and speed commands is determined by the *Auto* or *Hand* mode selection of the drive's control panel. Commands come from the bypass control terminals (or serial communication) when the *Auto* mode has been selected or directly from the drive control panel when the *Hand* mode has been selected. The user can normally switch to the *Drive* mode by pressing the *Drive* key on the bypass control panel.

Reverse Drive Mode

Reverse Drive mode is a subset of Drive mode; as such the drive provides power to the motor and controls its speed and direction. The source of the drive's start/stop, speed and direction commands is the Reverse Drive input (DI2 - if programmed).

In this mode the system acknowledges all of the same permissives (run and start enables) as Drive mode. When the Reverse Drive input contact is closed with the drive running, the drive reverses motor direction and continues running; with the drive stopped, the drive starts and runs in the reverse direction. In either case the motor operates at the constant speed programmed on the drive. No other start command is required. See Parameter 1630 on page 2-72 for a description of drive programming and wiring requirements.

Bypass Mode

In the Bypass mode, the motor is powered by AC line power through the bypass contactor. The source of the bypass start/stop commands is determined by the Auto or Hand mode selection of the bypass' control panel. Commands come from the bypass control terminals (or serial communication) when the Auto mode has been selected or directly from the bypass control panel when the Hand mode has been selected. The user can normally switch to the Bypass mode by pressing the Bypass key on the bypass control panel. Alternative methods of bypass control called Overrides are also available. Refer to the following descriptions of the Override modes.

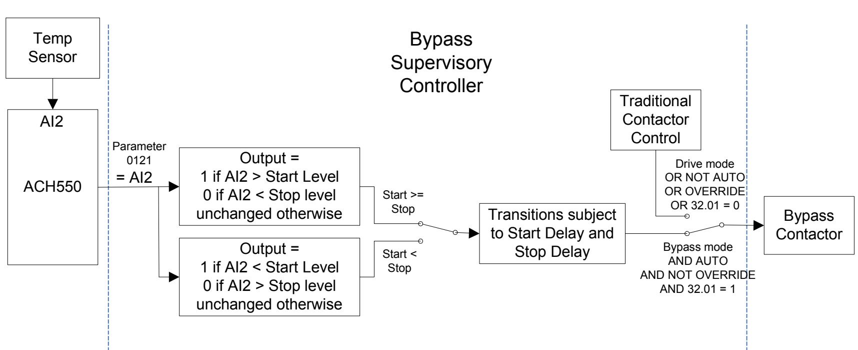
Smoke Control Mode (Override 1)

In the Smoke Control (Override 1) mode, the motor is powered by AC line power through the bypass contactor. The source of the start command is internal and unaffected by external stop commands. The system also ignores all commands from either the drive or bypass control panels when in this mode. The user can switch to the Smoke Control mode by closing the Smoke Control input contact (DI6). When the Smoke Control input contact is closed, the system is forced to bypass and runs the motor. The Motor Run LED flashes green when the system is in override. While in Smoke Control mode, the system does not respond to some inputs and does respond to other inputs. The system will ignore low priority safeties such as FreezeStats and return duct smoke detectors. While in Smoke Control mode, the system will respond to high priority safeties such as high static pressure and damper end-switch proofs. The system will always respond to the electronic motor overload protection included in the bypass controller. See the diagrams on page 2-58 for suggested wiring of typical customer inputs. One diagram is to be used for supply side fans and the other diagram is used for return / exhaust side fans.

Normally when the Smoke Control input contact is switched from closed to open, the system returns to the operating mode that existed prior to entering Override and can again be controlled using the Drive and Bypass keys. The exception to this is when the Advanced Override (Override 2) input contact is closed, in which case the system switches to Advanced Override mode.

Supervisory Mode

In the Bypass Supervisory mode, the bypass has the ability to control a process by cycling the bypass contactor on and off with a hysteresis control. In this mode the motor is powered by AC line power through the bypass contactor. The source of the bypass start/stop commands is determined by the Auto or Hand mode selection of the bypass' control panel. Commands come from the analog input level (AI2) on the ACH550 drive when the Auto mode has been selected or directly from the bypass control panel when the Hand mode has been selected (manual). Bypass supervisory control is enabled and configured in parameter Group 32. Once enabled, the user can normally switch to the Supervisory Bypass mode by pressing the Bypass key on the bypass control panel. Alternative methods of bypass control called Overrides are also available. Refer to the following descriptions of the Override modes. The Supervisory control only operates in Bypass / Auto mode. If the user presses the Hand or Off buttons, operation is the same as normal bypass operation. If the user selects Drive mode, the Supervisory operation is also stopped. Returning to Bypass / Auto mode will put the bypass back to Supervisory mode.



Advanced Override Mode (Override 2)

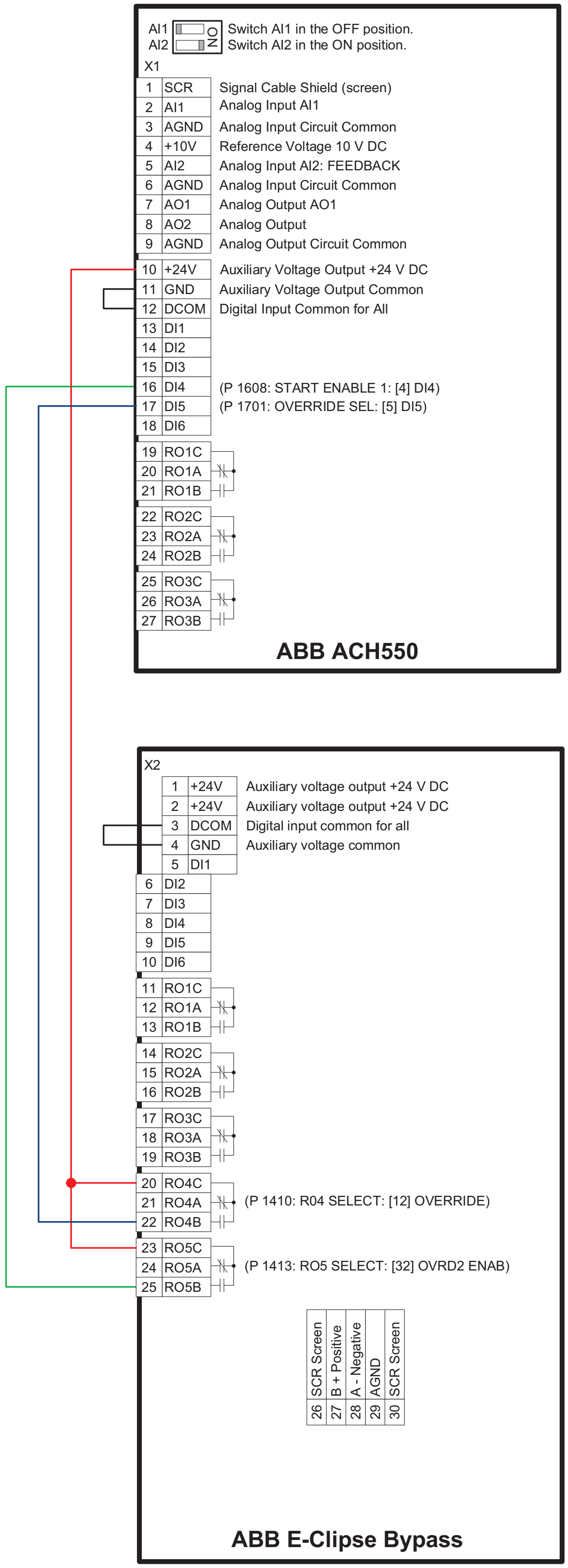
In the Advanced Override (Override 2) mode, the motor is powered either by the drive through the drive output contactor or by AC line power through the bypass contactor, depending upon the setting of parameter 1708. The user can switch to the Advanced Override mode by closing the Advanced Override input contact (DI5 - if programmed) or through serial comms. When Advanced Override is active, the system does not respond to the Drive and Bypass keys. The Motor Run LED flashes green when the system is in override. While in Advanced Override, the system responds to bypass overloads and programmed faults. To satisfy the local AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction), the system can be custom-programmed to acknowledge or disregard certain faults, safeties and enables. The unit is default-programmed to ignore all external safeties and run enables. See Group 17 for programmability of the digital input and fault functions. Normally when the Advanced Override is deactivated, the system returns to the previous operating mode and can be controlled using the Drive and Bypass keys. If the system was previously in Hand mode, the system reverts to Off mode. The exception to this is when the Smoke Control (Override 1) input contact is closed, in which case the system remains in Smoke Control mode.

Programming Advanced Override (Override 2)

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Parameter Number</th><th>Parameter Name</th><th>Parameter Value</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="4">Initial Programming</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3"></td><td>The drive should first be set up and operating correctly with the E-Clipse Bypass. This must be done before programming the VFD's Override function.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="4">Programming the ACH550 for Advanced Override Operation from the E-Clipse Bypass</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="11">Only required for E-Clipse parameter 1708 selections [2] VFD and [3] VFD/BYPASS
ACH550 Parameters</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>The parameters on this section program the ACH550 VFD's operation during Override Mode. They must be performed in the order listed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9902</td><td>APPLICATION MACRO</td><td>[15] E-CLIPSE</td><td>Access this parameter, do not change its value, but press the SAVE soft key. This returns the ACH550's parameters to their default values for normal operation with the E-Clipse Bypass.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1608</td><td>START ENABLE 1</td><td>[4] DI4</td><td>Digital Input 4 allows the E-Clipse to stop the VFD during Override operation. The VFD will indicate this by issuing Alarm 2021 START ENABLE 1 MISSING when this occurs.
This parameter change will cause the drive to display Alarm 2012 until the final step of this section of the instructions.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1701</td><td>OVERRIDE SEL</td><td>[5] DI5</td><td>Applying control voltage to Digital Input 5 will activate Override Mode in the ACH550 VFD.
Note: Parameter 1705 must be set to OFF to change this parameter.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1702</td><td>OVERRIDE FREQ</td><td>as required</td><td rowspan="4">Use these parameters to set up the Override function of the ACH550 as desired.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1703</td><td>OVERRIDE SPEED</td><td>as required</td></tr>
<tr><td>1706</td><td>OVERRIDE DIR</td><td>as required</td></tr>
<tr><td>1707</td><td>OVERRIDE REF</td><td>as required</td></tr>
<tr><td>1704</td><td>OVERR PASS CODE</td><td>358</td><td>Allows parameter 1705 to be changed <u>immediately after</u> entering this value. The displayed number will return to 0 after the SAVE key is pressed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1705</td><td>OVERRIDE</td><td>[1] ON</td><td>Enables Override operation for the VFD.
<u>This value can only be changed immediately after entering the Override Pass Code in Parameter 1704.</u></td></tr>
<tr><td>9902</td><td>APPLICATION MACRO</td><td>[15] E-CLIPSE</td><td>Access this parameter, do not change its value, but press the SAVE soft key to return the VFD to normal operation from the E-Clipse during normal operation.
After a short delay, ALARM 2012 should no longer be active.</td></tr>
</table>

E-Clipse Bypass Parameters

Parameter Number	Parameter Name	Parameter Value	Comments
Programming the E-Clipse Bypass for Advanced Override Operation			
1701	OVERRIDE 2	[1] DI5	Digital Input 2 of the E-Clipse Bypass is used to activate Override operation for both the VFD and the E-Clipse Bypass.
1702	RUN EN OVR	*as required*	Determines whether the E-Clipse's Run Enable input can interrupt Override operation. (The default value does not allow Run Enable to interrupt Override operation. If the damper control interlock function is desired during Override operation, this interlock must be ACKNOWLEDGED.)
1703	ST EN 1 OVR	*as required*	Determines whether the Eclipse's Start Enable 1 input can interrupt Override operation. (The default value does not allow Start Enable 1 to interrupt Override operation.)
1704	ST EN 2 OVR	*as required*	Determines whether the Eclipse's Start Enable 2 input can interrupt Override operation. (The default value does not allow Start Enable 2 to interrupt Override operation.)
1706	ST EN 4 OVR	*as required*	Determines whether the Eclipse's Start Enable 4 input can interrupt Override operation. (The default value does not allow Start Enable 4 to interrupt Override operation.)
1707	FAULTS OVR	*as required*	Determines whether certain Eclipse Faults can interrupt Override operation.
1708	OVR2 MODE	*as required*	
		[1] BYPASS	During Override 2 operation, the motor will only run at full speed in bypass mode.
		[2] VFD	During Override 2 operation, the motor will only run at a controlled speed from the ACH550 VFD. Parameter Group 17 in the ACH550 VFD is used to program its operation. If the VFD cannot run the motor, the motor will stop. Requires additional control wiring between E-Clipse and ACH550 VFD.
		[3] VFD/BYPASS	During Override 2 operation, the system will first attempt to run the motor from the ACH550 VFD, as programmed in Parameter Group 17 of the ACH550 VFD. If the VFD loses power or is in a fault condition, the system will use the E-Clipse Bypass to run the motor at full speed in bypass mode. Requires additional control wiring between E-Clipse and ACH550 VFD.
		[4] STOP	During Override 2 operation, the motor will stop.
1410	RO4 SELECT	[12] OVERRIDE	When the E-Clipse Bypass is in the Override 1 or Override 2 mode, this relay will activate. Its normally open contacts are wired to activate the Override function in the ACH550 VFD. This will cause the VFD to display ALARM 2020, Override. It will also lock out the ability to change the VFD's parameters or control it externally.
1411	R4 ON DLY	0.0 s	
1412	R4 OFF DLY	0.0 s	
1413	RO5 SELECT	[32] OVRD2 ENAB	Enables Override 2 operation for the VFD based on the programming of E-Clipse parameters 1702 through 1707. The normally open contact of this relay is wired to apply control voltage to Digital Input 4 of the ACH550 VFD. This enables the VFD to run in Override mode. The E-Clipse Bypass can stop the VFD during Override 2 operation by opening this contact.
1414	R5 ON DLY	0.0 s	
1415	R5 OFF DLY	0.0 s	
Notes			
	Indicates a parameter that is unchanged from its default value.		



Recommended control wiring between ACH550 and E-Clipse Bypass to enable Advanced Override 2.
Required for E-Clipse parameter 1708 selections [2] VFD and [3] VFD/BYPASS.

Hand Mode

When the system is in the Bypass mode, the operator can manually start the motor by pressing the Hand key on the bypass control panel. The motor will run and *Hand* is indicated on the bypass control display. In order to run the motor, the Safety Interlock(s) and Run Enable contacts must be closed (green Enabled LED) and any bypass fault must be reset.

Auto Mode

In the Auto mode the bypass start/stop command comes from the Start/Stop input terminal on the bypass control board (or serial communication). The Auto mode is selected by pressing the Auto key on the bypass control panel. *Auto* is indicated on the bypass control display when the bypass is in the Auto mode. If the system is in the Bypass mode, the motor will run across the line if the Auto mode is selected, the Start/Stop, Safety Interlock(s) and Run Enable contacts are closed and any bypass fault is reset.

Off Mode

If the motor is running in the Bypass mode, the operator can manually stop the motor by pressing the Off/Reset key on the bypass control panel. The Hand or Auto indication on the bypass control display will change to Off. The motor can be restarted by pressing the Hand key or the bypass can be returned to the Auto mode by pressing the Auto key. If the system is in the Drive mode, pressing the Off/Reset key will take the bypass out of the Auto mode, but will not affect motor operation from the drive. If the system is switched to the Bypass mode, a motor that is running will stop.

Bypass/Drive Mode transfers

If the drive is in the Auto mode and the motor is running in the Drive mode, the motor will transfer to bypass operation and continue running if the system is switched to the Bypass mode and the bypass is in the Auto mode with the Start/Stop Input contact closed. If the motor is running in the Bypass mode, the motor will transfer to drive operation and continue running if the system is switched to the Drive mode and the drive is in the Auto mode with the Start/Stop Input contact closed.

Starting the motor on application of power

If the Safety Interlock(s) and Run Enable Input contacts are closed (Start command must also be present in Auto) and the system is in the Bypass mode and in either the Hand or Auto mode, the motor will start across the line as soon as power is applied. If the system is in the Drive mode with the drive in the Auto mode, the motor will start on the drive as soon as power is applied.

Automatic transfer feature

When the Automatic Transfer feature is selected, the system switches to Bypass mode and the motor is automatically transferred to line power if the drive trips out on a protective trip. If automatic restart has been enabled in the drive, the drive will attempt to automatically restart before the motor is transferred to line power. The Automatic Transfer function can be enabled through the bypass control panel. The *Automatic Transfer* indication is provided on the bypass control panel. The control panel display will continuously flash an alarm to indicate the system has automatically transferred to Bypass. The bypass event log will also record this event.

Bypass control board inputs and outputs

The bypass control board has five programmable and one fixed relay contact (digital) inputs and five programmable relay outputs that are available for connection to external control circuits. The internal 24VDC supply is normally used in conjunction with the relay contact inputs. The input and output functions are described below. Refer to *Installation* for additional information and connection instructions.

Relay contact (digital) inputs

All Relay Contact (Digital) Inputs with the exception of the Override 1 “Smoke Control” and “Reverse Drive” Inputs can be configured to any one of three (3) conditions.

1. “Digital Input” (DI), in which case the bypass system will react to the defined input function during normal operation.
2. “Not Selected”, in which case the bypass system will ignore the defined input function as bypass control, but will continue to pass the operating state of the digital input through serial communications to the building automation system.
3. “Comms”, in which case the bypass system will react to the defined input function over serial communications during normal operation. The bypass system will ignore the digital input as a defined input function, but will continue to pass the operating state of the digital input over serial communications to the building automation system.

Start/Stop (DI1)

The Start/Stop input is connected to a normally open contact that starts and stops the system. When the bypass is in the Drive mode and the drive is in the Auto mode, the Start/Stop input contact controls the motor by starting and stopping the drive. When the bypass is in the Bypass mode and Auto is indicated on the bypass control display, the Start/Stop input contact controls the motor by controlling the bypass contactor.

Run Enable (DI2)

The Run Enable input is connected to the series combination of any external normally closed permissive contacts, such as damper end switches, that must be closed to allow the motor to run. If any of these external contacts are open while a Start command is present, the Enabled LED will flash green and the motor is prevented from running.

Reverse Drive (DI2)

The Reverse Drive input can be connected to an external contact that is closed to select the Reverse Drive mode. See *Reverse Drive Mode* on page *2-37* for a description of this mode.

Safety Interlock (DI2…DI5)

The Safety Interlock input(s) are connected to the series combination of any external normally closed interlock contacts, such as Firestat, Freezestat, and high static pressure switches – switches that must be closed to allow the motor to run. If any of these external contacts are open, the Enabled LED is illuminated red, the drive output contactor, bypass contactor, and System Started relay are de-energized preventing the motor from running.

Bypass Fault Reset (DI4)

The Bypass Fault Reset input can be connected to an external contact that is closed to reset a bypass fault. It may take several minutes before the bypass can be reset after an overload trip.

Advanced Override (DI5) (Override 2)

The Advanced Override (Override 2) input can be connected to an external contact that is closed to select the Advanced Override mode. See *Advanced Override Mode (Override 2)* on page *2-39* for a description of this mode.

Smoke Control (DI6) (Override 1)

The Smoke Control (Override 1) input can be connected to an external contact that is closed to select the Fireman's Override mode. See *Smoke Control Mode (Override 1)* on page *2-38* for a description of this mode.

Relay contact outputs

System Ready (1) [SYS READY]

If configured for *System Ready,* the relay is energized when the Drive/Bypass System is ready to be started. Two conditions must be met in order for the *System Ready* relay to energize.

- The *Safety Interlock* input contact(s) must be closed and
- There can be no fault present in the selected mode (Drive or Bypass) of the system.

System Running (2) [SYS RUNNING]

If configured for *System Running,* the relay is energized when the Drive/Bypass system is running. The *System Running* relay provides an output when the motor is running whether powered by the drive or the bypass.

System Started (3) [SYS STARTED]

If configured for *System Started*, the relay is energized when the Drive/Bypass system is started. Three conditions must be met in order for the relay to energize.

- A *Start* command must be present,
- The *Safety Interlock* input contact(s) must be closed and
- There can be no fault present in the system. The Start command can come from the bypass control board terminal block, the drive control panel, the bypass control panel, or serial communications, depending on the operational mode selected.

The System Started relay is ideal for use in damper actuator circuits, opening the dampers only under those conditions where the system is preparing to run the motor. Closing the dampers if the safeties open, the system faults, or when a Stop command is issued.

Bypass Selected (4) [BYPASS MODE]

If configured for *Bypass Selected,* the relay is energized when Bypass Mode has been selected as the method of motor control. The *Bypass Selected* relay is de-energized when Drive Mode has been selected as the method of motor control.

Bypass Run (5) [BYPASS RUN]

If configured for *Bypass Run,* the relay is energized when the bypass is running. The *Bypass Run* relay provides an output only when the motor is running and powered by the bypass. The *Bypass Run* relay is de-energized when the motor is not being run in bypass.

Bypass Fault (6) [BYPASS FLT]

If configured for *Bypass Fault,* the relay is energized when a bypass fault has occurred or when the bypass motor overload/underload protection has tripped. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the bypass control panel display. The *Bypass Fault* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Bypass No Fault (7) [BYP NOT FLT]

If configured for *Bypass No Fault,* the relay is energized during normal operation. The *Bypass No Fault* relay is de-energized when power is removed from the system, a bypass fault has occurred or when the bypass motor overload/underload protection has tripped. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the bypass control panel display.

Bypass Alarm (8) [BYPASS ALRM]

If configured for *Bypass Alarm,* the relay is energized when a bypass alarm is present. The specific nature of the alarm is indicated on the bypass control panel display. The *Bypass Alarm* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Drive Fault (9) [DRIVE FAULT]

If configured for *Drive Fault,* the relay is energized when a drive fault has occurred. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the drive control panel display. The *Drive Fault* relay is de-energized during normal control panel.

Drive No Fault (10) [DRV NOT FLT]

If configured for *Drive No Fault*, the relay is energized during normal operation. The *Drive No Fault* relay is de-energized when power is removed from the system, or when a drive fault has occurred. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the drive control panel display.

Drive Alarm (11) [DRIVE ALARM]

If configured for *Drive Alarm,* the relay is energized when a drive alarm is present. The specific nature of the alarm is indicated on the drive control panel display. The *Drive Alarm* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Override (12) [OVERRIDE]

If configured for *Override*, the relay is energized when Smoke Control Override or Advanced Override mode is selected and de-energized in all other modes. The *Override* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Bypass Hand (13) [BYPASS HAND]

If configured for *Bypass Hand*, the relay is energized when the motor is running in Bypass Mode and Hand (manual operation) is selected. The *Bypass Hand* relay is de-energized when Bypass Auto or Bypass Off are selected.

Bypass Off (14) [BYPASS OFF]

If configured for *Bypass Off*, the relay is energized when the bypass control mode *Off* is selected. The *Bypass Off* relay is de-energized when either Bypass Auto or Bypass Hand are selected.

Bypass Auto (15) [BYPASS AUTO]

If configured for *Bypass Auto,* the relay is energized when the bypass control mode *Auto* is selected. The *Bypass Auto* relay is de-energized when either Bypass Off or Bypass Hand are selected.

Communications Control (16) [COMM CTRL]

If configured for *Communications Control*, the relay is energized when the appropriate ON command is provided over the serial communications connection. The relay is de-energized when the appropriate OFF command is provided over the serial communications connection.

System Alarm (17) [SYS ALARM]

If configured for *System Alarm*, the relay is energized when a drive/bypass alarm is present. The specific nature of the alarm is indicated on either the drive control panel display or the bypass control panel display, depending upon the origination of the alarm. The *System Alarm* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Bypass Fault/Alarm (18) [BYP FLT/ALM]

If configured for *Bypass Fault/Alarm*, the relay is energized when either a bypass fault has occurred, the bypass motor overload/underload protection has tripped or when a bypass alarm condition is present. The *Bypass Fault/Alarm* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Bypass Overload (19) [BYP OVERLD]

If configured for *Bypass Overload*, the relay is energized when the bypass motor overload level has exceeded the programmed protection setting. The *Bypass Overload* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Bypass Underload (20) [BYP UNDERLD]

If configured for *Bypass Underload*, the relay is energized when the bypass motor underload level has fallen below the programmed protection setting. This output is often used for broken belt indication. The *Bypass Underload* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

PCB Overtemperature (21) [PCB OVERTMP]

If configured for *PCB Overtemperature*, the relay is energized when the temperature of the bypass control, printed circuit board has exceeded the fixed protection setting. The *PCB Overtemperature* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

System Underload (22) [SYS UNDERLD]

If configured for *System Underload*, the relay is energized when either the drive or bypass motor underload level has fallen below the programmed protection setting. This output is often used for broken belt indication. The *System Underload* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

System Fault (23) [SYSTEM FLT]

If configured for *System Fault*, the relay is energized when either a drive/bypass fault has occurred or the bypass motor overload/underload protection has tripped. The *System Fault* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

System Fault/Alarm (24) [SYS FLT/ALM]

If configured for *System Fault/Alarm,* the relay is energized when either a drive/bypass fault has occurred, the bypass motor overload/underload protection has tripped or when a drive/bypass alarm condition is present. The *System Fault/Alarm* relay is de-energized during normal operation.

System External Control (25) [SYS EXT CTL]

If configured for System External Control, the relay is energized when Auto is selected as the control mode for the selected power source (Drive or Bypass). The System External Control relay is de-energized when either Hand or Off is selected as the control mode for the selected power source.

Systen Overload (26) [SYS OVERLD]

If configured for System Overload, the relay is energized when either the drive or bypass motor overload level has risen above the programmed protection setting. This output is often used for motor overload indication. The System Overload relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Contactor Fault (27) [CONTACT FLT]

If configured for Contactor Fault, the relay is energized when either a drive contactor/ bypass contactor fault has occurred. The Contactor Fault relay is de-energized during normal operation.

System No Fault (28) [SYS NOT FLT]

If configured for System No Fault, the relay is energized during normal operation. The System No Fault relay is de-energized when power is removed from the system, a system fault has occurred or when the active motor overload/underload protection has tripped. The specific nature of the fault is indicated on the control panel display (Drive or Bypass).

Drive Link Error (29) [DRV LNK ERR]

If configured for Drive Link Error, the relay is energized when the communications link between the drive and bypass has been interrupted. The Drive Link Error relay is de-energized during normal operation.

External Comm Loss (30) [EXT COMM LS]

If configured for External Comm Loss, the relay is energized when the communications link between the system (Drive/Bypass) and the external communications network (building automation system) has been interrupted. The External Comm Loss relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Override 2 Stop (31) [OVRD2 STOP]

If configured for Override 2 Stop, the relay is energized when the motor is expected to stop during Override 2. For this relay to energize, Override 2 must be active and parameter 1708 programmed for STOP. The Override 2 Stop relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Override 2 Enable (32) [OVRD2 ENAB]

If configured for Override 2 Enable, the relay is energized when the drive is expected to control the motor during Override 2. For this relay to energize, the drive output contactor must be closed and any interlocks programmed as acknowledge in parameters 1702…1707 must be present. The Override 2 Enable relay is de-energized during normal operation.

Energy Savings Estimator

The ABB E-Clipse Bypass is capable of displaying the estimated energy savings provided by variable frequency drive operation. Additional displays provide estimated dollar savings based upon a user provided cost per kilowatt hour and estimated CO_2 avoidance in tons.

The Energy Savings Estimator feature is activated by enabling the Learn Mode in Parameter 1628 (LEARN MODE). Learn Mode should be activated on a day with typical ambient conditions for best accuracy. For an air conditioning application, if ambient conditions are hotter than normal when Learn Mode is activated; the calculations may estimate more energy savings than actual. Conversely, if Learn Mode is activated when ambient conditions are colder than normal; the calculations may estimate less energy savings than actual. Once the Learn Mode is enabled, the E-Clipse Bypass will keep a running tally of the energy used to run the application for the length of time defined in Parameter 1629. This energy usage becomes the base line for energy savings calculations on this application.

The user can adjust the default Learn Time (48 hours) by adjusting Parameter 1629 (LEARN TIME). The minimum Learn Time setting is 6 minutes (0.1 hour) and the maximum Learn Time setting is 200 hours. It is recommended that the E-Clipse Bypass run in Learn Mode for at least 24 hours for increased accuracy.

The MWh Saved estimation is displayed in megawatt hours in Parameter 0114 (MWH).

The Cost Saved calculation is simply the user provided cost per kilowatt hour in cents per kilowatt hour from Parameter 1627 (COST/KWH), times the energy saved. The Cost Saved estimate is displayed in thousands of dollars (K$) in Parameter 0115 (COST SAVED).

The CO_2 Saved calculation is a constant (0.5 tons per megawatt-hour) times the energy saved. The CO_2 Saved estimate is displayed in tons of CO_2 (tn) in Parameter 0116 (CO_2 SAVED). Since the application uses less energy in drive mode, less CO_2 is generated by the power plant supplying power to the site.

Energy Saving Estimator setup

Verify the connected equipment is ready for operation. Set the following Parameters:

- Parameter 1627 – set to local cost of energy in cents per kilowatt hours
- Parameter 1629 – set to desired hours of initial bypass operation to establish energy usage baseline
- Select Bypass Mode on E-Clipse Keypad
- Parameter 1628 – set to ENABLED
- Start Bypass
- Run Bypass for at least the LEARN TIME set in Parameter 1629
- Select Drive Mode on E-Clipse Keypad
- Operate System normally

Note: The learn mode is terminated by any of the following conditions:

- User clears the learn mode request (Parameter 1628 = NOT SEL)
- The running time in learn mode equals the time set by Parameter 1629
- The user enters drive mode.

At the end of learn mode, the average bypass power is calculated.

From that point on, whenever the system is operated in drive mode, it keeps a running total of the energy savings.

The energy savings is measured from a certain point in time. This starting point is triggered by any of the following events:

- Learn mode is terminated
- **Drive** parameter 0115 (KWH COUNTER) is reset
- **Bypass** parameter 0114 (KWH SAVED) is reset

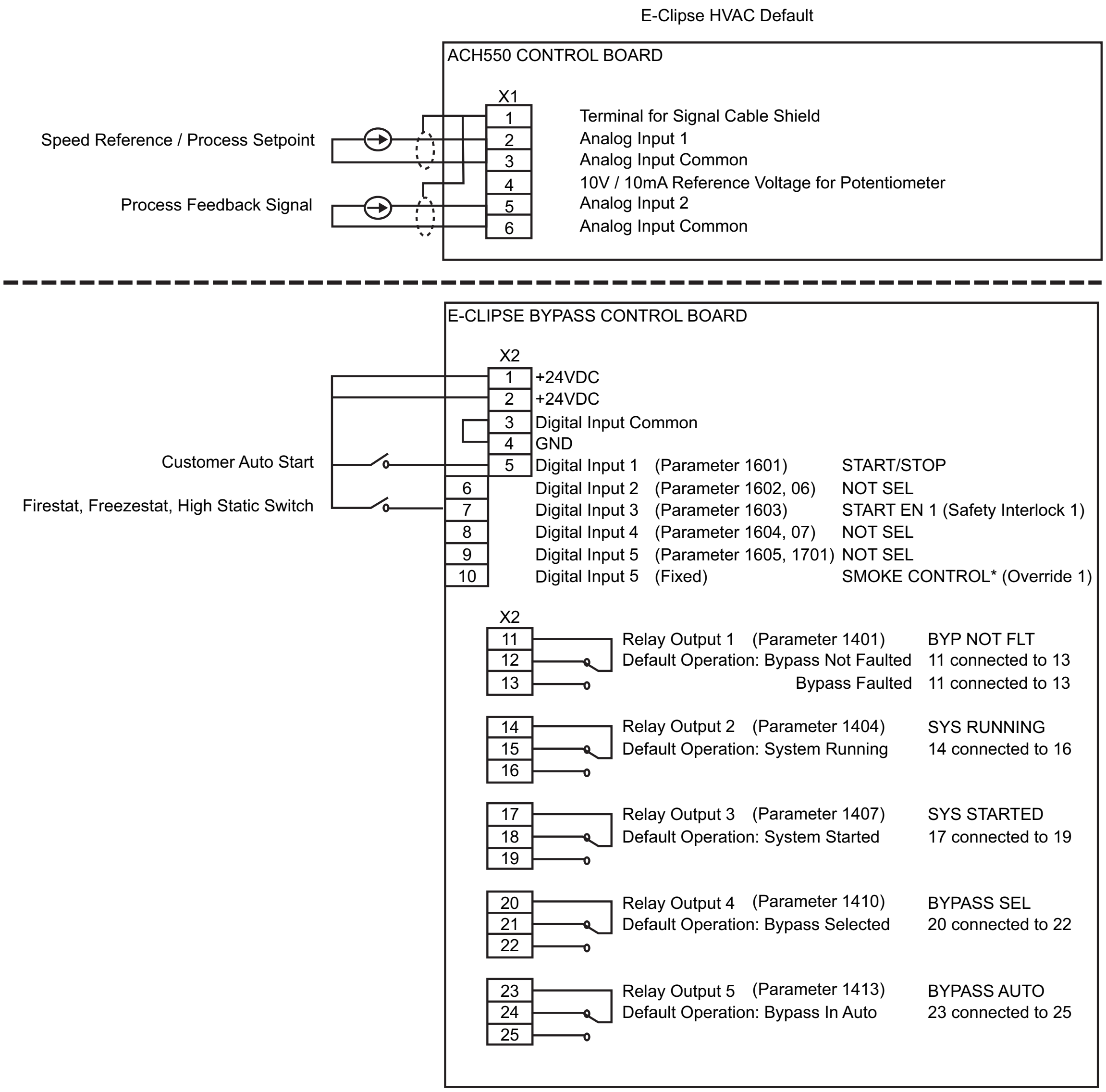
Application macros

The following figures show a variety of configurations and connections using the available E-Clipse Bypass Macros. E-Clipse Bypass macros are selected and configured using the E-Clipse Bypass Control Panel.

E-Clipse Bypass macros provide a simple, easy method of configuring the E-Clipse Bypass unit to the most commonly used HVAC applications.

The availability of up to four separate safety inputs (START ENABLES) and a run permissive (RUN ENABLE) along with override and automatic transfer capabilities provide unparalleled integration into real world HVAC applications and building automation systems.

E-Clipse HVAC Default macro

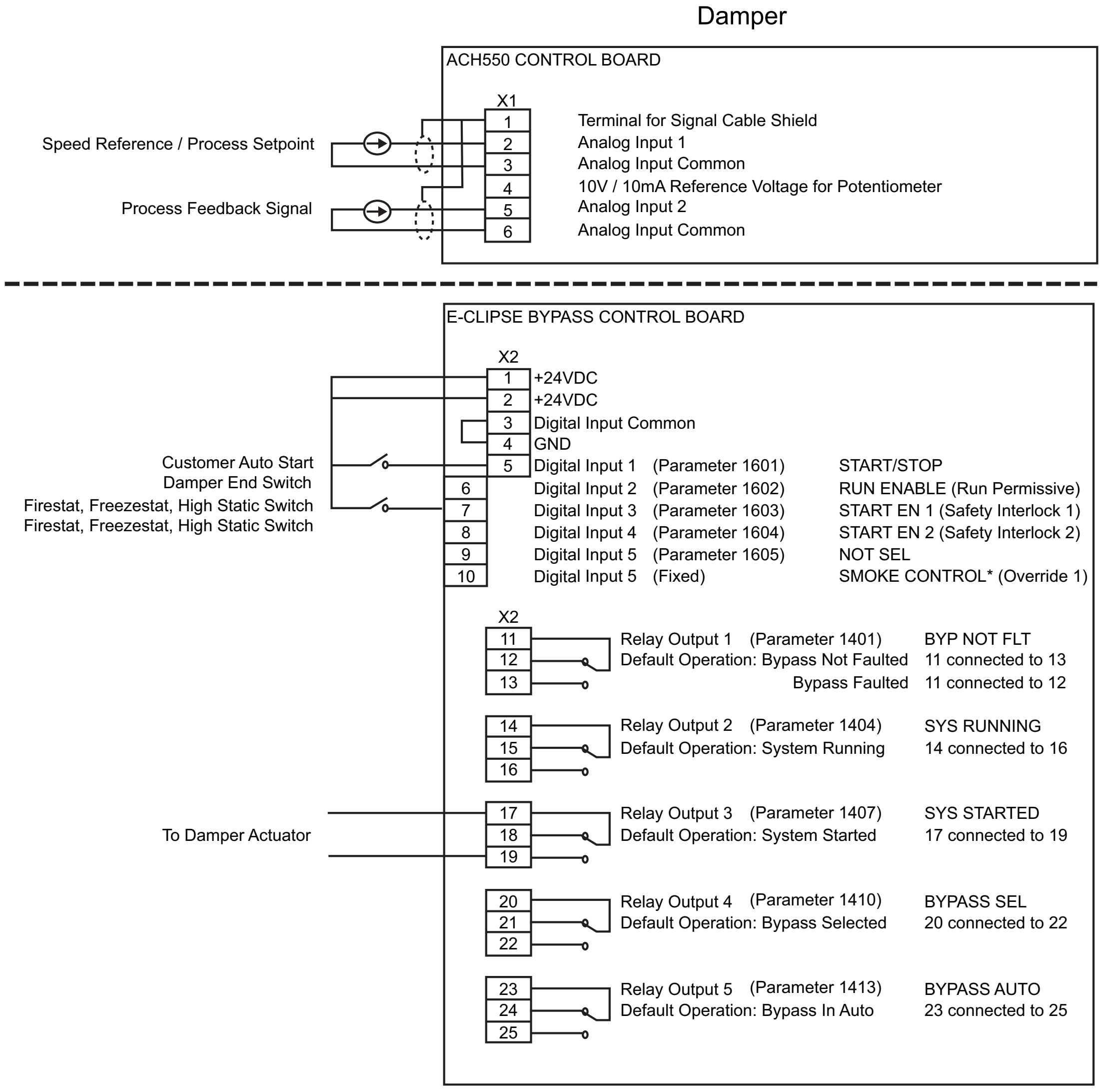


Parameters Changed Relative to E-Clipse HVAC Default

Parameter Number	Description	Setting

* Smoke Control (Override1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 **will** place the E-Clipse Bypass in Smoke Control mode which may reassign the function of the other Digital Inputs. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override1) documentation.

Damper macro

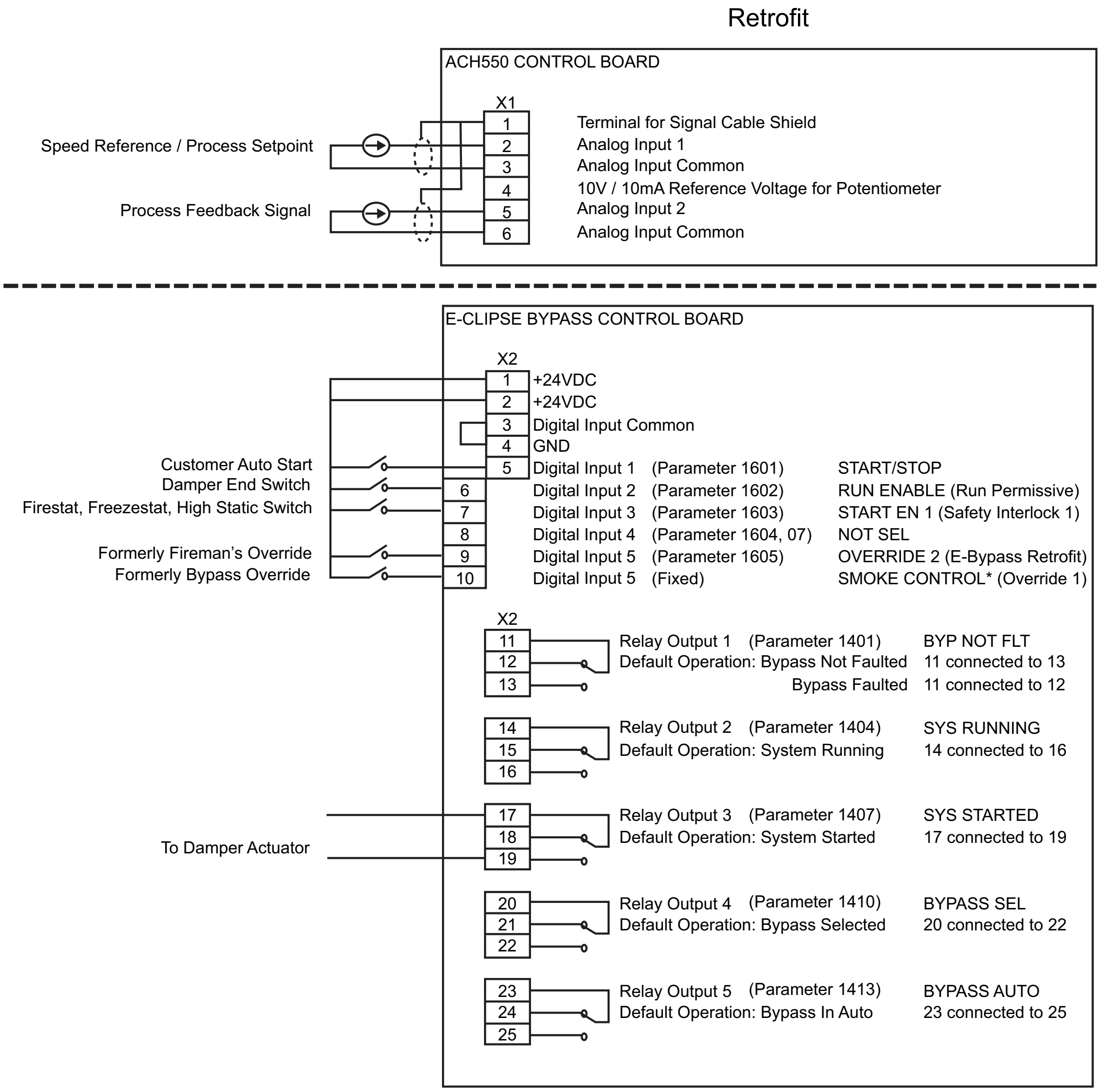


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default

Parameter Number	Description	Setting
1602	Damper End Switch **RUN ENABLE** (Run Permissive)	DI2
1604	Firestat, Freezestat, High Static Switch **START EN 2** (Safety Interlock 2)	DI4

* Smoke Control (Override1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 **will** place the E-Clipse Bypass in Smoke Control mode which may reassign the function of the other Digital Inputs. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override1) documentation.

Retrofit macro

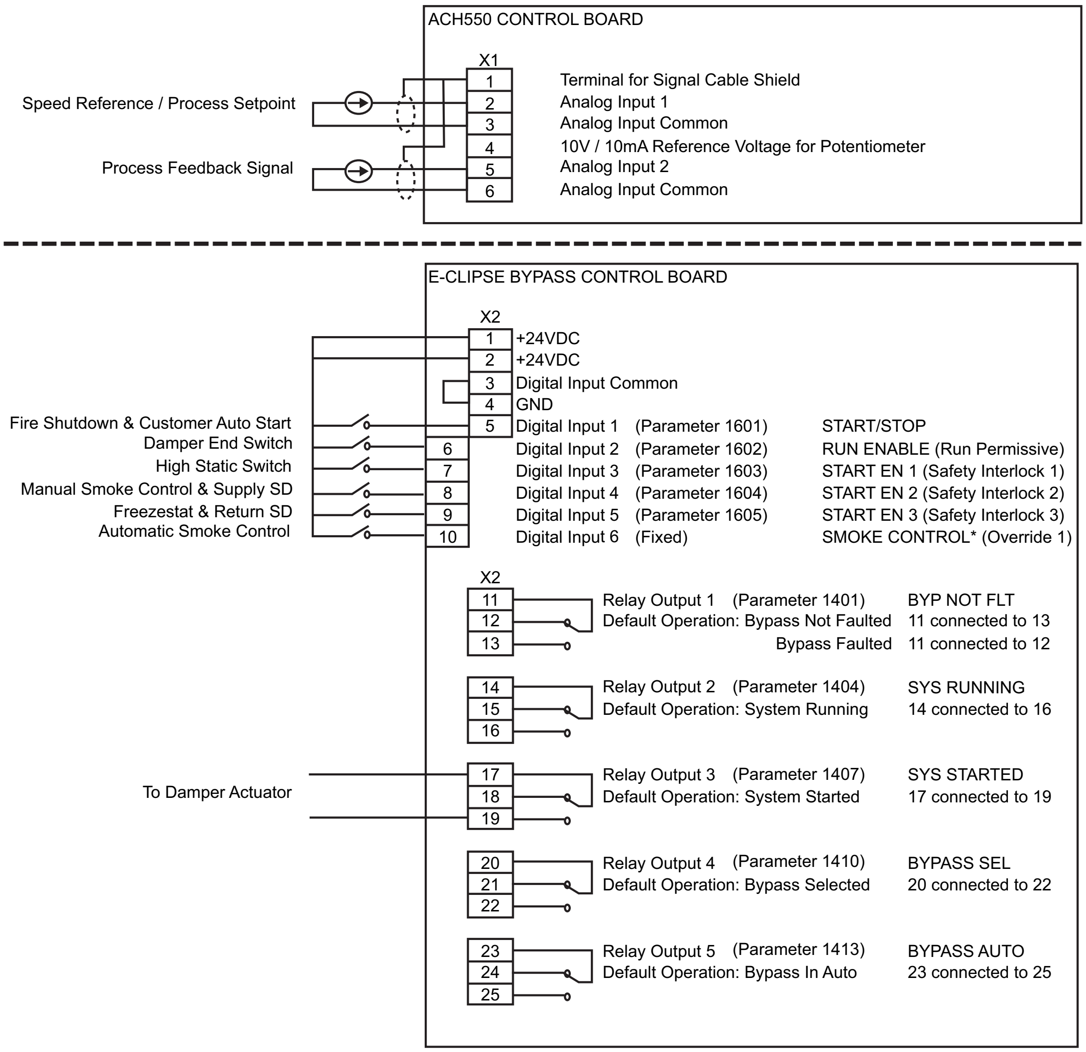


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default

Parameter Number	Description	Setting
1602	Damper End Switch **RUN ENABLE** (Run Permissive)	DI2
1701	Refer to page 2-39 **OVERRIDE 2** (Advanced Override)	DI5

* Smoke Control (Override1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 **will** place the E-Clipse Bypass in Smoke Control mode which may reassign the function of the other Digital Inputs. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override1) documentation.

Smoke Control (Override1) macro

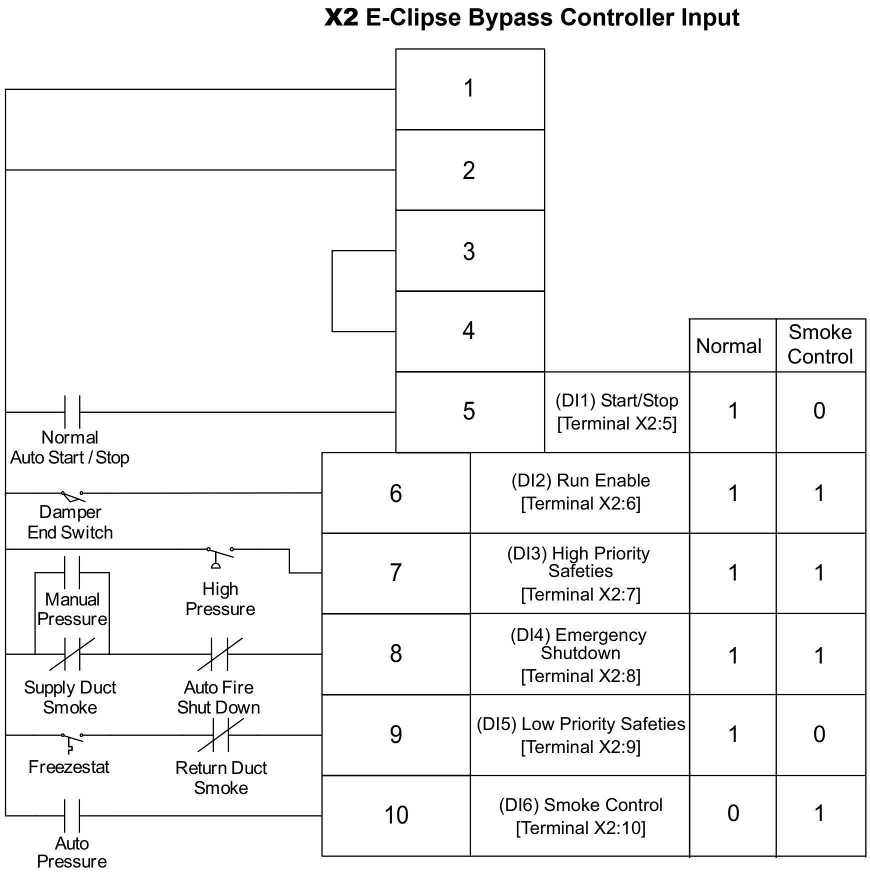


Parameter Number	Description	Setting
1602	Damper End Switch **RUN ENABLE** (Run Permissive)	DI2
1603	High Pressure Switch, High Priority Safeties **START EN 1** (Safety Interlock 1)	DI3
1604	Supply Smoke Detector, Emergency Shutdown **START EN 2** (Safety Interlock 2)	DI4
1605	Freezestat, Low Priority Safeties **START EN 3** (Safety Interlock 2)	DI5

* Smoke Control (Override1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 **will** place the E-Clipse Bypass in Automatic Smoke Control mode. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override1) documentation.

Typical wiring diagrams showing a conventional starter wiring and use of the E-Clipse Bypass

Typical system wiring with use of E-Clipse Bypass:



Normal Operation:

- Close Start/Stop (X2:5)
- Fan starts, assuming that X2: 6, 7, 8, and 9 are all closed

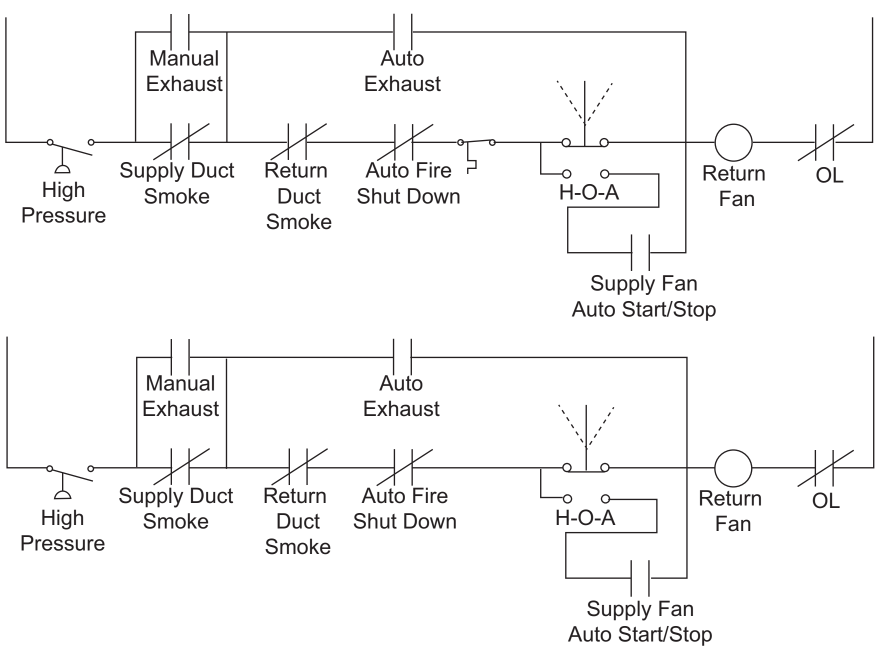
Emergency Shutdown:

- Open auto fire shutdown, unit stops

Smoke Control Mode:

- Close contact on X2:10
- Fan starts regardless of position of internal HOA switch and inputs X2:5 and X2:9
- Inputs X2:6, 7 and 8 followed
- Internal overloads followed

Typical starter wiring for a smoke control listed system today:

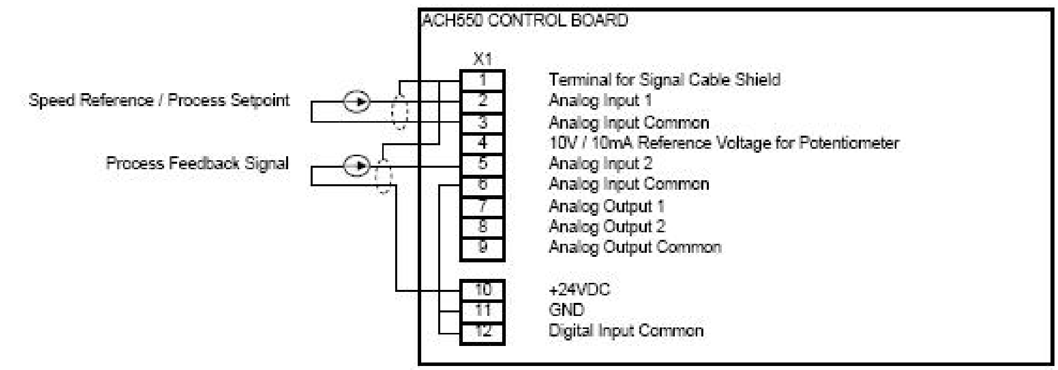


Notes:

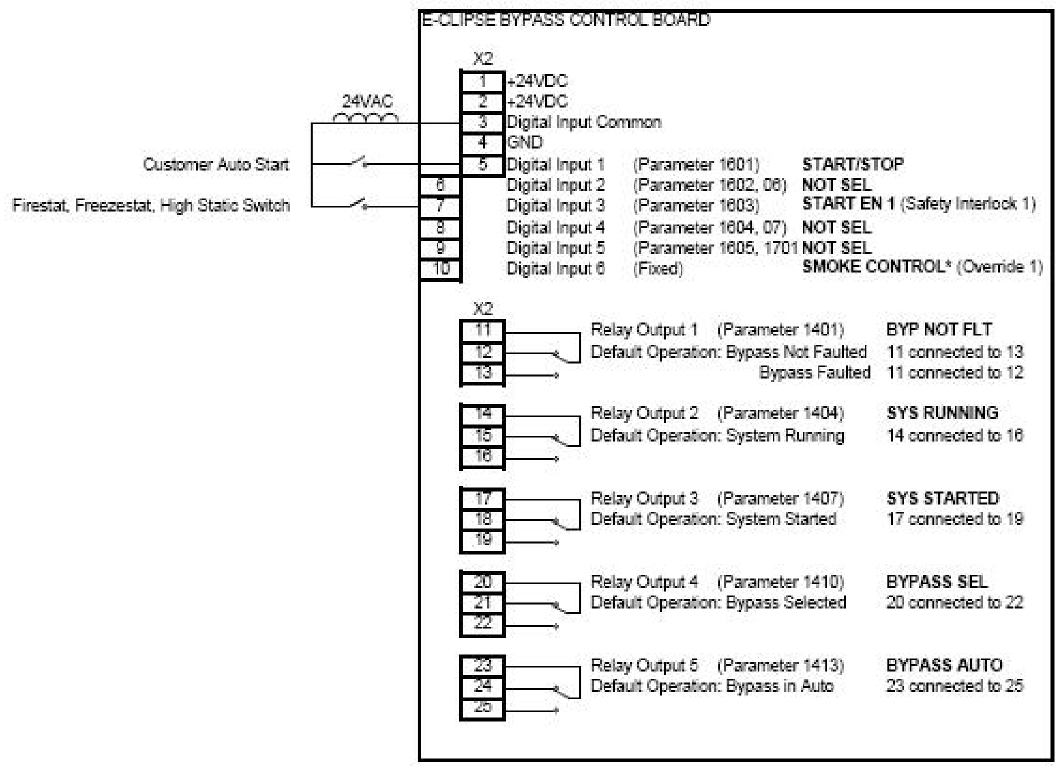
1. Pressure cutouts, duct smoke detectors and auto shutdown are 2-pole.
2. Manual control also activates "auto control"

Alternate wiring options

"Loop Powered Transmitter" Wiring



Customer Supplied "24VAC" Wiring



Parameters Changed Relative to E-Clipse HVAC Default

Parameter Number	Description	Setting

* Smoke Control (Override 1) is a fixed input. Closing Digital Input 6 will place the E-Clipse Bypass in Smoke Control mode which may reassign the function of the other Digital Inputs. Refer to the Smoke Control (Override 1) documentation.

Parameters

Parameter list and descriptions

Parameter data is specific to bypass firmware version.

Group 01: Actual Data

Group 01: Actual Data					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0101	MOTOR CURR	0.1 A		—	Display motor current in any mode.
0102	INPUT VOLT	1 V		—	Average of line-line input voltages
0103	DI STATUS	1	000000 - 111111	—	DI1-> 110010 <- DI6
0104	RO STATUS	1	00000 - 11111	—	RO1-> 11001 <- RO5
0105	PCB TEMP	0.1 ºC		—	Temperature of bypass board
0106	KW HOURS (R)	1 kWh	0 - 65535	0	Bypass-mode kilowatt hours (resettable).
0107	COMM RO	1	0-FFFFh	—	Serial link control word that can be linked to relay output control (see group 14)
0108	RUN TIME(R)	1 hr	0 - 65535 hr	0	Bypass-mode run time (resettable).
0109	ON TIME 1(R)	1 day	0 - 65535 days	0	Total power on time of bypass, days (resettable)
0110	ON TIME 2(R)	2sec	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Total power on time of bypass, hr:min:sec (resettable)
0111	A-B VOLT	1 V		—	Phase A - Phase B voltage
0112	B-C VOLT	1 V		—	Phase B - Phase C voltage
0113	C-A VOLT	1 V		—	Phase C - Phase A voltage
0114	MWH(R) SAVED	0.001 MWH - 1 MWH	0.001 MWH - 65535 MWH	0	Drive kWh savings over bypass operation (resettable)
0115	COST SAVED(R)	0.001 K$ - 1 K$	0.001 K$ - 65535 K$	0	Drive cost savings over bypass operation (reset by parameter 0114)
0116	CO2 SAVED(R)	0.1 tn	0.1 - 6553.5 tn	0	Drive CO2 savings over bypass operation (reset by parameter 0114)
0117	KWH SAVE L	1	0 - 65535	0	Calculated drive savings (kWh) = (65536 x [parameter 0017 + parameter 0018])/256
0118	KWH SAVE H	1	0 - 65535	0	Calculated drive savings (kWh) = (65536 x [parameter 0017 + parameter 0018])/256

(R) Can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN buttons simultaneously when in parameter set mode.

Group 03: Status

Group 03: Status					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0301	FBUS CW 1	—	b0: 1 = Start b1: 1 = Fault reset b2: 1 = Run disable b3: 1 = Field bus local b4: 1 = Start disable 1 b5: 1 = Start disable 2 b6: 1 = Start disable 3 b7: 1 = Start disable 4 b8: 1 = Override 2 b9: 1 = Link On b10 - b15: not used	0	Control word 1 from field bus
0303	FBUS SW 1	—	b0: 1 = Ready b1: 1 = Enabled b2: 1 = Started b3: 1 = Running b4: 1 = Field bus local b5: 1 = Fault b6: 1 = Alarm b7: 1 = Notice b8: 1 = Request control b9: 1 = Override b10: 1 = Powered up b11: 1 = Bypass mode b12: 1 = Panel local mode b13 - 15: not used	0	Status word 1 to field bus
0305	FLT WORD 1	—	b0: 1 = Coil current measurement b1: 1 = Bypass contact stuck b2: 1 = Drive contact stuck b3: 1 = Bypass coil open b4: 1 = Drive coil open b5: 1 = Undervoltage b6: not used b7: 1 = Drive AI2 fault b8: 1 = Motor overload b9: 1 = Input phase A loss b10: 1 = Input phase B loss b11:1 = Input phase C loss 12: 1 = Drive 1st start fault b13: 1 = coil power supply fault b14: not used b15: 1 = Earth fault	0	Bypass fault status, word 1

Group 03: Status					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0306	FLT WORD 2	—	b0: 1 = Motor Underload b1: 1 = Max cycling fault b2: 1 = Drive link fault b3: 1 = Reverse rotation b4: 1 = Phase A current measurement b5: 1 = Phase C current measurement b6: 1 = Bypass coil shorted b7: 1 = Drive coil shorted b8: not used b9: not used b10: 1 = Invalid sub-assembly b11: 1 = Serial 1 Err b12: 1 = EFB Config File b13: 1 = Force Trip b14: 1 = EFB 1 b15: 1 = EFB 2	0	Bypass fault status, word 2
0307	FLT WORD 3	—	b0: 1 = EFB 3 b1: 1 = Open motor phase b2: not used b3: not used b4: 1 = Control board temperature b5: not used b6: not used b7: not used b8: 1 = RBIO ID error b9: 1 = Stack overflow b10: 1 = Timed scan overflow b11: 1 = Serial flash corrupt b12: 1 = Unknown drive b13: 1 = Unknown bypass b14 - b15: not used	0	Bypass fault status, word 3
0308	ALR WORD 1	—	b0: 1 = Input phase A loss b1: 1 = Input phase B loss b2: 1 = Input phase C loss b3: 1 = Auto transfer active b4: 1 = External Comm Error b5: 1 = Run Enable b6: 1 = PCB Temp b7: 1 = Drive Setup b8: 1 = Bypass run delay b9: 1 = Motor Temp b10: 1 = Underload b11: 1 = Bypass disabled b12: 1 = Drive link error b13: 1 = Drive test b14: 1 = Drive 1st start needed b15: 1 = Low input voltage	0	Bypass alarm status, word 1

Group 03: Status					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0309	ALR WORD 2	—	b0: not used b1: not used b2: Override 1 b3: Override 2 b4: 1 = Start Enable 1 b5: 1 = Start Enable 2 b6: 1 = Start Enable 3 b7: 1 = Start Enable 4 b8: 1 = Mode auto lock b9: 1 = Mode local lock b10: 1 = Comm config error b11: 1 = FIG parameter configuration b12: 1 = Drive faulted b13 - b15: not used	0	Bypass alarm status, word 2

Group 04: Fault Log

Group 04: Fault Log					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0401	LAST FAULT	1	3001 - 3999 See 'Faults' page	0	Last fault declared
0402	F1 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since last fault, days
0403	F1 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since last fault, hr:min:sec
0404	F1 VOLTAGE	1V	0 - 1200V	0	Input voltage at last fault
0405	F1 CURRENT	0.1A	0.0 - 6553.5A	0	Motor current at last fault
0406	F1 EVENT 1	—	See parameter 501	0	Last event status before last fault
0407	F1 E1 TIME	2, before	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time before last fault of last event: hr:min:sec if time < 1 day
		1, days before	0 - 9999		days if time >= 1 day
0408	F1 EVENT 2	—	See parameter 501	0	2nd to last event status before last fault
0409	F1 E2 TIME	2, before	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time before last fault of 2nd last event: hr:min:sec if time < 1 day
		1, days before	0 - 9999		days if time >= 1 day
0410	FAULT 2	1	3001 - 3999 See 'Faults' page	0	2nd to last fault
0411	F2 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since 2nd to last fault, days
0412	F2 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since 2nd to last fault, hr:min:sec

Group 04: Fault Log					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0413	F2 VOLTAGE	1V	0 - 1200V	0	Input voltage at 2nd to last fault
0414	F2 CURRENT	0.1A	0.0 - 6553.5A	0	Motor current at 2nd to last fault
0415	F2 EVENT 1	—	See parameter 501	0	Last event status before 2nd to last fault
0416	F2 E1 TIME	2, before	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time before 2nd last fault of last event: hr:min:sec if time < 1 day
		1, days before	0 - 9999		days if time >= 1 day
0417	F2 EVENT 2	—	See parameter 501	0	2nd to last event before 2nd to last fault
0418	F2 E2 TIME	2, before	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time before 2nd last fault of 2nd last event: hr:min:sec if time < 1 day
		1, days before	0 - 9999		days if time >= 1 day
0419	FAULT 3	1	3001 - 3999 See 'Faults' page	0	3rd to last fault
0420	FAULT 4	1	3001 - 3999 See 'Faults' page	0	4th to last fault
0421	FAULT 5	1	3001 - 3999 See 'Faults' page	0	5th to last fault

Group 05: Event Log

Group 05: Event Log					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0501	LAST EVENT	—	b0: 1 = Bypass mode b1: 1 = Safeties In b2: 1 = Run Enable b3: 1 = Start b4: 1 = In Auto Transfer b5: 1 = Override 2 b6: 1 = Override 1 b7: 1 = Drive Fault b8: 1 = Bypass Fault b9: 1 = System Started b10: 1 = System Running b11:1 = Drive First Start Completed b12: not used b13: not used b15,b14: 0,0 = Off; 0,1 = Hand, 1,0 = Auto; 1,1 = not valid	0	Status at last event
0502	E1 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since last event, days

Group 05: Event Log					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
0503	E1 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since last event, hr:min:sec
0504	EVENT 2	—	See parameter 501	0	Status of 2nd to last event
0505	E2 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since 2nd last event, days
0506	E2 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since 2nd last event, hr:min:sec
0507	EVENT 3	—	See parameter 501	0	Status of 3rd to last event
0508	E3 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since 3rd last event, days
0509	E3 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since 3rd last event, hr:min:sec
0510	EVENT 4	—	See parameter 501	0	Status of 4th to last event
0511	E4 TIME 1	1, days ago	0 - 65535	0	Time since 4th last event, days
0512	E4 TIME 2	2, ago	00:00:00 - 23:59:58	0	Time since 4th last event, hr:min:sec

Group 14: Relay Outputs

Group 14: Relay Outputs					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1401	RO1 SELECT	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = SYS READY 2 = SYS RUNNING 3 = SYS STARTED 4 = BYPASS SEL 5 = BYPASS RUN 6 = BYPASS FLT 7 = BYP NOT FLT 8 = BYPASS ALRM 9 = DRIVE FAULT 10 = DRV NOT FLT 11 = DRIVE ALARM 12 = OVERRIDE 13 = BYPASS HAND 14 = BYPASS OFF 15 = BYPASS AUTO 16 = COMM CTRL 17 = SYS ALARM 18 = BYP FLT/ALM 19 = BYP OVERLD 20 = BYP UNDERLD 21 = PCB OVERTMP 22 = SYS UNDERLD 23 = SYSTEM FLT 24 = SYS FLT/ALM 25 = SYS EXT CTL 26 = SYS OVERLD 27 = CONTACT FLT 28 = SYS NOT FLT 29 = DRV LNK ERR 30 = EXT COMM LS 31 = OVRD2 STOP 32 = OVRD2 ENAB	BYP NOT FLT (7)	Selects function for digital output. Define the event or condition that activates relay 1.
1402	R1 ON DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from active state to active output.
1403	R1 OFF DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from inactive state to inactive output.
1404	RO2 SELECT	1	See RO 1 Select.	SYS RUNNING (2)	
1405	R2 ON DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from active state to active output.
1406	R2 OFF DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from inactive state to inactive output.
1407	RO3 SELECT	1	See RO 1 Select.	SYS STARTED (3)	
1408	R3 ON DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from active state to active output.
1409	R3 OFF DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from inactive state to inactive output.

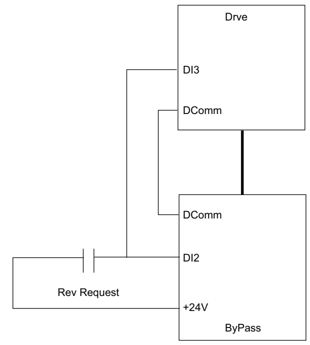
Group 14: Relay Outputs					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1410	RO4 SELECT	1	See RO 1 Select.	BYPASS SEL (4)	
1411	R4 ON DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from active state to active output.
1412	R4 OFF DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from inactive state to inactive output.
1413	RO5 SELECT	1	See RO 1 Select.	BYPASS AUTO (13)	
1414	R5 ON DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from active state to active output.
1415	R5 OFF DLY	0.1 sec	0-3600.0s	0s	Delay from inactive state to inactive output.

Group 16: System Control

Group 16: System Control					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1601	START/STOP	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI1 2 = COMM	DI 1 (1)	Selects source for system start command.
1602	RUN ENABLE	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI2 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for run enable command.
1603	START EN 1	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI3 2 = COMM	DI 3 (1)	Selects source for start enable 1 command.
1604	START EN 2	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI4 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for start enable 2 command.
1605	START EN 3	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI5 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for start enable 3 command.
1606	START EN 4	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI2 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for start enable 4 command.
1607	RESET SRC	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI4 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for fault reset command (rising edge).
1608	AUTO XFR	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Enabled allows auto transfer to bypass on all drive faults except the conditional faults which require an additional enable. NOT SEL prevents auto transfer to bypass for all drive faults including the conditional faults.
1609	OC TRANSFR	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Drive over current causes auto transfer. Requires global auto transfer enable also.
1610	OV TRANSFR	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Drive over voltage causes auto transfer. Requires global auto transfer enable also.
1611	UV TRANSFR	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Drive under voltage causes auto transfer. Requires global auto transfer enable also.
1612	AI TRANSFR	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Drive AI loss causes auto transfer. Requires global auto transfer enable also.
1613	BP DISABLE	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DISABLE	NOT SEL (0)	Disables bypass mode.
1614	BP RUN DLY	1 sec	0 - 300 secs	0s	Bypass contactor pick-up delay when starting bypass or transferring from Drive mode.

Group 16: System Control					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1615	SAVE PARAM	1	0 = DONE 1 = SAVE	0	Save User Settings (SaveImm + SavePwrd).
1616	DISP ALRMS	1	0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	ENABLE (1)	Enables alarms to be displayed: INP PHASE A LOSS, INP PHASE B LOSS, INP PHASE C LOSS, MTR OVERLOAD, BYPASS DISABLED, DRIVE SETUP, PCB TEMP DRIVE LINK ERROR DRIVE FAULTED
1617	DRIVE TEST	1	0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	DISABLE (0)	Enables drive test mode. Drive contactor is opened.
1618	PASS CODE	1	0 - 65535	0	Enter correct password to here in order to change value of the PAR LOCK. Default password value is "123".
1619	PAR LOCK	1	0 = LOCKED 1 = OPEN	OPEN (1)	When switched to "LOCKED" prevents parameter changes from panel. Does not affect to Field Bus writes, expect changing the lock value itself: correct password must always be set first, even in case of Field Bus.
1620	RUN EN TXT	1	0 = RUN ENABLE 1 = DAMPER END SWTCH 2 = VALVE OPENING 3 = PRE-LUBE CYCLE	RUN ENABLE (0)	Alternative text choices for alarm 4006.
1621	ST EN1 TXT	1	0 = START ENABLE 1 1 = VIBRATION SWITCH 2 = FIRESTAT 3 = FREEZESTAT 4 = OVERPRESSURE 5 = VIBRATION TRIP 6 = SMOKE ALARM 7 = SAFETY OPEN 8 = LOW SUCTION	START ENABLE 1 (0)	Alternative text choices for alarm 4021.
1622	ST EN2 TXT	1	0 = START ENABLE 2 ...	START ENABLE 2 (0)	Alternative text choices for alarm 4022. See parameter 1621 for range.
1623	ST EN3 TXT	1	0 = START ENABLE 3 ...	START ENABLE 3 (0)	Alternative text choices for alarm 4023. See parameter 1621 for range.

Group 16: System Control					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1624	ST EN4 TXT	1	0 = START ENABLE 4 ...	START ENABLE 4 (0)	Alternative text choices for alarm 4024. See parameter 1621 for range.
1625	COMM CTRL	1	0 = DRIVE ONLY 1 = SYSTEM	DRIVE ONLY (0)	Selects comm control mode. In drive only mode, control of drive is made through drive points, and control of bypass over comms is not possible. In system mode, control of system (bypass or drive) is made through bypass points.
1626	MODE LOCK	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = AUTO MODE 2 = LOCAL MODE	NOT SEL (0)	When Mode Lock is AUTO MODE, the control panel will not allow switching to Hand or Off. When Mode Lock is LOCAL MODE, the control panel will not allow switching to Auto.
1627	COST/KWH	0.1 c/kWh	0.0 - 100.00 c/kWh	7.0 c/kWh	Cost of energy: cents/kWh
1628	LEARN MODE	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = ENABLED	NOT SEL (0)	When enabled, bypass learns average power consumption while operating in bypass mode
1629	LEARN TIME	0.1 Hr	0.0 - 200.0 Hr	48.0 Hr	Time that learn mode will be active after it is enabled

Group 16: System Control					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1630	START REV		0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI2	NOT SEL (0)	 Selects source for drive start reverse command • Reverse request can only be selected for DI2 on the Eclipse • Drive Param 1003 (Direction) needs to be set for REQUEST. • Drive Param 1201 (Const Speed Select) needs to be set for DI3. • Drive Param 1202 (Const Speed 1) needs to be set for reverse speed required. • When Eclipse input DI2 is energized the bypass sets drive reverse run request over comm's. • The same signal input for bypass DI2 goes to Drive DI3 and sets constant speed. • The Reverse request has priority over normal Run input, this means that if both are present the motor will run reverse at constant speed.
1631	DRV/BYPASS	1	0 = KEYPAD 1 = DI5	KEYPAD (0)	Selects source for drive/bypass mode command. (0) Keypad – The drive/bypass mode selection is made from the bypass keypad (DRIVEBYPASS select keys). (1) DI5 – The drive/bypass mode selection from the bypass keypad is disabled and selection is made from the digital input. When DI5 is energized the system is set to bypass mode.

Group 17: Override 2

Group 17: Override 2					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
1701	OVERRIDE 2	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = DI5 2 = COMM	NOT SEL (0)	Selects source for override 2 command.
1702	RUN EN OVR	1	0 = ACKNOWLEDGE 1 = DISREGARD	DISREGARD (1)	Acknowledge or disregard run enable during override 2.
1703	ST EN1 OVR	1	0 = ACKNOWLEDGE 1 = DISREGARD	DISREGARD (1)	Acknowledge or disregard start enable 1 during override 2.
1704	ST EN2 OVR	1	0 = ACKNOWLEDGE 1 = DISREGARD	DISREGARD (1)	Acknowledge or disregard start enable 2 during override 2.
1706	ST EN4 OVR	1	0 = ACKNOWLEDGE 1 = DISREGARD	DISREGARD (1)	Acknowledge or disregard start enable 4 during override 2.
1707	FAULTS OVR	1	0 = ACKNOWLEDGE 1 = DISREGARD	DISREGARD (1)	Acknowledge or disregard overrideable bypass faults during override 2. All faults can be overrode except: 3009, 3021, 3022, 3023, 3024, 3027, 3034, 3101, 3202, 3203, 3204, 3205, 3206
1708	OVRD2 MODE	1	1 = BYPASS 2 = VFD 3 = VFD/BYPASS 4 = STOP	BYPASS (1)	1 = Use bypass contactor only 2 = Use drive only 3 = Use drive, switch to bypass on drive fault 4 = Both contactors open

Note: For wiring requirements and additional configuration detail refer to *Programming Advanced Override (Override 2)* on page 2-40.

Group 30: Fault Function

Group 30: Fault Function					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
3001	UL ACTION	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = FAULT 2 = WARNING	NOT SEL (0)	Selects action to be taken if underload occurs.
3002	UL TIME	1 sec	10 - 400 sec	20 sec	Time below underload level before fault is declared.
3003	UL TRIP %	1%	0 - 100%	20%	Sets power level at which underload is declared.

Group 30: Fault Function					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
3004	COMM LOSS	1	0 = NOT SEL 1 = FAULT 2 = CONST SP7 3 = LAST SPEED	NOT SEL (0)	This parameter serves similar purpose as parameter 3018 in drive which specifies behavior if Modbus link goes down. Difference is that this parameter applies in drive and bypass modes and if drive node or bypass node detects a problem.
3005	COMM TIME	0.1s	0.0 - 600.0s	10.0s	Sets the communication fault time used with COMM LOSS parameter.
3006	PHASE LOSS	1	0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	1	Disable for input phase loss.
3007	PHASE SEQ	1	0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	1	Disable for input phase sequence fault.
3008	BYPASS MOL	1	50 - 150%	110%	Motor Overload trip level as % of ACH550 parameter 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR.

Group 32: Supervisory Control

Group 32: Supervisory Control					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
3201	SUPER CTRL	1	0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	DISABLE (0)	Enable supervisory control in bypass mode.
3202	START LVL	1%	0 - 100%	70%	Value of drive's AI2 that causes bypass contactor closure. Applies only in supervisory mode.
3203	STOP LEVEL	1%	0 - 100%	30%	Value of drive's AI2 that causes bypass contactor opening. Applies only in supervisory mode.
3204	START DLY	1s	20 - 3600s	40s	Time that close condition must be present before contactor is closed. Applies only in supervisory mode.
3205	STOP DLY	1s	20 - 3600s	60s	Time that open condition must be present before contactor is opened. Applies only in supervisory mode.
3206	FBK LOSS	1	0 = BYP STOP 1 = BYP START	BYP START (1)	Bypass contactor operation if drive link fault, drive AI2 loss or excessive cycling.

Group 33: Information

Group 33: Information					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
3301	FW VERSION	hex		—	Revision of main application firmware.
3302	PT VERSION	hex		—	Revision of panel text file.
3303	LP VERSION	—		—	Loading package version.
3304	CB VERSION	—		—	Control board version.
3305	TEST DATE	—		—	
3306	DRIVE TYPE	—		—	Drive Type - copy of drive's parameter 33.04.
3307	SUB ASMBLY	—		—	Bypass Sub assembly type.
3308	PLANT CODE	1	0-9	0	Part of bypass serial number: Shows 1 digit plant code. Identifies the factory where the device was made
3309	MFG DATE	1	0107 - 5299	0	Part of bypass serial number: Shows 4 digit manufacturing date. WWYY. (2 digits for the week number 01-52 and 2 digits for the year)
3310	UNIT NUM	1	00001 - 65535	0	Part of bypass serial number: Shows 5 digit unit number here. Tell sorder number of a unit manufactured during a certain week. Maximum number is 65525.

Group 50: Bypass EFB

Group 50: Bypass EFB					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5001	BP PROT ID	hex	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	0x0000	Group 50 shall mimic Group 53 except settings shall apply to bypass node.
5002	BP MAC ID	1	0 - 65535	2	Bypass station ID (NODE ADDRESS)
5003	BAUD RATE	0.1 kbit/s	1.2, 2.4, 4.8, 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 76.8	9.6	Read-only copy from Group 53.

Group 50: Bypass EFB					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5004	EFB PARITY	1	0=8 NONE 1, 1=8 NONE 2, 2=8 EVEN 1, 3=8 ODD 1	0	Read-only copy from Group 53.
5005	PROFILE	1	0=ABB DRV LIM, 1=DCU PROFILE, 2=ABB DRV FULL	0	Read-only copy from Group 53.
5006	BP OK MSG	1	0 - 65535	0	Contains a count of valid messages received by the bypass. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.
5007	BP CRC ERR	1	0 - 65535	0	Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error received by the bypass.
5008	UART ERROR	1	0 - 65535	0	Read-only copy from Group 53.
5009	BP STATUS	1	0=IDLE, 1=EXECUT INIT, 2=TIME OUT, 3=CONFIG ERR, 4=OFF-LINE, 5=ON-LINE, 6=RESET, 7=LISTEN ONLY	0	Contains the staus of the bypass EFB protocol.
5010 ... 5018	BP PAR 10 ... BP PAR 18	1	0 - 65535	0	
5019 ... 5020	BP PAR 19 ... BP PAR 20	hex	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	0x0000	

Group 51: External Comm Mode

Group 51: External Comm Mode					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5101	FBA TYPE	1	0 = NOT DEFINED 1 = Profibus 15 = LonWorks 32 = CANOpen 37 = DeviceNet	—	Displays type of attached fieldbus adapter module.
5102 ... 5126	FBA PAR 2 ... FBA PAR 26	1	0 - 65535	0	Fieldbus specific - consult FBA User’s Manual.
5127	REFRESH	1	0 = DONE 1 = REFRESH	0	Validates any changed adapter module configuration parameters. After refreshing, value reverts automatically to DONE.
5128	FBA PAR 28	1	0 - 0xFFFF	0	Parameter table version
5129	FBA PAR 29	1	0 - 0xFFFF	0	Bypass type code
5130	FBA PAR 30	1	0 - 0xFFFF	0	Mapping file version
5131	FBA PAR 31	1	0 - 6	0	Fieldbus adapter status
5132	FBA PAR 32	1	0 - 0xFFFF	0	Module common software version
5133	FBA PAR 33		0 - 0xFFFF	0	Module application software version

Group 53: Drive EFB

Group 53: Drive EFB					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5301	DV PROT ID	hex	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	0x0000	All of drive's Group 53 must be replicated on bypass, since drive is configured for Modbus. All Group 53 functionality associated with selection by 98.02 shall be hosted on bypass controller for drive. Similar parameters shall be allocated for bypass.
5302	DV MAC ID	1	0 - 65535	1	Drive station ID (NODE ADDRESS)
5303	BAUD RATE	0.1 kbit/s	1.2, 2.4, 4.8, 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, 57.6, 76.8	9.6	Defines the communication speed of the RS485 link in kbits per second (kb/s).
5304	EFB PARITY	1	0=8 NONE 1, 1=8 NONE 2, 2=8 EVEN 1, 3=8 ODD 1	0	Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the RS485 link communication.
5305	PROFILE	1	0=ABB DRV LIM, 1=DCU PROFILE, 2=ABB DRV FULL	—	Selects the communications profile used by the EFB protocol.
5306	DV OK MSG	1	0 - 65535	0	Contains a count of valid messages received by the drive. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.
5307	DV CRC ERR	1	0 - 65535	0	Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error received by the drive.
5308	UART ERROR	1	0 - 65535	0	Contains a count of the messages with a character error received by the drive.
5309	DV STATUS	1	0=IDLE, 1=EXECUT INIT, 2=TIME OUT, 3=CONFIG ERR, 4=OFF-LINE, 5=ON-LINE, 6=RESET, 7=LISTEN ONLY	0	Contains the status of the drive EFB protocol.
5310 ... 5318	DV PAR 10 ... DV PAR 18	1	0 - 65535	0	
5319 ... 5320	DV PAR 19 ... DV PAR 20	hex	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	0x0000	

Group 54: FBA Data In

Group 54: FBA Data In					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5401 ... 5410	DATA IN 1 ... DATA IN 10	1	0 = Not In Use 1 = Control Word (ABBDP) 2 = Ref 1 (ABBDP) 3 = Ref 2 (ABBDP) 4 = Status Word (ABBDP) 5 = Actual Value 1 (ABBDP) 6 = Actual Value 2 (ABBDP) 10001 - 19999 = Bypass parameter index +10000	—	Figure module support. Specifies addresses of parameters to be read from the drive (IN to network). Only for modules that support the cyclic low scanner function.

Group 55: FBA Data Out

Group 55: FBA Data Out					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
5501 ... 5510	DATA OUT 1 ... DATA OUT10	1	0 = Not In Use 1 = Control Word (ABBDP) 2 = Ref 1 (ABBDP) 3 = Ref 2 (ABBDP) 4 = Status Word (ABBDP) 5 = Actual Value 1 (ABBDP) 6 = Actual Value 2 (ABBDP) 10001 - 19999 = Bypass parameter index +10000	—	Figure module support. Specifies addresses of parameters to be read from the drive (OUT to network). Only for modules that support the cyclic low scanner function.

Group 98: Options

Group 98: Options					
Code	**Name**	**Resolution**	**Range**	**Default**	**Description**
9802	COMM PROT	1	0=NOT SEL 1=STD MODBUS 2=N2 3=FLN 4=EXT FBA 5=BACNET	0	This parameter functions in place of drive parameter 98.02 which must be set to Modbus in E-Clipse Bypass system. User fieldbus is set at E-Clipse panel.

Group 99: Startup Data

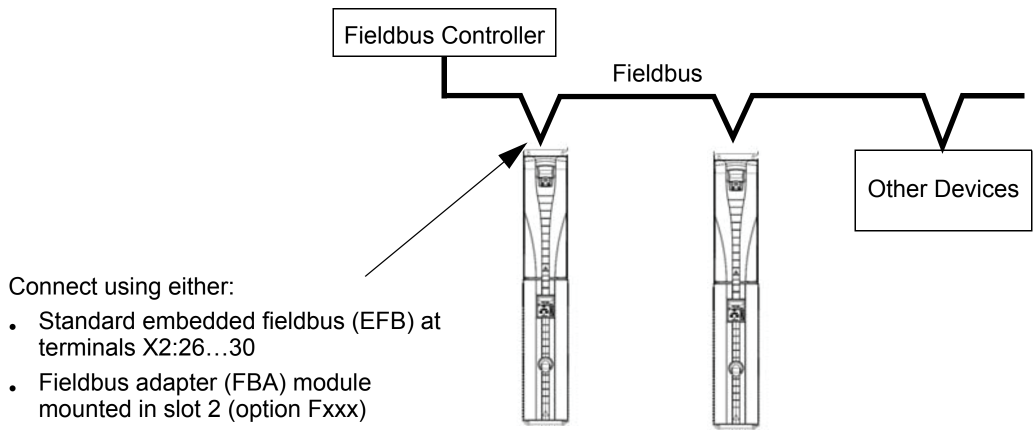
Group 99: Startup Data					
Code	Name	Resolution	Range	Default	Description
9902	B.P. MACRO	1	1 = HVAC DEFAULT 2 = DAMPER 3 = RETROFIT 4 = SMOKE CONTROL	1	Select bypass macro. Predifined set of parameter values for certain application is loaded in use.

Embedded fieldbus

Overview

The ABB E-Clipse bypass can be set up to accept control for the ACH550 drive and/or the E-Clipse Bypass from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ABB E-Clipse bypass can:

- Receive system control information from the fieldbus,
- Receive drive only control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – Using the EIA 485 interface at terminals X2:26…30 on the control board, a control system can communicate with the system using:
  - Modbus® - RTU EIA 485
  - Metasys® N2 EIA 485
  - APOGEE® FLN
  - BACnet® MS/TP EIA 485
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – See *Fieldbus adapter* on page *2-199*.

NOTE: Throughout this manual, references to parameters pertain to parameters and adjustments in the ABB E-Clipse Bypass.

Unless specifically called-out as drive parameters, all parameter adjustments are in the ABB E-Clipse bypass.

In this document any references to "system" refers to ABB E-Clipse Bypass and ACH550 drive.

Control interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

Protocol	Control Interface	Reference for more information
Modbus	• Output Words – Control word – Reference1 – Reference2 • Input Words – Status word – Actual value 1 – Actual value 2 – Actual value 3 – Actual value 4 – Actual value 5 – Actual value 6 – Actual value 7 – Actual value 8	The content of these words is defined by profiles. For details on the profiles used, see *BACnet analog value object instance summary – bypass* on page *2-173*
N2	• Binary output objects • Analog output objects • Binary input objects • Analog input objects	*N2 protocol technical data – system* on page *2-109* and *Bypass overview* on page *2-118*
FLN	• Binary output points • Analog output points • Binary input points • Analog input points	*FLN protocol technical data – system* on page *2-124* and *Bypass overview* on page *2-139*
BACnet	• Device management • Binary output objects • Analog output objects • Binary input objects • Analog input objects	*BACnet protocol technical data – system* on page *2-148*

Note: The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the bypass.

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent to the system (drive only or system)?
- What feedback information must be sent from the bypass system to the controlling system?

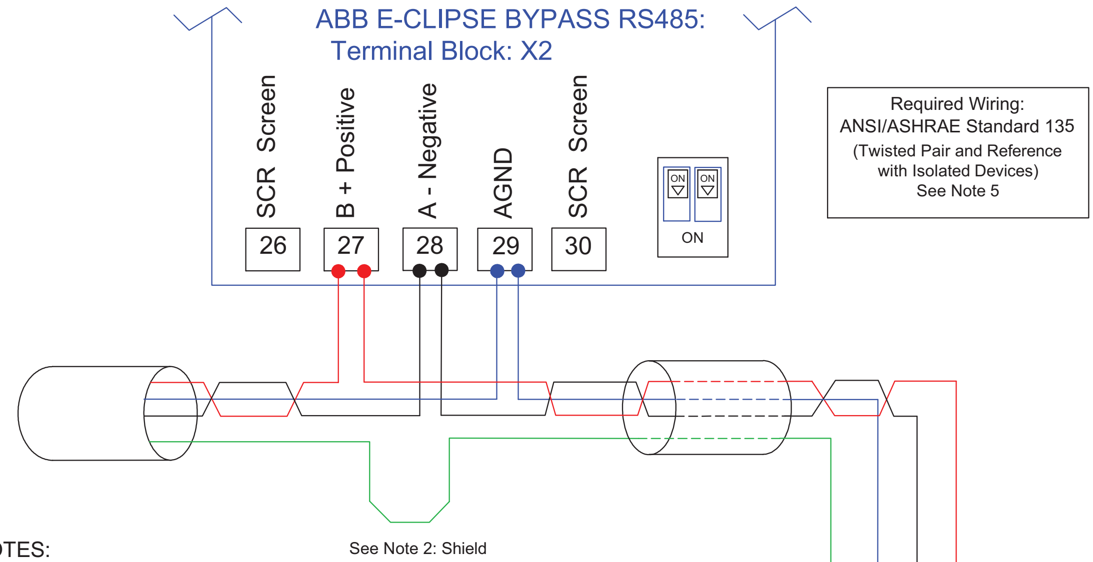
Mechanical and electrical installation – EFB

Warning! Connections should be made only while the bypass is disconnected from the power source.

Bypass terminals 26…30 are for EIA 485 communications.

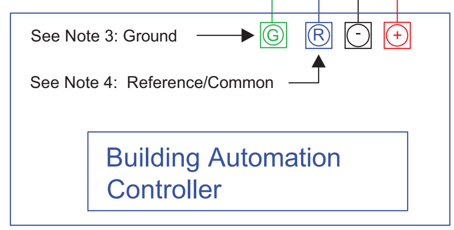
- Use Belden 9842 or equivalent. Belden 9842 is a dual twisted, shielded pair cable with a wave impedance of 120 Ω.
- Use one of these twisted shielded pairs for the EIA 485 link. Use this pair to connect all A (-) terminals together and all B (+) terminals together.
- Use both of the other wires in the other pair for the reference/common (terminal 29).
- Do not directly ground the EIA 485 network at any point. Ground all devices on the network using their corresponding earthing terminals.
- As always, the grounding wires should not form any closed loops, and all the devices should be earthed to a common ground.
- Connect the EIA 485 link in a daisy-chained bus, without dropout lines.
- Do not connect the shield at the bypass. Tie the shields together at the bypass. Only load the shield connection at the EIA 485 master.
- For configuration information see the following:
  - *Communication setup – EFB* section.
  - *Activate drive control functions – EFB* section.
  - The appropriate EFB protocol specific technical data.
  - To reduce noise on the network, terminate the EIA 485 network using 120 Ω resistors at both ends of the network. Use the DIP switch to connect or disconnect the termination resistors. See following diagram and table (on next page).

Preferred wiring diagram

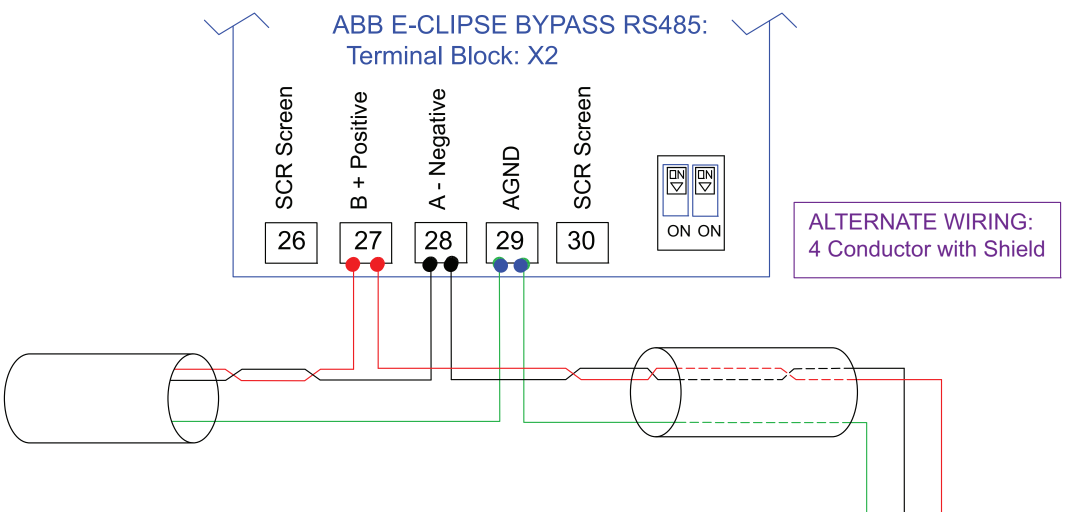


NOTES:

1. Use 3 Conductor Cable - 1 twisted triplet. Tie 3rd wire to AGND: X2-29.
2. Tie shield wires together at Drive - Do Not terminate at SCR.
3. Terminate shield ONLY at "Ground" terminal in the Building Automation Controller.
4. Terminate AGND wire at "Reference" terminal in the Building Automation Controller.
5. The transceiver in the E-Clipse bypass is a 1/8th load device. Only 255 ACH550 drives with E-Clipse bypass may be connected to a given EIA-485 segment without repeaters. Network biasing is required per ANSI / ASHRAE Standard 135.

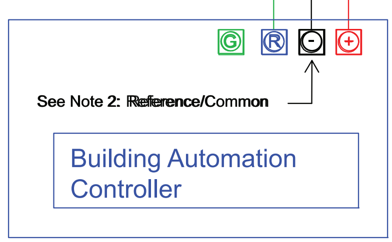


Alternate wiring diagram



NOTES:

1. Use 2 Conductor Cable - 2 twisted pair w/shield. Tie 3rd & 4th wire (2nd pair) to AGND: X2-29.
2. Terminate shield at “Reference” terminal in the Building Automation Controller!



Communication setup – EFB

The addition of serial communications to the ABB E-Clipse bypass system is done by bringing the network connection to the bypass and using the bypass software to direct messages either to the drive or to the bypass control software. The user makes no connection to the drive fieldbus terminals since this channel is reserved for the bypass control interface to the drive.

For all EFB Protocols, the drive is viewed as one node and the bypass is viewed as a separate node. This is illustrated in Figure 1.

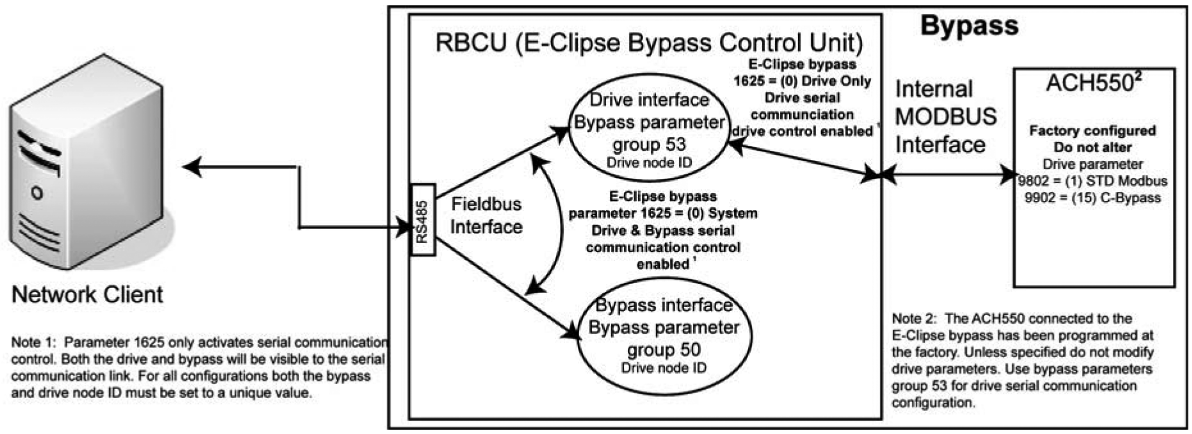


Figure 1 - Communications physical and logical connections

Setup of the drive logical connection is done in parameter Group 53 on the bypass keypad. This group contains, among other things, the Drive MAC ID. Group 53 on the drive must not be modified from the settings defined by the drive application macro, 15 (Eclipse Bypass) since this will render the Internal MODBUS Interface inoperable. Also, drive parameter 98.02, Protocol Sel must not be changed since this will also render the Internal MODBUS Interface inoperable.

Selection of the EFB protocol is done in bypass parameter 98.02. Setup of the bypass logical connection is done in parameter Group 50 on the bypass keypad. Certain parameters that control the network link are duplicated in Group 50 and Group 53 (e.g. BAUD RATE) and are presented as read only in Group 50.

The user can use bypass parameter 16.25, COMM CTRL to determine if control signals (start and enables) go to the drive or to the system. Parameter 16.25 = 0 (DRIVE ONLY) is intended for legacy applications where the network was only able to control the drive. Parameter 16.25 = 1 (SYSTEM) provides new functionality where control signals control both the drive and bypass depending on the the drive/ bypass mode selected on the bypass keypad. In both cases, non-control related points are visible on the bypass.

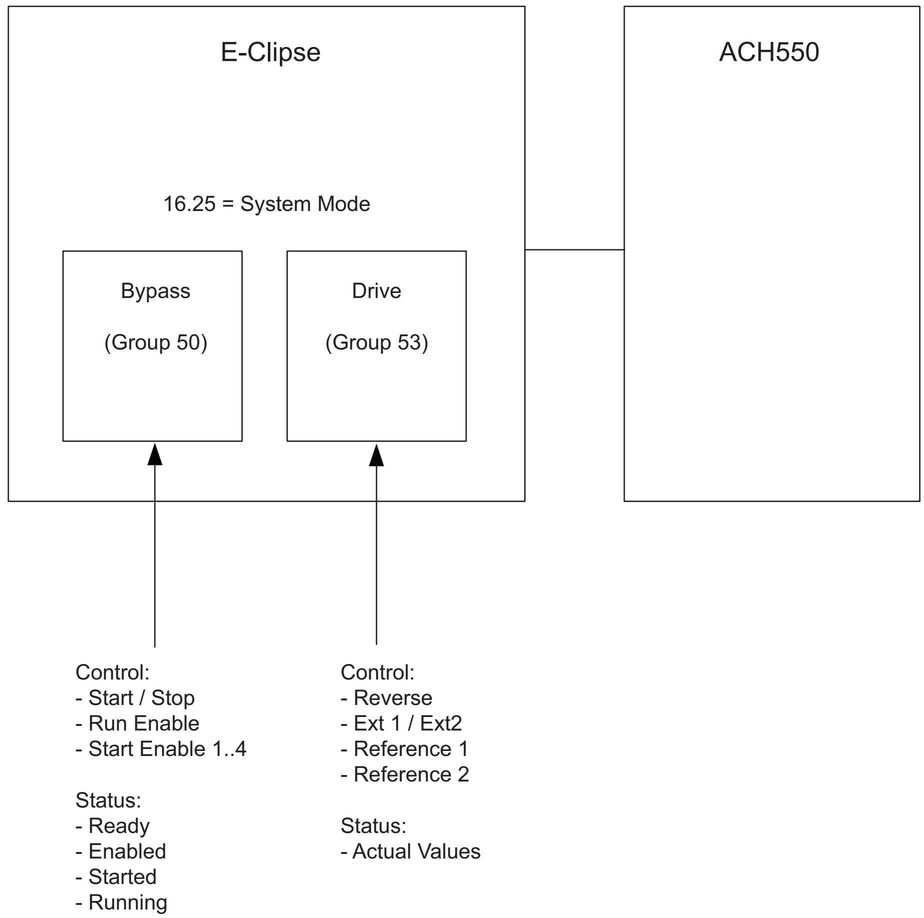


Figure 2 - System mode diagram

Serial communication selection

To activate the serial communication, set parameter 9802 COMM PROT =

- 1 (STD MODBUS).
- 2 (N2)
- 3 (FLN)
- 4 (EXT FBA) - See *Fieldbus adapter* on page *2-199*
- 5 (BACNET)

Note: From the bypass keypad, settings in Group 53 are used for the fieldbus communications to the drive. From the bypass keypad, settings in Group 50 are used for the fieldbus communications to the bypass. When using serial communication diagnostics, refer to the appropriate OK message counter and error message counter for the drive (Group 53 on the bypass keypad) and for the bypass (Group 50 on the bypass keypad).

Serial communication configuration – drive

Setting 9802 automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined below. In particular, note that the station ID may require adjustment.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Bypass Parameter</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="4">EFB Protocol Reference</th></tr>
<tr><th>Modbus</th><th>N2</th><th>FLN</th><th>BACnet</th></tr>
<tr><td>1625</td><td>COMM CONTROL</td><td colspan="4">1625 = 0 (Drive Only) for control signals (Start/Stop & enables) to go to drive only.
1625 = 1 (System) for control signals to go to the system (drive or bypass, depending on keypad mode selection)</td></tr>
<tr><td>5301</td><td>DV PROTOCOL ID
Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol.</td><td colspan="4">Do not edit. Any non-zero value entered for parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL, sets this parameter automatically. The format is: XXYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5302</td><td>DV STATION ID
Defines the drives node address of the EIA 485 link.</td><td colspan="3">Set each bypass on the network with a unique value for this parameter.

Default: 1

Note: For a new address to take affect, the system power must be cycled OR 5302 must first be set to 0 before selecting a new address. Leaving 5302 = 0 places the EIA 485 channel in reset, disabling communication.</td><td>Sets MS/TP MAC ID. A temporary value of 0 places the protocol channel in reset.

Default: 128</td></tr>
<tr><td>5303</td><td>EFB BAUD RATE
Defines the communication speed of the EIA 485 link in kbits per second (kbits/s).
1.2 kbits/s
2.4 kbits/s
4.8 kbits/s
9.6 kbits/s
19.2 kbits/s
38.4 kbits/s
57.6 kbits/s
76.8 kbits/s</td><td colspan="2">Default: 9.6
Do not edit for N2</td><td>Default: 4.8
Do not edit</td><td>Default: 38400</td></tr>
</table>

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	**N2**	**FLN**	**BACnet**
5304	EFB PARITY Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the EIA 485 link communication. • The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. 0 = 8N1 – 8 data bits, No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – 8 data bits, No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – 8 data bits, Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – 8 data bits, Odd parity, one stop bit.	Default: 1	Default: 0		
5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE Selects the communication profile used by the EFB protocol. 0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to limited ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH400/550. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to ABB Bypass Profile, as used in ACS600/800.	Default: 0	Default: 0		
5310	DV PAR10 Sets the response turnaround time in milliseconds.	Not used for Comm setup.	When this protocol is selected, the default value is: 3 ms	0 ms	5 ms

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5311	DV PAR11	Not used for Comm setup.			This parameter, together with parameter 5317, DV PAR 17, sets BACnet Device Object Instance IDs: • For the range 1 to 65,535: This parameter sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0. • For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5311's value plus 10,000 times 5317's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7.
5314...5315	DV PAR14...DV PAR15	Not used for Comm setup.			Not Used
5316	DV PAR16				This parameter indicates the count of MS/TP tokens passed to this unit.
5317	DV PAR17	0			This parameter works with parameter 5311 to set BACnet instance IDs. See parameter 5311.

Note: After any changes to the communication settings, the communication channel must be reset by either cycling the system power, or by clearing (set to 0 and enter) and then restoring the station ID (5302) to desired station ID.

Serial communication configuration – bypass

Setting 9802 automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined below. In particular, note that the station ID may require adjustment.

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5001	BP PROTOCOL ID Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol.	Do not edit. Any non-zero value entered for parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL, sets this parameter automatically. The format is: XXYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.			

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5002	BP STATION ID Defines the drives node address of the EIA 485 link.	Set each bypass on the network with a unique value for this parameter. When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 256 **Note:** For a new address to take affect, the system power must be cycled **OR** 5002 must first be set to 0 before selecting a new address. Leaving 5002 = 0 places the EIA 485 channel in reset, disabling communication.			Sets MS/TP MAC ID. A temporary value of 0 places the protocol channel in reset. Default: 129
5003	EFB BAUD RATE Defines the communication speed of the EIA 485 link in kbits per second (kbits/s). 1.2 kbits/s 2.4 kbits/s 4.8 kbits/s 9.6 kbits/s 19.2 kbits/s 38.4 kbits/s 57.6 kbits/s 76.8 kbits/s	(Read Only Copy, edit in 5303)			
5004	EFB PARITY Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the EIA 485 link communication. • The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. 0 = 8N1 – 8 data bits, No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – 8 data bits, No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – 8 data bits, Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – 8 data bits, Odd parity, one stop bit.	(Read Only Copy, edit in 5304)			

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5005	EFB CTRL PROFILE Selects the communication profile used by the EFB protocol. 0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to limited ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH400/550. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/ Status Words conform to ABB Bypass Profile, as used in ACS600/800.	(Read Only Copy, edit in 5305)			
5010	BP PAR10 Sets the response turnaround time in milliseconds.	(Read Only Copy, edit in 5310)			
5011	BP PAR11	Not used for Comm setup.			This parameter, together with parameter 5017, BP PAR 17, sets BACnet Device Object Instance IDs: • For the range 1 to 65,535: This parameter sets the ID directly (5017 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5011 = 49134 and 5017 = 0. • For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5011's value plus 10,000 times 5017's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71234: 5011 = 1234 and 5017 = 7.

Bypass Parameter	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5014	BP PAR14	Not used for Comm setup.			Not Used
5016	BP PAR16				This parameter indicates the count of MS/TP tokens passed to the unit.
5017	BP PAR17				This parameter works with parameter 5011 to set BACnet instance IDs. See parameter 5011.

Note: After any changes to the communication settings, the communication channel must be reset by either cycling the system power, or by clearing (set to 0 and enter) and then restoring the station ID (5002) to desired station ID.

Activate drive control functions – EFB

Controlling the drive

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive (via the bypass) to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. For the protocol-specific details, see the specific protocol technical data section in this manual.

Start/stop control (Drive only)

Using the fieldbus for start/stop control of the drive only requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)
- Control commands must be addressed to the Drive node with parameter 1625 set to 0 (DRIVE ONLY). For SYSTEM control refer to *Start/stop control (System)* on page *2-100*.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="3">Bypass Parameter</th><th rowspan="3">Value</th><th rowspan="3">Description</th><th colspan="5">Protocol Reference</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Modbus[1]</th><th rowspan="2">N2</th><th rowspan="2">FLN</th><th rowspan="2">BACnet</th></tr>
<tr><th>ABB DRV</th><th>DCU PROFILE</th></tr>
<tr><td>1601</td><td>START/ STOP</td><td>2 (COMM)</td><td>Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 or Ext2 selected.</td><td>40001 bits 0…3</td><td>40031 bits 0, 1</td><td>BO1</td><td>24</td><td>BV10</td></tr>
<tr><td>1625</td><td>COMM CTRL</td><td>0 (DRIVE ONLY)</td><td>Enable drive only control.</td><td colspan="5">N/A</td></tr>
</table>

1. For Modbus, the protocol reference can depend on the profile used, hence two columns in these tables. One column refers to the ABB Drives profile, selected when parameter 5305 = 0 (ABB DRV LIM) or 5305 = 2 (ABB DRV FULL). The other column refers to the DCU profile selected when parameter 5305 = 1 (DCU PROFILE). See *ABB control profiles technical data – drive* section on page *2-182*.

Input reference select

Using the fieldbus to provide input references to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set with the drive keypad as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Reference set selection by fieldbus.	40001 bit 11	40031 bit 5	BO5	26	BV13
1103	REF1 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 1 by fieldbus.	40002		AO1	60	AV16
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 2 by fieldbus.	40003		AO2	61	AV17

Reference scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the following, as appropriate:

- Modbus Register *40002* in the *Modbus protocol technical data – system* section.
- *N2 analog output objects – drive* in the *N2 protocol technical data – system* section.
- The slope of points 60 and 61 in the *FLN protocol technical data – system* section.

Drive relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 0 or 00033		BO7	40	BO0
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 1 or 00034		BO8	41	BO1
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 2 or 00035		BO9	42	BO2
1410[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 4	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 3 or 00036		BO10	43	BO3
1411[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 5	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 4 or 00037		BO11	44	BO4
1412[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 6	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 5 or 00038		BO12	45	BO5

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

For example: To control relays 1 and 2 using serial communication:
Set parameters 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 and 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 35 (COMM).

Then, for example using N2:

- To turn Relay 1 On: Force object BO7 to On.
- To turn Relay 2 On: Force object BO8 to On.
- To turn both Relay 1 and 2 On: Force objects BO7 and BO8 On.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	N/A	40122 or 00033...35		BI4… BI6	76… 78	BI0… BI2
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4…6 status.	N/A	40123 or 00036...38		BI7… BI9	79… 81	BI3… BI5

Analog output control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–		–	–	–
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		40135		AO14	46	AO0
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–		–	–	–
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		40136		AO15	47	AO1

PID control setpoint source

Use the following settings to select the fieldbus as the setpoint source for PID loops:

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
4010	SET POINT SEL (Set 1)	8 (COMM VALUE 1) 9 (COMM + AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Setpoint is either: • Input Reference 2 (+/ -/* AI1). Control requires parameter 1106 value = comm. • Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = pid1 out and parameter 4010 value = comm.	40003		AO2	61	AV17
4110	SET POINT SEL (Set 2)							
4210	SET POINT SEL (Ext/ Trim)							

Feedback from the drive – EFB

Pre-defined feedback

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see input word/point/object listings in the technical data for the appropriate protocol starting on page 2-109.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0102	SPEED	40102	AI3	5	AV0
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	40103	AI1	2	AV1
0104	CURRENT	40104	AI4	6	AV4
0105	TORQUE	40105	AI5	7	AV5
0106	POWER	40106	AI6	8	AV6
0107	DC BUS VOLT	40107	AI11	13	AV2
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	40109	AI12	14	AV3
0115	KWH COUNTER	40115	AI8	10	AV8
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	40118	BI12	72	BI6
0122	RO1-3 STATUS	40122	BI4, BI5, BI6	76, 77, 78	BI0
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	40301 bit 0	BI1	23	BV0
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	40301 bit 2	BI2	21	BV1

Note: With Modbus, any parameter can be accessed using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Mailbox read/write

The ACH550 provides a "Mailbox" function to access parameters that have not been pre-defined by the protocol. Using mailbox, any drive parameter can be identified and read. Mailbox can also be used to adjust parameter settings by writing a value to any parameter identified. The following table describes the use of this function.

Name	Description	Protocol Reference			
		Modbus[1]	N2	FLN	BACnet
Mailbox Parameter	Enter the number of the drive parameter to access.	Does not apply.	AO19	95	AV25
Mailbox Data	Contains the parameter value after a read, or enter the desired parameter value for a write.		AO20	96	AV26
Mailbox Read	A binary value triggers a read – the value of the "Mailbox Parameter" appears in "Mailbox data".		BO19	97	BV15
Mailbox Write	A binary value triggers a write – the drive value for the "Mailbox Parameter" changes to the value in "Mailbox data".		BO20	98	BV16

1. As noted above, Modbus provides direct access to all parameters using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Actual value scaling

The scaling of actual values can be protocol dependent. In general, for Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See *Complete parameter descriptions* section in ACH550-UH User's Manual for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the *Complete parameter descriptions* section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm[1]	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz[2]	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Although Actual Value scaling could differ from the above for the N2, FLN, and BACnet protocols, it currently does not. To confirm, see the following sections, as appropriate:

- *N2 analog input objects – drive* in the *N2 protocol technical data – system* section.
- *Scaling drive feedback values* in the *FLN protocol technical data – system* section.

Activate bypass control functions – EFB

Controlling the bypass

Fieldbus control of various bypass functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the system to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any bypass data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive/bypass.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function.

Start/stop control (System)

Using the fieldbus for start/stop control of the system requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)
- Control commands must be addressed to the Bypass node with parameter 1625 set to 1 (SYSTEM). For DRIVE ONLY control refer to *Start/stop control (Drive only)* on page *2-93*.

Bypass Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference			
				Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
1601	START/STOP	2 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 or Ext2 selected.	40001 bit 0	BO1	24	BV10
1625	COMM CTRL	1 (SYSTEM)	Enable system control.	N/A			

Miscellaneous system control

Note: Control of system commands is dependent upon the setting of bypass parameter 1625.

Using the fieldbus miscellaneous system control requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference			
				Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
1602	RUN ENABLE	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Run enable by fieldbus.	40001 bit 2	BO2	35	BV12
1603	START ENABLE 1	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 1 is the fieldbus Command word.	40001 bit 4	BO10	50	BV15
1604	START ENABLE 2	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 2 is the fieldbus Command word.	40001 bit 5	BO11	51	BV16
1605	START ENABLE 3	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)		40001 bit 6	BO12	52	BV17
1606	START ENABLE 4	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)		40001 bit 7	BO13	53	BV18
1607	RESET SRC	2 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus	40001 bit 1	BO3	94	BV14
1625	COMM CTRL	1 (SYSTEM)	Enable System Control.	N/A			

Bypass relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference			
				Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	40107 bit 0 or 00033	BO5	40	BO0
1404	RELAY OUTPUT 2	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	40107 bit 1 or 00034	BO6	41	BO1
1407	RELAY OUTPUT 3	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	40107 bit 2 or 00035	BO7	42	BO2
1410	RELAY OUTPUT 4	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	40107 bit 3 or 00036	BO8	43	BO3
1413	RELAY OUTPUT 5	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	40107 bit 4 or 00037	BO9	44	BO4

For example: To control relays 1 and 2 using serial communication:
From the bypass keypad, set parameters 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 and 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2 = 16 (COMM CTRL).

Then, for example using N2:

- To turn Relay 1 On: Force object BO5 to On.
- To turn Relay 2 On: Force object BO6 to On.
- To turn both Relay 1 and 2 On: Force objects BO5 and BO6 On.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Bypass Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference			
				Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	N/A	40104 bit 0...2 or 00033...35	BI6… BI8	76… 78	BI0… BI2
0123	RO 4-5 STATUS	Relay 4…5 status.	N/A	40104 bit 3...4 or 00036...37	BI9… B20	79… 80	BI3… BI4

Communications fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the bypass' action if external serial communication is lost.

Bypass Parameter		Value	Setting
3004	COMM LOSS	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)	Set for appropriate drive/bypass response. NOTE: If the system is in bypass mode when communication is lost, choices 2 and 3 will cause the bypass contactor to remain in it's present state.
3005	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.	

Feedback from the ABB E-Clipse Bypass – EFB

Pre-defined feedback

Inputs to the controller (bypass outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require bypass configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see input word/point/ object listings in the technical data for the appropriate protocol.

Bypass Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0101	MOTOR CURR	40101	AI1	6	AV0

Note: With Modbus, any parameter can be accessed using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Type	Name	Description	N2	FLN	BACnet
DI	System Ready	System is ready to accept start command (either mode).	BI1	27	BV7
DI	System Enabled	System is enabled to start motor (either mode).	BI2	34	BV9
DI	System Started	System start enables are made and start command has been received (either mode). Motor runs if run enable is active.	BI3	28	BV1
DI	System Running	Motor is running (either mode).	BI4	23	BV0
DI	Fieldbus Local	System is under fieldbus local control (either mode).	BI5	36	N/A
DI	Bypass Fault	Bypass is faulted.	BI6	93	BV2
DI	Bypass Alarm	Bypass is alarming.	BI7	86	BV5
DI	Comm Control	System is configured for control in the comm channel	BI8	37	N/A
DI	Override	Override status	BI9	25	BV13
DI	DI1 Status	Bypass digital input 1 status	BI10	70	BI5
DI	DI2 Status	Bypass digital input 2 status	BI11	71	BI6

Type	Name	Description	N2	FLN	BACnet
DI	DI3 Status	Bypass digital input 3 status	BI12	72	BI7
DI	DI4 Status	Bypass digital input 4 status	BI13	73	BI8
DI	DI5 Status	Bypass digital input 5 status	BI14	74	BI9
DI	DI6 Status	Bypass digital input 6 status	BI15	75	BI10
DI	RO1 Status	Bypass relay output 1 status	BI16	76	BI0
DI	RO2 Status	Bypass relay output 2 status	BI17	77	BI1
DI	RO3 Status	Bypass relay output 3 status	BI18	78	BI2
DI	RO4 Status	Bypass relay output 4 status	BI19	79	BI3
DI	RO5 Status	Bypass relay output 5 status	BI20	80	BI4
DI	Bypass Select	1=Bypass mode, 0=Drive mode	BI21	32	BV4
DI	System Underload	Reports system underload status (either mode)	BI22	7	BV8
DI	System Fault	Reports system fault status (either mode)	BI23	93	BV3
DI	Bypass Run	Reports motor running status in bypass mode	BI24	33	BV6

Diagnostics – EFB

Fault queue for drive diagnostics

For general ACH550 diagnostics information, see *Diagnostics* section in the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-279*. For specific ACH550 fault codes, see *Fault listing* on page *1-280*.

Type	Name	Description	Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
AI	Last Fault	Reports last drive fault	40401	AI17	90	AV18
AI	Previous Fault	Repots fault previous to last	40402	AI18	91	AV19
AI	Oldest Fault	Reports third-oldest fault	40403	AI19	92	AV20
AI	Alarm Word 1	Reports alarm word 1		N/A	88	N/A
AI	Alarm Word 2	Reports alarm word 2		N/A	89	N/A

Fault queue for bypass diagnostics

For general E-Clipse Bypass diagnostics information, see *Diagnostics* section on page *2-223*. For specific E-Clipse bypass fault codes, see *Fault listing* on page *2-225*.

Type	Name	Description	Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
AI	Last Fault	Reports last drive fault	40401	AI17	90	AV18
AI	Alarm Word 1	Reports alarm word 1	40308	AI3	88	AV4
AI	Alarm Word 2	Reports alarm word 2	40309	AI4	89	AV5

Serial communication diagnostics – drive

Network problems can be caused by multiple sources. Some of these sources are:

- Loose connections
- Incorrect wiring (including swapped wires)
- Bad grounding
- Duplicate station numbers
- Incorrect setup of bypass or other devices on the network

The major diagnostic features for fault tracing on an EFB network include Group 53 EFB Protocol parameters 5306…5309. The *Parameters* section on page *2-61* describes these parameters in detail. Group 53 applies to the drive external communications. Group 50 applies to the bypass external communications.

Diagnostic situations

The sub-sections below describe various diagnostic situations – the problem symptoms and corrective actions.

Normal operation

During normal network operation, 5306…5309 bypass parameter values act as follows at each bypass:

- 5306 DV OK MESSAGES advances (advances for each application message properly received and addressed to this drive).
- 5307 DV CRC ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when an invalid message CRC is received).
- 5308 UART ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when character format errors are detected, such as parity or framing errors).
- 5309 DV status value varies depending on network traffic.
- BACnet protocol: 5316 EFB PAR 16 (MS/TP token counter) advances for each token passed to this drive. (Does not apply for other protocols.)

Loss of communication

The action taken by the ABB E-Clipse Bypass, if communication is lost, is configured in *Communications fault*. The parameters are 3004 COMM LOSS and 3005 COMM TIME. The *Parameters* section describes these parameters in detail.

No master station on line

If no master station is on line: Neither the EFB OK MESSAGES nor the errors (5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS) increase on any of the stations.

To correct:

- Check that a network master is connected and properly programmed on the network.
- Verify that the cable is connected, and is not cut or short circuited.

Duplicate stations

If two or more stations have duplicate numbers:

- Two or more drives cannot be addressed.
- Every time there is a read or write to one particular station, the value for 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS or 5308 EFB UART ERRORS advances.

To correct: Check all station numbers and edit conflicting values.

Swapped wires

If the communication wires are swapped (terminal A on one drive is connected to terminal B on another):

- The value of 5306 EFB OK MESSAGES does not advance.
- The values of 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS are advancing.

To correct: Check that the EIA-485 lines are not swapped.

Fault 3028 – EXT COMM LOSS

If the bypass' control panel shows fault code 3028 "EXT COMM LOSS", check for either of the following:

- The master system is down. To correct, resolve problem with master system.
- The communication connection is bad. To correct, check communication connection at the bypass.
- The time-out selection for the bypass is too short for the given installation. The master is not polling the bypass within the specified time-out delay. To correct, increase the time set by parameter 3005 COMM TIME.

Troubleshooting

The troubleshooting table below should be followed in order from top to bottom by parameter number. Begin the troubleshooting process by displaying the first parameter in the table (5308) and determining if the display on the panel exhibits the symptom. If it does, review the possible cause(s) and take the necessary corrective action(s). Once the symptom for this parameter is eliminated, continue to the next parameter and repeat the process until you have reached the end.

The parameters in the list refer to Drive EFB 53xx and E-Clipse Bypass EFB 50xx. The factory default setting for E-Clipse Bypass EFB parameter 5002 prevents the network from seeing the E-Clipse Bypass. Change this setting ONLY if the bypass will be seen as a node on the network. Troubleshoot the E-Clipse Bypass EFB (50xx) portion ONLY if the bypass will be seen as a node on the network.

Parameter Number	Display on Panel (Symptom)	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
5308 (5008) UART ERRORS	Rapidly Increasing Numeric Value [1]	1. Duplicate Addresses	1. Ensure Drive EFB parameters 5302 [also 5311 & 5317 when using BACnet] and Bypass EFB parameters 5002 [also 5011 & 5017 when using BACnet] are unique. 5302 & 5002 must be unique addresses on the **segment**. [5311, 5317 & 5011, 5017 must be unique addresses on the **network** when using BACnet].
		2. Swapped Wires	2. Swap wires B(+) & A(-).
		3. Incorrect Baud Rate	3. Adjust parameter 5303 & Cycle power.
		4. Incorrect Parity	4. Change parity using parameter 5304 & cycle power.
		5. Too many devices on wire	5. Limit to 31 unit loads on 1 segment.
		6. Noise on EIA-485 wire	6. Install EIA-485 (3 conductor shielded) data grade cable communications wire. See drawings on page *1-188*.
		7. Blown EIA-485 transceiver	7. Find and correct ground loop or high voltage problems before replacing any component assemblies. Perform the following steps to determine if the EIA-485 transceiver is damaged. a. Power unit down. b. Remove bus wires and retighten connections. c. Turn bus termination ON. d. Measure impedance between B(+) & A(-) ACH550 164 ohms +/- 5% E-Clipse 140 ohms +/- 5% If measurements are not within the specified range the EIA-485 transceiver is bad, replace the assembly containing the EIA-485 port.

Parameter Number	Display on Panel (Symptom)	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
5307 (5007) DV CRC ERR	Rapidly Increasing Numeric Value [1]	1. Duplicate Addresses 2. Too many devices on wire 3. Noise on EIA-485 wire	1. See Corrective Action 1. Parameter Number 5308 (5008) 2. Limit to 31 unit loads on 1 segment (ACH550 = 1 unit load) 3. See Corrective Action 6. Parameter Number 5308 (5008)
5309 (5009) DV STATUS	IDLE	1. No network connection 2. Blown EIA-485 transceiver 3. Wrong application number (FLN only)	1. Land communication wires as shown in drawings on page 1-188. Check Repeater (if installed onsite) 2. See Corrective Action 7. Parameter Number 5308 (5008) 3. Change application number in the Siemens field panel.
5316 (5016) DV PAR 16 (BACnet Only)	Not Increasing Numeric Value	1. Drive device address parameter 5302 is set to 128 or greater. 2. E-Clipse Bypass device address parameter 5002 is set to 128 or greater. 3. Max Masters is set too low on all drives.	1. Change parameter 5302 to a unique value below 128. 2. Change parameter 5002 to a unique value below 128. **Note:** The default value for parameter 5002 is 256. This setting prevents the network from seeing the bypass. Change this setting ONLY if the bypass will be seen as a node on the network. 3. Change Max Masters property at all devices on bus to 127.
5306 (5006) DV OK MSG	OK Message Counter not increasing [1]	1. Master/Client not communicating with drive. 2. Failed router	1. Add device and points to the building control system. 2. Replace router.

1. Reset by pressing UP & DOWN arrows simultaneously in edit mode. Save change by pressing ENTER.

N2 protocol technical data – system

System overview

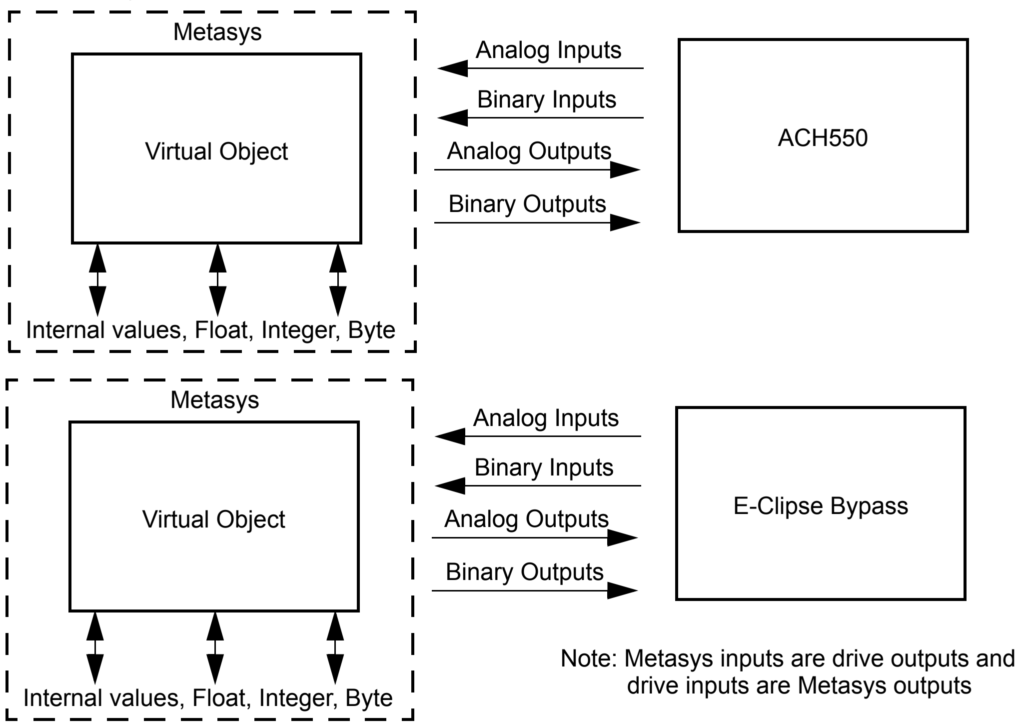
The N2 Fieldbus connection to the system is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The N2 Fieldbus protocol is a master-slave type, serial communication protocol, used by the Johnson Controls Metasys® system. In the Metasys architecture the N2 Fieldbus connects object interfaces and remote controllers to Network Control Units (NCUs).

The N2 Fieldbus can also be used to connect the system to the Metasys Companion product line.

This section describes the use of the N2 Fieldbus with the E-Clipse Bypass connection.

Supported features

In the N2 Fieldbus protocol the ACH550 and E-Clipse Bypass may appear as a "virtual object".

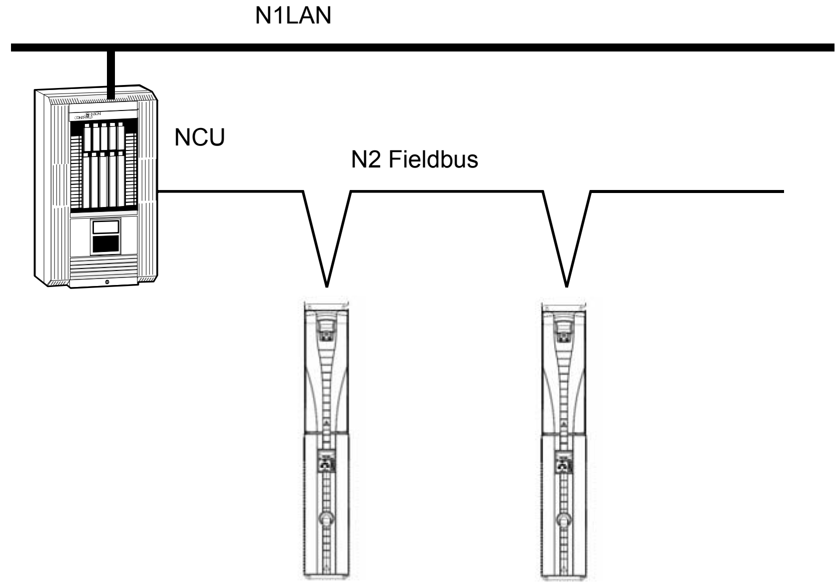


A virtual object is made up of:

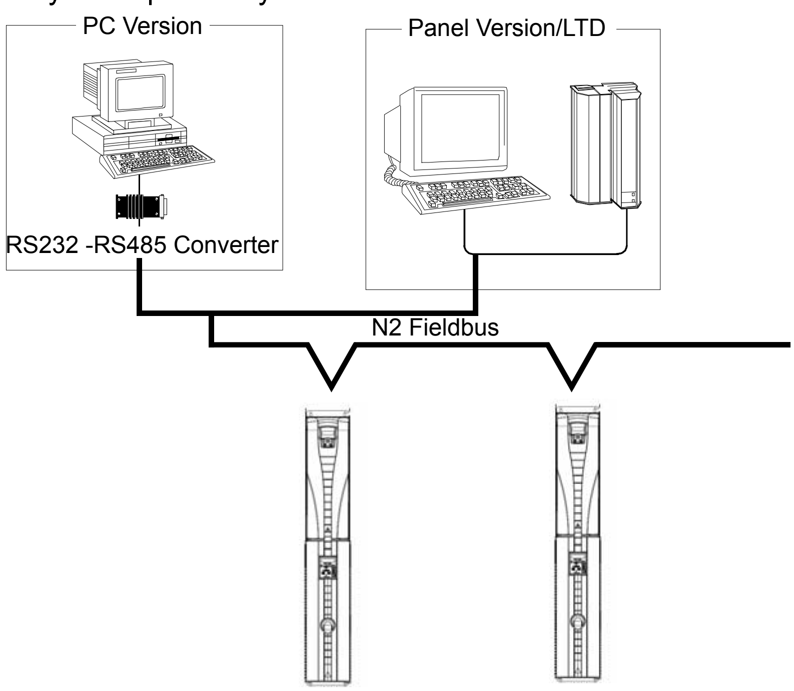
- Analog Inputs
- Binary Inputs
- Analog Outputs
- Binary Outputs
- Internal values for Floating point, Integer, and Byte values.

Metasys integration

The following diagram shows the drives’ integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys system.



The following diagram shows the drives’ integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys Companion system.



On the N2 Fieldbus each system can be accessed by the full complement of Metasys FMS features, including Change-of-State (COS) monitoring, alarm notification, scheduling, trend, and totalization.

On one N2 Fieldbus segment there can be up to 32 nodes while integrating the E-Clipse Bypass system with Johnson Controls Metasys. Each E-Clipse bypass may consume two nodes on a N2 fieldbus segment, if both the drive and bypass objects are being polled by the system.

Drive device type

For the Metasys and Metasys Companion products, the device type for the ACH550 drive is VND.

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL= (0) DRIVE ONLY, drive's N2 objects are all supported using the drive's device address. The bypass's N2 objects related to the control word are no longer valid. For further information on the functional implications of the setting of parameter 1625, see *Communication setup – EFB* on page *2-85*.

Bypass N2 Objects Not Valid

Number	Object	Bypass Parmeter
BO1	SYSTEM START	Command Word
BO2	SYSTEM DISABLE	Command Word
BO3	SYSTEM RESET	Command Word
BO4	OVERRIDE	Command Word
B10	START ENABLE 1	Command Word
B11	START ENABLE 2	Command Word
B12	START ENABLE 3	Command Word
B13	START ENABLE 4	Command Word

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL= (1) SYSTEM, drive's N2 following objects related to control are no longer available when using the drive's device address.

Drive N2 Objects Not Valid

Number	Object	Bypass Parmeter
BO1	START/STOP	Command Word
BO2	RUN ENABLE	Command Word
BO3	N2 LOCAL CTL	Command Word

Drive Overview

The ACH550 drive does not support N2 Fieldbus communication "internal values".

All of the Analog and Binary I/O objects are listed below.

Analog Input – The analog input objects support the following features:

- Analog Input actual value in engineering units
- Low Alarm limit
- Low Warning limit
- High Warning limit
- High Alarm limit
- Differential value for the hysteresis of the Alarms and Warnings

- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Alarm Enabled
- Warning Enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Binary Input – The binary input objects support the following features:

- Binary Input actual value
- Normal / Alarm state specification
- Alarm Enabled
- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Analog Output – The analog output objects support the following features:

- Analog Output value in engineering units
- Override value is used to change the Analog Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

Binary Output – The binary output objects support the following features:

- Binary Output value
- Override value is used to change the Binary Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

N2 analog input objects – drive

The following table lists the N2 Analog Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI1	OUTPUT FREQUENCY	0103	10	Hz	0…250
AI2	RATED SPEED	Note 1	10	%	0 …100
AI3	SPEED	0102	1	rpm	0 …9999
AI4	CURRENT	0104	10	A	0…9999
AI5	TORQUE	0105	10	%	-200…200
AI6	POWER	0106	10	kW	0…65535
AI7	DRIVE TEMPERATURE	0110	10	°C	0 …125
AI8	KILOWATT HOURS	0115	1	kWh	0…65535
AI9	MEGAWATT HOURS	0141	1	MWh	0…65535
AI10	RUN TIME	0114	1	H	0…65535
AI11	DC BUS VOLTAGE	0107	1	V	0…999
AI12	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	0109	1	V	0…999
AI13	PRC PID FEEDBACK	0130	10	%	0…100

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI14	PRC PID DEVIATION	0132	10	%	0…100
AI15	EXT PID FEEDBACK	0131	10	%	0…100
AI16	EXT PID DEVIATION	0133	10	%	0…100
AI17	LAST FAULT	0401	1		fault code
AI18	PREV FAULT	0402	1		fault code
AI19	OLDEST FAULT	0403	1		fault code
AI20	AI 1 ACTUAL	0120	10	%	0…100
AI21	AI 2 ACTUAL	0121	10	%	0…100
AI22	AO 1 ACTUAL	0124	10	mA	0…20
AI23	AO 2 ACTUAL	0125	10	mA	0…20
AI24	MOTOR TEMP	0145	1	°C	0…200
AI25	REVOLUTION CNT	0142	1	MREV	0…32767

1. RATED SPEED is a percent of maximum frequency (parameter 2008) if the drive is in scalar mode, and is a percent of maximum speed (parameter 2002) in speed mode.

N2 binary input objects – drive

The following table lists the N2 Binary Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI1	STOP/RUN	Status Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Drive Running
BI2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Status Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BI3	FAULT STATUS	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = Drive Fault
BI4	RELAY 1 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI5	RELAY 2 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI6	RELAY 3 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI7	RELAY 4 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI8	RELAY 5 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI9	RELAY 6 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI10	INPUT 1 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI11	INPUT 2 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI12	INPUT 3 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI13	INPUT 4 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI14	INPUT 5 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI15	INPUT 6 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI16	EXTERNAL 2 SELECT	Status Word	0 = EXT1 = EXT2
BI17	HAND/AUTO	Status Word	0 = AUTO, 1 = HAND
BI18	ALARM	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = ALARM
BI19	MAINTENANCE REQ	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = MAINT REQ

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI20	DRIVE READY	Status Word	0 = Not Ready, 1 = Ready
BI21	AT SETPOINT	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = At Setpoint
BI22	RUN ENABLED	Status Word	0 = Not Enabled, 1 = Enabled
BI23	N2 LOCAL MODE	Status Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2 Local
BI24	N2 CONTROL SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI25	N2 REF1 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI26	N2 REF2 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes

N2 analog output objects – drive

The following table lists the N2 Analog Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Outputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AO1	REFERENCE 1	Reference 1	10	%	0…100
AO2	REFERENCE 2	Reference 2	10	%	0…100
AO3	ACCEL TIME 1	2202	10	s	0.1…1800
AO4	DECEL TIME 1	2203	10	s	0.1…1800
AO5	CURRENT LIMIT	2003	10	A	0…1.3•I_{2n}
AO6	PID1-CONT GAIN	4001	10	%	0.1…100
AO7	PID1-CONT I-TIME	4002	10	s	0.1…600
AO8	PID1-CONT D-TIME	4003	10	s	0…10
AO9	PID1-CONT D FILTER	4004	10	s	0…10
AO10	PID2-CONT GAIN	4101	10	%	0.1…100
AO11	PID2-CONT I-TIME	4102	10	s	0.1…600
AO12	PID2-CONT D-TIME	4103	10	s	0…10
AO13	PID2-CONT D FILTER	4104	10	s	0…10
AO14	COMMAND AO 1	135	10	%	0…100
AO15	COMMAND AO 2	136	10	%	0…100
AO16	EXT PID SETPOINT	4211	10	%	0…100
AO17	SPD OUT MIN	2001/2007	10	%	0…200
AO18	SPD OUT MAX	2002/2008	10	%	0…200
AO19	MAILBOX PARAMETER		1		0…65535
AO20	MAILBOX DATA		1		0…65535

N2 binary output objects – drive

The following table lists the N2 Binary Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Outputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BO1	STOP/START	Command Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Start to Speed
BO2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Command Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BO3	PANEL LOCK	Command Word	0 = Open, 1 = Locked
BO4	RUN ENABLE	Command Word	0 = Enable, 1 = Disable
BO5	REF1/REF2 SELECT	Command Word	0 = Ref1, 1 = Ref2
BO6	FAULT RESET	Command Word	Change 0 -> 1 Resets
BO7	COMMAND RO 1	134 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO8	COMMAND RO 2	134 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO9	COMMAND RO 3	134 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO10	COMMAND RO 4	134 (bit mask 08)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO11	COMMAND RO 5	134 (bit mask 10)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO12	COMMAND RO 6	134 (bit mask 20)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO13	RESET RUN TIME	114 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset Run Time)
BO14	RESET KWH COUNT	115 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset kWh Count)
BO15	PRC PID SELECT	4027 (indirectly)	0 = SET2, 1 = SET2
BO16	N2 LOCAL CTL (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO17	N2 LOCAL REF (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO18	SAVE PARAMETERS	1607 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Save Parameters)
BO19	READ MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes
BO20	WRITE MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes

1. N2 LOCAL CTL and N2 LOCAL REF have priority over drive input terminals. Use these binary outputs for temporary N2 control of the drive when COMM is not the selected control source.

DDL file for NCU – drive

The listing below is the Data Definition Language (DDL) file for ACH550 drives used with the Network Control Units.

This listing is useful when defining drive I/O objects to the Network Controller Units.

Below is the ACH550.DDL file listing.

```
*******************************************************************
*  ABB Drives, ACH 550 Variable Frequency Drive
*******************************************************************
CSMODEL "ACH_500", "VND"

AITITLE "Analog_Inputs"
BITITLE "Binary_Inputs"
AOTITLE "Analog_Outputs"
BOTITLE "Binary_Outputs"

CSAI "AI1",N,N,"FREQ_ACT","Hz"
CSAI "AI2",N,N,"PCT_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI3",N,N,"SPEED","RPM"
CSAI "AI4",N,N,"CURRENT","A"
CSAI "AI5",N,N,"TORQUE","%"
CSAI "AI6",N,N,"POWER","kW"
CSAI "AI7",N,N,"DRV_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI8",N,N,"ENERGY_k","kWh"
CSAI "AI9",N,N,"ENERGY_M","MWh"
CSAI "AI10",N,N,"RUN_TIME","H"
CSAI "AI11",N,N,"DC_VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI12",N,N,"VOLT_ACT","V"
CSAI "AI13",N,N,"PID1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI14",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI15",N,N,"PID2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI16",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI17",N,N,"LAST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI18",N,N,"PREV_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI19",N,N,"1ST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI20",N,N,"AI_1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI21",N,N,"AI_2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI22",N,N,"AO_1_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI23",N,N,"AO_2_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI24",N,N,"MTR_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI25",N,N,"REVL_CNT",""

CSBI "BI1",N,N,"STOP/RUN","STOP","RUN"
CSBI "BI2",N,N,"FWD/REV","FWD","REV"
CSBI "BI3",N,N,"FAULT","OK","FLT"
CSBI "BI4",N,N,"RELAY_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI5",N,N,"RELAY_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI6",N,N,"RELAY_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI7",N,N,"RELAY_4","OFF","ON"
```

```
CSBI "BI8",N,N,"RELAY_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI9",N,N,"RELAY_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI10",N,N,"INPUT_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI11",N,N,"INPUT_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI12",N,N,"INPUT_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI13",N,N,"INPUT_4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI14",N,N,"INPUT_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI15",N,N,"INPUT_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI16",N,N,"EXT1/2","EXT1","EXT2"
CSBI "BI17",N,N,"HND/AUTO","HAND","AUTO"
CSBI "BI18",N,N,"ALARM","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI19",N,N,"MNTNCE_R","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI20",N,N,"DRV_REDY","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI21",N,N,"AT_SETPT","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI22",N,N,"RUN_ENAB","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI23",N,N,"N2_LOC_M","AUTO","N2_L"
CSBI "BI24",N,N,"N2_CTRL","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI25",N,N,"N2_R1SRC","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI26",N,N,"N2_R2SRC","NO","YES"
CSAO "AO1",Y,Y,"REF_1","%"
CSAO "AO2",Y,Y,"REF_2","%"
CSAO "AO3",Y,Y,"ACCEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO4",Y,Y,"DECEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO5",Y,Y,"CURR_LIM","A"
CSAO "AO6",Y,Y,"PID1_GN","%"
CSAO "AO7",Y,Y,"PID1_I","s"
CSAO "AO8",Y,Y,"PID1_D","s"
CSAO "AO9",Y,Y,"PID1_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO10",Y,Y,PID2_GN","%"
CSAO "AO11",Y,Y,"PID2_I","s"
CSAO "AO12",Y,Y,"PID2_D","s"
CSAO "AO13",Y,Y,"PID2_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO14",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_1","%"
CSAO "AO15",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_2","%"
CSAO "AO16",Y,Y,"PI2_STPT","%"
CSAO "AO17",Y,Y,"MIN_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO18",Y,Y,"MAX_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO19",Y,Y,"MB_PARAM",""
CSAO "AO20",Y,Y,"MB_DATA",""
CSBO "BO1",Y,Y,"START","STOP","START"
CSBO "BO2",Y,Y,"REVERSE","FWD","REV"
CSBO "BO3",Y,Y,"PAN_LOCK","OPEN","LOCKED"
CSBO "BO4",Y,Y,"RUN_ENAB","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO5",Y,Y,"R1/2_SEL","EXT_1","EXT_2"
CSBO "BO6",Y,Y,"FLT_RSET","-","RESET"
CSBO "BO7",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_1","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO8",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_2","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO9",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_3","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO10",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_4","OFF","ON"
```

```
CSBO "BO11",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_5","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO12",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_6","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO13",Y,Y,"RST_RTIM","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO14",Y,Y,"RST_KWH","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO15",Y,Y,"PID_SEL","SET1","SET2"
CSBO "BO16",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_C","AUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO17",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_R","EUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO18",Y,Y,"SAV_PRMS","OFF","SAVE"
CSBO "BO19",Y,Y,"READ_MB","NO","READ"
CSBO "BO20",Y,Y,"WRITE_MB","NO","WRITE"
```

Bypass overview

The ABB E-Clipse bypass does not support N2 Fieldbus communication "internal values".

All of the Binary I/O objects are listed below.

Binary Input – The binary input objects support the following features:

- Binary Input actual value
- Normal / Alarm state specification
- Alarm Enabled
- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Binary Output – The binary output objects support the following features:

- Binary Output value
- Override value is used to change the Binary Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

N2 analog input objects – bypass

The following table lists the N2 Analog Input objects defined for the ABB E-Clipse bypass.

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Bypass Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI1	CURRENT	0101	10	A	0…9999
AI2	LAST FAULT	0401	1		fault code
AI3	ALARM WORD 1	0308	1		Alarm mask (see bypass manual description of parameter 0308)

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Bypass Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AI4	ALARM WORD 2	0309	1		Alarm mask (see bypass manual description of parameter 0309)
AI5	HAND OFF AUTO				0=Off, 1=Hand, 2=Auto
AI6	INPUT VOLT	0102	1	V	Average of line-line input voltage
AI7	PCB TEMP	0105	0.1	°C	Temperature of bypass board
AI8	KW HOURS	0106	1	kWh	Bypass-mode kilowatt hours
AI9	RUN TIME	0108	1	HR	0...65535
AI10	A-B VOLT	0111	1	V	Phase A - Phase B voltage
AI11	B-C VOLT	0112	1	V	Phase B - Phase C voltage
AI12	C-B VOLT	0113	1	V	Phase C - Phase A voltage

N2 analog output objects – bypass

The following table lists the N2 Analog Input objects defined for the ABB E-Clipse bypass.

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	**Object**	**Bypass Parameter**	**Scale Factor**	**Units**	**Range**
AO1	BYP RUNDLY	1614	1	s	0…300
AO2	MB PARAM	NA	1	None	0…65535
AO3	MB DATA	NA	1	None	0…65535

N2 binary input objects – bypass

The following table lists the N2 Binary Input objects defined for the ABB E-Clipse bypass.

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI1	SYSTEM READY	Status Word	1 = Ready
BI2	SYSTEM ENABLED	Status Word	1 = Enabled
BI3	SYSTEM STARTED	Status Word	1 = System Started
BI4	SYSTEM RUNNING	Status Word	1 = System Running
BI5	N2 LOCAL MODE	Status Word	1 = N2 Local

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BI6	FAULT	Status Word	1 = Bypass Fault
BI7	ALARM	Status Word	1 = Bypass Alarm
BI8	N2 CONTROL SCR	Status Word	1 = Yes
BI9	OVERRIDE	Status Word	1 = Override
BI10	INPUT 1 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 1)	1 = On
BI11	INPUT 2 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 2)	1 = On
BI12	INPUT 3 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 4)	1 = On
BI13	INPUT 4 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 8)	1 = On
BI14	INPUT 5 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 10h)	1 = On
BI15	INPUT 6 STATUS	0103 (bit mask 20h)	1 = On
BI16	RELAY 1 STATUS	0104 (bit mask 1)	1 = On
BI17	RELAY 2 STATUS	0104 (bit mask 2)	1 = On
BI18	RELAY 3 STATUS	0104 (bit mask 4)	1 = On
BI19	RELAY 4 STATUS	0104 (bit mask 8)	1 = On
BI20	RELAY 5 STATUS	0104 (bit mask 10h)	1 = On
BI21	BYPASS MODE	Status Word	0 = Drive mode, 1 = Bypass mode
BI22	SYS UNDERLOAD	Status Word	1 = System Underload
BI23	SYS FAULT	Status Word	1 = System Fault
BI24	BYPASS RUNNING	Status Word	1 = Bypass Running

N2 binary output objects – bypass

The following table lists the N2 Binary Output objects defined for the ABB E-Clipse bypass.

N2 Binary Outputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BO1	SYSTEM START	Command Word	1 = Started
BO2	SYSTEM ENABLE	Command Word	1 = Enable
BO3	SYSTEM RESET	Command Word	Change 0 -> 1 Resets
BO4	OVERRIDE	Command Word	1 = Override
BO5	COMMAND RO 1	107 (bit mask 1)	1 = On
BO6	COMMAND RO 2	107 (bit mask 2)	1 = On
BO7	COMMAND RO 3	107 (bit mask 4)	1 = On
BO8	COMMAND RO 4	107 (bit mask 8)	1 = On
BO9	COMMAND RO 5	107 (bit mask 10h)	1 = On
BO10	SYSTEM ENABLE 1	Command Word	1 = Enable
BO11	SYSTEM ENABLE 2	Command Word	1 = Enable
BO12	SYSTEM ENABLE 3	Command Word	1 = Enable
BO13	SYSTEM ENABLE 4	Command Word	1 = Enable

N2 Binary Outputs:			
Number	**Object**	**Drive Parameter**	**Range**
BO14	RESET KW HOURS	0106	Bypass-mode kilowatt hours - RESET
BO15	RESET RUN TIME	0108	0...65535 - RESET
BO16	PAR LOCK	1619	0 = LOCKED, 1 = OPEN
BO17	N2 LOCAL MODE	Command Word	0 = AUTO, 1 = N2 LOCAL
BO18	READ MB	NA	0 = NO, 1 = READ
BO19	WRITE MB	NA	0 = NO, 1 = WRITE

DDL file for NCU – bypass

The listing below is the Data Definition Language (DDL) file for ABB E-Clipse bypass used with the Network Control Units.

This listing is useful when defining bypass I/O objects to the Network Controller Units.

```
*****************************************************************
*  ABB Drives, E-Clipse Bypass
*****************************************************************
CSMODEL "E-Clipse_Bypass","VND"

AITITLE "Analog Inputs"
BITITLE "Binary Inputs"
AOTITLE "Analog Outputs"
BOTITLE "Binary Outputs"

CSAI "AI1",N,N,"CURRENT","A"
CSAI "AI2",N,N,"LAST FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI3",N,N,"ALM WD 1","Code"
CSAI "AI4",N,N,"ALM WD 2","Code"
CSAI "AI5",N,N,"HOA","Code"
CSAI "AI6",N,N,"INP VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI7",N,N,"PCB TEMP","?C"
CSAI "AI8",N,N,"KW HOURS","kWh"
CSAI "AI9",N,N,"RUN TIME","H"
CSAI "AI10",N,N,"A-B VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI11",N,N,"B-C VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI12",N,N,"C-A VOLT","V"

CSBI "BI1",N,N,"SYS RDY","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI2",N,N,"SYS ENAB","DISABLE","ENABLED"
CSBI "BI3",N,N,"SYS STRT","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI4",N,N,"SYS RUN","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI5",N,N,"N2 LOC M","AUTO","N2 L"
CSBI "BI6",N,N,"FAULT","OK","FLT"
CSBI "BI7",N,N,"ALARM","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI8",N,N,"N2 CTRL","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI9",N,N,"OVERRIDE","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI10",N,N,"INPUT 1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI11",N,N,"INPUT 2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI12",N,N,"INPUT 3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI13",N,N,"INPUT 4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI14",N,N,"INPUT 5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI15",N,N,"INPUT 6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI16",N,N,"RELAY 1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI17",N,N,"RELAY 2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI18",N,N,"RELAY 3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI19",N,N,"RELAY 4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI20",N,N,"RELAY 5","OFF","ON"
```

```
CSBI "BI21",N,N,"BP MODE","DRIVE","BYPASS"
CSBI "BI22",N,N,"SYS UNLD","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI23",N,N,"SYS FLT","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI24",N,N,"BP RUN","NO","YES"

CSAO "AO1",Y,Y,"BP R DLY","s"
CSAO "AO2",Y,Y,"MB PARAM",""
CSAO "AO3",Y,Y,"MB DATA",""

CSBO "BO1",Y,Y,"SYS STRT","STOP","START"
CSBO "BO2",Y,Y,"SYS ENAB","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO3",Y,Y,"SYS RSET","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO4",Y,Y,"OVERRIDE","OFF","OVERRIDE"
CSBO "BO5",Y,Y,"CMD RO 1","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO6",Y,Y,"CMD RO 2","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO7",Y,Y,"CMD RO 3","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO8",Y,Y,"CMD RO 4","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO9",Y,Y,"CMD RO 5","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO10",Y,Y,"ST ENA 1","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO11",Y,Y,"ST ENA 2","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO12",Y,Y,"ST ENA 3","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO13",Y,Y,"ST ENA 4","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO14",Y,Y,"RST KWH","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO15",Y,Y,"RST RTIM","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO16",Y,Y,"PAR LOCK","OPEN","LOCKED"
CSBO "BO17",Y,Y,"N2 LOC C","AUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO18",Y,Y,"READ MB","NO","READ"
CSBO "BO19",Y,Y,"WRITE MB","NO","WRITE"
```

FLN protocol technical data – system

System overview

The FLN fieldbus connection to the E-Clipse Bypass system is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The FLN (Floor Level Network) Fieldbus protocol is a serial communication protocol, used by the Siemens APOGEE® system. The system interface is specified in Siemens application 2734.

Supported features

The system supports all required FLN features.

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL = (0) DRIVE ONLY, the drive’s FLN points are all supported using the drive’s device address. The bypass’s FLN points related to the control word are no longer valid.

Bypass FLN points not valid

Point #	Name
24	RUN.STOP CMD
26	OVERRIDE CMD
35	RUN ENA CMD
50	START ENA 1
51	START ENA 2
52	START ENA 3
53	START ENA 4
94	RESET FAULT

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL = (1) SYSTEM, the drive’s FLN following objects related to control are no longer available when using the drive’s device address.

Drive FLN objects not valid

Point #	Name
24	RUN.STOP CMD
35	ENA DIS CMD

Drive overview

Reports

The ACH550 provides seven pre-defined reports. Using a report request generated from the FLN fieldbus controller, select one of the following sets of points. By providing views of selected points, these reports are often easier to work with than views of the full point database.

ABB ACH 550

FLN ABB ACH 550 Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
02	LAO	APPLICATION	
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	
29	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	

Drive startup

FLN Startup Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
21	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
22	LDO	FWD.REV CMD	
23	LDI	RUN.STOP ACT	
24	LDO	RUN.STOP CMD	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
26	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
35	LDO	ENA.DIS CMD	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	
60	LAO	INPUT REF1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF2	
68	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	
69	LDO	FLN LOC REF	
94	LDO	RESET FAULT	

Drive overview

FLN Overview Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
03	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
04	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	
05	LAI	SPEED	
06	LAI	CURRENT	
07	LAI	TORQUE	
08	LAI	POWER	
09	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	
10	LAI	DRIVE KWH	
11	LAI	DRIVE MWH	
12	LAI	RUN TIME	
13	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	
14	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	
17	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	
18	LAI	MREV COUNTER	
21	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	
23	LDI	RUN.STOP ACT	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
27	LDI	DRIVE READY	
28	LDI	AT SETPOINT	
33	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	
37	LDI	FLN CTL SRC	
38	LDI	FLN REF1 SRC	
39	LDI	FLN REF2 SRC	
86	LDI	OK.ALARM	
87	LDI	OK.MAINT	
93	LDI	OK.FAULT	

Drive I/O

FLN Drive I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
40	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
41	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	
42	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	

FLN Drive I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
43	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	
44	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	
45	LDO	RO 6 COMMAND	
46	LAO	AO 1 COMMAND	
47	LAO	AO 2 COMMAND	
70	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	
71	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	
72	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	
73	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	
74	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	
75	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	
76	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	
77	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	
78	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	
79	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	
80	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	
81	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Drive Config

FLN Drive Config. Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	
48	LDO	RST RUN TIME	
49	LDO	RESET KWH	
59	LDO	LOCK PANEL	
66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	
67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	
95	LAO	MBOX PARAM	
96	LAO	MBOX DATA	
97	LDO	MBOX READ	
98	LDO	MBOX WRITE	

Drive Process PID

FLN Process PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
15	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
16	LAI	PRC PID DEV	
50	LAO	PRC PID GAIN	
51	LAO	PRC PID ITIM	
52	LAO	PRC PID DTIM	
53	LAO	PRC PID DFIL	
54	LDO	PRC PID SEL	
60	LAO	INPUT REF 1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF 2	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Drive External PID

FLN External PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
55	LAO	EXT PID GAIN	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
56	LAO	EXT PID ITIM	
57	LAO	EXT PID DTIM	
58	LAO	EXT PID DFIL	
62	LAO	EXT PID STPT	
63	LAI	EXT PID FBCK	
64	LAI	EXT PID DEV	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Scaling drive feedback values

Feedback values are provided with units of percent, where 0% and 100% correspond to the range of the sensor being used to measure the control variable. These points have default units in Hz. If other units are required:

- Unbundle these points with appropriate slopes and intercepts.
- The new intercept equals the lowest value of the desired range.
- Calculate the new slope as follows:

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range, i.e. high - low values) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{(60 Hz - 0 Hz) x (0.01)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.006$$

Example – You are controlling water temperature from a cooling tower using the ACH550 to control a fan. The temperature sensor has a range of 30 to 250 degrees Fahrenheit.

To unbundle the set point (INPUT REF 2), for commanding in degrees Fahrenheit, where 0…60 Hz is equal to 30…250° F:

New Intercept = 30 (the temperature that corresponds to 0%)

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{(250° \text{ F - } 30° \text{ F) x (0.1)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.22$$

To unbundle the feedback (PRC PID FBCK) for monitoring in degrees Fahrenheit:

New Intercept = 30

$$\text{New Slope} = \frac{\text{(Desired Range) x (Slope of Existing Point)}}{\text{Range of Existing Point}}$$

$$= \frac{(250° \text{ F - } 30° \text{ F) x (0.01)}}{\text{100\% - 0\%}} = 0.022$$

Loop gains

PRC PID GAIN (Point 50) and PRC PID ITIM (Point 51) are PID parameters similar to the P and I gains in the APOGEE TECs. Because the ABB PI loop and the Siemens loop are structured differently, there is no a one-to-one correspondence between the gains. The following formulas allow translation from ABB gains to Siemens gains and vice versa:

- To convert from ABB PI gains to Siemens P and I gains:

$$\text{P GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}} = \text{PI GAIN}_{\text{ABB}} \text{ x } 0.0015$$

$$\text{I GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}} = \frac{\text{PI GAIN}_{\text{ABB}}}{\text{PI GAIN}_{\text{ABB}}} \text{ x } 0.0015$$

- To convert from Siemens P and I gains to ABB PI gains:

$$P\ GAIN_{ABB} = PI\ GAIN_{Siemens} \times 667$$

$$I\ GAIN_{ABB} = \frac{PI\ GAIN_{Siemens}}{PI\ GAIN_{Siemens}} \times 667$$

Point database drive

The following table lists the point database for FLN / ACH550 (Application 2734).

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	99	-	1	0	-	-
02	LAO	APPLICATION	2734	-	1		-	-
{03}	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	0	Hz	0.1	0	-	-
{04}	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{05}	LAI	SPEED	0	RPM	1	0	-	-
{06}	LAI	CURRENT	0	A	0.1		-	-
{07}	LAI	TORQUE	0	PCT	0.1	-200	-	-
{08}	LAI	POWER	0 (0)	HP (KW)	0.134 0.1	0 0	-	-
{09}	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	77 (25)	° F (° C)	0.18 (0.1)	32 0	-	-
{10}	LAI	DRIVE KWH	0	KWH	1		-	-
{11}	LAI	DRIVE MWH	0	MWH	1		-	-
{12}	LAI	RUN TIME	0	HRS	1		-	-
{13}	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{14}	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{15}	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{16}	LAI	PRC PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{17}	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	77(25)	° F (° C)	1.8 (1)	32 0	-	-
{18}	LAI	MREV COUNTER	0	MREV	1	0	-	-
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	1	hrs	1	0	-	-
{21}	LDI	FWD.REV ACT	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD
{22}	LDO	FWD.REV CMD	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD
{23}	LDI	RUN.STOP ACT	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{24}	LDO	RUN.STOP CMD	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{25}	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{26}	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{27}	LDI	DRIVE READY	NOTRDY	-	1	0	READY	NOTRDY
{28}	LDI	AT SETPOINT	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{29}	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	DAY	-	1	0	NIGHT	DAY
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	0	A	0.1	0	-	-
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
{33}	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	HAND	AUTO
{34}	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	DISABL	-	1	0	ENABLE	DISABL
{35}	LDO	ENA.DIS CMD	DISABL	-	1	0	ENABLE	DISABL
{36}	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{37}	LDI	FLN CTL SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{38}	LDI	FLN REF1 SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{39}	LDI	FLN REF2 SRC	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{40}	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{41}	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{42}	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{43}	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{44}	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{45}	LDO	RO 6 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{46}	LAO	AO 1 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{47}	LAO	AO 2 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
48	LDO	RST RUN TIME	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
49	LDO	RESET KWH	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
50	LAO	PRC PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
51	LAO	PRC PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
52	LAO	PRC PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
53	LAO	PRC PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
54	LDO	PRC PID SEL	SET1	-	1	0	SET2	SET1
55	LAO	EXT PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
56	LAO	EXT PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
57	LAO	EXT PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
58	LAO	EXT PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1	0	-	-
59	LDO	LOCK PANEL	UNLOCK	-	1	0	LOCK	UNLOCK

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{60}	LAO	INPUT REF 1	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{61}	LAO	INPUT REF 2	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{62}	LAO	EXT PID STPT	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{63}	LAI	EXT PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{64}	LAI	EXT PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	1000	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{68}	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{69}	LDO	FLN LOC REF	AUTO	-	1	0	FLN	AUTO
{70}	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{71}	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{72}	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{73}	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{74}	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{75}	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{76}	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{77}	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{78}	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{79}	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{80}	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{81}	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	ON	OFF
{82}	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{83}	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{84}	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
{85}	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
{86}	LDI	OK.ALARM	OK	-	1	0	ALARM	OK
{87}	LDI	OK.MAINT	OK	-	1	0	MAINT	OK
{88}	LAI	ALARM WORD 1	-	-	1	0	-	-
{89}	LAI	ALARM WORD 2	-	-	1	0	-	-
{90}	LAI	LAST FAULT	-	-	1	0	-	-
{91}	LAI	PREV FAULT 1	-	-	1	0	-	-
{92}	LAI	PREV FAULT 2	-	-	1	0	-	-
{93}	LDI	OK.FAULT	OK	-	1	0	FAULT	OK
{94}	LDO	RESET FAULT	NO	-	1	0	RESET	NO
{95}	LAO	MBOX PARAM	-	-	1	0	-	-
{96}	LAO	MBOX DATA	-	-	1	0	-	-

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{97}	LDO	MBOX READ	DONE	-	1	0	READ	DONE
{98}	LDO	MBOX WRITE	DONE	-	1	0	WRITE	DONE
{99}	LAO	ERROR STATUS	-	-	1	0	-	-

a. Points not listed are not used in this application.

b. A single value in a column means that the value is the same in English units and in SI units.

c. Point numbers that appear in brackets { } may be unbundled at the field panel.

Detailed point descriptions – drive

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
1	CTRL ADDRESS	The FLN address of the drive. It can be set by FLN and by the panel.	5302
2	APPLICATION	The Application ID for FLN on the ACH550. This ID is assigned by Siemens for each unique application. It correlates directly to a particular point list approved at the time of release. Therefore, this point list shall remain fixed once approval is granted. Any changes to the point list shall require a new Application ID and re-approval by Siemens. The Application ID assigned to ACH550 is 2934.	
3	FREQ OUTPUT	The output frequency applied to the motor, in Hertz.	0103
4	PCT OUTPUT	The ratio of output frequency or speed to the corresponding maximum rating, depending on control mode. • For scalar mode, it is the ratio of Output Frequency (parameter 0103) to Maximum Frequency (parameter 2008). • For speed mode, it is the ratio Speed (parameter 0102) to Maximum Speed (2002).	None. This ratio is calculated by the FLN application.
5	SPEED	The calculated speed of the motor, in RPM.	0102
6	CURRENT	The measured output current.	0104
7	TORQUE	The calculated output torque of the motor as a percentage of nominal torque.	0105
8	POWER	The measured output power in KW. The FLN point definition also supports horsepower by selecting English units.	0106
9	DRIVE TEMP	The measured heatsink temperature, in ° C. The FLN point definition also supports ° F by selecting English units.	0110
10	DRIVE KWH	The drive's cumulative power consumption in kilowatt-hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 49, RESET KWH.	0115
11	DRIVE MWH	The drive's cumulative power consumption in megawatt hours. This value cannot be reset.	0141
12	RUN TIME	The drive's cumulative run time in hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 48, RESET RUN TIME.	0114
13	DC BUS VOLT	The DC bus voltage level of the drive.	0107
14	OUTPUT VOLT	The AC output voltage applied to the motor.	0109
15	PRC PID FBCK	The Process PID feedback signal.	0130
16	PRC PID DEV	The deviation of the Process PID output signal from its setpoint.	0132
17	MOTOR TEMP	The measured motor temperature as set up in Group 35.	0145
18	ROTATION CNT	The motor's cumulative revolution count, in mega-revolutions.	0142
19	N/A		
20	OVRD TIME	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
21	FWD.REV ACT	Indicates the rotational direction of the motor, regardless of control source (1 = REV, 0 = FWD).	
22	FWD.REV CMD	Commanded by FLN to change the rotational direction of the drive. • Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT1. • Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT2.	
23	RUN.STOP ACT	Indicates the drive's run status, regardless of control source (1 = RUN, 0 = STOP).	
24	RUN.STOP CMD	Commanded by FLN to start the drive. • Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the run state of the drive by EXT1. • Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
25	EXT1.2 ACT	Indicates whether External 1 or External 2 is the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1).	
26	EXT1.2 CMD	Commanded by FLN to select External 1 or External 2 as the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1). Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
27	DRIVE READY	Indicates the drive is ready to accept a run command (1 = READY, 0 = NOTRDY).	
28	AT SETPOINT	Indicates the drive has reached its commanded setpoint (1 = YES, 0 = NO)	
29	DAY.NIGHT	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None
30	CURRENT LIM	Sets the output current limit of the drive.	2003
31	ACCEL TIME 1	Sets the acceleration time for Ramp 1.	2202
32	DECEL TIME 1	Sets the deceleration time for Ramp 1.	2203
33	HANDAUTO ACT	Indicates whether the drive is in Hand or Auto control (1 = HAND, 0 = AUTO).	
34	ENA.DIS ACT	Indicates the status of the Run Enable command, regardless of its source (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL).	
35	ENA.DIS CMD	Commanded by FLN to assert the Run Enable command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Parameter 1601 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
36	FLN LOC ACT	Indicates if the drive has been placed in "FLN LOCAL" mode by commanding either point 68 (FLN LOC CTL) or point 69 (FLN LOC REF). Commanding either of these points to FLN (1) "steals" control from its normal source and places in under FLN control. Note that the HAND mode of the panel has priority over FLN local control.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
37	FLN CTL SRC	Indicates if FLN is a source for control inputs (1 = YES, 0 = NO). Note that this status point is true if any of the following control inputs are from FLN: Run/Stop, Ext1/2 Select or Run Enable.	
38	FLN REF1 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 1 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
39	FLN REF2 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 2 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
40	RO1 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 1. Parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 0
41	RO2 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 2. Parameter 1402 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 1
42	RO3 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 3. Parameter 1403 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 2
43	RO4 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 4. Access to relay 4 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1410 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 3
44	RO5 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 5. Access to relay 5 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1411 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 4
45	RO6 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 6. Access to relay 6 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1412 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 5
46	AO1 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 1. Parameter 1501 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0135 (COMM VALUE 1)
47	AO2 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 2. Parameter 1507 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0136 (COMM VALUE 2)
48	RESET RUN TIME	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative run timer (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
49	RESET KWH	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative kilowatt-hour counter (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
50	PRC PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
51	PRC PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4002 (SET1) 4102 (SET2)
52	PRC PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
53	PRC PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4004 (SET1) 4104 (SET2)
54	PRC PID SEL	Selects the active Process PID set (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4027
55	EXT PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the External PID controller.	4201
56	EXT PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the External PID controller.	4202
57	EXT PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the External PID controller.	4203
58	EXT PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the External PID controller.	4204
59	LOCK PANEL	Command by FLN to lock the panel and prevent parameter changes (1 = LOCK, 0 = UNLOCK).	1602
60	INPUT REF 1	Sets Input Reference 1. Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
61	INPUT REF 2	Sets Input Reference 2. Parameter 1106 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
62	EXT PID STPT	The setpoint for the External PID controller. The function of this point requires parameter 4210, PID Setpoint Select, to be set to 19 (Internal).	4211
63	EXT PID FBCK	The External PID feedback signal.	0131
64	EXT PID DEV	The deviation of the External PID output signal from its setpoint.	0133
65	N/A		
66	SPD OUT MIN	Sets the minimum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2007 (SCALAR) 2001 (SPEED)
67	SPD OUT MAX	Sets the maximum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2008 (SCALAR) 2002 (SPEED)
68	FLN LOC CTL	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" start/stop control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the digital inputs or some other internal control functionality.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
69	FLN LOC REF	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" input reference control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the reference control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the analog inputs or some other internal control functionality.	
70	DI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 2
71	DI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 1
72	DI 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0118, bit 0
73	DI 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 2
74	DI 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 1
75	DI 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0119, bit 0
76	RO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 2
77	RO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 1
78	RO 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0122, bit 0
79	RO 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 2
80	RO 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 1
81	RO 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0123, bit 0
82	AI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 1.	0120
83	AI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 2.	0121
84	AO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 1.	0124
85	AO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 2.	0125
86	OK.ALARM	Indicates the current alarm state of the drive (1 = ALARM, 0 = OK).	
87	OK.MAINT	Indicates the current maintenance state of the drive (1 = MAINT, 0 = OK). Maintenance triggers are configured in drive parameter Group 29.	
88	ALARM WORD1	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive.	0308
89	ALARM WORD2	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive.	0309
90	LAST FAULT	This point is first in the drive's fault log and indicates the most recent fault declared.	0401
91	PREV FAULT 1	This point is second in the drive's fault log and indicates the previous fault declared.	0412
92	PREV FAULT 2	This point is last in the drive's fault log and indicates the oldest fault in the log.	0413
93	OK.FAULT	Indicates the current fault state of the drive (1 = FAULT, 0 = OK).	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
94	RESET FAULT	Command by FLN to reset a faulted drive (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). Parameter 1604 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this state. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
95	MBOX PARAM	Sets the parameter to be used by the mailbox function.	
96	MBOX DATA	Sets or indicates the data value of the mailbox function.	
97	MBOX READ	Command by FLN to read the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The parameter value is returned in Point 96, MBOX DATA. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
98	MBOX WRITE	Command by FLN to write the data value specified by Point 96, MBOX DATA, to the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
99	ERROR STATUS	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

Bypass overview

The FLN fieldbus connection to the ABB E-Clipse bypass is based on an industry standard EIA 485 physical interface. The FLN (Floor Level Network) Fieldbus protocol is a serial communication protocol, used by the Siemens APOGEE® system. The ABB E-Clipse bypass interface is specified in Siemens application 2737.

Supported features

The ABB E-Clipse bypass supports all required FLN features.

Reports

The ABB E-Clipse bypass provides seven pre-defined reports. Using a report request generated from the FLN fieldbus controller, select one of the following sets of points. By providing views of selected points, these reports are often easier to work with than views of the full point database.

ABB E-Clipse Bypass

FLN E-Clipse bypass Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
02	LAO	APPLICATION	
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	
29	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	

Bypass startup

FLN Report #1 (STARTUP)		
Point		Subpoint Name
#	Type	
23	LDI	MTR RUNNING
24	LDO	RUN.STOP CMD
27	LDI	SYSTEM READY
28	LDI	SYS STARTED
32	LDI	DRIVE.BYPASS
33	LDI	BYP RUNNING
34	LDI	RUN ENA ACT
35	LDO	RUN ENA CMD
50	LDO	START ENA 1
51	LDO	START ENA 2
52	LDO	START ENA 3
53	LDO	START ENA 4
94	LCO	RESET FAULT

Bypass overview

FLN Overview Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
05	LAI	INPUT VOLTS	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
06	LAI	CURRENT	
09	LAI	BYPASS PCB TEMP	
10	LAI	KW HOURS	
12	LAI	RUN TIME	
13	LAI	PHASE A - PHASE B VOLTAGE	
14	LAI	PHASE B - PHASE C VOLTAGE	
15	LAI	PHASE C - PHASE A VOLTAGE	
86	LDI	BYPASS ALARM	
90	LAI	LAST FAULT	
93	LDI	OK FAULT BYP	

Bypass I/O

FLN Bypass I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
40	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
41	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	
42	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	
43	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	
44	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	
70	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	
71	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	
72	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	
73	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	
74	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	
75	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	
76	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	
77	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	
78	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	
79	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	
80	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	

Point database – bypass

The following table lists the point database for FLN / ABB E-Clipse bypass (Application 2737).

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	2	-	1	0	-	-
02	LAO	APPLICATION	2737	-	1	0	-	-
05	LAI	INPUT VOLT	0	V	1	0	-	-
{06}	LAI	CURRENT	0	A	0.1	0	-	-
{07}	LAI	SYS UNDRLOAD	NO	-	1	0	[YES]	[NO]
09	LAI	PCB TEMP	77 (25)	°F (°C)	0.18 (0.1)	33 (0)	-	-
10	LAI	KW HOURS	0	KWH	1	0	-	-
12	LAI	RUN TIME	0	HRS	1	0	-	-
13	LAI	A.B. VOLT	0	V	1	0	-	-
14	LAI	B.C. VOLT	0	V	1	0	-	-
15	LAI	C.A. VOLT	0	V	1	0	-	-
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	1	HRS	1	0	-	-
{23}	LDI	MTR RUNNING	STOP	-	1	0	[RUN]	[STOP]
{24}	LDO	RUN.STOP CMD	STOP	-	1	0	[RUN]	[STOP]
{25}	LDI	OVERRIDE ACT	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{26}	LDO	OVERRIDE CMD	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{27}	LDI	SYSTEM READY	NOT READY	-	1	0	[READY]	[NOT READY]
{28}	LDI	SYS STARTED	NO	-	1	0	[YES]	[NO]
{29}	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	DAY	-	1	0	[NIGHT]	[DAY]
30	LAO	BYP RUN DLY	0	SEC	1	0	-	-
{31}	LAI	BYPASS MODE	0	-	1	0	-	-
{32}	LDI	DRIVE.BYPASS	DRIVE	-	1	0	[BYPASS]	[DRIVE]
{33}	LDI	BYP RUNNING	NO	-	1	0	[YES]	[NO]
{34}	LDI	RUN ENA ACT	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{35}	LDO	RUN ENA CMD	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{36}	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	[FLN]	[AUTO]
{37}	LDI	FLN CTL SRC	NO	-	1	0	[YES]	[NO]
{40}	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{41}	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{42}	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type		(SI Units)					
{43}	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{44}	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{48}	LDO	RST RUN TIME	0	-	-	-	-	-
{49}	LDO	RESET KWH	0	-	1	0	-	-
{50}	LDO	START ENA 1	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{51}	LDO	START ENA 2	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{52}	LDO	START ENA 3	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{53}	LDO	START ENA 4	DISABL	-	1	0	[ENABLE]	[DISABL]
{59}	LDO	LOCK PANEL	OPEN	-	1	0	[LOCK]	[UNLOCK]
{68}	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	AUTO	-	1	0	[FLN]	[AUTO]
{70}	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{71}	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{72}	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{73}	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{74}	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{75}	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{76}	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{77}	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{78}	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{79}	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{80}	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	1	0	[ON]	[OFF]
{86}	LDI	BYPASS ALARM	OK	-	1	0	[ALARM]	[OK]
{88}	LAI	ALARM WORD 1	0	-	1	0	-	-
{89}	LAI	ALARM WORD 2	0	-	1	0	-	-
{90}	LAI	LAST FAULT	-	-	1	0	-	-
{93}	LDI	OK.FAULTBYP	OK	-	1	0	[FAULT]	[OK]
{94}	LDO	RESET FAULT	NO	-	1	0	[RESET]	[NO]
{99}	LAO	ERROR STATUS	-	-	1	0	-	-

a. Points not listed are not used in this application.
b. A single value in a column means that the value is the same in English units and in SI units.
c. Point numbers that appear in brackets { } may be unbundled at the field panel.

Detailed point descriptions – bypass

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
1	CTRL ADDRESS	The FLN address of the bypass. It can be set by FLN and by the panel.	5002
2	APPLICATION	This is the Application ID for FLN on the E-Clipse Bypass. This ID is assigned by Siemens for each unique application. It correlates directly to a particular point list approved at the time of release. Therefore, this point list shall remain fixed once approval is granted. Any changes to the point list shall require a new Application ID and re-approval by Siemens. The Application ID assigned to the E-Clipse bypass is 2737.	
{5}	INPUT VOLT	Average of line-line input voltage	0102
{6}	CURRENT	Measured output current.	0101
{7}	SYS UNDRLOAD	This point indicates if the system is in an underload condition. Detection of this condition is done with bypass parameters 3001-3003.	
{9}	PCB TEMP	DEG C of bypass board	0105
10	KW HOURS	Bypass-mode kilowatt hours	0106
12	RUN TIME	Bypass mode run hours	0108
13	A-B VOLT	Phase A - Phase B voltage	0111
14	B-C VOLT	Phase B - Phase C voltage	0112
15	C-A VOLT	Phase C - Phase A voltage	0113
20	OVRD TIME	This is 1 of 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the bypass application.	
{23}	MTR RUNNING	This point indicates the system's run status, regardless of control source (1 = RUN, 0 = STOP).	
{24}	RUN.STOP CMD	This point is commanded by FLN to start the system. Bypass parameter 1601 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the run state of the system.	
{25}	OVERRIDE ACT	This point indicates if the bypass is in override 1 or override 2.	
{26}	OVERRID CMD	This point is commanded by FLN to select override 2. Override 2 is configured by parameters in bypass group 17.	
{27}	SYSTEM READY	This point indicates the system is ready to accept a run command (1 = READY, 0 = NOTRDY).	
{28}	SYS STARTED	This point the system has received a run command and is started. It may or may not be running based on the RUN ENABLE status.	
{29}	DAY.NIGHT	This is 1 of 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the bypass application.	
30	BYP RUN DLY	This allows FLN to delay running of the system after a run command has been issued.	1614
{31}	BYPASS MODE	This point indicates the Hand/Off/Auto status of the bypass. 0=OFF; 1=HAND; 2=AUTO.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		**Description**	**Drive Parameter**
{32}	DRIVE.BYPASS	This point indicates if the system is selected to operate the motor from the drive or from the bypass.	
{33}	BYP RUNNING	This point indicates the bypass's run status. It differs from the system running status in that it only applies to the bypass's status not the logical OR of the drive and bypass status.	
{34}	RUN ENA ACT	This point indicates the status of the system Run Enable command, regardless of its source (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL).	
{35}	RUN ENA CMD	This point is commanded by FLN to assert the system Run Enable command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Bypass parameter 1602 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
{36}	FLN LOC ACT	This point indicates if the bypass has been placed in "FLN LOCAL" mode by commanding point 68 (FLN LOCAL). Commanding this point to FLN (1) "steals" control from its normal source and places it in FLN control. Note that the HAND mode of the panel has priority over FLN local control.	
{37}	FLN CTL SRC	This point indicates if FLN is a source for control inputs (1 = YES, 0 = NO). Note that this status point is true if any of the following control inputs are from FLN: Run/ Stop, Run Enable, Start Enable 1, Start Enable 2, Start Enable 3 or Start Enable 4.	
{40}	RO 1 COMMAND	This point controls the output state of bypass Relay 1. Bypass parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0107, bit 0
{41}	RO 2 COMMAND	This point controls the output state of bypass Relay 2. Bypass parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0107, bit 1
{42}	RO 3 COMMAND	This point controls the output state of bypass Relay 3. Bypass parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0107, bit 2
{43}	RO 4 COMMAND	This point controls the output state of bypass Relay 4. Bypass parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0107, bit 3
{44}	RO 5 COMMAND	This point controls the output state of bypass Relay 5. Bypass parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0107, bit 4
{48}	RESET RUN TIME	Run Time reset	0108
{49}	RESET KW HOURS	Kilowatt hours reset	0106
{50}	START ENA 1	This point is commanded by FLN to assert the system Start Enable 1 command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Bypass parameter 1603 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
{51}	START ENA 2	This point is commanded by FLN to assert the system Start Enable 1 command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Bypass parameter 1604 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		Description	Drive Parameter
{52}	START ENA 3	This point is commanded by FLN to assert the system Start Enable 1 command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Bypass parameter 1605 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
{53}	START ENA 4	This point is commanded by FLN to assert the system Start Enable 1 command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Bypass parameter 1606 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
{59}	PAR LOCK	When switched to locked prevents parameter changes from the panel.	1619
{68}	FLN LOC CTL	Commands the bypass into FLN Local Control. In this mode, FLN takes the bypass control from the normal source. However, the panel’s HAND mode still has priority.	
{70}	DI 1 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 5
{71}	DI 2 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 4
{72}	DI 3 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 3
{73}	DI 4 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 2
{74}	DI 5 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 1
{75}	DI 6 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0103, bit 0
{76}	RO 1 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0104, bit 4
{77}	RO 2 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0104, bit 3
{78}	RO 3 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0104, bit 2
{79}	RO 4 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0104, bit 1
{80}	RO 5 ACTUAL	This point indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0104, bit 0
86	BYPASS ALARM	This point indicates the current alarm state of the bypass (1 = ALARM, 0 = OK).	
88	ALARM WORD1	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the bypass.	0308
89	ALARM WORD2	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the bypass.	0309
90	LAST FAULT	This point is first in the bypass’s fault log and indicates the most recent fault declared.	0401
93	OK.FAULT BYP	This point indicates the current fault state of the bypass (1 = FAULT, 0 = OK).	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point		**Description**	**Drive Parameter**
94	RESET FAULT	This point is commanded by FLN to reset a faulted bypass (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). Bypass parameter 1607 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this state. This point is "momentary", i.e. it will automatically return to its inactive state once the command is issued. This is a convenience for the user, since this control input is rising-edge sensitive and would otherwise require an explicit command to clear it before a subsequent reset could be issued.	
99	ERROR STATUS	This is 1 of 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the bypass application.	

BACnet protocol technical data – system

System overview -

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL = (0) DRIVE ONLY, the drive's BACnet objects are all supported using the drive's device address. The bypass's BACnet objects related to the control word are no longer valid See *Communication setup – EFB* on page 2-85.

Bypass BACnet objects not valid

Point #	Name
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD
BV11	OVERRIDE CMD
BV12	RUN ENA CMD
BV14	FAULT RESET
BV15	START ENA 1
BV16	START ENA 2
BV17	START ENA 3
BV18	START ENA 4

When bypass parameter 1625 COMM CTL = (1) SYSTEM, the drive's BACnet following objects related to control are no longer available when using the drive's device address.

Drive BACnet objects not valid

Point #	Name
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD
BV12	RUN ENA CMD
BV20	START ENABLE 1
BV21	START ENABLE 2

Drive overview

Bypass parameter Group 53 defines features unique to BACnet, as described below:

Parameter		Default Value	BACnet-specific Description
5301	EFB PROTOCOL ID	x5xx	This parameter indicates the active protocol and its revision. It should read x50xx if BACnet is properly loaded. If this is not the case, confirm that bypass parameter 9802 = BACNET (5).
5302	EFB STATION ID	128	This parameter sets the drive's BACnet MS/TP MAC ID. A temporary value of 0 places the protocol channel in reset.[1]
5303	EFB BAUD RATE	38400	This parameter sets the BACnet MS/TP baud rate.

Parameter		Default Value	BACnet-specific Description
5304	EFB PARITY	0	This parameter sets the BACnet MS/TP character format as follows: 0 = 8N1 1 = 8N2 2 = 8E1 3 = 8O1.
5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE	-	This parameter indicates the active control profile. This parameter has no affect on BACnet behavior.
5306	EFB OK MESSAGES	-	This parameter indicates the number of valid application messages received at this drive. This count does not include MS/TP token passing and polling messages. (For such messages, see 5316).
5307	EFB CRC ERRORS	-	This parameter indicates the number of CRC errors detected, in either the header or data CRCs.
5308	EFB UART ERRORS	-	This parameter indicates the number of UART-related errors (framing, parity) detected.
5309	EFB STATUS	-	This parameter indicates the internal status of the BACnet channel as follows: • IDLE – BACnet channel is configured but not receiving messages. • TIMEOUT – Time between valid messages has exceeded the interval set by parameter 3019. • OFFLINE – BACnet channel is receiving messages NOT addressed to this drive. • ONLINE – BACnet channel is receiving messages addressed to this drive. • RESET – BACnet channel is in reset. • LISTEN ONLY – BACnet channel is in listen-only mode.
5310	EFB PAR 10	5	This parameter sets the BACnet MS/TP response turn-around time, in milliseconds.
5311	EFB PAR 11	0	This parameter, together with parameter 5317, EFB PAR 17, sets BACnet object instance IDs: • For the range 1 to 65,535: This parameter sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0. • For IDs > 65,535: The ID equales 5311’s value plus 10,000 times 5317’s value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 =7/
5312	EFB PAR 12	1	This parameter sets the BACnet Device Object Max Info Frames property.
5313	EFB PAR 13	127	This parameter sets the BACnet Device Object Max Master property.
5314	EFB PAR 14	0	N/A Not supported with BACnet Protocol Version 0506 and higher
5315	EFB PAR 15		N/A Not supported with BACnet Protocol Version 0506 and higher

Parameter		Default Value	BACnet-specific Description
5316	EFB PAR 16	0	This parameter indicates the count of MS/TP tokens passed to this drive.
5317	EFB PAR 17	0	This parameter works with paramter 5311 to set BACnet instance IDs. See parameter 5311.
5318 … 5320	EFB PAR 18…20		N/A - Not supported with BACnet protocol.

Note: The system will function as a master with MAC IDs in the range of 1-127. With MAC ID settings of 128-254, the drive is in slave only mode.

Changes made to drive parameter Group 53, EFB Protocol, do not take affect until you perform one of the following:

- Cycle the bypass power OFF and ON, or
- Set bypass parameter 5302 to 0, and then back to a unique MAC ID, or
- Use the ReinitializeDevice service.

Quick-start sequence - drive communications

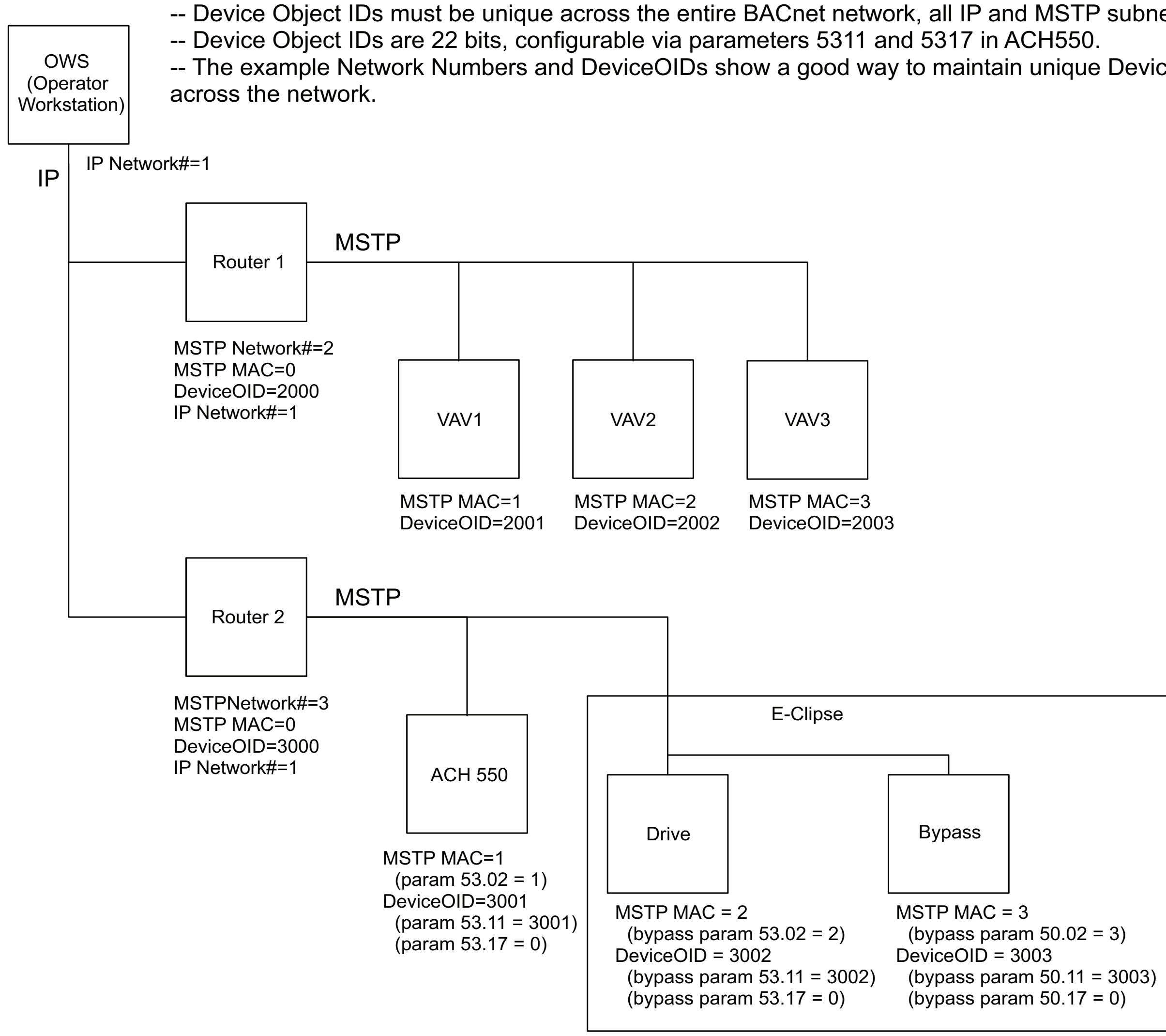
The following steps summarize the process for enabling and configuring BACnet on the ABB E-Clipse Bypass:

1. Enable BACnet protocol: Set bypass parameter 9802, COMM PROTOCOL SEL BACNET (5).
   - To confirm this selection, read bypass parameter 5301, EFB PROTOCOL ID. It should read x5xx (where "x" is any value).
2. Place the BACnet channel in "reset": Set bypass parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = 0.
   - This setting holds the BACnet communication channel in reset while remaining settings are completed.
3. Define the MS/TP baud rate.
   - Set bypass parameter 5303, EFB BAUD RATE = appropriate value
4. Define the Device Object instance.
   - To define a specific device object instance value, use bypass parameters 5311 and 5317 (object instance values must be unique and in the range 1 to 4,194,303).
   - To use the bypass' MS/TP MAC ID as the device object instance value, set bypass parameter 5311 and 5317 = 0.
   - BACnet requires a unique Device Object ID for each device on the BACnet network.

5. Define a unique MS/TP MAC ID. Set bypass parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = appropriate value.
   - Once this parameter is set to a non-zero value, current BACnet settings are "latched" and used for communication until the channel is reset.
   - In order to participate in MS/TP token passing, the MAC ID used must be within the limits defined by other masters' "Max Master" property.
6. Confirm proper BACnet communication.
   - When BACnet communication is operating properly, bypass parameter 5316, EFB PAR 16 (the MS/TP token counter), should be continually increasing.
   - Bypass parameter 5306, UART ERRORS, should be stable.
7. Configure the Device Object Name.
   - BACnet requires a unique name for each device on the BACnet network. Write the Object Name of the Device Object of the drive to a unique text string using the operator workstation or software tool capable of writing BACnet properties. The Object Name cannot be modified with the ABB display panel and only the Device object name is writable in this product. We do not support writing of Device Description.

BACnet Device Address Rules

-- MSTP MAC Addresses must be unique for all devices connected to the same RS485 network.
-- MSTP MAC Address is configurable via parameter 5302 in ACH550.
    1..127 = range of supported Master addresses for ACH550
-- Network Number must be unique for each network (IP and MSTP)
-- Network Number of 0 is reserved for broadcasts
-- Device Object IDs must be unique across the entire BACnet network, all IP and MSTP subnetworks.
-- Device Object IDs are 22 bits, configurable via parameters 5311 and 5317 in ACH550.
-- The example Network Numbers and DeviceOIDs show a good way to maintain unique DeviceOIDs across the network.



Activate drive control functions

Controlling the drive

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any system data required for control (drive only or system)
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe the configuration required for each control function.

Note: The user should change only the parameters for the functions you wish to control via BACnet. All other parameters should typically remain at factory default.

Start/stop direction control – drive

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location.

Bypass Parameter		Value	Description	BACnet Access Point
1601	START/STOP	2 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 or Ext2[2] selected	BV10
1625	COMM CTRL	0 (Drive Only) 1 (System)	1625 = 0 for control signals (Start/ Stop and enables) to go to drive only 1625 = 1 for control signals to go to the system (drive or bypass, depending on keypad mode selection)	N/A

Note: [2] Ext1 = Ref 1
Ext 2 = Ref 2; Ref 2 normally used for PID setpoint commands.

Input reference select

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	BACnet Access Point
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL[2]	COMM (8)	Reference set selection by fieldbus.	BV13
1103	REF1 SEL	COMM (8)	Input reference 1 by fieldbus.	AV16
1106	REF2 SEL	COMM (8)	Input reference 2 by fieldbus.	AV17

Note: [2] Ext1 = Ref 1
Ext 2 = Ref 2; Ref 2 normally used for PID setpoint commands.

Drive relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Only make these drive programming changes if you require control via BACnet.
- Fieldbus controller supplied, binary coded, relay command(s) in the appropriate location.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	BACnet Access Point
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	COMM (35)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	BO0
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	COMM (35)	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	BO1
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	COMM (35)	Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	BO2
1410[3]	RELAY OUTPUT 4	COMM (35)	Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	BO3
1411[3]	RELAY OUTPUT 5	COMM (35)	Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	BO4
1412[3]	RELAY OUTPUT 6	COMM (35)	Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	BO5

Note: [3] More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

Analog output control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied analog value(s) in the appropriate location.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	BACnet Access Point
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	AO0
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	AO1

Feedback from the drive

Pre-defined feedback

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data.

Drive Parameter		BACnet Access Point
0102	SPEED AV0	AV0
0103	SPEED AV0	AV1
0104	CURRENT AV4	AV4
0105	TORQUE AV5	AV5
0106	POWER AV6	AV6
0107	DC BUS VOLT	AV2
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	AV3
0115	KWH COUNTER	AV8
0118	DI1-3 STATUS	B16, B17, B18
0122	RO1-3 STATUS	B10, B11, B12

Mailbox read/write

The ACH550 provides a "Mailbox" function to access parameters that have not been pre-defined by the protocol. Using mailbox, any drive parameter can be identified and read. Mailbox can also be used to adjust parameter settings by writing a value to any parameter identified. The following table describes the use of this function.

Drive Parameter		BACnet Access Point
Mailbox Parameter	Enter the number of the drive parameter to access.	AV25
Mailbox Data	Contains the parameter value after a read, or enter the desired parameter value for a write.	AV26
Mailbox Read	A binary value triggers a read – the value of the "Mailbox Parameter"appears in "Mailbox data".	BV15
Mailbox Write	A binary value triggers a write – the drive value for the "Mailbox Parameter" changes to the value in "Mailbox data".	BV16

Note: You must read and write mailbox values using the drive's internal scaling. For example, the parameter 2202, ACCEL TIME1, has a resolution of 0.1 sec., which means that, in the drive (and in the mailbox), the value 1 = 0.1 seconds. So, a mailbox value of 10 translates to 1.0 second, a mailbox value of 300 translates to 30.0 seconds, etc. Refer to the *Complete parameter list* in the ACH550-UH User's Manual for each parameter's resolution and units of measure.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	BACnet Access Point
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	BI0, BI1, BI2
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4…6 status.	BI3, BI4, BI5

Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) - Drive

PICS summary

BACnet Standard Device Profile. This version of ACH550 BACnet fully conforms to the 'Application-Specific Controller' standard device profile (B-ASC).

Services Supported. The following services are supported by the ACH550:

- I-Am (Response to Who-Is, also broadcast on power-up & other reset)
- I-Have (Response to Who-Has)
- ReadProperty
- WriteProperty
- DeviceCommunicationControl
- ReinitializeDevice

Data Link Layer. The ACH550 implements MS/TP (Master) Data Link Layer. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported (9600, 19200, 38400 & 76800).

MAC ID / Device Object Instance. The ACH550 supports separate MAC ID and Device Object Instance parameters:

- Set the MAC ID using drive parameter 5302. Default: 5302 = 1.
- Set the Device Object Instance using drive parameters 5311 and 5317. Default: Both 5311 and 5317 = 0, which causes the MAC ID to "double" as the Device Object Instance. For Device Object Instance values not linked to the MAC ID, set ID values using 5311 and 5317 = 0.
  – For IDs in the range of 1 to 65,535: Parameter 5311 sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0.
  – For IDs > 65,535: The ID equals 5311's value plus 10,000 times 5317's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71,234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7.

Max Info Frames Property. Configure the Device Object Max Info Frames property using drive parameter 5312. Default: 5312 = 1.

Max Master Property. Configure the Device Object Max Master property using drive parameter 5313. Default: 5313 = 127.

MS/TP token counter

Parameter 5316 stores the count of MS/TP tokens passed to this drive.

Statement

This statement is part of this Standard and is required for its use.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Date:	November 1, 2006
Vendor Name:	ABB, Inc
Product Name:	Low Voltage AC Motor Drive
Product Model Number:	ACH550
Applications Software Version:	0511
Firmware Revision:	314C
BACnet Protocol Revision:	7
Product Description:	The ACH550 is a high-performance adjustable frequency drive specifically designed for commercial automation applications. This product supports native BACnet, connecting directly to the MS/TP LAN. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported, as well as master mode functionality. Over BACnet, the drive can be fully controlled as a standard adjustable frequency drive. In addition, up to 16 configurable I/O ports are available over BACnet for user applications.
BACnet Standardized Device Profile (Annex L):	☐ BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) ☐ BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) ☐ BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) ☒ BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) ☐ BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) ☐ BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA)
List all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks Supported (Annex K):	DS-RP-B, DS-WP-B, DM-DDB-B, DM-DOB-B, DM-DCC-B, DM-RD-B.
Segmentation Capability:	☐ Segmented requests supported. Window Size ____ ☐ Segmented responses supported. Window Size ____
Standard Object Types Supported: An object type is supported if it may be present in the device. For each standard Object Type supported provide the following data: 1) Whether objects of this type are dynamically creatable using the CreateObject service 2) Whether objects of this type are dynamically detectable using the DeleteObject service 3) List of the optional properties supported 4) List of all properties that are writable where not otherwise required by this standard 5) List of proprietary properties and for each its property identifier, datatype, and meaning 6) List of any property range restrictions	See table at *Object/property support matrix* on page *2-159*.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Data Link Layer Options:	☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J) ☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J), Foreign Device ☐ ISO 8802-3, Ethernet (Clause 7) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, 2.5 Mb. ARCNET (Clause 8) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, EIA-485 ARCNET (Clause 8), baud rate(s) ___ ☒ MS/TP master (Clause 9), baud rate(s): 9600, 19200, 38400, 76800 ☐ MS/TP slave (Clause 9), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, EIA 232 (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, modem, (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ LonTalk, (Clause 11), medium: __________ ☐ Other: __________
Device Address Binding: Is static device binding supported? (This is currently necessary for two-way communication with MS/TP slaves and certain other devices.)	☐ Yes ☒ No
Networking Options:	☐ Router, Clause 6 - List all routing configurations, e.g., ARCNET-Ethernet, Ethernet-MS/TP, etc. ☐ Annex H, BACnet Tunneling Router over IP ☐ BACnet/IP Broadcast Management Device (BBMD)
Does the BBMD support registrations by Foreign Devices?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Character Sets Supported: Indicating support for multiple character sets does not imply that they can all be supported simultaneously.	☒ ANSI X3.4 ☐ IBM™/Microsoft™ DBCS ☐ ISO 8859-1 ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-2) ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-4) ☐ JIS C 6226
If this product is a communication gateway, describe the types of non-BACnet equipment/network(s) that the gateway supports:	

Object definitions – drive

Object/property support matrix

The following table summarizes the Object Types/Properties Supported:

Property	Object Type						
	Device	Binary Input	Binary Output	Binary Value	Analog Input	Analog Output	Analog Value
Object Identifier	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Name	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Type	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
System Status	✓						
Vendor Name	✓						
Vendor Identifier	✓						
Model Name	✓						
Firmware Revision	✓						
Appl Software Revision	✓						
Protocol Version	✓						
Protocol Revision	✓						
Services Supported	✓						
Object Types Supported	✓						
Object List	✓						
Max APDU Length	✓						
Segmentation Support	✓						
APDU Timeout	✓						
Number APDU Retries	✓						
Max Master	✓						
Max Info Frames	✓						
Device Address Binding	✓						
Database Revision	✓						
Present Value		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Status Flags		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Event State		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Out-of-Service		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Units					✓	✓	✓
Priority Array			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Relinquish Default			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Polarity		✓	✓				
Active Text		✓	✓	✓			
Inactive Text		✓	✓	✓			

* For commandable values only.

Binary input object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Binary Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BI0	RO 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI1	RO 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI2	RO 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI3	RO 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	R
BI4	RO 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI5	RO 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI6	DI 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI7	DI 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI8	DI 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI9	DI 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 4.	ON/OFF	R
BI10	DI 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 5.	ON/OFF	R
BI11	DI 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 6.	ON/OFF	R

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary output object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Binary Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO0	RO1 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 1. This control requires that parameter 1401 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO1	RO2 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 2. This control requires that parameter 1402 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO2	RO3 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 3. This control requires that parameter 1403 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO3	RO4 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 4. This control requires that parameter 1410 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO4	RO5 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 5. This control requires that parameter 1411 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO5	RO6 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 6. This control requires that parameter 1412 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary value object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Binary Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV0	RUN/STOP ACT	This object indicates the drive Run Status, regardless of the control source.	RUN/STOP	R
BV1	FWD/REV ACT	This object indicates the motor's rotation direction, regardless of the control source.	REV/FWD	R
BV2	FAULT ACT	this object indicates the drive's fault status.	FAULT/OK	R
BV3	EXT 1/2 ACT	This object indicates which control source is active: External 1 or External 2.	EXT2/EXT1	R
BV4	HAND/AUTO ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is under Hand or Auto control.	HAND/AUTO	R
BV5	ALARM ACT	This object indicates the drive's alarm status.	ALARM/OK	R
BV6	MAINT REQ	This object indicates the drive's maintenance status. Refer to Group 29 in the drive's parameter descriptions.	MAINT/OK	R
BV7	DRIVE READY	This object indicates whether the drive is ready to accept a run command.	READY/NOT READY	R
BV8	AT SETPOINT	This object indicates whether the drive is at the commanded setpoint.	YES/NO	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV9	ENABLE ACT	This object indicates the System Enable command status (the combination of all Run and Start Enables), regardless of the control source.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	R
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD	This object commands a drive start. Control requires either: • Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or • Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2.	RUN/STOP	C
BV11	FWD/REV CMD	This object commands a motor rotation direction change. Control requires 1003 = REQUEST and either: • Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or • Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2.	REV/FWD	C
BV12	RUN ENA CMD	This object commands Run Enable. Control requires parameter 1601 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV13	EXT 1/2 CMD	This object selects ext1 or ext2 as the active control source. Control requires parameter 1102 value = COMM.	EXT2/EXT1	C
BV14	FAULT RESET	This object resets a faulted drive. The command is rising-edge triggered. Control requires parameter 1604 value = COMM.	RESET/NO	C
BV15	MBOX READ	This object reads a parameter (defined by AV25 MBOX PARAM) and returns it in AV26 MBOX DATA.	READ/RESET	W
BV16	MBOX WRITE	This object writes the data value specified by AV26, MBOX DATA, to a parameter (defined by AV25, MBOX PARAM).	WRITE/RESET	W
BV17	LOCK PANEL	This object locks the panel and prevents parameter changes. The corresponding drive parameter is 1602.	LOCK/UNLOCK	W
BV18	CTL OVERRIDE CMD	This object commands the drive into BACnet Control Override. In this mode, BACnet takes drive control from the normal source. However, the control panel's HAND mode has priority over BACnet Control Override.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV19	CTL OVERRIDE ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is in BACnet Control Override. (See BV18.)	ON/OFF	R
BV20	START ENABLE 1	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1608 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV21	START ENABLE 2	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1609 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog input object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Analog Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AI0	ANALOG INPUT 1	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0120.	Percent	R
AI1	ANALOG INPUT 2	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0121.	Percent	R

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog output object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Analog Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AO0	AO 1 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0135, COMM VALUE 1. Control requires parameter 1501 value = 135.	Percent	C
AO1	AO 2 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0136, COMM VALUE 2. Control requires parameter 1507 value = 136.	Percent	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog value object instance summary – drive

The following table summarizes the Analog Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV0	OUTPUT SPEED	This object indicates the calculated motor speed in RPM. The corresponding drive parameter is 0102.	RPM	R
AV1	OUTPUT FREQ	This object indicates the output frequency applied to the motor in Hz. The corresponding drive parameter is 0103.	Hertz	R
AV2	DC BUS VOLT	This object indicates the drive’s DC bus voltage level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0107.	Volts	R
AV3	OUTPUT VOLT	This object indicates the AC output voltage applied to the motor. The corresponding drive parameter is 0109.	Volts	R
AV4	CURRENT	This object indicates the measured output current. The corresponding drive parameter is 0104.	Amps	R
AV5	TORQUE	This object indicates the calculated motor output torque as a percentage of nominal torque. The corresponding drive parameter is 0105.	Percent	R
AV6	POWER	This object indicates the measured output power in kW. The corresponding drive parameter is 0106.	Kilowatts	R
AV7	DRIVE TEMP	This object indicates the measured heatsink temperature in °C. The corresponding drive parameter is 0110.	°C	R
AV8	KWH (R)	This object indicates, in kW hours, the drive’s accumulated energy usage since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0115.	kWh	W
AV9	KWH (NR)	This object indicates the drive’s accumulated energy usage in MW hours. The value cannot be reset.	MWh	R
AV10	PRC PID FBCK	This object is the Process PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0130.	Percent	R
AV11	PRC PID DEV	This object is the Process PID output signal’s deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0132.	Percent	R
AV12	EXT PID FBCK	This object is the External PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0131.	Percent	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV13	EXT PID DEV	This object is the External PID output signal's deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0133.	Percent	R
AV14	RUN TIME (R)	This object indicates, in hours, the drive's accumulated run time since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0114.	Hours	W
AV15	MOTOR TEMP	This object indicates the drive's motor temperature, as set up in parameter Group 35. The corresponding drive parameter is 0145.	°C	R
AV16	INPUT REF 1	This object sets Input Reference 1. Control requires parameter 1103 value = COMM.	Percent	C
AV17	INPUT REF 2	This object sets either: • Input Reference 2. Control requires parameter 1106 value = COMM. • Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = PID1 OUT and parameter 4010 value = COMM.	Percent	C
AV18	LAST FLT	This object indicates the most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0401.	None	R
AV19	PREV FLT 1	This object indicates the second most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0412.	None	R
AV20	PREV FLT 2	This object indicates the third most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0413.	None	R
AV21	AO 1 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 1's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0124.	Milliamps	R
AV22	AO 2 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 2's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0125.	Milliamps	R
AV23	ACCEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 acceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2202.	Seconds	W
AV24	DECEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 deceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2203.	Seconds	W
AV25	MBOX PARAM	This object defines the parameter to be read or written to by the mailbox function. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W
AV26	MBOX DATA	This object holds the mailbox function's parameter value – a value that was read, or is to be written. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV27	EXT PID STPT	This object sets the External PID controller setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 4211. Control requires parameter 4210, PID SETPOINT SEL, value = 19 (INTERNAL).	Percent	C

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Date:	March 1, 2008
Vendor Name:	ABB, Inc
Product Name:	ABB E-Clipse Bypass
Product Model Number:	VCR, VDR, BCR, and BDR
Applications Software Version:	103F
Firmware Revision:	1508
BACnet Protocol Revision:	7
Product Description:	The ABB E-Clipse Bypass is an optional feature to the ACH550 high-performance adjustable frequency drive specifically designed for commercial automation applications. This product supports native BACnet, connecting directly to the MS/TP LAN. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported, as well as master mode functionality. Over BACnet, the drive and bypass can be fully controlled as a standard adjustable frequency drive and a constant speed drive bypass. In addition, up to 24 configurable I/O are available over BACnet to the user application.
BACnet Standardized Device Profile (Annex L):	☐ BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) ☐ BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) ☐ BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) ☒ BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) ☐ BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) ☐ BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA)
List all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks Supported (Annex K):	DS-RP-B, DS-RPM-B, DS-WP-B, DM-DDB-B, DM-DOB-B, DM-DCC-B, DM-RD-B
Segmentation Capability:	☐ Segmented requests supported. Window Size ____ ☐ Segmented responses supported. Window Size ____
Standard Object Types Supported:	Object instantiation is static, i.e. objects cannot be created or deleted. Refer to tables at end of this document for object details
Data Link Layer Options:	☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J) ☐ BACnet IP, (Annex J), Foreign Device ☐ ISO 8802-3, Ethernet (Clause 7) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, 2.5 Mb. ARCNET (Clause 8) ☐ ANSI/ATA 878.1, EIA-485 ARCNET (Clause 8), baud rate(s) ___ ☒ MS/TP master (Clause 9), baud rate(s): 9600, 19200, 38400, 76800 ☐ MS/TP slave (Clause 9), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, EIA 232 (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ Point-To-Point, modem, (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ___ ☐ LonTalk, (Clause 11), medium: __________ ☐ Other: __________
Device Address Binding: Is static device binding supported? (This is currently necessary for two-way communication with MS/TP slaves and certain other devices.)	☐ Yes ☒ No
Networking Options:	☐ Router, Clause 6 - List all routing configurations, e.g., ARCNET-Ethernet, Ethernet-MS/TP, etc. ☐ Annex H, BACnet Tunneling Router over IP ☐ BACnet/IP Broadcast Management Device (BBMD)

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Does the BBMD support registrations by Foreign Devices?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Character Sets Supported: Indicating support for multiple character sets does not imply that they can all be supported simultaneously.	☒ ANSI X3.4 ☐ IBM™/Microsoft™ DBCS ☐ ISO 8859-1 ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-2) ☐ ISO 10646 (UCS-4) ☐ JIS C 6226
If this product is a communication gateway, describe the types of non-BACnet equipment/network(s) that the gateway supports:	

Object definitions – bypass

Object/property support matrix – bypass

The following table summarizes the Object Types/Properties Supported:

Property	Object Type						
	Device	Binary Input	Binary Output	Binary Value	Analog Input	Analog Output	Analog Value
Object Identifier	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Name	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Type	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Description	✓						
System Status	✓						
Vendor Name	✓						
Vendor Identifier	✓						
Model Name	✓						
Firmware Revision	✓						
Appl Software Revision	✓						
Protocol Version	✓						
Protocol Revision	✓						
Services Supported	✓						
Object Types Supported	✓						
Object List	✓						
Max APDU Length	✓						
Segmentation Support	✓						
APDU Timeout	✓						
Number APDU Retries	✓						
Max Master	✓						
Max Info Frames	✓						
Device Address Binding	✓						
Database Revision	✓						
Present Value		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Status Flags		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Event State		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Out-of-Service		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Units					✓	✓	✓
Priority Array			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Relinquish Default			✓	✓ *		✓	✓ *
Polarity		✓	✓				
Active Text		✓	✓	✓			
Inactive Text		✓	✓	✓			

* For commandable values only.

BACnet input object instance summary – bypass

The following table summarizes the Binary Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BI0	RO 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI1	RO 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI2	RO 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI3	RO 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 4.	ON/OFF	R
BI4	RO 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Relay Output 5.	ON/OFF	R
BI5	DI 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI6	DI 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI7	DI 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI8	DI 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 4.	ON/OFF	R
BI9	DI 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 5.	ON/OFF	R
BI10	DI 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of bypass Digital Input 6.	ON/OFF	R

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

BACnet output object instance summary – bypass

The following table summarizes the Binary Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO0	RO1 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of bypass Relay Output 1. This control requires that parameter 1401 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO1	RO2 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of bypass Relay Output 2. This control requires that parameter 1404 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO2	RO3 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of bypass Relay Output 3. This control requires that parameter 1407 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO3	RO4 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of bypass Relay Output 4. This control requires that parameter 1410 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO4	RO5 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of bypass Relay Output 5. This control requires that parameter 1413 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

BACnet value object instance summary – bypass

The following table summarizes the Binary Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV0	SYS RUN ACT	This Object indicates the system run status regardless of the control source.	RUN/STOP	R
BV1	SYST START ACT	This Object indicates the system started staus regardless of the control source.	START/NO START	R
BV2	BYP FLT ACT	This Object indicates the bypass fault status.	FAULT/OK	R
BV3	SYS FLT ACT	This Object indicates the system fault status.	FAULT/OK	R
BV4	SYSTEM MODE	This Object indicates if the bypass or the dirve is controlling the motor.	BYPASS/ DRIVE	R
BV5	ALARM ACT	This Object indicates the bypass alarm status.	ALARM/OK	R
BV6	BYP RUN ACT	This Object indicates the bypass run status regardless of the control source.	RUN/STOP	R
BV7	READY TO RUN	This Object indicates whether the system is ready to receive a run command.	READY/NO READY	R
BV8	UNDERLOAD	This Object indicates whether the system is in an underload condition.	YES/NO	R
BV9	ENABLE ACT	This Object indicates the System Enable command status (the combination of all Run and Start Enables), regardless of the control source.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD	This Object commands a system start. This requires bypass parameter 16.01 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	RUN/ STOP	C
BV11	OVERRIDE CMD	This Object commands the system to an override 2 condition. This requires bypass parameter 17.01 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	YES/NO	C
BV12	RUN ENA CMD	This Object commands the system Run Enable. This requires bypass parameter 16.02 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV13	OVERRIDE ACT	This Object indicates if override 1 or override 2 is active regardless of the control source.	YES/NO	R
BV14	FAULT RESET	This Object resets a faulted bypass. This requires bypass parameter 16.07 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	RESET/ NO	C
BV15	START ENABLE 1	This Object commands the system Start Enable 1. This requires bypass parameter 16.03 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV16	START ENABLE 2	This Object commands the system Start Enable 2. This requires bypass parameter 16.04 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV17	START ENABLE 3	This Object commands the system Start Enable 3. This requires bypass parameter 16.05 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV18	START ENABLE 4	This Object commands the system Start Enable 4. This requires bypass parameter 16.06 value = COMM for BACnet to control.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV19	PAR LOCK	When switched to locked prevents parameter changes from the panel.	LOCK / UNLOCK	W
BV20	CTL OVERRIDE CMD	Commands the bypass into BACnet Control Override. In this mode, BACnet takes the bypass control from the normal source. However, the panel's HAND mode still has priority.	ON / OFF	C
BV21	MBOX READ	This object reads a parameter (defined by AV13 MBOX PARAM) and returns it in AV14 MBOX DATA	READ / RESET	W

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV22	MBOX WRITE	This object writes the data value specified by AV14, MBOX DATA, to a parameter (defined by AV13, MBOX PARAM).	WRITE / RESET	W

Note: For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

BACnet analog value object instance summary – bypass

The following table summarizes the Analog Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV0	CURRENT	This Object indicates the measured output current. The corresponding bypass parameter is 0101.	Amps	R
AV1	BYPASS MODE	This Object indicates the Hand/Off/Auto status of the bypass. 0=OFF; 1=HAND; 2=AUTO.	None	R
AV2	BYP RUN DLY	This Object sets the bypass Run delay. The corresponding bypass parameter is 1614	Secs	W
AV3	LAST FLT	This Object indicates the last fault recorded by the bypass. The corresponding bypass parameter is 0401	None	R
AV4	ALARM WORD 1	This Object indicates the first alarm status word of the bypass. The corresponding bypass parameter is 0308	None	R
AV5	ALARM WORD 2	This Object indicates the first alarm status word of the bypass. The corresponding bypass parameter is 0309	None	R
AV6	INPUT VOLT	Average of line-line input voltage	Volts	R
AV7	PCB TEMP	DEG C of bypass board	DEG C	R
AV8	KW HOURS	Bypass mode kilowatt hours	kWh	W
AV9	RUN TIME	Bypass mode run hours	Hrs	W
AV10	A-B VOLT	Phase A - Phase B voltage	Volts	R
AV11	B-C VOLT	Phase B - Phase C voltage	Volts	R
AV12	C-B VOLT	Phase C - Phase A voltage	Volts	R
AV13	MBOX PARAM	This object defines the parameter to be read or written to by the mailbox function. See BV21 and BV22.	None	W
AV14	MBOX DATA	This object holds the mailbox function's parameter value - a value that was read, or is to be written. See BV21 and BV22.	None	W

Modbus protocol technical data – system

System overview

The Modbus® protocol was introduced by Modicon, Inc. for use in control environments featuring Modicon programmable controllers. Due to its ease of use and implementation, this common PLC language was quickly adopted as a de-facto standard for integration of a wide variety of master controllers and slave devices.

Modbus is a serial, asynchronous protocol. Transactions are half-duplex, featuring a single Master controlling one or more Slaves. While RS232 can be used for point-to-point communication between a single Master and a single Slave, a more common implementation features a multi-drop EIA 485 network with a single Master controlling multiple Slaves. The ABB E-Clipse bypass features EIA 485 for its Modbus physical interface.

RTU

The Modbus specification defines two distinct transmission modes: ASCII and RTU. The ABB E-Clipse Bypass supports RTU only.

Feature summary

The following Modbus function codes are supported by the system.

Function	Code (Hex)	Description
Read Coil Status	0x01	Read discrete output status. For the system, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Read Discrete Input Status	0x02	Read discrete inputs status. For the system, the individual bits of the status word are mapped to Inputs 1…16 or 1…32, depending on the active profile. Terminal inputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Input 33 (e.g. DI1=Input 33).
Read Multiple Holding Registers	0x03	Read multiple holding registers. For the system, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read Multiple Input Registers	0x04	Read multiple input registers. For the system, the 2 analog input channels are mapped as input registers 1 & 2.
Force Single Coil	0x05	Write a single discrete output. For the system, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Single Holding Register	0x06	Write single holding register. For the system, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Diagnostics	0x08	Perform Modbus diagnostics. Subcodes for Query (0x00), Restart (0x01) & Listen Only (0x04) are supported.
Force Multiple Coils	0x0F	Write multiple discrete outputs. For the system, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1…16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x10	Write multiple holding registers. For the system, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read/Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x17	This function combines functions 0x03 and 0x10 into a single command.

Mapping summary

The following table summarizes the mapping between the system (parameters and I/ 0) and Modbus reference space. For details, see *Modbus addressing* below.

ACH550	Modbus Reference	Supported Function Codes
• Control Bits • Relay Outputs	Coils(0xxxx)	• 01 – Read Coil Status • 05 – Force Single Coil • 15 – Force Multiple Coils
• Status Bits • Discrete Inputs	Discrete Inputs(1xxxx)	• 02 – Read Input Status
• Analog Inputs	Input Registers(3xxxxx)	• 04 – Read Input Registers
• Parameters • Control/Status Words • References	Holding Registers(4xxxx)	• 03 – Read 4X Registers • 06 – Preset Single 4X Register • 16 – Preset Multiple 4X Registers • 23 – Read/Write 4X Registers

Communication profiles

When communicating by Modbus, the drive supports multiple profiles for control and status information. Bypass parameter 5305 (EFB CTRL PROFILE) selects the profile used. If bypass parameter 1625 = (1) SYSTEM then the drive and bypass profile are fixed ABB BYPASS PROFILE. See section Bypass Overview for ABB BYPASS PROFILE

- ABB DRV LIM – The primary (and default) profile is the ABB DRV LIM profile, which standardizes the control interface with ACH400 and ACH550 drive. This profile is based on the PROFIBUS interface, and is discussed in detail in the following sections.
- DCU PROFILE – Another profile is called the DCU PROFILE. It extends the control and status interface to 32 bits.
- ABB DRV FULL – This profile standardizes the control interface with ACS600 and ACS800 drive. This profile is also based on the PROFIBUS interface, and supports two control word bits not supported by the ABB DRV LIM profile.

Modbus addressing

With Modbus, each function code implies access to a specific Modbus reference set. Thus, the leading digit is not included in the address field of a Modbus message.

Note: The drive supports the zero-based addressing of the Modbus specification. Holding register 40002 is addressed as 0001 in a Modbus message. Similarly, coil 33 is addressed as 0032 in a Modbus message.

Refer again to the *Mapping summary* above. The following sections describe, in detail, the mapping to each Modbus reference set.

0xxxx Mapping – Modbus Coils. The bypass maps the following information to the 0xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Coils:

- Bit-wise map of the CONTROL WORD (selected using bypass parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 coils are reserved for this purpose.
- Relay output states, numbered sequentially beginning with coil 00033.

The following table summarizes the 0xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	**Internal Location (All Profiles)**	ABB DRV LIM **BP Param (5305 = 0)**	DCU PROFILE **BP Param (5305 = 1)**	ABB DRV FULL **BP Param (5305 = 2)**
00001	CONTROL WORD – Bit 0	OFF1*	STOP	OFF1*
00002	CONTROL WORD – Bit 1	OFF2*	START	OFF2*
00003	CONTROL WORD – Bit 2	OFF3*	REVERSE	OFF3*
00004	CONTROL WORD – Bit 3	START	N/A	START
00005	CONTROL WORD – Bit 4	N/A	RESET	RAMP_OUT_ZERO*
00006	CONTROL WORD – Bit 5	RAMP_HOLD*	EXT2	RAMP_HOLD*
00007	CONTROL WORD – Bit 6	RAMP_IN_ZERO*	RUN_DISABLE	RAMP_IN_ZERO*
00008	CONTROL WORD – Bit 7	RESET	STPMODE_R	RESET
00009	CONTROL WORD – Bit 8	N/A	STPMODE_EM	N/A
00010	CONTROL WORD – Bit 9	N/A	STPMODE_C	N/A
00011	CONTROL WORD – Bit 10	N/A	RAMP_2	REMOTE_CMD*
00012	CONTROL WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	RAMP_OUT_0	EXT2
00013	CONTROL WORD – Bit 12	N/A	RAMP_HOLD	N/A
00014	CONTROL WORD – Bit 13	N/A	RAMP_IN_0	N/A
00015	CONTROL WORD – Bit 14	N/A	REQ_LOCALLOCK	N/A
00016	CONTROL WORD – Bit 15	N/A	TORQLIM2	N/A
00017	CONTROL WORD – Bit 16	Does not apply	FBLOCAL_CTL	Does not apply
00018	CONTROL WORD – Bit 17		FBLOCAL_REF	
00019	CONTROL WORD – Bit 18		START_DISABLE1	
00020	CONTROL WORD – Bit 19		START_DISABLE2	
00021… **0**0032	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
00033	RELAY OUTPUT 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1
00034	RELAY OUTPUT 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2
00035	RELAY OUTPUT 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3
00036	RELAY OUTPUT 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4
00037	RELAY OUTPUT 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5
00038	RELAY OUTPUT 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6

* = Active low

For the 0xxxx registers:

- Status is always readable.
- Forcing is allowed by user configuration of the drive for fieldbus control.
- Additional relay outputs are added sequentially.

The system supports the following Modbus function codes for coils:

Function Code	Description
01	Read coil status
05	Force single coil
15 (0x0F Hex)	Force multiple coils

1xxxx Mapping – Modbus Discrete Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 1xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Discrete Inputs:

- Bit-wise map of the STATUS WORD (selected using bypass parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 inputs are reserved for this purpose.
- Discrete hardware inputs, numbered sequentially beginning with input 33.

The following table summarizes the 1xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV **BP Param (5305 = 0 or 2)**	DCU PROFILE **BP Param (5305 = 1)**
10001	STATUS WORD – Bit 0	RDY_ON	READY
10002	STATUS WORD – Bit 1	RDY_RUN	ENABLED
10003	STATUS WORD – Bit 2	RDY_REF	STARTED
10004	STATUS WORD – Bit 3	TRIPPED	RUNNING
10005	STATUS WORD – Bit 4	OFF_2_STA*	ZERO_SPEED
10006	STATUS WORD – Bit 5	OFF_3_STA*	ACCELERATE
10007	STATUS WORD – Bit 6	SWC_ON_INHIB	DECELERATE
10008	STATUS WORD – Bit 7	ALARM	AT_SETPOINT
10009	STATUS WORD – Bit 8	AT_SETPOINT	LIMIT
10010	STATUS WORD – Bit 9	REMOTE	SUPERVISION
10011	STATUS WORD – Bit 10	ABOVE_LIMIT	REV_REF
10012	STATUS WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	REV_ACT
10013	STATUS WORD – Bit 12	RUN_ENABLE	PANEL_LOCAL
10014	STATUS WORD – Bit 13	N/A	FIELDBUS_LOCAL
10015	STATUS WORD – Bit 14	N/A	EXT2_ACT
10016	STATUS WORD – Bit 15	N/A	FAULT
10017	STATUS WORD – Bit 16	Reserved	ALARM
10018	STATUS WORD – Bit 17	Reserved	REQ_MAINT
10019	STATUS WORD – Bit 18	Reserved	DIRLOCK
10020	STATUS WORD – Bit 19	Reserved	LOCALLOCK
10021	STATUS WORD – Bit 20	Reserved	CTL_MODE
10022	STATUS WORD – Bit 21	Reserved	Reserved
10023	STATUS WORD – Bit 22	Reserved	Reserved
10024	STATUS WORD – Bit 23	Reserved	Reserved
10025	STATUS WORD – Bit 24	Reserved	Reserved
10026	STATUS WORD – Bit 25	Reserved	Reserved

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV **BP Param (5305 = 0 or 2)**	DCU PROFILE **BP Param (5305 = 1)**
10027	STATUS WORD – Bit 26	Reserved	REQ_CTL
10028	STATUS WORD – Bit 27	Reserved	REQ_REF1
10029	STATUS WORD – Bit 28	Reserved	REQ_REF2
10030	STATUS WORD – Bit 29	Reserved	REQ_REF2EXT
10031	STATUS WORD – Bit 30	Reserved	ACK_STARTINH
10032	STATUS WORD – Bit 31	Reserved	ACK_OFF_ILCK
10033	DI1	DI1	DI1
10034	DI2	DI2	DI2
10035	DI3	DI3	DI3
10036	DI4	DI4	DI4
10037	DI5	DI5	DI5
10038	DI6	DI6	DI6

* = Active low

For the 1xxxx registers:

- Additional discrete inputs are added sequentially.

The system supports the following Modbus function codes for discrete inputs:

Function Code	Description
02	Read input status

3xxxx Mapping – Modbus Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 3xxxx Modbus addresses called Modbus input registers:

- Any user defined analog inputs.

The following table summarizes the input registers:

Modbus Reference	Internal Location (All Profiles)	Remarks
30001	AI1	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 1 (0…100%).
30002	AI2	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 2 (0…100%).

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for 3xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
04	Read 3xxxx input status

4xxxx Register Mapping. The drive maps its parameters and other data to the 4xxxx holding registers as follows:

- 40001…40099 map to drive control and actual values. These registers are described in the table below.
- 40101…49999 map to drive parameters 0101…9999. Register addresses that do not correspond to drive parameters are invalid. If there is an attempt to read or

write outside the parameter addresses, the Modbus interface returns an exception code to the controller.

The following table summarizes the 4xxxx drive control registers 40001…40099 (for 4xxxx registers above 40099, see the drive parameter list, e.g. 40102 is parameter 0102):

Modbus Register		Access	Remarks
40001	ABB DRIVES PROFILE CONTROL WORD	R/W	Maps directly to the profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if bypass parameter 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB drive profile). Bypass parameter 5319 holds a copy in hex format.
40002	Reference 1	R/W	Range = 0…+20000 (scaled to 0…1105 REF1 MAX), or -20000…0 (scaled to 1105 REF1 MAX…0).
40003	Reference 2	R/W	Range = 0…+10000 (scaled to 0…1108 REF2 MAX), or -10000…0 (scaled to 1108 REF2 MAX…0).
40004	ABB DRIVES PROFILE STATUS WORD	R	Maps directly to the profile'S STATUS WORD. Supported only if bypass parameter 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB bypass profile). Bypass parameter 5320 holds a copy in hex format.
40005	Actual 1 (select using 5310)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0103 OUTPUT FREQ. Use parameter 5310 to select a different actual value for this register.
40006	Actual 2 (select using 5311)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0104 CURRENT. Use parameter 5311 to select a different actual value for this register.
40007	Actual 3 (select using 5312)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5312 to select an actual value for this register.
40008	Actual 4 (select by 5313)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5313 to select an actual value for this register.
40009	Actual 5 (select using 5314)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5314 to select an actual value for this register.
40010	Actual 6 (select using 5315)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5315 to select an actual value for this register.
40011	Actual 7 (select using 5316)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5316 to select an actual value for this register.
40012	Actual 8 (select using 5317)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use bypass parameter 5317 to select an actual value for this register.
40031	DCU CONTROL WORD LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if BP Param 5305 = 1. See bypass parameter 0301.
40032	DCU CONTROL WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if BP Param 5305 = 1. See bypass parameter 0302.
40033	DCU STATUS WORD LSW	R	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if BP Param 5305 = 1. See bypass parameter 0303.
40034	DCU STATUS WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if BP Param 5305 = 1. See bypass parameter 0304.
40045	ACH550 REF1 LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF1. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0111.

Modbus Register		Access	Remarks
40046	ACH550 REF1 MSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF1. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0111.
40047	ACH550 REF2 LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF2. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0112.
40048	ACH550 REF2 MSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's REF2. Supported only if BP Parameter 5305 = 1. See drive parameter 0112.

For the Modbus protocol, drive parameters in group 53 report the parameter mapping to 4xxxx Registers.

BP Param	Description
5310	EFB PAR 10 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40005.
5311	EFB PAR 11 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40006.
5312	EFB PAR 12 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40007.
5313	EFB PAR 13 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40008.
5314	EFB PAR 14 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40009.
5315	EFB PAR 15 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40010.
5316	EFB PAR 16 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40011.
5317	EFB PAR 17 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40012.
5318	Reserved.
5319	EFB PAR 19 Holds a copy (in hex) of the ABB DRIVES PROFILE CONTROL WORD, Modbus register 40001.
5320	EFB PAR 20 Holds a copy (in hex) of the ABB DRIVES PROFILE STATUS WORD, Modbus register 40004.

Except where restricted by the system, all parameters are available for both reading and writing. The parameter writes are verified for the correct value, and for a valid register addresses.

Note: Parameter writes through standard Modbus are always volatile i.e. modified values are not automatically stored to permanent memory. Use bypass parameter 1615 PARAM. SAVE to save all altered values.

The system supports the following Modbus function codes for 4xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
03	Read holding 4xxxx registers
06	Preset single 4xxxx register
16 (0x10 Hex)	Preset multiple 4xxxx registers
23 (0x17 Hex)	Read/write 4xxxx registers

Actual values

The contents of the register addresses 40005…40012 are ACTUAL VALUES and are:

- Specified using bypass parameters 5310…5317.
- Read-only values containing information on the operation of the drive.
- 16-bit words containing a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- When negative values, written as the two’s complement of the corresponding positive value.
- Scaled as described earlier in *Actual value scaling*.

Exception codes

Exception codes are serial communication responses from the drive. The drive supports the standard Modbus exception codes defined below.

Exception Code	Name	Meaning
01	ILLEGAL FUNCTION	Unsupported Command
02	ILLEGAL DATA ADDRESS	The data address received in the query is not allowable. It is not a defined parameter/group.
03	ILLEGAL DATA VALUE	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for the ACH550, because it is one of the following: • Outside min. or max. limits. • Parameter is read-only. • Message is too long. • Parameter write not allowed when start is active. • Parameter write not allowed when factory macro is selected.

ABB control profiles technical data – drive

Overview

ABB drives profile

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including Modbus and the protocols available on the FBA module. Two implementations of the ABB drives profile are available:

- ABB DRV FULL – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACS600 and ACS800 drives.
- ABB DRV LIM – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACH400 and ACH550 drives. This implementation does not support two control word bits supported by ABB DRV FULL.

Except as noted, the following *ABB drives profile* descriptions apply to both implementations.

DCU profile

The DCU profile extends the control and status interface to 32 bits.

Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the bypass from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus master station sends the CONTROL WORD to the system . The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD (ABB drives profile version) requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.
- The serial communication channel used is configured to use an ABB control profile. For example, to use the control profile ABB DRV FULL, requires both bypass parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 1 (STD MODBUS), and bypass parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE = 2 (ABB DRV FULL).

ABB drives profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCHON INHIBITED
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by drive parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED **WARNING!** Be sure motor and bypass equipment can be stopped using this mode.
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See bypass parameter 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also actives the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	Unused (**ABB DRV LIM**)			
	RAMP_OUT_ ZERO (**ABB DRV FULL**)	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if bypass parameter 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8…9	Unused			

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
10	Unused (ABB DRV LIM)			
	REMOTE_CMD (ABB DRV FULL)	1		Fieldbus control enabled.
		0		• CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. • CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. • Ref and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12…15	Unused			

DCU profile

The following tables describe the CONTROL WORD content for the DCU profile.

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Command/Req.**	**Comments**
0	STOP	1	Stop	Stops according to either the stop mode parameter or the stop mode requests (bits 7 and 8). Simultaneous STOP and START commands result in a stop command.
		0	(no op)	
1	START	1	Start	
		0	(no op)	
2	REVERSE	1	Reverse direction	This bit XOR'd with the sign of the reference defines direction.
		0	Forward direction	
3	LOCAL	1	Local mode	When the fieldbus sets this bit, it steals control and the bypass moves to fieldbus local control mode.
		0	External mode	
4	RESET	-> 1	Reset	Edge sensitive.
		other	(no op)	
5	EXT2	1	Switch to EXT2	
		0	Switch to EXT1	
6	RUN_DISABLE	1	Run disable	Inverted run enable.
		0	Run enable on	
7	STPMODE_R	1	Normal ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
8	STPMODE_EM	1	Emergency ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
9	STPMODE_C	1	Coast stop mode	
		0	(no op)	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Command/Req.**	**Comments**
10	RAMP_2	1	Ramp pair 2	
		0	Ramp pair 1	
11	RAMP_OUT_0	1	Ramp output to 0	
		0	(no op)	
12	RAMP_HOLD	1	Ramp freeze	
		0	(no op)	
13	RAMP_IN_0	1	Ramp input to 0	
		0	(no op)	
14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	1	Local mode lock	In lock, drive will not switch to local mode.
		0	(no op)	
15	TORQLIM2	1	Torque limit pair 2	
		0	Torque limit pair 1	
16	FBLOCAL_CTL	1	FB Local mode for control word requested.	Field bus sets these bits-> drive moves to field bus local control mode of control word or reference (field bus steals the control)
		0	FB Local mode for control word requested.	
17	FBLOCAL_REF	1	FB Local mode for control word requested.	
		0	FB Local mode for control word requested.	
18	START_DISABLE1	1	Start disabled 1	Inverted Start Enable x2. When Start Enable is missing, the drive doesn't set STARTED status bit.
		0	Start enabled 1 on	
19	START_DISABLE2	1	Start disabled 2	
		0	Start enabled 2 on	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Function**	**Comments**
16…26	Reserved			
27	REF_CONST	1	Constant speed ref.	These bits are only for supervision purposes.
		0	(no op)	
28	REF_AVE	1	Average speed ref.	
		0	(no op)	
29	LINK_ON	1	Master is detected in link	
		0	Link is down	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Function**	**Comments**
30	REQ_STARTINH	1	Start inhibit request is pending	
		0	Start inhibit request is OFF	

Status Word

The contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station.

ABB drives profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0…1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 INACTIVE
		0	**OFF2 ACTIVE**
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 INACTIVE
		0	**OFF3 ACTIVE**
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See *Alarm listing* in the *Diagnostics* section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING**.** Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter's value ≥ supervision high limit. Bit remains "1" until supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. Bit remains "0" until supervised parameter's value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13… 15	Unused		

DCU profile

The following tables describe the STATUS WORD content for the DCU profile.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Status**
0	READY	1	System is ready to receive start command.
		0	System is not ready.
1	ENABLED	1	External run enable signal received.
		0	No external run enable signal received.
2	STARTED	1	System has received start command.
		0	System has not received start command.
3	RUNNING	1	System is modulating.
		0	System is not modulating.
4	ZERO_SPEED	1	System is at zero speed.
		0	System has not reached zero speed.
5	ACCELERATE	1	System is accelerating.
		0	System is not accelerating.
6	DECELERATE	1	System is decelerating.
		0	System is not decelerating.
7	AT_SETPOINT	1	System is at setpoint.
		0	System has not reached setpoint.
8	LIMIT	1	Operation is limited by Group 20 settings.
		0	Operation is within Group 20 settings.
9	SUPERVISION	1	A supervised parameter (Group 32) is outside its limits.
		0	All supervised parameters are within limits.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Status**
10	REV_REF	1	Reference is in reverse direction.
		0	Reference is in forward direction.
11	REV_ACT	1	System is running in reverse direction.
		0	System is running in forward direction.
12	PANEL_LOCAL	1	Control is in control panel (or PC tool) local mode.
		0	Control is not in control panel local mode.
13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	1	Control is in fieldbus local mode (steals control panel local).
		0	Control is not in fieldbus local mode.
14	EXT2_ACT	1	Control is in EXT2 mode.
		0	Control is in EXT1 mode.
15	FAULT	1	Drive is in a fault state.
		0	Drive is not in a fault state.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Status**
16	ALARM	1	An alarm is on.
		0	No alarms are on.
17	REQ_MAINT	1	A maintenance request is pending.
		0	No maintenance request is pending.
18	DIRLOCK	1	Direction lock is ON. (Direction change is locked out.)
		0	Direction lock is OFF.
19	LOCALLOCK	1	Local mode lock is ON. (Local mode is locked out.)
		0	Local mode lock is OFF.
20	CTL_MODE	1	Drive is in vector control mode.
		0	Drive is in scalar control mode.
21…25	Reserved		
26	REQ_CTL	1	Copy the control word
		0	(no op)
27	REQ_REF1	1	Reference 1 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 1 is not requested in this channel.
28	REQ_REF2	1	Reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
29	REQ_REF2EXT	1	External PID reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	External PID reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
30	ACK_STARTINH	1	A start inhibit from this channel is granted.
		0	A start inhibit from this channel is not granted.
31	ACK_OFF_ILCK	1	Start inhibit due to OFF button
		0	Normal operation

State Diagram

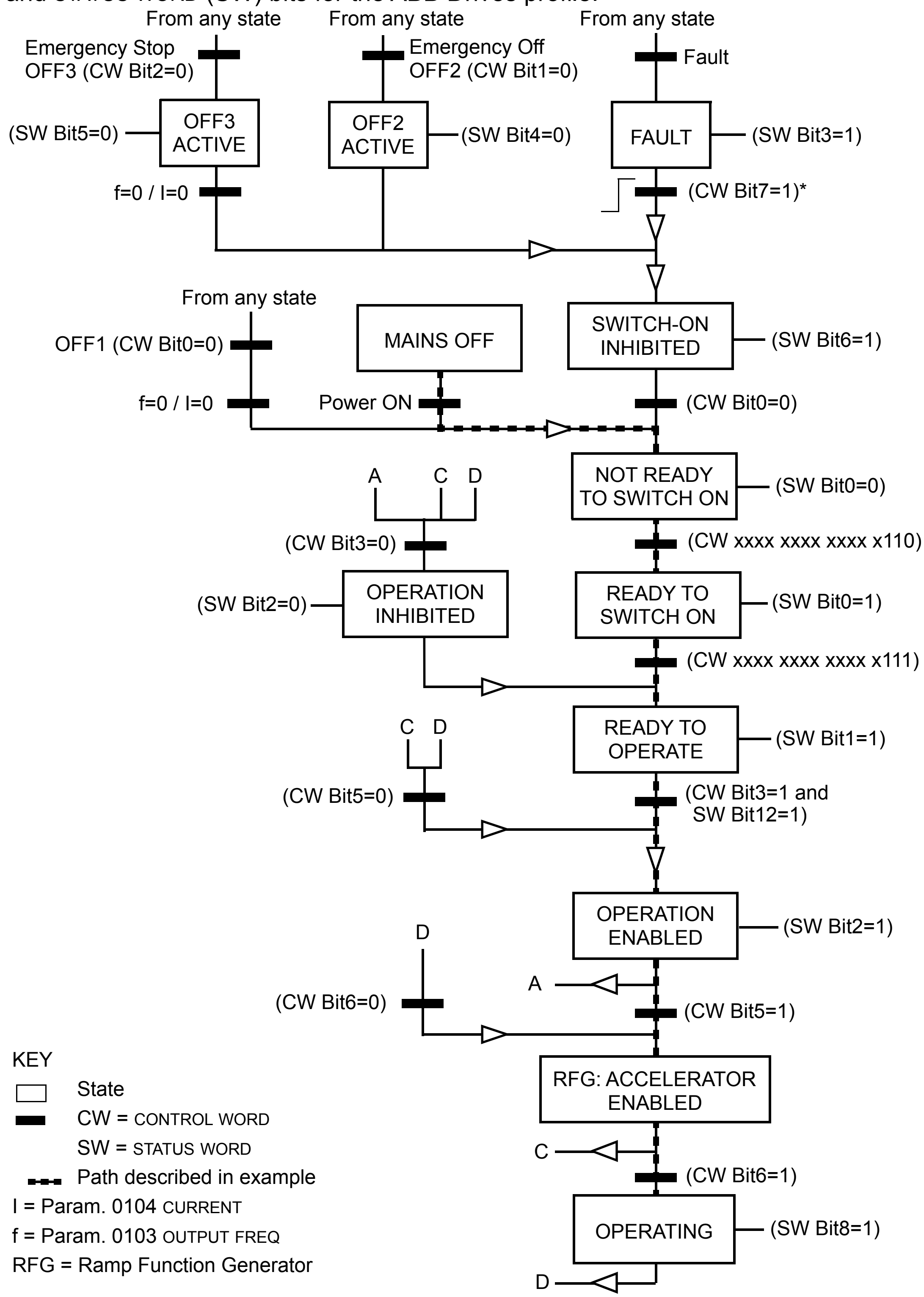
ABB drives profile

To illustrate the operation of the state diagram, the following example (ABB DRV LIM implementation of the ABB Drives profile) uses the control word to start the system:

- First, the requirements for using the CONTROL WORD must be met. See above.
- When the power is first connected, the state of the bypass is not ready to switch on. See dotted lined path (▬▬▬) in the state diagram below.
- Use the CONTROL WORD to step through the state machine states until the OPERATING state is reached, meaning that the bypass is running and follows the given reference. See table below.

Step	CONTROL WORD **Value**	**Description**
1	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0110 bit 15 ... bit 0	This CW value changes the bypass state to READY TO SWITCH ON.
2		Wait at least 100 ms before proceeding.
3	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0111	This CW value changes the bypass state to READY TO OPERATE.
4	CW = 0000 0000 0000 1111	This CW value changes the bypass state to OPERATION ENABLED. The drive starts, but will not accelerate.
5	CW = 0000 0000 0010 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the drive state to RFG: ACCELERATOR ENABLED.
6	CW = 0000 0000 0110 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the bypass state to OPERATING. The bypass accelerates to the given reference and follows the reference.

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits for the ABB Drives profile.



*This state transition also occurs if the fault is reset from any other source (e.g. digital input).

Bypass overview

The new mode that is available on the E-Clipse bypass is selected by setting bypass parameter 16.25 to SYSTEM. With this configuration the drive node is still present but network commands to start the drive are ignored. Instead, the user should send start commands to the bypass node. In this mode, a start command will start the bypass if in bypass mode or start the drive if in drive mode.

In system mode, the profile that controls system logic is always the ABB BYPASS PROFILE which is sent to the bypass device. The setting of bypass parameter 53.05, PROFILE is only used for reference related control (e.g. ramp control bits) and for the drive status word. These bits are used when writing to or reading the drive device.

The following table defines the ABB bypass profile control word. Note that this word is written to the bypass.

ABB Bypass Profile CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description**	**Comments**
0	START	1	Start	
		0	Stop	
1	RESET	0->1	Reset command	Fault reset. Edge sensitive.
		Other	(no op)	
2	RUN_DISABLE	1	Run disabled	Inverted Run Enable. The STARTED status bit may be set even when Run Enable is missing.
		0	Run enable on	
3	FBLOCAL_CTL	1	FB Local mode for control word requested	Field bus sets these bits to move the bypass to field bus local control mode of control word (field bus steals the control).
		0	FB Local mode for control word not requested	
4	START_DISABLE1	1	Start disabled 1	Inverted Start Enables. When Start Enable is missing, the drive doesn't set STARTED status bit.
		0	Start enable 1 on	
5	START_DISABLE2	1	Start disabled 2	
		0	Start enable 2 on	
6	START_DISABLE3	1	Start disabled 3	
		0	Start enable 3 on	
7	START_DISABLE4	1	Start disabled 4	
		0	Start enable 4 on	
8	OVERRIDE	1	Override selected	This selects override 2 which is controlled by Group 17.
		0	Override not selected	
9	LINK_ON	1	Master is detected in link	This is not settable from the field bus but reflects the internal state of the link.
		0	Link is down	
10...15	Reserved			

The drive control words when bypass parameter 1625 = (1) SYSTEM are summarized in the following table. Note that these are written to the drive.

DRIVE CONTROL WORD			
Bit	**ABB DRV LIM**	**DCU PROFILE**	**ABB DRV FULL**
0	N/A	N/A	N/A
1	N/A	N/A	N/A
2	N/A	REVERSE	N/A
3	N/A	N/A	N/A
4	N/A	RESET	RAMP_OUT_ZERO
5	RAMP_HOLD	EXT2	RAMP_HOLD
6	RAMP_IN_ZERO	N/A	RAMP_IN_ZERO
7	RESET	STP_MODE_R	RESET
8	N/A	STP_MODE_EM	N/A
9	N/A	STP_MODE_C	N/A
10	N/A	RAMP_2	REMOTE_CMD (ref only)
11	EXT2	RAMP_OUT_0	EXT2
12	N/A	RAMP_HOLD	N/A
13	N/A	RAMP_IN_0	N/A
14	N/A	REQ_LOCALLOCK	N/A
15	N/A	TORQLIM2	N/A
16	N/A	N/A	N/A
17	N/A	FBLOCAL_REF	N/A
18	N/A	N/A	N/A
19	N/A	N/A	N/A
20-31	N/A	Reserved	N/A

The bypass status word is defined in table below. The drive status word depends on the profile selected and does not change when bypass parameter 1625 = DRIVE ONLY or SYSTEM modes (see drive manual).

BYPASS STATUS WORD				
Bit	**NAME**	**Value**	**Description**	**Comments**
0	READY	1	Bypass is ready to receive start command	
		0	Bypass is not ready	
1	ENABLED	1	External run enable and start enable signals received	
		0	External run enable or start enable signals missing	
2	STARTED	1	Bypass has received start command	
		0	Bypass has not received start command	
3	RUNNING	1	Motor is running	
		0	Motor is not modulating	
4	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	1	Bypass is in fieldbus local mode	Field bus is controlling all inputs that can have COMM setting.
		0	Bypass is not in fieldbus local mode	
5	FAULT	1	Bypass is in fault state	
		0	No faults	
6	ALARM	1	Alarm is on	
		0	No alarms	
7	Reserved			
8	REQ_CTL	1	Control word requested in this channel	This bit set indicates that the bypass is expecting at least one control bit from the serial channel.
		0	Control word not requested	
9	OVERRIDE	1	In override	Override 1 or override 2 is active
		0	Not in override	
10	POWERED_UP	1	Powered up	Input voltage has passed minimum level beyond which normal bypass operation can proceed including writing of parameters from the field bus.
11	MODE	1	Bypass mode	
		0	Drive mode	
12	PANEL LOCAL	1	Bypass in local (Hand or Off)	
		0	Bypass in Auto	

BYPASS STATUS WORD				
Bit	**NAME**	**Value**	**Description**	**Comments**
13...15	Reserved			

MODBUS addressing – bypass

0xxxx Registers

MODBUS addressing of 0xxxx registers maps the profile control words shown in the following table, to the first 32 coils when using the drive device ID. The Bypass Control Word defined in the ABB Bypass Profile control word table is mapped to the first 16 coils when using the bypass device ID. For both device IDs, the coil number is the bit number plus 1. In other words, bits 0 – 31 are mapped to coils 1 – 32.

Relay output control is possible on the drive by using the drive device ID and possible on the bypass by using the bypass device ID.

These registers are summarized in **Error! Reference source not found..** Reminder: stop and enable related bits are valid at only one device subject to the status of bypass parameter 16.25, COMM CTRL.

MODBUS Registers (0xxxx)		
MODBUS Ref.	**Bit**	**Bypass Device ID**
		BCU PROFILE
00001	0	START
00002	1	RESET
00003	2	RUN_DISABLE
00004	3	FBLOCAL_CTL
00005	4	START_DISABLE1
00006	5	START_DISABLE2
00007	6	START_DISABLE3
00008	7	START_DISABLE4
00009	8	OVERRIDE
00010	9	LINK_ON
00011	10	N/A
00012	11	N/A
00013	12	N/A
00014	13	N/A
00015	14	N/A
00016	15	N/A
00017	16	N/A
00018	17	N/A
00019	18	N/A
00020	19	N/A
00021...**0**0032	20-31	N/A

MODBUS Registers (0xxxx)		
MODBUS Ref.	Bit	Bypass Device ID
		BCU PROFILE
00033		Bypas Relay Output 1
00034		Bypas Relay Output 2
00035		Bypas Relay Output 3
00036		Bypas Relay Output 4
00037		Bypas Relay Output 5
00038		N/A

1xxxx Registers – Bypass

MODBUS addressing of 1xxxx registers maps the profile status words to the first 32 MODBUS discrete inputs when using the drive device ID. The bypass status word is mapped to the first 16 MODBUS discrete inputs when using the bypass device ID.

For both device IDs, the discrete input is the bit number plus 1. In other words, bits 0 – 31 are mapped to inputs 1 – 32.

These registers are summarized in the following table.

1.1.1 MODBUS Registers (1xxxx)		
MODBUS Ref.	Bit	Bypass Device ID
		BCU PROFILE
10001	0	READY
10002	1	ENABLED
10003	2	STARTED
10004	3	RUNNING
10005	4	FIELDBUS_LOCAL
10006	5	FAULT
10007	6	ALARM
10008	7	Reserved
10009	8	REQ_CTL
10010	9	OVERRIDE
10011	10	POWERED_UP
10012	11	N/A
10013	12	N/A
10014	13	N/A
10015	14	N/A
10016	15	N/A
10017	16	N/A
10018	17	N/A
10019	18	N/A

1.1.1 MODBUS Registers (1xxxx)		
MODBUS Ref.	Bit	Bypass Device ID
		BCU PROFILE
10020	19	N/A
10021	20	
10022	21	
10023	22	
10024	23	
10025	24	
10026	25	
10027	26	
10028	27	
10029	28	
10030	29	
10031	30	
10032	31	
10033		Bypass DI1
10034		Bypass DI2
10035		Bypass DI3
10036		Bypass DI4
10037		Bypass DI5
10038		Bypass DI6

4xxxx Registers – Bypass

MODBUS addressing of 4xxxx registers maps the drive's parameters and other values when using the drive device ID. The bypass's parameters and other values are mapped when using the bypass device ID.

Registers 40001 … 40099 - Bypass

The bypass maps its parameters and other data to the 4xxxx holding registers as follows:

40001...40099 map to bypass control and actual values. These registers are descibed in the table below.

40101...49999 map to bypass parameters 0101...9999. Register addresses that do not correspond to bypass parameters are invalid. If there is an attempt to read or write outside the parameters addresses, the Modbus interface returns an exception code to the controller.

The following table summarizes the 4xxxx bypass control registers 40001...40099 (for 4xxxx registers above 40099, see the drive parameter list, e.g. 40102 is parameter 0102):

MODBUS Registers (40001 to 40099)		
MODBUS Ref.	**Internal location (All profiles)**	**Bypass Device ID**
40001	Control Word	Maps directly to BCU profile control word.
40004	Status Word	Maps directly to BCU profile status word.

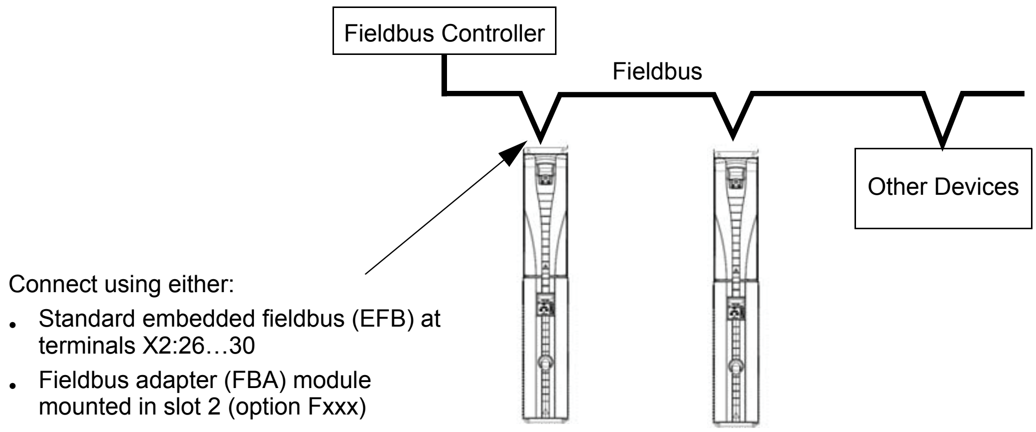
Note: All parameters referenced are bypass parameters.

Fieldbus adapter

Overview

The ACH550 can be set up to accept control from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ACH550 can either:

- Receive all of its control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – See *Embedded fieldbus* on page *2-81*.
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – With one of the optional FBA modules in the drive's expansion slot 2, the drive can communicate to a control system using one of the following protocols:
  - Profibus-DP®
  - LonWorks®
  - DeviceNet®
  - Ethernet IP
  - Modbus – TCP/IP

The E-Clipse Bypass detects automatically which communication protocol is used by the plug-in fieldbus adapter. The default settings for each protocol assume that the profile used is the protocol's industry-standard drive profile (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet). All of the FBA protocols can also be configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Configuration details depend on the protocol and profile used.These details are provided in a user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Details for the ABB Drives profile (which apply for all protocols) are provided in *ABB drives profile technical data* on page *2-212*.

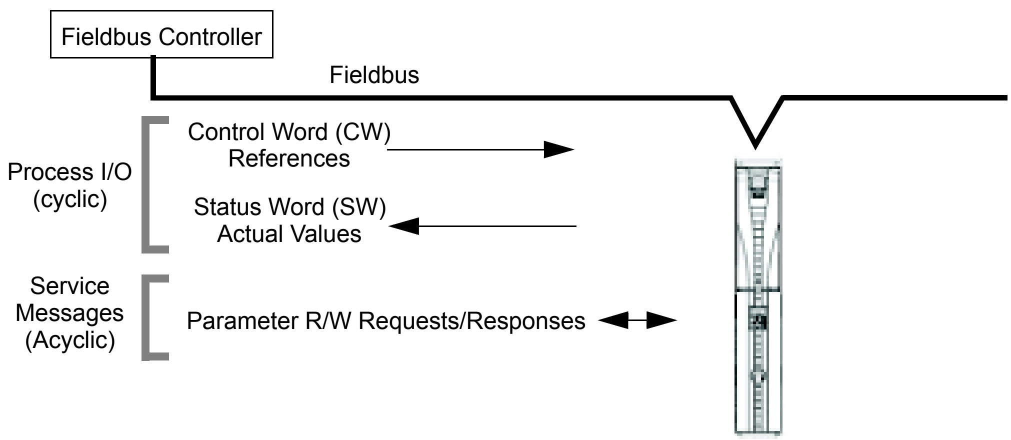
Control interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

- Output Words:
  - CONTROL WORD
  - REFERENCE (speed or frequency)
- Input Words:
  - STATUS WORD
  - Actual Value (speed or frequency)

Note: The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the drive and appears as an input from the drive point of view.

The meanings of the controller interface words are not restricted by the ACH550. However, the profile used may set particular meanings.



Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus controller sends the CONTROL WORD to the drive. The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.
- The serial communication channel is defined as the source for controlling commands from EXT1 (set using parameters 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS and 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL).
- The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is activated:
  - Parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 4 (EXT FBA).
  - The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is configured to use the drive profile mode or drive profile objects.

The content of the control word depends on the protocol/profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the *ABB drives profile technical data*.

Status Word

The STATUS WORD is a 16-bit word containing status information, sent by the drive to the fieldbus controller. The content of the STATUS WORD depends on the protocol/ profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the *ABB drives profile technical data* section.

Reference

The contents of each REFERENCE word:

- Is a 16-bit word comprised of a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- Negative references (indicating reversed rotation direction) are indicated by the two's complement of the corresponding positive reference value.

The use of a second reference (REF2) is supported only when a protocol is configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Reference scaling is fieldbus type specific. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the following sections as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Actual Values

Actual Values are 16-bit words containing information on selected operations of the drive. Drive Actual Values (for example, group 01 parameters) can be mapped to Input Words using group 51 parameters (protocol-dependent, but typically parameters 5104…5126).

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent down to the drives?
- What feedback information must be sent from the drives to the controlling system?

Mechanical and electrical installation – FBA

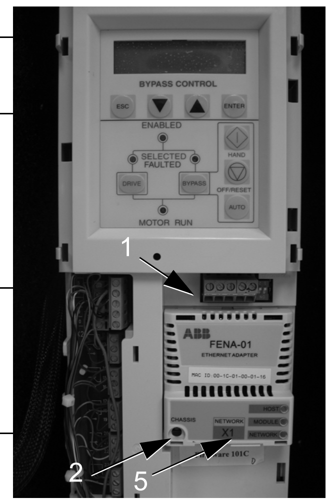
WARNING! Connections should be made only while the drive is disconnected from the power source.

Overview

The FBA (fieldbus adapter) is a plug-in module that fits in the bypass expansion slot 2. The module is held in place with plastic retaining clips and two screws. The screws also ground the shield for the module cable, and connect the module GND signals to the drive control board.

On installation of the module, electrical connection to the bypass is automatically established through the 34-pin connector.

Mounting procedure



Note: Install the input power and motor cables first.

1. Insert the module carefully into the bypass expansion slot until the retaining clips lock the module into position.
2. Fasten the screw (included) to the stand-off.

Note: Correct installation of the screw is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.

3. Open the appropriate knockout for the conduit and route the network cable into the enclosure.
4. Route the network cable using the appropriate cable tie points.
5. Connect the network cable to the module's network connector.
6. For configuration information see the following:
   - *Communication setup – FBA* below.
   - *Activate drive control functions – FBA* on page *2-203*.
   - The protocol specific documentation provided with the module.

Communication setup – FBA

Protocol selection

To activate the serial communication, use parameter 9802 COMM PROTOCOL SEL. Set bypass parameter 9802 = 4 (EXT FBA).

Protocol configuration

Setting 9802, together with mounting a particular FBA module, automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined in the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

- Parameter 5101 is automatically configured.
- Parameters 5102…5126 are protocol-dependent and define, for example, the profile used, and additional I/O words. These parameters are referred to as the fieldbus configuration parameters. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module for details on the fieldbus configuration parameters.
- Parameter 5127 forces the validation of changes to parameters 5102…5126. If parameter 5127 is not used, changes to parameters 5102…5126 take affect only after the drive power is cycled.
- Parameters 5128…5133 provide data about the FBA module currently installed (e.g. component versions and status).
- Parameters 5401…5410 provide parameter mapping data from E-Clipse Bypass to field controller.
- Parameters 5501…5510 provide parameter mapping data from fieldbus controller to E-Clipse Bypass.
- To map ACH550 parameters in groups 54 or 55 program parameters 5401…5410 or 5501…5510 with the actual ACH550 parameter value. For example to read ACH550 parameter 0106 (Power), program parameter 5401 to 0106.
- To map E-Clipse Bypass parameters in groups 54 or 55 program parameters 5401…5410 or 5501…5510 add 10,000 to the E-Clipse Bypass parameter value. For example to read E-Clipse Bypass parameter 0106 (KW Hours), program parameter 5401 to 10106.

The *Parameters* section lists the group 51 parameters.

Activate drive control functions – FBA

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive (via the bypass) to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. The last column in each table below is deliberately blank. See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module for the appropriate entry.

Start/stop control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive only requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1601	START/STOP	2 (COMM)	Selects Source for system start command.	
1625	COMM CTRL	0 (DRIVE ONLY)	Enable drive only control.	

Input reference select

Using the fieldbus to provide input reference to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter value set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Ref. selected by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	
1103	REF1 SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Input reference 1supplied by fieldbus.	
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI) 10 (COMM*AI)	Input reference 2 supplied by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	

Note: Multiple references are supported only when using the ABB Drives profile.

Reference scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the *Reference scaling* in the following sections, as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Drive relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied, binary coded, relay command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM) 36 (COMM(-1))	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2		Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3		Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	
1410[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 4		Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	
1411[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 5		Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	
1412[1]	RELAY OUTPUT 6		Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Protocol Reference
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4…6 status.	

Analog output control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control (e.g. PID setpoint) requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied analog value(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		
1502 … 1505	AO1 CONTENT MIN … MAXIMUM AO1	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1506	FILTER AO1		Filter time constant for AO1.	–
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		
1508 … 1511	AO2 CONTENT MIN … MAXIMUM AO2	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1512	FILTER AO2		Filter time constant for AO2.	–

PID control setpoint source

Using the fieldbus for the PID control setpoint requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied setpoint value in the appropriate location. (As defined in *Analog output control* above.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
4010	SETPOINT SEL	8 (COMM VALUE 1) 9 (COMM + AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Setpoint is 0135 value (+/-/* AI1)	–

Feedback from the drive – FBA

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see all parameters listed in *Complete parameter descriptions*.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference
0102	SPEED	
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	
0104	CURRENT	
0105	TORQUE	
0106	POWER	
0107	DC BUS VOLT	
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	

Scaling

To scale the drive parameter values see the *Actual value scaling* in the following sections, as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Activate bypass control functions – FBA

Controlling the bypass

Fieldbus control of various bypass functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the system to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any bypass data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive/bypass.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. The last column in each table below is deliberately blank. See the User's Manual supplied with the FBA module for the appropriate entry.

Start/stop direction control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop control of the system requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1601	START/STOP	2 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 or Ext2 selected.	
1625	COMM CTRL	1 (SYSTEM)	Enable system control.	

Miscellaneous system control

Note: Control of system commands is dependent upon the setting of bypass parameter 1625.

Using the fieldbus miscellaneous system control requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference
1602	RUN ENABLE	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Run enable by fieldbus.	
1603	START ENABLE 1	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 1 is the fieldbus Command word.	
1604	START ENABLE 2	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)	Source for start enable 2 is the fieldbus Command word.	
1605	START ENABLE 3	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)		
1606	START ENABLE 4	2 (COMM) (Not Recommended)		
1607	START RESET SEL	2 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus	
1625	COMM CTROL	1 (SYSTEM)	Enable System Control.	

Bypass relay output control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Bypass parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied, binary coded, relay command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Bypass Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	16 (COMM CTRL)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2		Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3		Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	
1410	RELAY OUTPUT 4		Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	
1411	RELAY OUTPUT 5		Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	

Note: Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Bypass Parameter		Value	Protocol Reference
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1…3 status.	
0123	RO 4-5 STATUS	Relay 4…5 status.	

Communication fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the bypass action if serial communication is lost.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
3004	COMM LOSS	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)	Set for appropriate drive response.	–
3005	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.		–

Feedback from the ABB E-Clipse Bypass – FBA

Pre-defined feedback

Inputs to the controller (bypass outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require bypass configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see input word/point/object listings in the technical data for the appropriate protocol.

Bypass Parameter	Description	Protocol Reference
System Ready	System is ready to accept start command (either mode).	
System Enabled	System is enabled to start motor (either mode).	
System Started	System start enables are made and start command has been received (either mode). Motor runs if run enable is active.	
System Running	Motor is running (either mode).	
Fieldbus Local	System is under fieldbus local control (either mode).	
Bypass Fault	Bypass is faulted.	
Bypass Alarm	Bypass is alarming.	
Comm Control	System is configured for control in the comm channel	
Override	Override status	
DI1 Status	Bypass digital input 1 status	
DI2 Status	Bypass digital input 2 status	

Bypass Parameter	Description	Protocol Reference
DI3 Status	Bypass digital input 3 status	
DI4 Status	Bypass digital input 4 status	
DI5 Status	Bypass digital input 5 status	
DI6 Status	Bypass digital input 6 status	
RO1 Status	Bypass relay output 1 status	
RO2 Status	Bypass relay output 2 status	
RO3 Status	Bypass relay output 3 status	
RO4 Status	Bypass relay output 4 status	
RO5 Status	Bypass relay output 5 status	
Bypass Select	1=Bypass mode, 0=Drive mode	
System Underload	Reports system underload status (either mode)	
System Fault	Reports system fault status (either mode)	
Bypass Run	Reports motor running status in bypass mode	

Scaling

To scale the drive parameter values see the *Actual value scaling* in the following sections, as appropriate:

- *ABB drives profile technical data*
- *Generic profile technical data*

Diagnostics – FBA

Fault Handling

The ACH550 or E-Clipse provides fault information as follows:

- The control panel display shows a fault code and text. See *Diagnostics* starting on page *2-223* for a complete description.
- Parameters 0401 LAST FAULT, 0402 PREVIOUS FAULT1 and 0403 PREVIOUS FAULT2 store the most recent faults.
- For fieldbus access, the drive reports faults as a hexadecimal value, assigned and coded according to the DRIVECOM specification. See table below. Not all profiles support requesting fault codes using this specification. For profiles that support this specification, the profile documentation defines the proper fault request process.

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
1	OVERCURRENT	2310h
2	DC OVERVOLT	3210h
3	DEV OVERTEMP	4210h
4	SHORT CIRC	2340h

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
5	Reserved	FF6Bh
6	DC UNDERVOLT	3220h
7	AI1 LOSS	8110h
8	AI2 LOSS	8110h
9	MOT TEMP	4310h
10	PANEL LOSS	5300h
11	ID RUN FAIL	FF84h
12	MOTOR STALL	7121h
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1	9000h
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2	9001h
16	EARTH FAULT	2330h
17	UNDERLOAD	FF6Ah
18	THERM FAIL	5210h
19	OPEX LINK	7500h
20	OPEX PWR	5414h
21	CURR MEAS	2211h
22	SUPPLY PHASE	3130h
23	ENCODER ERR	7301h
24	OVERSPEED	7310h
25	Reserved	FF80h
26	DRIVE ID	5400h
27	CONFIG FILE	630Fh
28	SERIAL 1 ERR	7510h
29	EFB CONFIG FILE	6306h
30	FORCE TRIP	FF90h
31	EFB 1	FF92h
32	EFB 2	FF93h
33	EFB 3	FF94h
34	MOTOR PHASE	FF56h
35	OUTPUT WIRING	FF95h
36	INCOMP SWTYPE	630Fh
101	SERF CORRUPT	FF55h
102	Reserved	FF55h
103	SERF MACRO	FF55h
104	Reserved	FF55h
105	Reserved	FF55h
201	DSP T1 OVERLOAD	6100h
202	DSP T2 OVERLOAD	6100h

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
203	DSP T3 OVERLOAD	6100h
204	DSP STACK ERROR	6100h
205	Reserved	5000h
206	OMIO ID ERROR	5000h
207	EFB LOAD ERR	6100h
1000	PAR HZRPM	6320h
1001	PAR PFAREFNG	6320h
1002	Reserved (obsolete)	6320h
1003	PAR AI SCALE	6320h
1004	PAR AO SCALE	6320h
1005	PAR PCU 2	6320h
1006	EXT ROMISSING	6320h
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING	6320h
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR	6320h
1009	PAR PCU 1	6320h
1010	PAR PFA OVERRIDE	6320h
1011	PAR OVERRIDE PARS	6320h
1012	PAR PFC IO 1	6320h
1013	PAR PFC IO 2	6320h
1014	PAR PFC IO 3	6320h

Serial communication diagnostics

Besides the drive fault codes, the FBA module has diagnostic tools. Refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

ABB drives profile technical data

Overview

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including protocols available on the FBA module. This section describes the ABB Drives profile implemented for FBA modules.

Control Word

As described earlier in *Control interface* the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system.

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCHON INHIBITED
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED **WARNING! Be sure motor and driven equipment can be stopped using this mode.**
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also actives the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	RAMP_OUT_ ZERO	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Commanded State**	**Comments**
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8…9	Unused			
10	REMOTE_CMD	1		Fieldbus control enabled
		0		• CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. • CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. • Ref and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12…15	Unused			

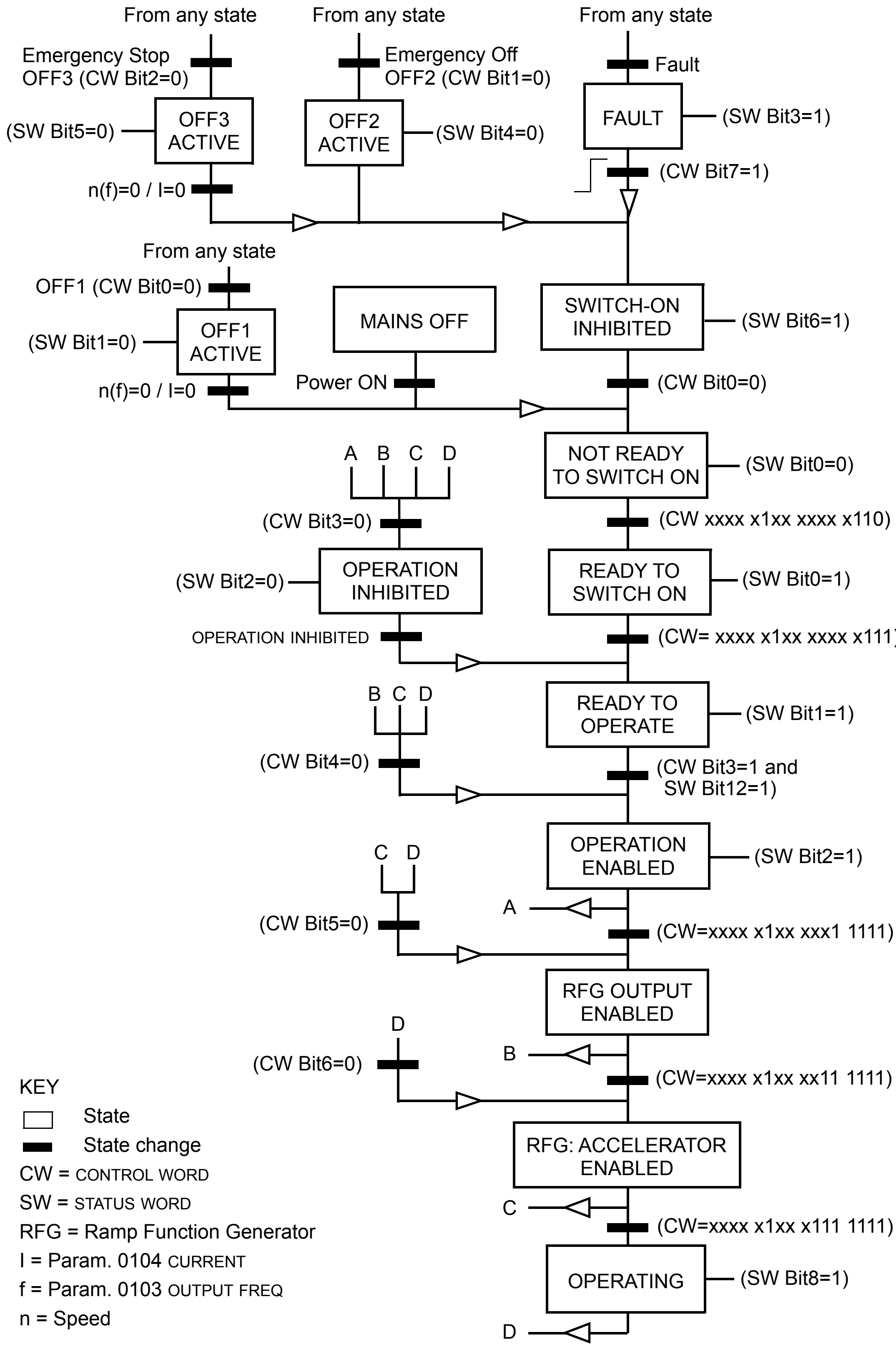
Status Word

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0…1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 inactive
		0	**OFF2 ACTIVE**
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 inactive
		0	**OFF3 ACTIVE**
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See *Alarm listing* in the *Diagnostics* section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) STATUS WORD			
Bit	**Name**	**Value**	**Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)**
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING. Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter's value ≥ supervision high limit. Bit remains "1" until supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. Bit remains "0" until supervised parameter's value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13… 15	Unused		

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits.



Reference

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Reference scaling

The following table describes REFERENCE scaling for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)				
Reference	**Range**	**Reference Type**	**Scaling**	**Remarks**
REF1	-32767… +32767	Speed or frequency	-20000 = -**(par. 1105)** 0 = 0 +20000 = **(par. 1105)** (20000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
REF2	-32767… +32767	Speed or frequency	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1107/1108. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
		Torque	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 2015/2017 (torque1) or 2016/2018 (torque2).
		PID Reference	-10000 = -**(par. 1108)** 0 = 0 +10000 = **(par. 1108)** (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 4012/4013 (PID set1) or 4112/4113 (PID set2).

Note: The setting of parameter 1104 REF1 MIN and 1107 REF2 MIN has no effect on the scaling of references.

When parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT or 1106 REF2 SELECT is set to COMM+AI1 or COMM*AI1, the reference is scaled as follows:

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)		
Reference	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
REF1	COMM+AI1	COMM (%) +(AI (%) - 0.5*REF1 MAX (%))

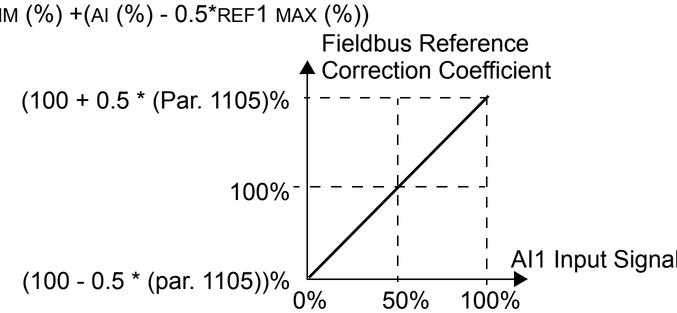
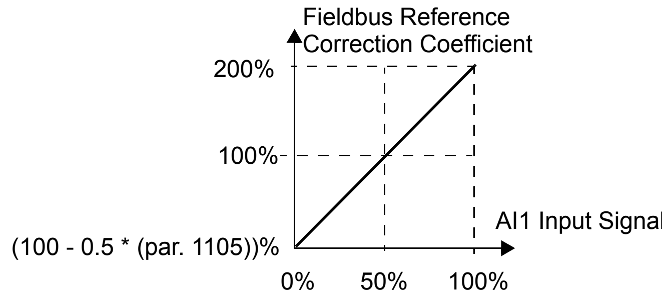
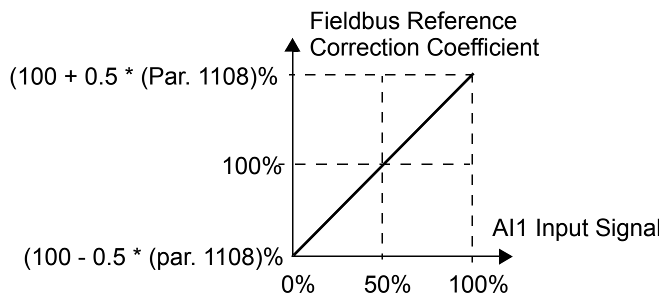
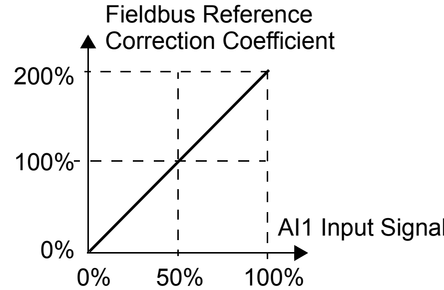
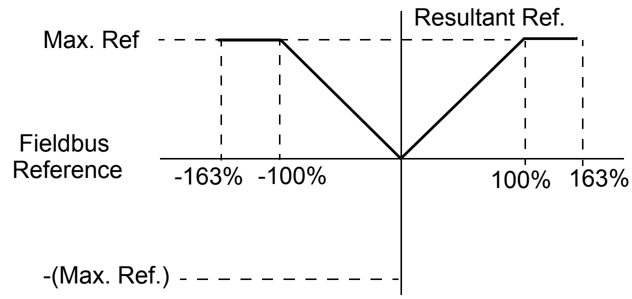
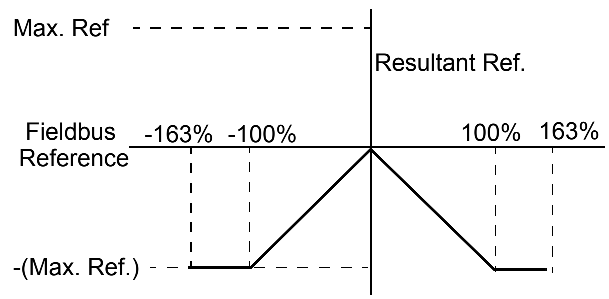
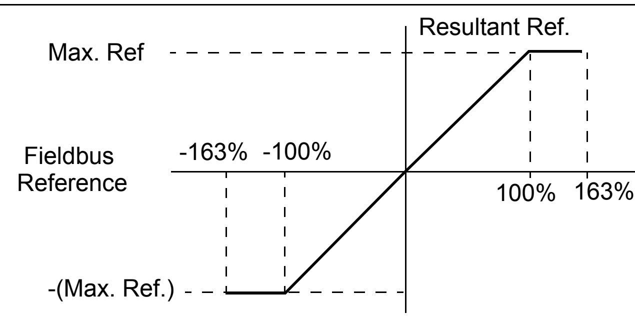


ABB Drives Profile (FBA)		
Reference	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
REF1	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF1 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM+AI1	COMM (%) + (AI (%) - 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 
REF2	COMM*AI1	COMM (%) * (AI (%) / 0.5*REF2 MAX (%)) 

Reference handling

Use group 10 parameters to configure for control of rotation direction for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2). The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus reference interact to produce REFERENCE values (REF1 and REF2). Note, fieldbus references are bipolar, that is they can be positive or negative.

ABB Drives Profile		
Parameter	**Value Setting**	**AI Reference Scaling**
1003 DIRECTION	1 (FORWARD)	
1003 DIRECTION	2 (REVERSE)	
1003 DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	

Actual value

As described earlier in *Control interface*, Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual value scaling

The scaling of the integers sent to the fieldbus as Actual Values depends on the resolution of the selected drive parameter. Except as noted for Data Words 5 and 6 below, scale the feedback integer using the resolution listed for the parameter in the *Parameters* section. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Data words 5 and 6 are scaled as follows:

ABB Drives Profile		
Data Word	**Contents**	**Scaling**
5	ACTUAL SPEED	-20000 … +20000 = -(par. 1105) … +(par. 1105)
6	TORQUE	-10000 … +10000 = -100% … +100%

Actual value mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic profile technical data

Overview

The generic profile aims to fulfill the industry-standard drive profile for each protocol (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet).

Control Word

As described earlier in *Control interface* the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. For specific CONTROL WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Status Word

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. For specific STATUS WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Reference

As described earlier in *Control interface*, the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Note: REF2 is not supported by the Generic Drive profiles.

Reference scaling

REFERENCE scaling is fieldbus type specific. However, at the drive, the meaning of a 100% REFERENCE value is fixed as described in the table below. For a detailed description on the range and scaling of the REFERENCE, see the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic Profile				
Reference	**Range**	**Reference Type**	**Scaling**	**Remarks**
REF	Fieldbus specific	Speed	-100% = -**(par. 9908)** 0 = 0 +100 = **(par. 9908)**	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed).
		Frequency	-100% = -**(par. 9907)** 0 = 0 +100 = **(par. 9907)**	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2007/2008 (frequency).

Actual Values

As described earlier in *Control interface*, Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual value scaling

For Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See *Parameters* section for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the *Parameters* section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm[1]	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz[2]	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Actual value mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Diagnostics

WARNING! Do not attempt any measurement, parts replacement or other service procedure not described in this manual. Such action will void the warranty, may endanger correct operation, and increase downtime and expense.

WARNING! All electrical installation and maintenance work described in this chapter should only be undertaken by qualified service personnel. The Safety instructions on the first pages of this manual must be followed.

Diagnostic displays

The bypass detects error situations and reports them using:

- The green and red status LEDs on the bypass control panel
- The bypass control panel display

The form of the display depends on the severity of the error. You can specify the severity for many errors by directing the bypass to:

- Ignore the error situation.
- Report the situation as an alarm.
- Report the situation as a fault.

Red – faults

The bypass signals that it has detected a severe error, or fault, by:

- Enabling the red Faulted LED on the bypass (LED is either steady on or blinking).
- Overriding the control panel display with the display of a fault code.
- Stopping the motor (if it was on).

The message reappears after 30 seconds if the control panel is not touched and the fault is still active. The Faulted LED remains active (either steady on or blinking) even when the fault display is silenced.

Flashing display – alarms

For less severe errors, called alarms, the diagnostic display is advisory. For these situations, the bypass is simply reporting that it had detected something "unusual." In these situations, the bypass overrides the control panel display with the display of an alarm code and/or name.

The alarm code on the display flashes over the current display. Pressing any key silences the alarm message. The message reappears after 30 seconds if the control panel is not touched and the alarm is still active.

Correcting faults

The recommended corrective action for faults is:

- Use the following *Fault listing* table to find and address the root cause of the problem.
- Reset the system.

Fault listing

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3001	COIL CURR FBK	RBCU is sensing abnormal current feedback when neither contactor should be energized	Defective component on RBCU	Change RBCU
3002	BYP CNTACT STUCK	M2 contactor indicates it is not prepared to move on a power up check of the contactor or after contact is commanded to open	Defective Contactor Defective RBCU	Disconnect incoming power from unit Check if contactor armature moves freely. If armature moves freely, then change the RBCU. If armature does not move freely, then change individual contactor (M2) or the complete assembly (RCSA-0x)
3003	DRV CNTACT STUCK	M1 contactor indicates it is not prepared to move on a power up check of the contactor or after contact is commanded to open	Defective Contactor Defective RBCU	Disconnect incoming power from unit Check if contactor armature moves freely. If armature moves freely, then change the RBCU. If armature does not move freely, then change individual contactor (M1) or the complete assembly (RCSA-0x)
3004	BYPASS COIL OPEN	M2 contactor will not close when commanded to do so	Loose J8 connector on RBCU Loose wires on contactor terminals A1 and/or A2 Bad Output on RBCU Bad Contactor	Verify that J8 connector is firmly seated. With incoming power disconnected, check for tightness of A1 and A2 terminals Swap RBCU Change Contactor/ Assembly
3005	DRIVE COIL OPEN	M1 contactor will not close when commanded to do so	Loose J8 connector on RBCU Loose wires on contactor terminals A1 and/or A2 Bad Output on RBCU Bad Contactor	Verify that J8 connector is firmly seated. With incoming power disconnected, check for tightness of A1 and A2 terminals Swap RBCU Change Contactor/ Assembly

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3006	UNDERVOLTAGE	Fault will be generated only if the drive is controlling the motor and the power to the bypass is removed before the drive shuts down. This fault is generated when the drive contactor opens while the drive is operating.	Loose J7 connector on RBCU unit Loose input wiring Incoming power problems	Check that J7 connector is firmly seated in RBCU Check tightness of incoming connections Check Parameter 0413 to view voltage level at time of trip Check upstream protection
3008	DRIVE AI2 LOSS	Only displayed when in Supervisory mode. Indicates that AI2 on the drive has failed.	Check ACH550 manual for AI2 loss	Check ACH550 manual for AI2 loss
3009	MTR OVERLOAD	Bypass opens on motor overload conditions defined in the drive	Drive Mode: Bad Motor Bad CT's Bad RBCU Bypass mode: Bad motor Bad CT's Bad RBCU Either mode: low input voltage	Check if overload condition exists Drive Mode: Refer to 550 manual for proper troubleshooting techniques Bypass Mode: Check that J2 connector is firmly seated in RBCU Use clamp meter to verify mtr current vs. display in parameter 0101 Check input voltage
3010	INP PHASE A LOSS	Fault will be generated when the bypass contactor is requested to be closed and the RBCU does not sense voltage on Phase A	Loose J7 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J7 connector Check yellow wire on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground
3011	INP PHASE B LOSS	Fault will be generated when the bypass contactor is requested to be closed and the RBCU does not sense voltage on Phase B	Loose J7 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J7 connector Check black wire on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground
3012	INP PHASE C LOSS	Fault will be generated when the bypass contactor is requested to be closed and the RBCU does not sense voltage on Phase C	Loose J7 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J7 connector Check red on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3013	DRIVE 1ST START	Fault generated if attempting to close the bypass contactor with out running the bypass in drive mode first.	NA	Run bypass unit in drive mode before attempting bypass mode
3014	COIL POW SUPPLY	Coil power supply has failed to reach rated voltage	Internal failure on RBCU unit Shorted contactor coil	Cycle power on bypass unit. If contactor coil is shorted, fault 3023 or 3024 will be generated. If 3023 or 3024 is generated, replace respective contactor If 3023 or 3024 is not generated on power up, replace RBCU unit.
3016	EARTH FAULT	Declared if attempting to close the bypass contactor when the drive has earth fault declared	Earth fault in motor	Refer to the ACH550 manual
3017	MTR UNDERLOAD	If motor power(%) level falls below minimum power level establish in parameter 3003 for the time (s) set in parameter 3002 fault will be generated. Parameter 3003 is a percentage of motor power as defined in the drive via parameter 9909. Fault only applies to bypass mode	Broken belt	Check load Reset bypass keypad Check ACH550 manual, fault code 17, for further action
3018	MAX CYCLE FAULT	Supervisory Mode only. Declared if bypass contactor is closed by supervisory control 16 times within a 1 hour period.	High and low levels of hysteresis band are too tight	Check parameters 3202-3205. Increase time delays on parameters 3204 and 3205
3019	DRIVE LINK FAULT	Supervisory Mode Only. Fault generated if RS-485 link between drive and bypass stops communicating.	Bad cable/connection between drive and bypass. Communication improperly set in drive Parameter 9802. Application Macro improperly set in drive parameter 9902. Check *Application macros* section.	Proper seating of cable in drive and RBCU(connector J3) Check drive parameter 9802 (Modbus) and 9902 (E-Clipse) Check drive Group 53 Follow DriveLink recovery procedure

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3020	PHASE SEQ	Sequence of 3 phase voltage input is such that bypass operation will result in motor rotation opposite of drive forward operation.	Phase sequence unknown at time of wiring	Swap any two of the three input wires to the bypass unit
3021	PH A CURR FBK	Fault is generated when current in Phase A is detected and the bypass contactor is open	Loose CT connection Bad RBCU Bad CT	Check J2 connector for proper seating Check connector on Current Assembly Replace RBCU Replace RCSA unit
3022	PH C CURR FBK	Fault is generated when current in Phase C is detected and the bypass contactor is open	Loose CT connection Bad RBCU Bad CT	Check J2 connector for proper seating Check connector on Current Assembly Replace RBCU Replace RCSA unit
3023	BYP COIL SHORTED	Coil characteristics are checked only on power up and coil current is greater than allowable values	Shorted contactor coil Shorted/damaged cable Bad RBCU	Replace RBCU Replace RCSA unit
3024	DRV COIL SHORTED	Coil characteristics are checked only on power up and coil current is greater than allowable values	Shorted contactor coil Shorted/damaged cable Bad RBCU	Replace RBCU Replace RCSA unit
3027	INVALID SUB ASM	Contactor assembly as recorded in the RBCU unit does not match drive information communicated via 485 link	RBCU unit from a different size bypass used to replace a defective RBCU. Parameters not matched after Firmware change.	Contact ABB at 1-800-HELP-365 Option 4
3028	EXT COMM LOSS	Time between fieldbus messages has exceeded timeout interval set with parameter 3005	Incorrect Communication settings in Group 51 & 53. Poor Connections Noise on Communication Line	Check Group 51 & 53 Tighten Connections Check Communication Cable Grounding
3029	EFB CONFIG FILE	Error reading configuration file for embedded fieldbus	Internal Startup error	Cycle Power Replace RBCU
3030	FORCE TRIP	Fault trip forced by external fieldbus	Overriding Control System tripped E-Clipse unit via fieldbus.	Check Overriding Control System

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3031 ... 3033	EFB 1...EFB 3	Fault code reserved for embedded fieldbus.	For Bacnet: Device object instances for the drive and or bypass are set greater than 4194302 in paramters 5011 5017 and or 5311 5317 respectively	Check Parameters 5011, 5017 and/or 5311, 5317
3034	MTR PHASE	Detects open motor phase. Detection is done by current transformers in bypass unit.	Internal problem Cable problem Motor problem	Check wiring in E-Clipse Unit Check motor cabling Check Motor Check if 3006 is Disabled
3037	PCB TEMP	RBCU unit has reached 190 degrees Fahrenheit, 88 degrees Celsius	Cabinet cooling has failed Ambient conditions too high Bad RBCU unit	Stop drive and let cool down and restart Add additional cooling Replace RBCU
3038	NO DRIVE DATA	No drive data available (Group 112)	Bypass not able to extract drive data on initial power up due to: Bad cable/connection between drive and bypass. Communication improperly set in drive Parameter 9802. Application Macro improperly set in drive parameter 9902. Check *Application macros* section.	Proper seating of cable in drive and RBCU (connector J3) Check drive parameter 9802 (Modbus) and 9902 (E-Clipse) Check drive Group 53 Follow DriveLink recovery procedure then cycle power to bypass.
3039	FBA PAR CONF	Non embedded fieldbus has detected an error in Group 51 parameters	Incorrect settings in Group 51	Verify Group 51 parameters
3101	SFLASH CORRUPT	Internal checksum error	NA	Cycle power Replace RBCU Upgrade firmware
3102	PMAP FILE	Parameter file is corrupt		Cycle Power Contact ABB with information that preceeded fault
3201	T1 OVERLOAD	T1 program cycle is overloaded	NA	Contact ABB with information that proceeded fault Cycle Power Replace RBCU

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Fault	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
3202	T2 OVERLOAD	T2 program cycle is overloaded	NA	Contact ABB with information that proceeded fault Cycle Power Replace RBCU
3203	T3 OVERLOAD	T3 program cycle is overloaded	NA	Contact ABB with information that proceeded fault Cycle Power Replace RBCU
3204	STACK OVERFLOW	Program cycle is overloaded	NA	Contact ABB with information that proceeded fault Cycle Power Replace RBCU
3205	UNKNOWN CB	Bypass control board type is unknown.	Firmware is not compatible with control board in RBCU.	Firmware 93F and greater compatible with all RCBU hardware. Firmware 93D and earlier can only be loaded in RBCU Rev D and earlier.
3206	UNKNOWN DRIVE	Drive reports rating not found in bypass software	Drive does not match drives configured in bypass RBCU	Replace RBCU or reload with most current firmware
3207	UNKNOWN BYPASS	NA	NA	Replace RBCU or load most current firmware Contact ABB at 1-800-HELP-365 option 4 Replace RBCU or load most current firmware

Fault resetting

WARNING! If an external source for start command is selected and it is active, the system may start immediately after fault reset.

Flashing red LED

To reset the bypass for faults indicated by a flashing red LED:

- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Red LED

To reset the bypass for faults indicated by a red LED (on, not flashing), correct the problem and do one of the following:

- From the bypass control panel, press OFF/RESET
- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Depending on the value of 1607, FAULT RESET SELECT, the following could also be used to reset the drive:

- Digital input
- Serial communication

When the fault has been corrected, the motor can be started.

Note: For some faults such as motor phase open and motor OC, it is suggested that you check the drive to motor wiring and/or meggar the motor before attempting to restart the system on bypass.

History

For reference, the last five fault codes are stored into parameters 0401, 0410, 0419, 0420 and 0421. For the most recent fault (identified by parameter 0401) and Fault 2 (identified by parameter 0410), the drive stores additional data (in parameters 0402…0409 and 0411…00418 respectively) to aid in troubleshooting a problem. For example, parameter 0405 stores the motor current at the time of the fault.

To clear the fault history (all of the Group 04, Fault History parameters):

1. Using the control panel in Parameters mode, select parameter 0401.
2. Press ENTER.
3. Press Up and Down simultaneously.
4. Press ENTER.

Correcting alarms

The recommended corrective action for alarms is:

- Determine if the Alarm requires any corrective action (action is not always required).
- Use the following *Alarm listing* to find and address the root cause of the problem.

Alarm listing

The following table lists the alarms by code number and describes each.

Alarm Code	Alarm Name In Panel	Alarm	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
4001	INP PHASE A LOSS	Alarm will occur in drive mode. In bypass, alarm will occur if bypass contactor has not closed. Unit will trip on Fault 3010 if the bypass contactor is closed	Loose J8 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J8 connector Check yellow wire on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground
4002	INP PHASE B LOSS	Alarm will occur in drive mode. In bypass, alarm will occur if bypass contactor has not closed. Unit will trip on Fault 3011 if the bypass contactor is closed	Loose J8 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J8 connector Check black wire on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground
4003	INP PHASE C LOSS	Alarm will occur in drive mode. In bypass, alarm will occur if bypass contactor has not closed. Unit will trip on Fault 3012 if the bypass contactor is closed	Loose J8 connector Loose wiring on Contactor assembly. Blown upstream fuse	Check J8 connector Check red wire on input block Check incoming voltage, phase to ground
4004	AUTO TRANSFER	Message is displayed when the drive faults and the bypass switches to bypass mode as configured in Parameter 1608	Drive fault	Check drive
4005	EXT COMM ERR	Time between fieldbus messages has exceeded timeout interval set with parameter 3005	Incorrect Communication settings in Group 51 & 53. Poor Connections Noise on Communication Line	Check Group 51& 53 Tighten Connections Check Communication Cable Grounding
4006	Selected by PAR 1620: RUN ENABLE DAMPER END SWITCH VALVE OPENING PRE-LUBE CYCLE	Alarm will occur when start order is given and the "RUN Enable" is not present	Run Enable condition is not satisfied. Bad 24v supply Bad digital input	Check 24 Volts on RBCU unit Check for 24 volts on respective DI when condition is satisfied Check Parameter 0103 for status of digital input
4007	PCB TEMP	RBCU unit reached 181 degrees Fahrenheit, 83 degrees Celsius	Cabinet cooling has failed Ambient conditions too high Bad RBCU unit	Stop drive and let cool down and restart Add additional cooling Replace RBCU

Alarm Code	Alarm Name In Panel	Alarm	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
4008	DRIVE SETUP	Alarm generated when configuration of drive is such that bypass can not properly control the drive. Specifically, drive parameters 1001,1002,1601, 1608	Incorrect parameters settings	Set Parameter 1001 to "COMM" Set Parameter 1002 to "COMM" Set Parameter 1601 to "COMM" Set Parameter 1608 to "COMM"
4009	BYPASS RUN DELAY	Alarm is generated when a bypass start command is issued and there is non zero time value in bypass parameter 1614	NA	NA
4010	MTR OVERLOAD	Bypass warning if motor overload conditions exist as defined in the drive	Drive Mode: Bad Motor Bad Ct's Bad RBCU Bypass mode: Bad motor Bad CT's Bad RBCU Either mode: low input voltage	Drive Mode: Refer to 550 manual for proper troubleshooting techniques Bypass Mode: Check that J2 connector is firmly seated in RBCU Check input voltage Does overload condition exist?
4011	MTR UNDERLOAD	Alarm comes at half the time of a mtr underload fault. See fault 3017 for further text	NA	Parameter 3002 is the time Parameter 3003 is the level
4012	BYPASS DISABLED	Alarm will be generated if parameter 1613 is set to "Disable"	NA	NA
4013	DRIVE LINK ERROR	Same as Fault 3019 however will occur when not in supervisory mode	Bad cable between drive and bypass Communication improperly set in drive Parameter 98.02(Modbus) Application Macro in 99.02 set to 15 (text) Check *Application macros* section.	Proper seating of cable in drive and RBCU(connector J3) Check drive parameter 98.02 and 99.02 Check drive Group 53 Follow DriveLink recovery procedure
4014	DRIVE TEST	Alarm is generated when bypass parameter 1617 is set to "enable"	NA	NA
4015	START DRIVE 1ST	Message displayed on initial "out of box" power up sequence	NA	Run drive in Hand

Alarm Code	Alarm Name In Panel	Alarm	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
4016	INP VOLTAGE LOW	3-Phase input voltage has not reached a sufficient level to enable editing of parameters via the keypad. This message is generated within a few seconds of power up	NA	Loose J7 connector Low input voltage. Incoming voltage has not reached at least 155 VAC within a few seconds of powerup
4019	OVERRIDE 1	Alarm is generated when override 1 is active	NA	Check Parameter 0103 and 0104 for digital input status
4020	OVRD2 BYP	Alarm is generated when override 2 is active and the bypass is controlling the motor	NA	Check Parameter 0103 and 0104 for digital input status
4021	Selected by PAR 1621 START ENABLE 1 VIBRATION SWITCH FIRESTAT FREEZESTAT OVERPRESSURE VIBRATION TRIP SMOKE ALARM SAFETY OPEN LOW SUCTION PRES	Alarm will occur when start order is given and the "RUN Enable" is not present	Run Enable condition is not satisfied. Bad 24v supply Bad digital input 24 V common is not tied to Digital input common on bypass when using external 24 v supply	Check 24 Volts on RBCU unit Check for 24 volts on respective DI when condition is satisfied Check Parameter 0103 For status of digital input
4022	Selected by PAR 1622 START ENABLE 2 VIBRATION SWITCH ... LOW SUCTION PRES	Alarm will occur when start order is given and the "RUN Enable" is not present	Run Enable condition is not satisfied. Bad 24v supply Bad digital input 24 V common is not tied to Digital input common on bypass when using external 24 v supply	Check 24 Volts on RBCU unit Check for 24 volts on respective DI when condition is satisfied Check Parameter 0103 For status of digital input
4023	Selected by PAR 1623 START ENABLE 3 VIBRATION SWITCH ... LOW SUCTION PRES	Alarm will occur when start order is given and the "RUN Enable" is not present	Run Enable condition is not satisfied. Bad 24v supply Bad digital input 24 V common is not tied to Digital input common on bypass when using external 24 v supply	Check 24 Volts on RBCU unit Check for 24 volts on respective DI when condition is satisfied Check Parameter 0103 For status of digital input

Alarm Code	Alarm Name In Panel	Alarm	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
4024	Selected by PAR 1624 START ENABLE 4 VIBRATION SWITCH ... LOW SUCTION PRES	Alarm will occur when start order is given and the "RUN Enable" is not present	Run Enable condition is not satisfied. Bad 24v supply Bad digital input 24 V common is not tied to Digital input common on bypass when using external 24 v supply	Check 24 Volts on RBCU unit Check for 24 volts on respective DI when condition is satisfied Check Parameter 0103 For status of digital input
4025	LOCAL DISABLED	Alarm is displayed if MODE LOCK (16.29) is set to AUTO MODE and the Hand or Off key is pressed		
4026	AUTO DISABLED	This alarm is displayed if MODE LOCK (1629) is set to LOCAL MODE and the Auto key is pressed.		
4027	COMM CONFIG ERR	Alarm is displayed if the drive and bypass MAC addresses are equal or invalid.	E-Clipse parameters 5002(BP MAC ID) & 5302 (DV MAC ID) are set to the same value	Change MAC address to unique values
4028	FBA PAR CONF	Non embedded fieldbus has detected an error in Group 51 parameters		Verify Group 51 parameters
4029	DRIVE FAULTED	The drive is faulted.		Reset drive
4030	OVRD2 VFD	Alarm is generated when override 2 is active and the drive is controlling the motor	NA	Check Parameter 0103 and 0104 for digital input status
4031	OVRD2 STOP	Alarm is generated when override 2 is active and both the bypass and drive output contactors are deenergized	NA	Check Parameter 0103 and 0104 for digital input status

Bypass status listing

Bypass Status (16 Characters)	Condition	Description
DRIVE/BYPASS?	DRIVE SELECTED BYPASS SELECTED	Displays which one is selected, drive or bypass
SAFETIES?	OPEN CLOSED	Displays if safeties (=START ENABLE 1 and/or START ENABLE 2) have been applied, or if they are missing
RUN PERMISSIVES?	OPEN CLOSED	Displays if RUN ENABLE is present or not
START REQUEST?	NOT PRESENT PRESENT	Displays if start request has been applied to the system
AUTO TRANSFER?	NOT TRANSFERRED TRANSFERRED	Displays if the system is in Auto Transfer state or not. Does not reflect to PAR 16.08 AUTO XFER value itself
BYP OVERRIDE 1?	NOT ACTIVATED ACTIVATED	Status of Override 1
BYP OVERRIDE 2?	NOT ACTIVATED ACTIVATED	Status of Override 2
DRIVE FAULTED?	NO YES	Displays if drive is faulted or not
BYPASS FAULTED?	NO YES	Displays if bypass is faulted or not
SYSTEM STARTED?	NO YES	Displays if system is started or not
SYSTEM RUNNING?	NO YES	Displays if system is running or not
BYPASS ALARMS?	NO ALARMS ALARM ACTIVE	Displays if there is an active alarm(s) in bypass or not
HAND/OFF/AUTO?	OFF MODE HAND MODE AUTO MODE	Displays operating mode of the bypass - OFF, HAND or AUTO

Error messages

#	Error Message	Description
1	CAN'T EDIT PAR IS READ ONLY	Try to save value (=press the ENTER key in Parameter Edit State) of a read-only parameter. E.g. try to change value PAR 01.02 INPUT VOLT
2	CAN'T EDIT WHEN STARTED	Try to change value of a parameter, which is allowed to be changed only when system is not started. E.g. PAR 16.02 RUN ENABLE
3	CAN'T EDIT UP+DOWN ONLY	Try to change value of a “reset only” parameter other than zero. UP+DOWN buttons must be pressed simultaneoulsy for requesting default value of the PAR on the display (value zero), and after that ENTER pressed for saving it (reset the parameter). E.g. PAR 04.01 LAST FAULT
4	CAN'T EDIT INP VOLTAGE LOW	Input voltage too low. Changing of parameters prohibited since system cannot save values to nv-mem w/ insufficient voltage.
5	CAN'T EDIT PAR IS HIDDEN	Try to save value (=press the ENTER key in Parameter Edit State) of a hidden parameter. Should not be possible. If hidden parameters are turned visible, this message is not given.
6	CAN'T EDIT UNDER LO-LIMIT	Try to save value which is over LO-LIMIT of the parameter. Should not be possible when changing parameters from control panel.
7	CAN'T EDIT UNDER HI-LIMIT	Try to save value which is over HI-LIMIT of the parameter. Should not be possible when changing parameters from control panel.
8	CAN'T EDIT ENUM VAL ONLY	Try to save value which is out of enumerated value list. Should not be possible when changing parameters from control panel.
9	CAN'T EDIT NO DEFAULT	Try to request default value (=press UP and DOWN buttons simultaneously) for a parameter which is defined not to have a default value. Should not be possible when changing parameters from control panel.
10	CAN'T EDIT TRY AGAIN.	Parameter system is busy, e.g. application macro change is in process at the same time when someone is trying to save a value for a parameter. Should not be possible when changing parameters from control panel.

Technical data

Input power connections (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Branch circuit protection

Input power is connected to the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass through a door interlocked disconnect switch or circuit breaker. Neither of these inputs are fused. The branch circuit that provides power to the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass with disconnect switch must include required external fuse to provide short circuit and ground fault protection for the motor in the bypass mode. When connected to a 240V or 480V power source, the ACH550 with E-Clipse with the circuit breaker is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100,000 RMS symmetrical amperes. When connected to a 600V power source, the ACH550 with E-Clipse Bypass with the circuit breaker option is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 10,000 RMS symmetrical amperes.

Fuses

Note: The UL listed drive fuses in the table are provided in the purchased product

- Replacement fuses are required to be of the same class, current rating, and voltage rating. Fuses from other manufacturers can be used if they meet the specifications given in the table.
- Fuses with higher current rating than specified must not be used.

Vertical unit fuse requirements

HP	Type Code[1]	Frame Size	Internal Drive Fuse Rating		External Fuse for Disconnect Option	
			Class	Current Rating	Class	Max Current Rating
208...240 Volt						
1	ACH550-VxR-04A6-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
1.5	ACH550-VxR-06A6-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
2	ACH550-VxR-07A5-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	20A
3	ACH550-VxR-012A-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	25A
5	ACH550-VxR-017A-2	R1	Class CC	30A	Class J	40A
7.5	ACH550-VxR-024A-2	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	45A
10	ACH550-VxR-031A-2	R2	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
15	ACH550-VxR-046A-2	R3	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
20	ACH550-VxR-059A-2	R3	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
25	ACH550-VxR-075A-2	R4	Class T	100A	Class J	100A

HP	Type Code[1]	Frame Size	Internal Drive Fuse Rating		External Fuse for Disconnect Option	
			Class	Current Rating	Class	Max Current Rating
480 Volt						
1	ACH550-VxR-03A3-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
1.5	ACH550-VxR-03A3-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
2	ACH550-VxR-04A1-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
3	ACH550-VxR-06A9-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
5	ACH550-VxR-08A8-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	20A
7.5	ACH550-VxR-012A-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	25A
10	ACH550-VxR-015A-4	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	35A
15	ACH550-VxR-023A-4	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	45A
20	ACH550-VxR-031A-4	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
25	ACH550-VxR-038A-4	R3	Class T	60A	Class J	60A
30	ACH550-VxR-045A-4	R3	Class T	60A	Class J	60A
40	ACH550-VxR-059A-4	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
50	ACH550-VxR-072A-4	R4	Class T	90A	Class J	100A
60	ACH550-VxR-078A-4	R4	Class T	100A	Class J	100A
600 Volt						
2	ACH550-VxR-02A7-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	15A
3	ACH550-VxR-03A9-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	15A
5	ACH550-VxR-06A1-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	15A
7.5	ACH550-VxR-09A0-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	20A
10	ACH550-VxR-011A-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	25A
15	ACH550-VxR-017A-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	40A
20	ACH550-VxR-022A-6	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	50A
25	ACH550-VxR-027A-6	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
30	ACH550-VxR-032A-6	R4	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
40	ACH550-VxR-041A-6	R4	Class T	50A	Class J	100A
50	ACH550-VxR-052A-6	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
60	ACH550-VxR-062A-6	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A

1) "VxR" represents both VCR and VDR.

Box unit fuse requirements

HP	Type Code[1]	Base Drive Frame Size	Internal Drive Fuse Rating		External Fuse for Disconnect Option	
			Class	Current Rating	Class	Max Current Rating
208...240 Volt						
1	ACH550-BxR-04A6-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
1.5	ACH550-BxR-06A6-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
2	ACH550-BxR-07A5-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	20A
3	ACH550-BxR-012A-2	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	25A
5	ACH550-BxR-017A-2	R1	Class CC	30A	Class J	40A
7.5	ACH550-BxR-024A-2	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	60A
10	ACH550-BxR-031A-2	R2	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
15	ACH550-BxR-046A-2	R3	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
20	ACH550-BxR-059A-2	R3	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
25	ACH550-BxR-075A-2	R4	Class T	100A	Class J	100A
30	ACH550-BxR-088A-2	R4	Class T	110A	Class J	200A
40	ACH550-BxR-114A-2	R4	Class T	150A	Class J	300A
50	ACH550-BxR-143A-2	R6	Class T	200A	Class J	300A
60	ACH550-BxR-178A-2	R6	Class T	250A	Class J	300A
75	ACH550-BxR-221A-2	R6	Class T	300A	Class J	400A
100	ACH550-BxR-248A-2	R6	Class T	350A	Class J	400A

HP	Type Code[1]	Base Drive Frame Size	Internal Drive Fuse Rating		External Fuse for Disconnect Option	
			Class	Current Rating	Class	Max Current Rating
480 Volt						
1	ACH550-BxR-03A3-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
1.5	ACH550-BxR-03A3-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
2	ACH550-BxR-04A1-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
3	ACH550-BxR-06A9-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
5	ACH550-BxR-08A8-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	20A
7.5	ACH550-BxR-012A-4	R1	Class CC	15A	Class J	25A
10	ACH550-BxR-015A-4	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	35A
15	ACH550-BxR-023A-4	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	50A
20	ACH550-BxR-031A-4	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
25	ACH550-BxR-038A-4	R3	Class T	60A	Class J	60A
30	ACH550-BxR-045A-4	R3	Class T	60A	Class J	60A
40	ACH550-BxR-059A-4	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
50	ACH550-BxR-072A-4	R4	Class T	90A	Class J	100A
60	ACH550-BxR-078A-4	R4	Class T	100A	Class J	NA
75	ACH550-BxR-097A-4	R4	Class T	150A	Class J	225A
100	ACH550-BxR-125A-4	R5	Class T	200A	Class J	300A
125	ACH550-BxR-157A-4	R6	Class T	225A	Class J	300A
150	ACH550-BxR-180A-4	R6	Class T	300A	Class J	300A
200	ACH550-BxR-246A-4	R6	Class T	350A	Class J	400A

HP	Type Code[1]	Base Drive Frame Size	Internal Drive Fuse Rating		External Fuse for Disconnect Option	
			Class	Current Rating	Class	Max Current Rating
600 Volt						
2	ACH550-BxR-02A7-6	R2	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
3	ACH550-BxR-03A9-6	R2	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
5	ACH550-BxR-06A1-6	R2	Class CC	15A	Class J	15A
7.5	ACH550-BxR-09A0-6	R2	Class CC	15A	Class J	20A
10	ACH550-BxR-011A-6	R2	Class CC	15A	Class J	25A
15	ACH550-BxR-017A-6	R2	Class CC	30A	Class J	40A
20	ACH550-BxR-022A-6	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	50A
25	ACH550-BxR-027A-6	R3	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
30	ACH550-BxR-032A-6	R4	Class T	40A	Class J	60A
40	ACH550-BxR-041A-6	R4	Class T	50A	Class J	100A
50	ACH550-BxR-052A-6	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
60	ACH550-BxR-062A-6	R4	Class T	80A	Class J	100A
75	ACH550-BxR-077A-6	R6	Class T	100A	Class J	175A
100	ACH550-BxR-099A-6	R6	Class T	150A	Class J	225A
125	ACH550-BxR-125A-6	R6	Class T	175A	Class J	300A
150	ACH550-BxR-144A-6	R6	Class T	200A	Class J	300A

1) "BxR" represents both BCR and BDR.

Line reactor

The ACH550 E-Clipse Bypass may contain optional input line reactors to provide additional input impedance on the VAC line. This impedance is in addition to the approximately 5% equivalent input impedance provided by internal reactors that are standard in the drive.

Drive's power connection terminals

The following tables list power and motor cable terminal sizes for connections to an input circuit breaker or disconnect switch, a motor terminal block and ground lugs. The tables also list torque that should be applied when tightening the terminals.

Vertical enclosure terminals

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">HP</th><th rowspan="2">Type Code[1]</th><th rowspan="2">Frame Size</th><th colspan="4">Maximum Power Wiring Data</th></tr>
<tr><th>Circuit Breaker</th><th>Disconnect Switch</th><th>Motor Termination</th><th>Ground Lugs</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">208…240 Volt</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>ACH550-VxR-04A6-2</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="4">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
11-13 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#4
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-06A6-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-VxR-07A5-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-VxR-012A-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-017A-2</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="3">#8
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-024A-2</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-VxR-031A-2</td><td>R2</td><td>#4
55 in-lbs</td><td>#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-VxR-046A-2</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="3">#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-VxR-059A-2</td><td>R3</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-VxR-075A-2</td><td>R4</td><td>#1/0
75 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">480 Volt</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>ACH550-VxR-03A3-4</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="6">#12
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#6
11-13 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#4
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-03A3-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-VxR-04A1-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-VxR-06A9-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-08A8-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-012A-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-VxR-015A-4</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="2">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td>#8
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-VxR-023A-4</td><td>R2</td><td>#6
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-VxR-031A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="3">#8
62 in-lbs</td><td>#4
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-VxR-038A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#3
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-VxR-045A-4</td><td>R3</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-VxR-059A-4</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="3">#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-VxR-072A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-VxR-078A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1/0
75 in-lbs</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">HP</th><th rowspan="2">Type Code[1]</th><th rowspan="2">Frame Size</th><th colspan="4">Maximum Power Wiring Data</th></tr>
<tr><th>Circuit Breaker</th><th>Disconnect Switch</th><th>Motor Termination</th><th>Ground Lugs</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="7">600 Volt[2]</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-VxR-02A7-6</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="8">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
11-13 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#4
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-VxR-03A9-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-06A1-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-VxR-09A0-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-VxR-011A-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-VxR-017A-6</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="2">#6
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-VxR-022A-6</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="4">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-VxR-027A-6</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#4
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-VxR-032A-6</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="2">#6
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-VxR-041A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#3
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-VxR-052A-6[3]</td><td>R4</td><td>#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-VxR-062A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
</table>

1) "VxR" represents both VCR and VDR.
2) VCR is rated 600Y/347V unless otherwise specified. For use on a solidly grounded Wye source only.
3) VCR supports Delta network configuration.

Standard enclosure terminals

HP	Type Code[1]	Base Drive Frame Size	Maximum Power Wiring Data							
			Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12	Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 3R	Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12	Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 3R	Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2	Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 3R	Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2	Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 3R
208…240 Volt										
1	ACH550-BxR-04A6-2	R1	#12 62 in-lbs	#12 62 in-lbs	#10 55 in-lbs	#10 55 in-lbs	#6 11-13 in-lbs	#6 11-13 in-lbs	#4 35 in-lbs	#4 35 in-lbs
1.5	ACH550-BxR-06A6-2	R1								
2	ACH550-BxR-07A5-2	R1								
3	ACH550-BxR-012A-2	R1								
5	ACH550-BxR-017A-2	R1	#8 62 in-lbs	#8 62 in-lbs	#6 55 in-lbs	#6 55 in-lbs				
7.5	ACH550-BxR-024A-2	R2								
10	ACH550-BxR-031A-2	R2	#6 62 in-lbs	#6 62 in-lbs	#4 55 in-lbs	#4 55 in-lbs	#1 35 in-lbs	#1 35 in-lbs	#2 50 in-lbs	#2 50 in-lbs
15	ACH550-BxR-046A-2	R3	#2 62 in-lbs	#2 62 in-lbs	#2 55 in-lbs	#2 55 in-lbs	#2/0 110 in-lbs	#2/0 110 in-lbs		
20	ACH550-BxR-059A-2	R3			#1 55 in-lbs	#1 55 in-lbs				
25	ACH550-BxR-075A-2	R4			#1/0 75 in-lbs	#1/0 75 in-lbs				
30	ACH550-BxR-088A-2	R4	#1/0 124 in-lbs	#1/0 124 in-lbs	#2/0 275 in-lbs	#2/0 275 in-lbs	#20/0 71 in-lbs	#2/0 71 in-lbs	2 x #3/0 250 in-lbs	
40	ACH550-BxR-114A-2	R4			#4/0 275 in-lbs	#4/0 275 in-lbs	300 MCM 301 in-lbs	300 MCM 301 in-lbs		
50	ACH550-BxR-143A-2	R6	#3/0 124 in-lbs	#3/0 124 in-lbs	300 MCM 275 in-lbs	300 MCM 275 in-lbs	500 MCM 372 in-lbs	500 MCM 372 in-lbs		#2/0 375 in-lbs
60	ACH550-BxR-178A-2	R6			250 MCM 275 in-lbs	250 MCM 275 in-lbs				
75	ACH550-BxR-221A-2	R6	373 MCM 274 in-lbs	373 MCM 274 in-lbs	2 x 500 MCM 274 in-lbs	2 x 500 MCM 274 in-lbs	2 x 500 MCM 375 in-lbs	2 x 500 MCM 372 in-lbs		350 MCM 100 in-lbs
100	ACH550-BxR-248A-2	R6								

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">HP</th><th rowspan="2">Type Code[1]</th><th rowspan="2">Base Drive Frame Size</th><th colspan="8">Maximum Power Wiring Data</th></tr>
<tr><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2</th><th>Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="11">480 Volt</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>ACH550-BxR-03A3-4</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="6">#12
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#12
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#6
11-13
in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#6
11-13
in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#4
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#4
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.5</td><td>ACH550-BxR-03A3-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-BxR-04A1-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-BxR-06A9-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-BxR-08A8-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-BxR-012A-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-BxR-015A-4</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="2">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td>#8
55 in-lbs</td><td>#8
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-BxR-023A-4</td><td>R2</td><td>#6
55 in-lbs</td><td>#6
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-BxR-031A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="3">#8
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#8
62 in-lbs</td><td>#4
55 in-lbs</td><td>#4
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#2
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-BxR-038A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#3
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-BxR-045A-4</td><td>R3</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-BxR-059A-4</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="3">#2
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
55 in-lbs</td><td>#2
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-BxR-072A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-BxR-078A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1/0
75 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
75 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>75</td><td>ACH550-BxR-097A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>#3/0
275 in-lbs</td><td>#3/0
275 in-lbs</td><td>#2/0
71 in-lbs</td><td>#2/0
71 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">2 x #3/0
250 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>ACH550-BxR-125A-4</td><td>R5</td><td>#2/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>#2/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>250 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>250 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>300 MCM
301 in-lbs</td><td>300 MCM
301 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>125</td><td>ACH550-BxR-157A-4</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="2">#3/0
124 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3/0
124 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">500 MCM
372 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">500 MCM
372 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
375 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>150</td><td>ACH550-BxR-180A-4</td><td>R6</td></tr>
<tr><td>200</td><td>ACH550-BxR-246A-4</td><td>R6</td><td>350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td>350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td>350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td>350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td>2 x 500
MCM
372 in-lbs</td><td>2 x 500
MCM
372 in-lbs</td><td>350 MCM
100 in-lbs</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">HP</th><th rowspan="2">Type Code[1]</th><th rowspan="2">Base Drive Frame Size</th><th colspan="8">Maximum Power Wiring Data</th></tr>
<tr><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2</th><th>Motor Terminals UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 2</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="11">600 Volt[2]</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-BxR-02A7-6</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="5">#12
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#12
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
11-13 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
11-13 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#4
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#4
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-BxR-03A9-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-BxR-06A1-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-BxR-09A0-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-BxR-011A-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-BxR-017A-6</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="3">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#10
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-BxR-022A-6</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="4">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">#1
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#2
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-BxR-027A-6</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#4
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#4
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-BxR-032A-6</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="2">#6
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-BxR-041A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#3
62 in-lbs</td><td>#3
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-BxR-052A-6[3]</td><td>R4</td><td>#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
62 in-lbs</td><td>#2
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
110 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-BxR-062A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>75</td><td>ACH550-BxR-077A-6[4]</td><td>R6</td><td>#1/0
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
275 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
71 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
71 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">3 x #3/0
250 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>ACH550-BxR-099A-6[4]</td><td>R6</td><td>#3/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>#3/0
124 in-lbs</td><td>#3/0
275 in-lbs</td><td>#3/0
275 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>125</td><td>ACH550-BxR-125A-6[4]</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="2">250 MCM
124 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">250 MCM
124 in-lbs</td><td>250 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>250 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>300 MCM
301 in-lbs</td><td>300 MCM
301 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
375 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>150</td><td>ACH550-BxR-144A-6[4]</td><td>R6</td><td>300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td>500 MCM
372 in-lbs</td><td>500 MCM
372 in-lbs</td></tr>
</table>

1) “BxR” represents both BCR and BDR.
2) BCR is rated 600Y/347V unless otherwise specified. For use on a solidly grounded Wye source only.
3) BCR supports Delta network configuration.
4) BDR is rated 600Y/347V unless otherwise specified. For use on a solidly grounded Wye source only.

Motor connections (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Motor Terminals

See *Drive's power connection terminals* above.

Bypass Contactors

The bypass circuit available with the ACH550 E-Clipse Bypass includes two contactors. One contactor is the bypass contactor (2M) that can be used to manually connect the motor directly to the incoming power line in the event that the ACH550 is out of service. The other contactor is the ACH550 output contactor (1M) that disconnects the ACH550 from the motor when the motor is operating in the Bypass mode. The drive output contactor and the bypass contactor are interlocked to prevent "back feeding," applying line voltage to the ACH550 output terminals.

Motor Overload Protection

Motor overload protection is set using the ACH550 drive control panel. (Refer to ACH550-UH User's manual.) The overload protection parameters set on the ACH550 drive are used by both the drive and the bypass.

In the *Drive* mode, motor overload protection is provided by the ACH550.

In the *Bypass* mode, motor overload protection is provided by the bypass control board.

WARNING! If power is applied and the switches and contacts in the control circuit are commanding the motor to run, the motor will start as soon as the overload protection is reset.
Use caution when resetting the overload protection to make sure it is safe to start the motor.

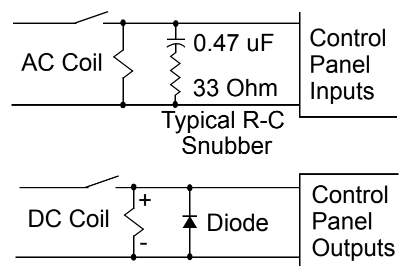
E-Clipse Bypass control unit connections (RBCU) (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Control cable requirements for connections to the E-Clipse Bypass (RBCU) (X2) are the same as those described for the ACH550 control panel (X1). Refer to *Control terminal descriptions* on page *1-316* of the ACH550-UH User's Manual.

Bypass control unit connection specifications

Control Connection Specifications	
Digital Inputs	Digital input impedance 1.5 kΩ. Maximum voltage for digital inputs is 30 V AC/DC
Relays (Digital Outputs)	• Max. contact voltage: 30 V DC, 250 V AC • Max. contact current / power: 6 A, 30 V DC; 1500 VA, 250 V AC • Max. continuous current: 2 A rms (cos . = 1), 1 A rms (cos . = 0.4) • Minimum load: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA) • Contact material: Silver-nickel (AgN) • Isolation between relay digital outputs, test voltage: 2.5 kV rms, 1 minute

WARNING! Relay coils generate noise spikes in response to steps in applied power. To avoid drive damage from such spikes, all AC relay coils mounted across control panel inputs require R-C snubbers, and all DC relay coils mounted across control panel outputs require diodes – see figure.



Bypass control unit terminals

The following table provides specifications for the E-Clipse Bypass's control unit terminals.

Frame Size	Control			
	Maximum Wire Size		Torque	
	mm^2	AWG	Nm	lb-ft
All	0.12…2.5	26…14	0.4	0.3

Dimensional references

The following tables contain dimensional references that identify the dimensional information applying to a given type code.

Vertical enclosures – dimensional reference, 208...240 volt units

208…240 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Page 2-255
HP	Type Code[1]		UL Type/NEMA 1
1	ACH550-VxR-04A6-2	R1	VX1-1
1.5	ACH550-VxR-06A6-2	R1	VX1-1
2	ACH550-VxR-07A5-2	R1	VX1-1
3	ACH550-VxR-012A-2	R1	VX1-1
5	ACH550-VxR-017A-2	R1	VX1-1
7.5	ACH550-VxR-024A-2	R2	VX1-2
10	ACH550-VxR-031A-2	R2	VX1-3
15	ACH550-VxR-046A-2	R3	VX1-3
20	ACH550-VxR-059A-2	R3	VX1-3
25	ACH550-VxR-075A-2	R4	VX1-4

1. "VxR" represents both VCR and VDR.

Vertical enclosures – dimensional reference, 480 volt units

480 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Page 2-255
HP	Type Code[1]		UL Type/NEMA 1
1/1.5	ACH550-VxR-03A3-4	R1	VX1-1
2	ACH550-VxR-04A1-4	R1	VX1-1
3	ACH550-VxR-06A9-4	R1	VX1-1
5	ACH550-VxR-08A8-4	R1	VX1-1
7.5	ACH550-VxR-012A-4	R1	VX1-1
10	ACH550-VxR-015A-4	R2	VX1-2
15	ACH550-VxR-023A-4	R2	VX1-2
20	ACH550-VxR-031A-4	R3	VX1-3
25	ACH550-VxR-038A-4	R3	VX1-3
30	ACH550-VxR-045A-4	R3	VX1-3
40	ACH550-VxR-059A-4	R4	VX1-4
50	ACH550-VxR-072A-4	R4	VX1-4
60	ACH550-VxR-078A-4	R4	VX1-4

1. "VxR" represents both VCR and VDR.

Vertical enclosures – dimensional reference, 600 volt units

600 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Page 2-255
HP	Type Code[1]		UL Type/NEMA 1
2	ACH550-VxR-02A7-6	R2	VX1-2
3	ACH550-VxR-03A9-6	R2	VX1-2
5	ACH550-VxR-06A1-6	R2	VX1-2
7.5	ACH550-VxR-09A0-6	R2	VX1-2
10	ACH550-VxR-011A-6	R2	VX1-2
15	ACH550-VxR-017A-6	R2	VX1-2
20	ACH550-VxR-022A-6	R3	VX1-3
25	ACH550-VxR-027A-6	R3	VX1-3
30	ACH550-VxR-032A-6	R4	VX1-4
40	ACH550-VxR-041A-6	R4	VX1-4
50	ACH550-VxR-052A-6	R4	VX1-4
60	ACH550-VxR-062A-6	R4	VX1-4

1. "VxR" represents both VCR and VDR.

Standard enclosures – dimensional reference, 208...240 volt units

208…240 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Pages 2-256 - 2-258		
HP	Type Code[1]		UL Type/ NEMA 1	UL Type/ NEMA 12	UL Type/ NEMA 3R
1	ACH550-BxR-04A6-2	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
1.5	ACH550-BxR-06A6-2	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
2	ACH550-BxR-07A5-2	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
3	ACH550-BxR-012A-2	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
5	ACH550-BxR-017A-2	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
7.5	ACH550-BxR-024A-2	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
10	ACH550-BxR-031A-2	R2	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
15	ACH550-BxR-046A-2	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
20	ACH550-BxR-059A-2	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
25	ACH550-BxR-075A-2	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
30	ACH550-BxR-088A-2	R4	BX1-5	BX12-5	BX3R-5[2]
40	ACH550-BxR-114A-2	R4	BX1-5	BX12-5	BX3R-6
50	ACH550-BxR-143A-2	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
60	ACH550-BxR-178A-2	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
75	ACH550-BxR-221A-2	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
100	ACH550-BxR-248A-2	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-7

1. "BxR" represents both BCR and BDR.
2. Dimensions references change from BX3R-5 to BX3R-6 with the addition of the AC Line Reactor (+E213) option.

Standard enclosures – dimensional reference, 480 volt units

480 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Pages 2-256 - 2-258		
HP	**Type Code[1]**		**UL Type/ NEMA 1**	**UL Type/ NEMA 12**	**UL Type/ NEMA 3R**
1/1.5	ACH550-BxR-03A3-4	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
2	ACH550-BxR-04A1-4	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
3	ACH550-BxR-06A9-4	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
5	ACH550-BxR-08A8-4	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
7.5	ACH550-BxR-012A-4	R1	BX1-1	BX12-1	BX3R-1
10	ACH550-BxR-015A-4	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
15	ACH550-BxR-023A-4	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
20	ACH550-BxR-031A-4	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
25	ACH550-BxR-038A-4	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
30	ACH550-BxR-045A-4	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
40	ACH550-BxR-059A-4	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
50	ACH550-BxR-072A-4	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
60	ACH550-BxR-078A-4	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
75	ACH550-BxR-097A-4	R4	BX1-5	BX12-5	BX3R-5[2]
100	ACH550-BxR-125A-4	R5	BX1-5	BX12-5	BX3R-6
125	ACH550-BxR-157A-4	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
150	ACH550-BxR-180A-4	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
200	ACH550-BxR-246A-4	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
250	ACH550-BxR-316A-4	R8	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-7
300	ACH550-BxR-368A-4	R8	BX1-8	BX12-8	
350	ACH550-BxR-414A-4	R8	BX1-8	BX12-8	
400	ACH550-BxR-486A-4	R8	BX1-8	BX12-8	

1. "BxR" represents both BCR and BDR.
2. Dimensions references change from BX3R-5 to BX3R-6 with the addition of the AC Line Reactor (+E213) option.

Standard enclosures – dimensional reference, 600 volt units

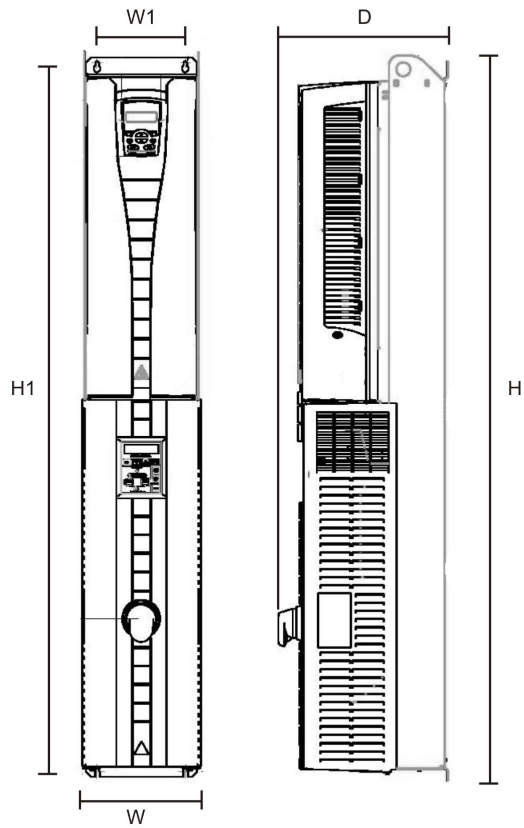
600 Volt		Base Drive Frame Size	Dimension Reference, Pages 2-256 - 2-258		
HP	Type Code[1]		UL Type/ NEMA 1	UL Type/ NEMA 12	UL Type/ NEMA 3R
2	ACH550-BxR-02A7-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
3	ACH550-BxR-03A9-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
5	ACH550-BxR-06A1-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
7.5	ACH550-BxR-09A0-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
10	ACH550-BxR-011A-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
15	ACH550-BxR-017A-6	R2	BX1-2	BX12-2	BX3R-2
20	ACH550-BxR-022A-6	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
25	ACH550-BxR-027A-6	R3	BX1-3	BX12-3	BX3R-3
30	ACH550-BxR-032A-6	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
40	ACH550-BxR-041A-6	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
50	ACH550-BxR-052A-6	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
60	ACH550-BxR-062A-6	R4	BX1-4	BX12-4	BX3R-4
75	ACH550-BxR-077A-6	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
100	ACH550-BxR-099A-6	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
125	ACH550-BxR-125A-6	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6
150	ACH550-BxR-144A-6	R6	BX1-6	BX12-6	BX3R-6

1. "BxR" represents both BCR and BDR.

Dimensions and weights (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Dimensions: ACH550-VxR UL Type 1/NEMA 1, R1 through R4 Frame Size

Wall Mount (VX1-1 - VX1-4)



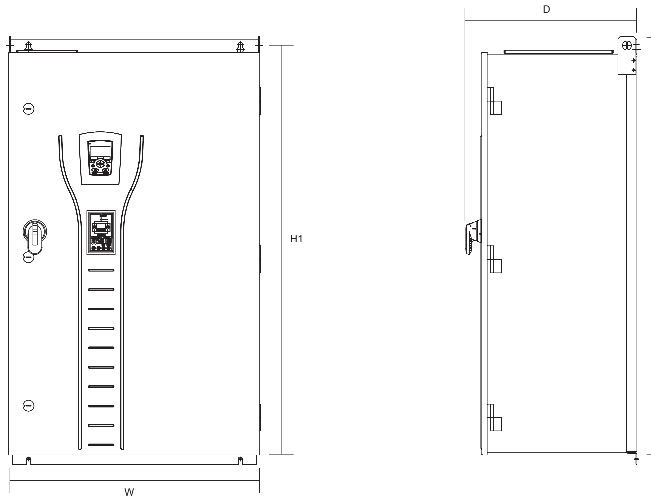
Drawing is not for engineering purposes.

Dimension Reference	UL Type 1 / NEMA 1 Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type 1 / NEMA 1 Dimensions and Weights mm kg [inches] [lbs]				
	H1	W1	Mounting Hardware	Height (H)	Width (W)	Depth (D)	Weight	Dimensions Drawing
VX1-1	1004 [39.5]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	1021 [40.2]	136 [5.4]	256 [10.1]	15 [33]	3AUA0000016371 Sheet 1
VX1-2	1103 [43.4]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	1120 [44.1]	136 [5.4]	262 [10.3]	18 [40]	3AUA0000016372 Sheet 1
VX1-3	1180 [46.5]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1211 [47.7]	214 [8.4]	278 [10.9]	32 [71]	3AUA0000016373 Sheet 1
VX1-4	1285 [50.6]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1316 [51.8]	214 [8.4]	307 [12.1]	42 [93]	3AUA0000016374 Sheet 1

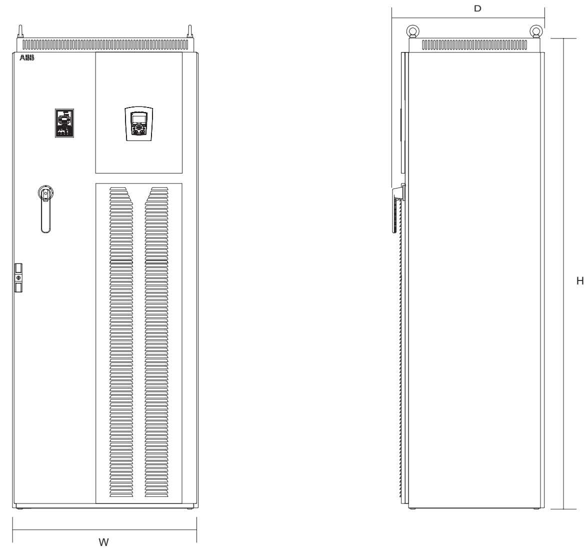
*Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Dimnsnions: ACH550-BxR UL Type 1/NEMA 1, R1 through R8 Frame Size

Wall Mount (BX1-1 - BX1-6)



Floor Mount (BX1-8)



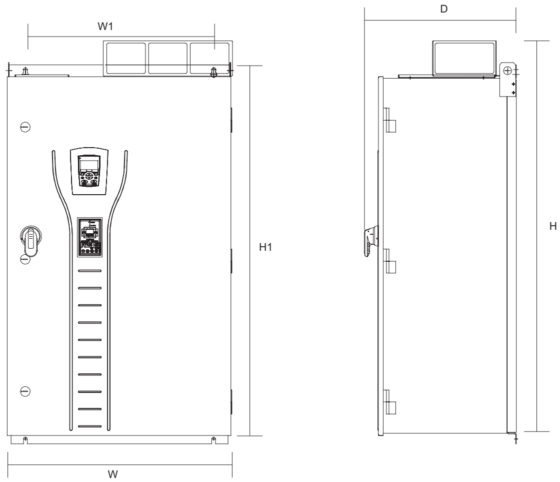
Drawing is not for engineering purposes.

Dimension Reference	UL Type 1 / NEMA 1 Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type 1 / NEMA 1 Dimensions and Weights mm kg [inches] [lbs]				
	H1	W1	Mounting Hardware	Height (H)	Width (W)	Depth (D)	Weight	Dimensions Drawing
BX1-1	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	842 [33.2]	443 [17.4]	343 [13.5]	35.4 [78]	3AUA0000016375 Sheet 1
BX1-2	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	842 [33.2]	443 [17.4]	343 [13.5]	38.1 [84]	3AUA0000016375 Sheet 1
BX1-3	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	950 [37.4]	521 [20.5]	389 [15.3]	54.4 [120]	3AUA0000016378 Sheet 1
BX1-4	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	950 [37.4]	521 [20.5]	389 [15.3]	62.6 [138]	3AUA0000016378 Sheet 1
BX1-5	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1212 [47.7]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	121 [267]	3AUA0000016381 Sheet 1
BX1-6	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1212 [47.7]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	163 [359]	3AUA0000016381 Sheet 1
BX1-8	Free Standing		Ø16 [Ø0.63]	2125 [83.7]	806 [31.7]	659 [25.9]	474 [1045]	3AUA0000016384 Sheet 1

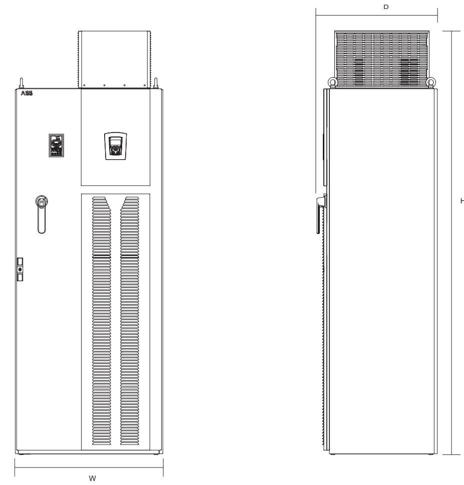
*Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Dimensions: ACH550-BxR UL Type 12/NEMA 12, R1 through R8 Frame Size

Wall Mount (BX12-1 - BX12-6)



Floor Mount (BX12-8)



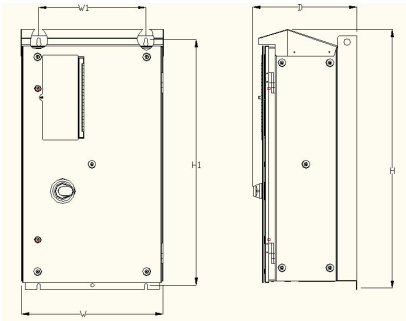
Drawing is not for engineering purposes.

Dimension Reference	UL Type 12 / NEMA 12 Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type 12 / NEMA 12 Dimensions and Weights mm [inches] kg [lbs]				
	H1	**W1**	**Mounting Hardware**	**Height (H)**	**Width (W)**	**Depth (D)**	**Weight**	**Dimensions Drawing**
BX12-1	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	842 [33.2]	443 [17.4]	343 [13.5]	35.4 [78]	3AUA0000016376 Sheet 1
BX12-2	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	842 [33.2]	443 [17.4]	343 [13.5]	38.1 [84]	3AUA0000016376 Sheet 1
BX12-3	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	950 [37.4]	521 [20.5]	389 [15.3]	54.4 [120]	3AUA0000016379 Sheet 1
BX12-4	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	950 [37.4]	521 [20.5]	389 [15.3]	62.6 [138]	3AUA0000016379 Sheet 1
BX12-5	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1380 [54.3]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	121 [267]	3AUA0000016382 Sheet 1
BX12-6	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1380 [54.3]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	163 [359]	3AUA0000016382 Sheet 1
BX12-8	Free Standing		Ø16 [Ø0.63]	2377 [93.6]	806 [31.7]	659 [25.9]	474 [1045]	3AUA0000016385 Sheet 1

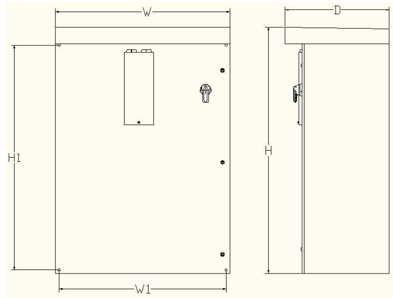
*Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Dimensions: ACH550-BxR UL Type 3R/NEMA 3R, R1 through R8 Frame Size

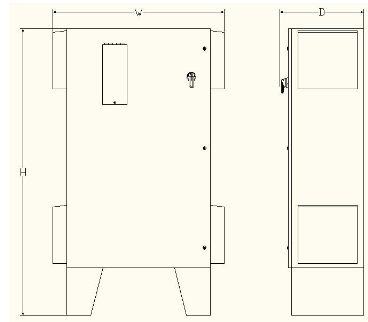
Wall Mount (BX3R-1 - BX3R-6)



Wall Mount (BX3R-5 - BX3R-6)



Floor Mount (BX3R-7)



Drawing is not for engineering purposes.

Dimension Reference	UL Type 3R / NEMA 3R Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type 3R / NEMA 3R Dimensions and Weights mm [inches] kg [lbs]				
	H1	**W1**	**Mounting Hardware**	**Height (H)**	**Width (W)**	**Depth (D)**	**Weight**	**Dimensions Drawing**
BX3R-1	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	865 [34]	452 [17.8]	343 [13.5]	58 [128]	3AUA0000016377 Sheet 1
BX3R-2	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	865 [34]	452 [17.8]	343 [13.5]	61 [134]	3AUA0000016377 Sheet 1
BX3R-3	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	968 [38.1]	530 [20.9]	389 [15.3]	80 [176]	3AUA0000016380 Sheet 1
BX3R-4	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	968 [38.1]	530 [20.9]	389 [15.3]	88 [194]	3AUA0000016380 Sheet 1
BX3R-5	876 [34.5]	724 [28.5]	M10 [0.375]	991 [39]	762 [30]	394 [15.5]	96.8 [213]	3AUA0000060123 Sheet 1
BX3R-6	1181 [46.5]	876 [34.5]	M10 [0.375]	1295 [51]	914 [36]	546 [21.5]	185.5 [409]	3AUA0000060124 Sheet 1
BX3R-7	Free Standing		Ø14.2 [Ø0.56]	1829 [72]	1092 [43]	533 [21]	251.4 [554]	3AUA00000603R5 Sheet 1

*Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Note: UL Type 3R, BX3R-1...BX3R-4 enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

Applicable standards

The E-Clipse Bypass configuration conforms to all standards listed for the ACH550-UH.

Index

ACH550-PCR/PDR Packaged Drives with Disconnect 1…550 HP

User's Manual

Safety

Use of warnings and notes

There are two types of safety instructions throughout this manual:

- Notes draw attention to a particular condition or fact, or give information on a subject.
- Warnings caution you about conditions which can result in serious injury or death and/or damage to the equipment. They also tell you how to avoid the danger. The warning symbols are used as follows:

Electricity warning warns of hazards from electricity which can cause physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

General warning warns about conditions, other than those caused by electricity, which can result in physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

WARNING! The ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive should ONLY be installed by a qualified electrician.

WARNING! Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the power circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 (L1, L2, L3) and U2, V2, W2 (T1, T2 T3) and, depending on the frame size, UDC+ and UDC-, or BRK+ and BRK-.

WARNING! Dangerous voltage is present when input power is connected. After disconnecting the supply, wait at least 5 minutes (to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge) before removing the cover.

WARNING! Even when power is switched off from the input terminals of the ACH550, there may be dangerous voltage (from external sources) on the terminals of the relay outputs.

WARNING! When the control terminals of two or more drives are connected in parallel, the auxiliary voltage for these control connections must be taken from a single source which can either be one of the drives or an external supply.

WARNING! Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohm] power system).

WARNING! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive's input terminals.

WARNING! Do not control the motor with the disconnecting device (disconnecting means); instead, use the control panel keys or commands via the I/O board of the drive. The maximum allowed number of charging cycles of the DC capacitors (i.e. power-ups by applying power) is five in ten minutes.

WARNING! Never attempt to repair a malfunctioning ACH550; contact the factory or your local Authorized Service Center for repair or replacement.

WARNING! The ACH550 will start up automatically after an input voltage interruption if the external run command is on.

WARNING! The heat sink may reach a high temperature.

Note: For more technical information, contact the factory or your local ABB representative.

Table of contents

Installation

Study these installation instructions carefully before proceeding. **Failure to observe the warnings and instructions may cause a malfunction or personal hazard.**

WARNING! Before you begin read *Safety* on page *3-3*.

WARNING! When the ACH550 with Input Disconnect is connected to the line power, the Motor Terminals T1, T2, and T3 are live even if the motor is not running. Do not make any connections when the ACH550 with Input Disconnect is connected to the line. Disconnect and lock out power to the drive before servicing the drive. Failure to disconnect power may cause serious injury or death.

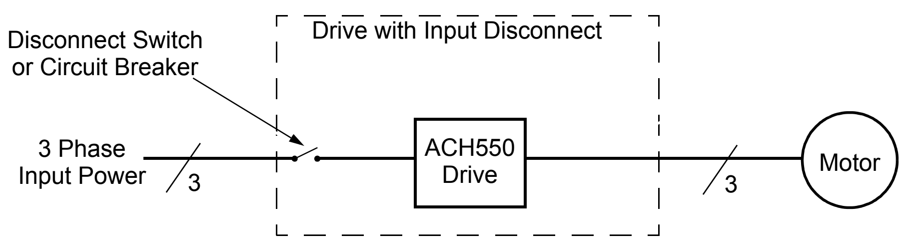
Application

This manual contains supplemental information that is unique to ACH550 input disconnect configurations (PCR or PDR). Refer to the base manual, ACH550-UH HVAC User's Manual (1…550 HP) on page *1-1*, for all other information.

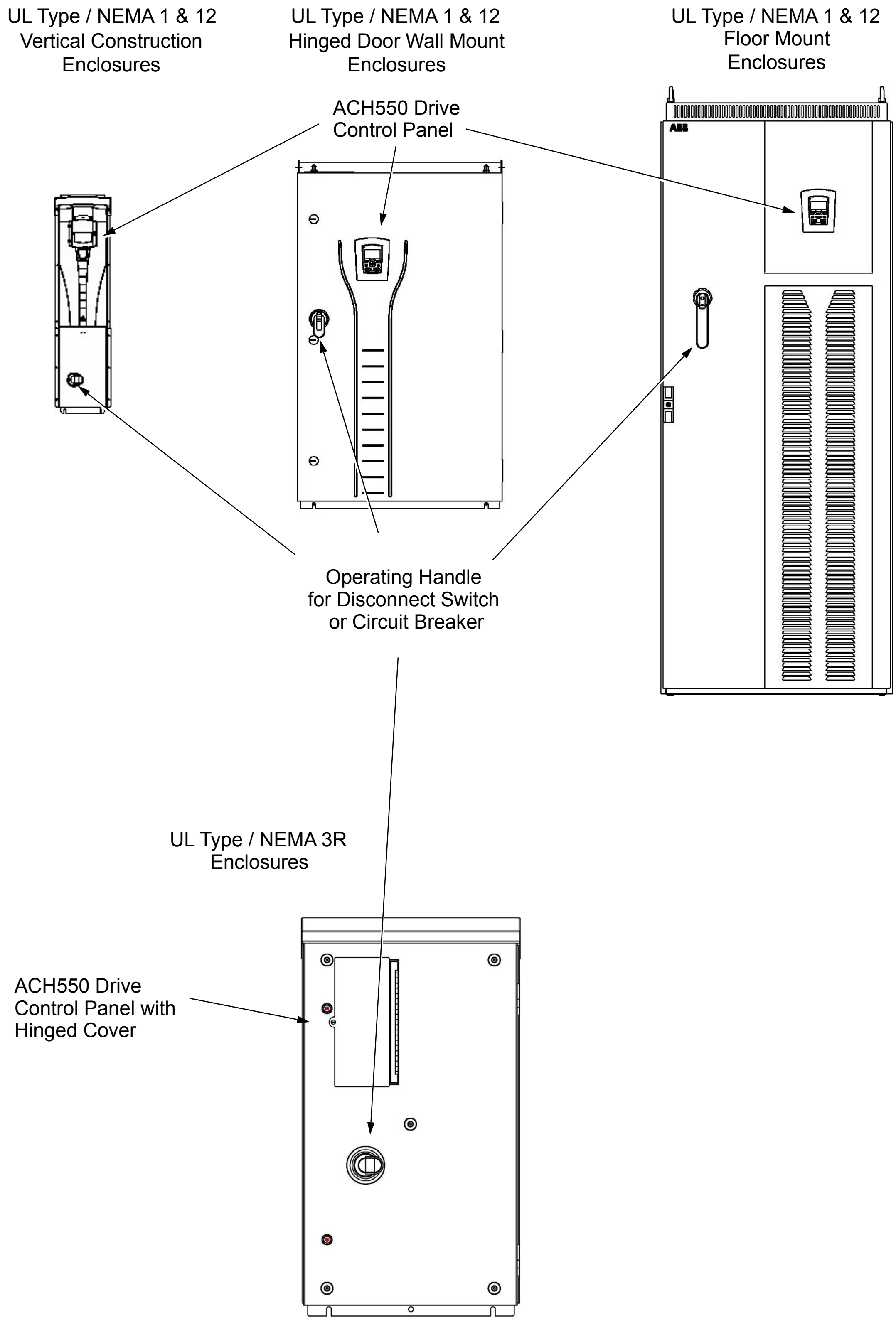
Input disconnect features and functions

The ACH550 with Input Disconnect is an ACH550 AC adjustable frequency drive packaged with an input disconnect switch or circuit breaker, and with a door mounted, external operating handle. The operating handle can be padlocked in the OFF position (padlock not supplied). Enclosure options are UL Type 1, UL Type 12, and UL Type 3R (NEMA 1, NEMA 12, and NEMA 3R).

The following is a typical power diagram.



The following shows the front view of the ACH550 Drive with Input Disconnect standard configurations, and identifies the major components.



Installation flow chart

The installation of Input Disconnect configurations for ACH550 drives follows the outline below. The steps must be carried out in the order shown. At the right of each step are references to the detailed information needed for the correct installation of the unit.

Note: References in the middle column below are to the ACH550-UH User's Manual. References in the third column below are to this manual.

Task	Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual *Installation* section	Additional Reference in this Manual
PREPARE for installation	*Preparing for installation*	• *Drive identification* on page *3-10*. • *Note: Some instructions in this document vary, depending on the drive's frame size. To read the Ratings table, you need the "Output current rating" entry from the Type code (see page 3-10).* Also see *Suitable mounting location* on page *3-11*.
PREPARE the mounting location	*Prepare the mounting location*	--
REMOVE the front cover	*Remove front cover*	--
MOUNT the drive	*Mount the drive*	--
INSTALL wiring	*Wiring overview* and *Install the wiring*	*Installing the wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)* on page *3-11*.
CHECK installation	*Check installation*	--
RE-INSTALL the cover	*Re-install cover*	--
APPLY power	*Apply power*	--
START-UP	*Start-up*	--

Preparing for installation (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Drive identification

Drive label

To identify the type of device you are installing, refer to the type code number on the device identification label.

- Wall mounting base drives – label attached on the side surface of the heat sink.
- Packaged drive with screw cover – label attached to outside surface on the left side of enclosure.
- Enclosure with hinged cover/door – label on inside surface of the cover/door.

Type code

Use the following to interpret the type code found on the identification label.

ACH550-UH-015A-4 +…+…

AC, HVAC Drive = 550 Product Series

Construction
- UH = Base Drive
- BCR = E-Clipse Bypass with circuit breaker
- BDR = E-Clipse Bypass with disconnect switch
- CC = Classic Bypass with circuit breaker
- CD = Classic Bypass with disconnect switch
- PCR = Drive with circuit breaker
- PDR = Drive with disconnect switch
- VCR = Vertical bypass with circuit breaker
- VDR = Vertical bypass with disconnect switch

Output current rating (See ratings chart for details)

Voltage rating
- 2 = 208…240 VAC
- 4 = 380…480 VAC
- 6 = 500…600 VAC

Enclosure protection class
- No specification = UL Type 1/NEMA 1
- +B055 = UL Type 12/NEMA 12
- +B058 = UL Type 3R/NEMA 3R

Power options
- +E213 = Line reactor
- +F267 = Service switch

Input/Output option modules
- +L511 = Relay output extension
- +L512 = 115/230 V digital input interface

Fieldbus adaptors
- +K451 = DeviceNet Adapter
- +K452 = LonWorks Adapter
- +K454 = Profibus Adapter
- +K462 = ControlNet Adapter
- +K466 = Ethernet Adapter

Ratings and frame size

The charts in the *Ratings* section on page *1-297* of the ACH550-UH User's Manual manual list technical specifications, and identify the drive's frame size.

Note: Some instructions in this document vary, depending on the drive's frame size. To read the Ratings table, you need the "Output current rating" entry from the *Type code* (see page *3-10*).

Suitable mounting location

For selecting a suitable mounting location for PCR/PDR configurations, refer to:

- The ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-13*, and
- The *Technical data* section on page *3-19* in this manual for the appropriate information on dimensions and weights
- UL Type 3R, PX3R-1...PX3R-4 enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

Installing the wiring (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

WARNING!

- Metal shavings or debris in the enclosure can damage electrical equipment and create a hazardous condition. Where parts, such as conduit plates require cutting or drilling, first remove the part. If that is not practical, cover nearby electrical components to protect them from all shavings or debris.
- Do not connect or disconnect input or output power wiring, or control wires, when power is applied.
- Never connect line voltage to drive output Terminals T1, T2, and T3.
- Do not make any voltage tolerance tests (Hi Pot or Megger) on any part of the unit. Disconnect motor wires before taking any measurements in the motor or motor wires.
- Make sure that power factor correction capacitors are not connected between the drive and the motor.

Wiring requirements

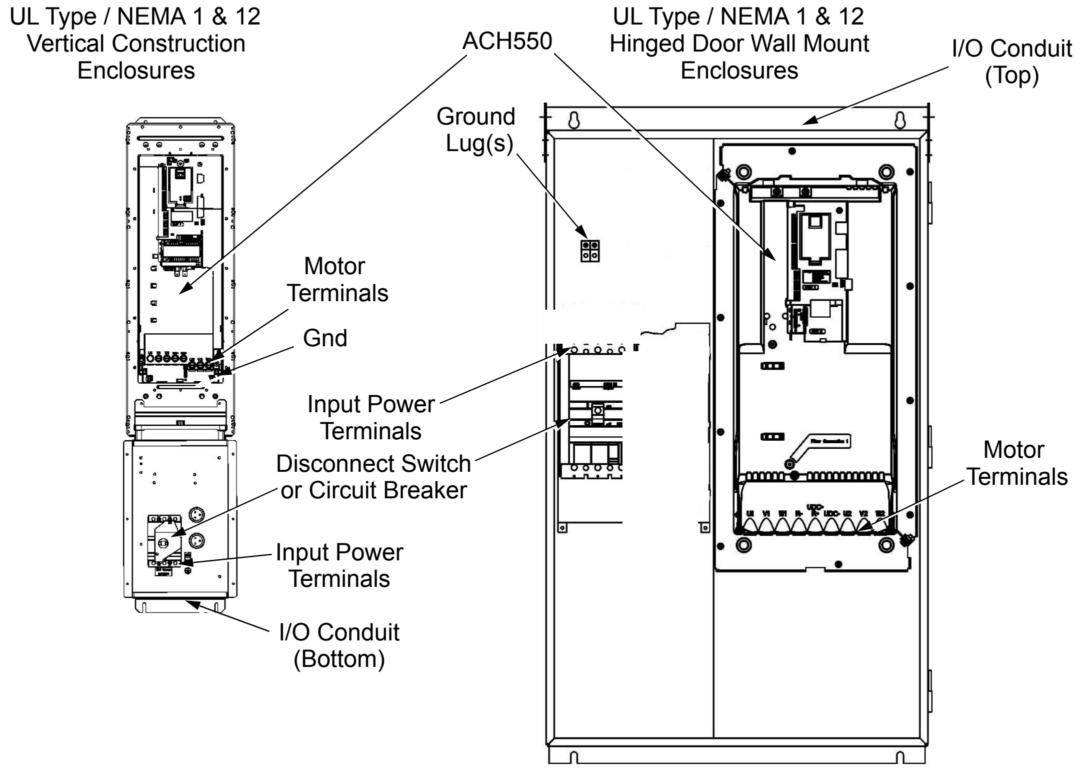
Refer to the *Wiring requirements* section on page *1-18* in the ACH550-UH User's Manual. The requirements apply to all ACH550 drives. In particular:

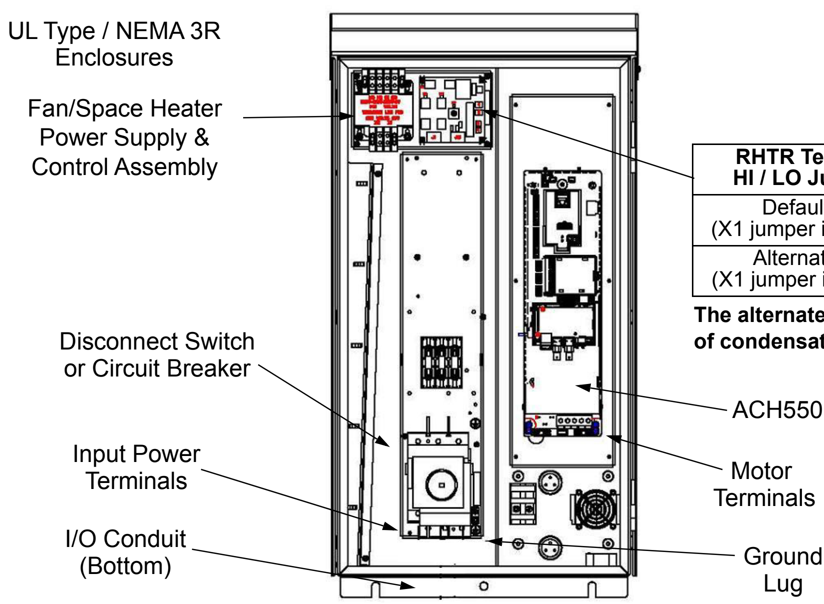
- Use separate, metal conduit runs for the following different classes of wiring:
  - Input power wiring.
  - Motor wiring.
  - Control/communications wiring.
- Properly and individually ground the drive, the motor and cable shields.

Wiring overview

Connection diagrams – standard drive with input disconnect (wall mounted)

The following figure shows the Standard Drive with Input Disconnect (wall mounted) wiring connection points.





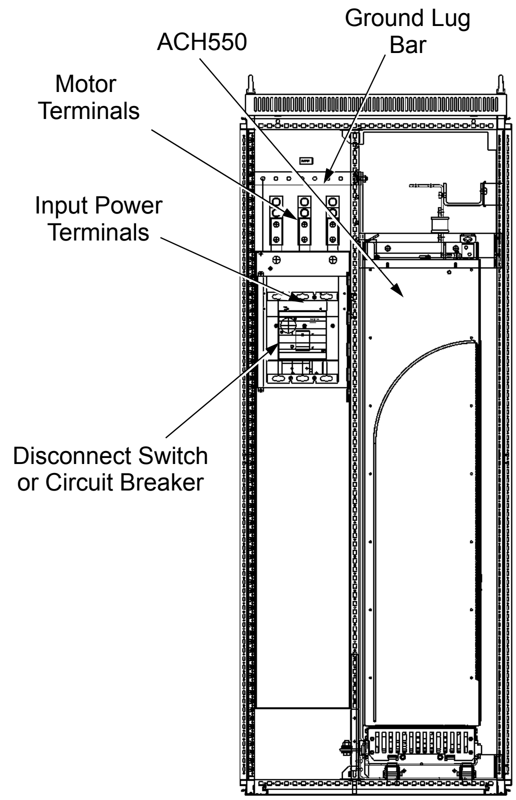
RHTR Temperature HI / LO Jumper (X1)	Heater ON Temperature	Heater OFF Temperature
Default Setting (X1 jumper in LO position)	14.4 °C 58 °F	21.4 °C 70.5 °F
Alternate Setting (X1 jumper in HI position)	17.8 °C 64 °F	24.7 °C 76.5 °C

The alternate (HI) setting further reduces the likelihood of condensate in high humidity environments.

Note: Some UL Type 3R enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting some of these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

Connection diagrams – standard drive with input disconnect (floor mounted)

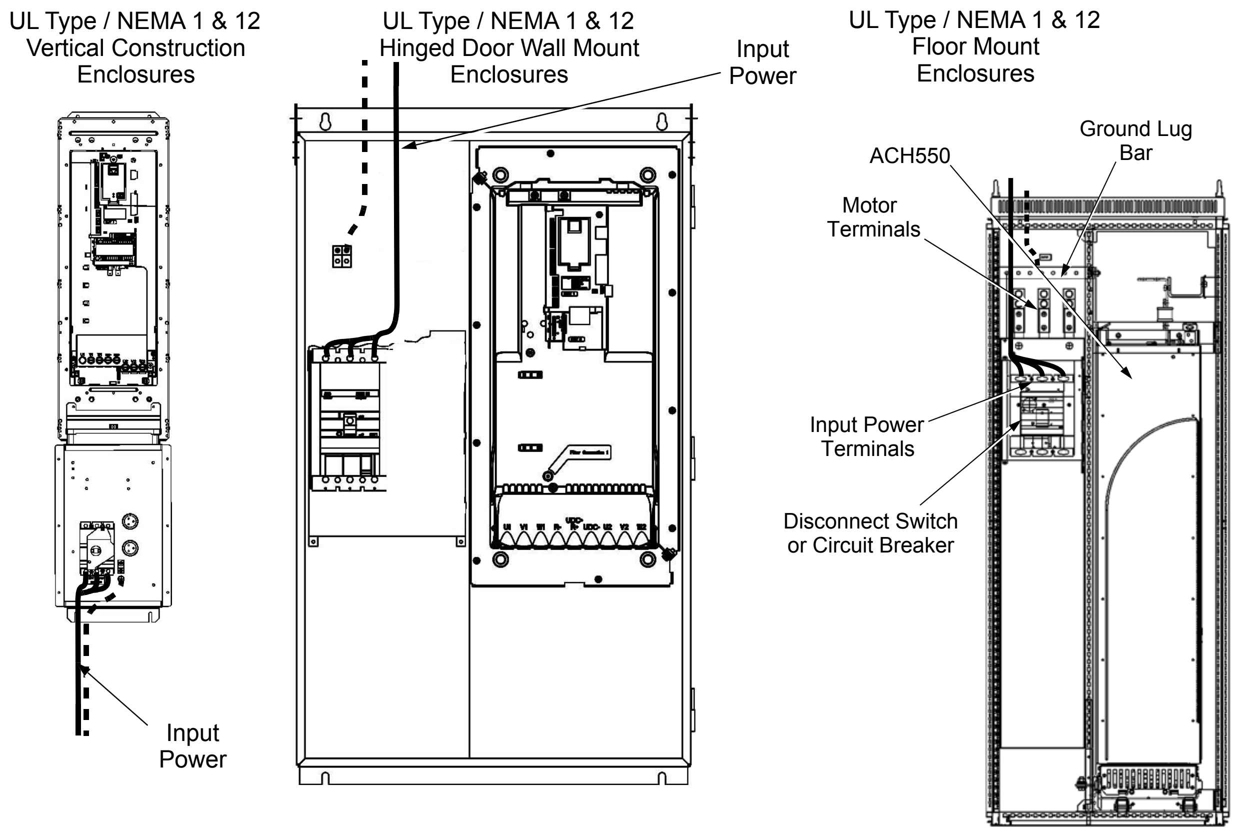
Floor mounted UL Type / NEMA 1 & 12 Drive with Input Disconnect units are configured for wiring access from the top and include a removable conduit mounting plate. The following figure shows the wiring connection points. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual page *1-315* for control connections to the drive.



Install the line input wiring

Line input connections – standard drive with input disconnect configurations

Connect input power to the terminals of the disconnect switch or circuit breaker. Connect the equipment grounding conductor to the ground lug at the top of the enclosure. The figure below shows the connection points for Standard Drive with Input Disconnect configurations.

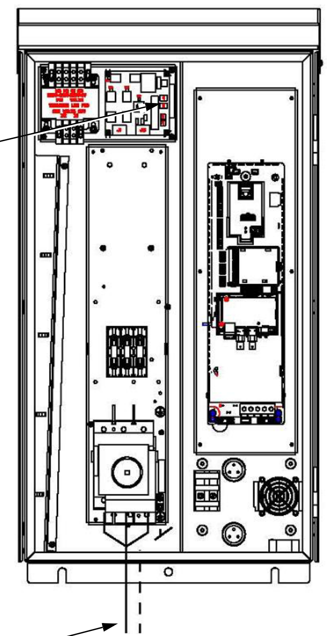


Dashed line is ground run.

Note: The terminals on disconnect switches for the following rated ACH550-PDR products is 7 in-lbs. Do not use a power driver or over tighten to prevent breaking screw heads or stripping the terminal.

---

230 VAC	460 VAC	600 VAC
-04A6-2	-03A3-4	-02A7-6
-06A6-2	-04A1-4	-03A9-6
-07A5-2	-06A9-4	-06A1-6
-012A-2	-08A8-4	-09A0-6
-017A-2	-012A-4	-011A-6
-024A-2	-015A-4	-017A-6
-031A-2	-023A-4	



RHTR Temperature HI / LO Jumper (X1)	Heater ON Temperature	Heater OFF Temperature
Default Setting (X1 jumper in LO position)	14.4 °C 58 °F	21.4 °C 70.5 °F
Alternate Setting (X1 jumper in HI position)	17.8 °C 64 °F	24.7 °C 76.5 °C

The alternate (HI) setting further reduces the likelihood of condensate in high humidity environments.

WARNING! Check the motor and motor wiring insulation before connecting the ACH550 to line power. Follow the procedure in the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-23*. Before proceeding with the insulation resistance measurements, check that the ACH550 is disconnected from incoming line power. Failure to disconnect line power could result in death or serious injury.

Note: For the remainder of the wiring (motor and control wiring) refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual.

Maintenance

Maintenance intervals

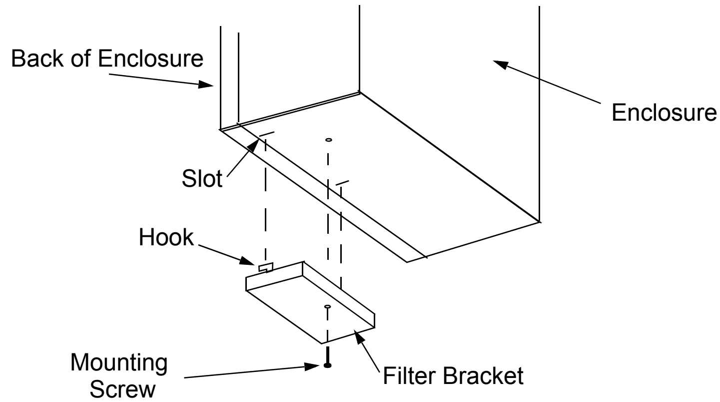
If installed in an appropriate environment, the drive requires very little maintenance. This table lists the routine maintenance intervals recommended by ABB.

Maintenance	Configuration	Interval	Instruction
Check/replace hinged door wall mount enclosure inlet air filter	Hinged door wall mount UL Type / NEMA 12 enclosures	Check every 3 months. Replace as needed.	*Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type / NEMA 12 hinged door wall mount enclosures* on page *3-18*.
Check/replace floor mount enclosure inlet air filter	Floor mount UL Type / NEMA 12 enclosures	Check every 3 months. Replace as needed.	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual and *Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type / NEMA 12 hinged door wall mount enclosures* on page *3-18*.
Check/replace NEMA 3R enclosure air filters	UL Type / NEMA 3R enclosures - PX3R-5 and higher	Check every 3 months. Replace as needed.	See PX3R dimensional information on page *3-30*.
Check/replace floor mount enclosure exhaust air filter.	Floor mount UL Type / NEMA 12 enclosures	Check every 6 months. Replace as needed.	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual and *Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type / NEMA 12 hinged door wall mount enclosures* on page *3-18*.
Check and clean heatsink.	All	Depends on the dustiness of the environment (every 6…12 months)	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-289*.
Replace drive module fan.	All	Every six years	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-290*.
Replace enclosure fan(s).	UL Type / NEMA 12 and 3R enclosures	Every three years	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-291*.
Change capacitor.	Frame sizes R5 and R6	Every ten years	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-296*.
Replace battery in the Assistant control panel.	All	Every ten years	See *Maintenance* in ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-296*.

Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type / NEMA 12 hinged door wall mount enclosures

This procedure applies to drive with disconnect configurations in UL Type / NEMA 12 hinged door wall mount enclosures. This filter is located at the bottom of the enclosure. Use the following procedure to check and replace filters.

1. On the enclosure, remove the screw holding the filter bracket in place.
2. Slide the filter bracket forward until the hooks on the bracket clear the slots on the enclosure base. This step allows the filter and bracket to drop free from the enclosure.



3. Lift the filter out of the filter bracket and replace as appropriate.
4. With the filter in the filter bracket, align the hooks on the bracket with the slots in the enclosure base, and press the hooks up into the slots.
5. Slide the filter bracket back, making sure that the hooks catch on the enclosure.
6. Replace the mounting screw. Tighten until the gasket on the bracket is about 50% compressed.

Enclosure air filter replacement – UL Type / NEMA 12 floor mount enclosures

Filter material

Enclosure Type	Inlet (door)	Outlet (roof)
UL Type / NEMA 12	3AUA0000006723 (qty 1)	3AUA0000006722 (qty 2)

Note: When installing the filter media, the white side must face the outside of the cabinet and the colored side must face the inside of the cabinet. Refer to the ACH550-UH User's Manual on page *1-293* for installation instructions.

Technical data

Input power connections (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual

Fuses

NOTE: Although fuses listed are similar in functional characteristics to fuses listed in the ACH550-UH User's Manual, physical characteristics may differ. Fuses from other manufacturers can be used if they meet the functional characteristics of those in these tables.

208/240 volt fuses

208/240 Volt		Frame Size	Drive Input Fuse Ratings	
HP	Type Code[1]		Amps (600V)	Bussmann Type
1	ACH550-PDR-04A6-2	R1	15	KTK-R-15
1.5	ACH550-PDR-06A6-2	R1	15	KTK-R-15
2	ACH550-PDR-07A5-2	R1	15	KTK-R-15
3	ACH550-PDR-012A-2	R1	15	KTK-R-15
5	ACH550-PDR-017A-2	R1	30	KTK-R-30
7.5	ACH550-PDR-024A-2	R2	30	KTK-R-30
10	ACH550-PDR-031A-2	R2	60	JJS-60
15	ACH550-PDR-046A-2	R3	100	JJS-100
20	ACH550-PDR-059A-2	R3	100	JJS-100
25	ACH550-PDR-075A-2	R4	100	JJS-100
30	ACH550-PxR-088A-2	R4	200	170M1370
40	ACH550-PxR-114A-2	R4	200	170M1370
50	ACH550-PxR-143A-2	R6	200	170M1370
60	ACH550-PxR-178A-2	R6	315	170M1372
75	ACH550-PxR-221A-2	R6	315	170M1372
100	ACH550-PxR-248A-2	R6	315	170M1372

1) "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

480 volt fuses

480 Volt		Frame Size	Drive Input Fuse Ratings	
HP	**Type Code[1]**		**Amps (600V)**	**Bussmann Type**
1/1.5	ACH550-PDR-03A3-4	R1	15	KTK-R-15
2	ACH550-PDR-04A1-4	R1	15	KTK-R-15
3	ACH550-PDR-06A9-4	R1	15	KTK-R-15
5	ACH550-PDR-08A8-4	R1	15	KTK-R-15
7.5	ACH550-PDR-012A-4	R1	15	KTK-R-15
10	ACH550-PDR-015A-4	R2	30	KTK-R-30
15	ACH550-PDR-023A-4	R2	30	KTK-R-30
20	ACH550-PDR-031A-4	R3	60	JJS-60
25	ACH550-PDR-038A-4	R3	60	JJS-60
30	ACH550-PDR-045A-4	R3	100	JJS-100
30	ACH550-PDR-044A-4	R4	100	JJS-100
40	ACH550-PDR-059A-4	R4	100	JJS-100
50	ACH550-PDR-072A-4	R4	100	JJS-100
60	ACH550-PDR-078A-4	R4	100	JJS-100
75	ACH550-PxR-097A-4	R4	200	170M1370
60	ACH550-PxR-077A-4	R5	125	170M1368
75	ACH550-PxR-096A-4	R5	125	170M1368
100	ACH550-PxR-125A-4	R5	200	170M1370
100	ACH550-PxR-124A-4	R6	160	170M1369
125	ACH550-PxR-157A-4	R6	200	170M1370
150	ACH550-PxR180A-4	R6	315	170M1372
200	ACH550-PxR-246A-4	R6	315	170M1372
200	ACH550-PxR-245A-4	R7	400	JJS-400
250	ACH550-PxR-316A-4	R8	400	JJS-400
300	ACH550-PxR-368A-4	R8	400	JJS-400
350	ACH550-PxR-414A-4	R8	600	JJS-600
400	ACH550-PxR-486A-4	R8	600	JJS-600
450	ACH550-PxR-526A-4	R8	800	JJS-800
500	ACH550-PxR-602A-4	R8	800	JJS-800
550	ACH550-PxR-645A-4	R8	800	JJS-800

1) "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

Fuses, 600 volt, fuses

600 Volt		Frame Size	Drive Input Fuse Ratings	
HP	Type Code[1]		Amps (600V)	Bussmann Type
2	ACH550-PDR-02A7-6	R2	15	KTK-R-15
3	ACH550-PDR-03A9-6	R2	15	KTK-R-15
5	ACH550-PDR-06A1-6	R2	15	KTK-R-15
7.5	ACH550-PDR-09A0-6	R2	15	KTK-R-15
10	ACH550-PDR-011A-6	R2	30	KTK-R-30
15	ACH550-PDR-017A-6	R2	30	KTK-R-30
20	ACH550-PDR-022A-6	R3	60	JJS-60
25	ACH550-PDR-027A-6	R3	60	JJS-60
30	ACH550-PDR-032A-6	R4	100	JJS-100
40	ACH550-PDR-041A-6	R4	100	JJS-100
50	ACH550-PDR-052A-6	R4	100	JJS-100
60	ACH550-PDR-062A-6	R4	100	JJS-100
75	ACH550-PxR-077A-6	R6	200	170M1370
100	ACH550-PxR-099A-6	R6	200	170M1370
125	ACH550-PxR-125A-6	R6	200	170M1370
150	ACH550-PxR-144A-6	R6	200	170M1370

1) "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

Power connection terminals

The following tables show maximum wire size and required tightening torque for incoming power, grounding and motor terminals.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">208/240 Volt</th><th rowspan="2">Base Drive Frame Size</th><th colspan="7">Maximum Power Wiring Data[2]</th></tr>
<tr><th>HP</th><th>Type Code[1]</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 1 &12</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Motor Terminals</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>ACH550-PxR-04A6-2</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="16">Refer to Drive’s power connection terminals</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-06A6-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-PxR-07A5-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-PxR-012A-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-017A-2</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-024A-2</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="2">#6
45 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
45 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-PxR-031A-2</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-PxR-046A-2</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#4
18 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#4
18 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-PxR-059A-2</td><td>R3</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-PxR-075A-2</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
50 in-lbs</td><td>#1
50 in-lbs</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-PxR-088A-2</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="4">350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">300 MCM
200 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
70 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
70 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-PxR-114A-2</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="3">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">300 MCM
200 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-PxR-143A-2</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="4">3 x #3/0
250 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
275 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-PxR-178A-2</td><td>R6</td></tr>
<tr><td>75</td><td>ACH550-PxR-221A-2</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="2">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">350 MCM
100 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>ACH550-PxR-248A-2</td><td>R6</td></tr>
</table>

1) “PxR” represents both PCR and PDR.

2) Torque values shown relate to current production. Check component labels on previously installed units for required tightening torque.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">480 Volt</th><th rowspan="2">Base Drive Frame Size</th><th colspan="7">Maximum Power Wiring Data[2]</th></tr>
<tr><th>HP</th><th>Type Code[1]</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 1 &12</th><th>Circuit Breaker UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Disconnect Switch UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Motor Terminals</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Ground Lugs UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th></tr>
<tr><td>1/1.5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-03A3-4</td><td>R1</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="25">Refer to Drive's power connection terminals</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">#10
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-PxR-04A1-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-PxR-06A9-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-08A8-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-012A-4</td><td>R1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-PxR-015A-4</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="2">#6
45 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
45 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#6
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-PxR-023A-4</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-PxR-031A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="3">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#3
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-PxR-038A-4</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="3">#4
18 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#4
18 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-PxR-045A-4</td><td>R3</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-PxR-059A-4</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="3">#1
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">#1
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-PxR-072A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-PxR-078A-4</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
50 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>75</td><td>ACH550-PxR-097A-4</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="4">350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">300 MCM
200 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
70 in-lbs</td><td>#1/0
70 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="5">3 x #3/0
250 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>ACH550-PxR-125A-4</td><td>R5</td><td rowspan="3">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">300 MCM
200 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>125</td><td>ACH550-PxR-157A-4</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
375 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>150</td><td>ACH550-PxR-180A-4</td><td>R6</td></tr>
<tr><td>200</td><td>ACH550-PxR-246A-4</td><td>R6</td><td>2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td>2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">350 MCM
100 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>250</td><td>ACH550-PxR-316A-4</td><td>R8</td><td rowspan="4">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">2 x 500 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="7">5 Bus Bar Holes
(13/32")</td></tr>
<tr><td>300</td><td>ACH550-PxR-368A-4</td><td>R8</td></tr>
<tr><td>350</td><td>ACH550-PxR-414A-4</td><td>R8</td></tr>
<tr><td>400</td><td>ACH550-PxR-486A-4</td><td>R8</td></tr>
<tr><td>450</td><td>ACH550-PxR-526A-4</td><td>R8</td><td rowspan="3">3 x 400 MCM
375 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="3">3 x 400 MCM
375 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>500</td><td>ACH550-PxR-602A-4</td><td>R8</td></tr>
<tr><td>550</td><td>ACH550-PxR-645A-4</td><td>R8</td></tr>
</table>

1) "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

2) Torque values shown relate to current production. Check component labels on previously installed units for required tightening torque

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">600 Volt</th><th rowspan="2">Frame Size</th><th colspan="7">Maximum Power Wiring Data[2]</th></tr>
<tr><th>HP</th><th>Type Code[1]</th><th>Circuit Breaker
UL Type/ NEMA 1 &12</th><th>Circuit Breaker
UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Disconnect Switch
UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Disconnect Switch
UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th><th>Motor Terminals</th><th>Ground Lugs
UL Type/ NEMA 1&12</th><th>Ground Lugs
UL Type/ NEMA 3R</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>ACH550-PxR-02A7-6</td><td>R2</td><td rowspan="6">#6
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="8">#8
7 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="14">Refer to Drive's power connection terminals</td><td rowspan="6">#6
35 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#6
35 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>ACH550-PxR-03A9-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-06A1-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>7.5</td><td>ACH550-PxR-09A0-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>ACH550-PxR-011A-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>ACH550-PxR-017A-6</td><td>R2</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>ACH550-PxR-022A-6</td><td>R3</td><td rowspan="2">#3
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#3
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>ACH550-PxR-027A-6</td><td>R3</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td>ACH550-PxR-032A-6</td><td>R4</td><td rowspan="4">#1
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">#1
62 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#4
18 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#4
18 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">#2
50 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="6">#2
50 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>ACH550-PxR-041A-6</td><td>R4</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>ACH550-PxR-052A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td><td>#1
55 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>ACH550-PxR-062A-6</td><td>R4</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td><td>#1
62 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>75</td><td>ACH550-PxR-077A-6</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="4">350 MCM
274 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#1/0
70 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#1/0
70 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="4">3 x #3/0
250 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>ACH550-PxR-099A-6</td><td>R6</td></tr>
<tr><td>125</td><td>ACH550-PxR-125A-6</td><td>R6</td><td rowspan="2">300 MCM
275 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">300 MCM
200 in-lbs</td><td rowspan="2">#2/0
375 in-lbs</td></tr>
<tr><td>150</td><td>ACH550-PxR-144A-6</td><td>R6</td></tr>
</table>

1) "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

2) Torque values shown relate to current production. Check component labels on previously installed units for required tightening torque.

Dimensional references

The following tables contain dimensional references that identify the dimensional information applying to a given type code.

208/240V drive with disconnect

HP	Type Code[1]	AMP	Base Drive Frame	UL Type / NEMA 1 Dim. Ref. Page 3-28	(+B055) UL Type / NEMA 12 Dim. Ref. Page 3-29	(+B058) UL Type / NEMA 3R Dim. Ref. Page 3-30
1	ACH550-PxR-04A6-2	4.6	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
1.5	ACH550-PxR-06A6-2	6.6	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
2	ACH550-PxR-07A5-2	7.5	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
3	ACH550-PxR-012A-4	11.8	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
5	ACH550-PxR-017A-2	16.7	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
7.5	ACH550-PxR-024A-2	24.2	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
10	ACH550-PxR-031A-2	30.8	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-3
15	ACH550-PxR-046A-2	46.2	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
20	ACH550-PxR-059A-2	59.4	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
25	ACH550-PxR-075A-2	74.8	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
30	ACH550-PxR-088A-2	88	R4	PX1-5	PX12-5	PX3R-5
40	ACH550-PxR-114A-2	114	R4	PX1-5	PX12-5	PX3R-5
50	ACH550-PxR-143A-2	143	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
60	ACH550-PxR-178A-2	178	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
75	ACH550-PxR-221A-2	221	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
100	ACH550-PxR-248A-2	248	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6

1. "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

480V drive with disconnect

HP	Type Code[1]	AMP	Base Drive Frame	UL Type / NEMA 1 Dim. Ref. Page 3-28	(+B055) UL Type / NEMA 12 Dim. Ref. Page 3-29	(+B058) UL Type / NEMA 3R Dim. Ref. Page 3-30
1.5	ACH550-PxR-03A3-4	3.3	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
2	ACH550-PxR-04A1-4	4.1	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
3	ACH550-PxR-06A9-4	6.9	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
5	ACH550-PxR-08A8-4	8.8	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
7.5	ACH550-PxR-012A-4	11.9	R1	PX1-1	PX12-1	PX3R-1
10	ACH550-PxR-015A-4	15.4	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
15	ACH550-PxR-023A-4	23	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
20	ACH550-PxR-031A-4	31	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
25	ACH550-PxR-038A-4	38	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
30	ACH550-PxR-045A-4	44	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
40	ACH550-PxR-059A-4	59	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
50	ACH550-PxR-072A-4	72	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
60	ACH550-PxR-078A-4	77	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
75	ACH550-PxR-097A-4	96	R4	PX1-5	PX12-5	PX3R-5
100	ACH550-PxR-125A-4	124	R5	PX1-5	PX12-5	PX3R-6
125	ACH550-PxR-157A-4	157	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
150	ACH550-PxR-180A-4	180	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
200	ACH550-PxR-246A-4	245	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
250	ACH550-PxR-316A-4	316	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
300	ACH550-PxR-368A-4	368	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
350	ACH550-PxR-414A-4	414	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
400	ACH550-PxR-486A-4	486	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
450	ACH550-PxR-526A-4	526	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
500	ACH550-PxR-602A-4	602	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	
550	ACH550-PxR-645A-4	645	R8	PX1-8	PX12-8	

1. "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

600V drive with disconnect

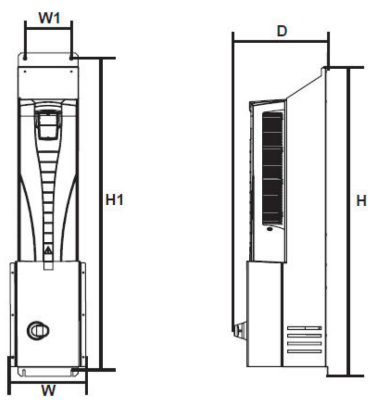
HP	Type Code[1]	AMP	Base Drive Frame	UL Type / NEMA 1 Dim. Ref. Page 3-28	(+B055) UL Type / NEMA 12 Dim. Ref. Page 3-29	(+B058) UL Type / NEMA 3R Dim. Ref. Page 3-30
2	ACH550-PxR-02A7-6	2.7	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
3	ACH550-PxR-03A9-6	3.9	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
5	ACH550-PxR-06A1-6	6.1	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
7.5	ACH550-PxR-09A0-6	9	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
10	ACH550-PxR-011A-6	11	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
15	ACH550-PxR-017A-6	17	R2	PX1-2	PX12-2	PX3R-2
20	ACH550-PxR-022A-6	22	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
25	ACH550-PxR-027A-6	27	R3	PX1-3	PX12-3	PX3R-3
30	ACH550-PxR-032A-6	32	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
40	ACH550-PxR-041A-6	41	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
50	ACH550-PxR-052A-6	52	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
60	ACH550-PxR-062A-6	62	R4	PX1-4	PX12-4	PX3R-4
75	ACH550-PxR-077A-6	77	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
100	ACH550-PxR-099A-6	99	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
125	ACH550-PxR-125A-6	125	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6
150	ACH550-PxR-144A-6	144	R6	PX1-6	PX12-6	PX3R-6

1. "PxR" represents both PCR and PDR.

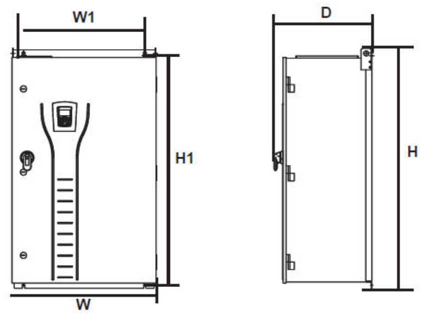
Dimensions and weights (supplement to ACH550-UH User's Manual)

Mounting dimensions

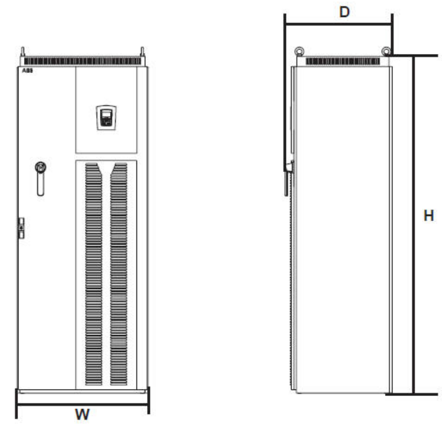
Dimensions: ACH550-PxR UL Type / NEMA 1



Wall Mount (PX1-1 - PX1-4)



Wall Mount (PX1-5 - PX1-6)



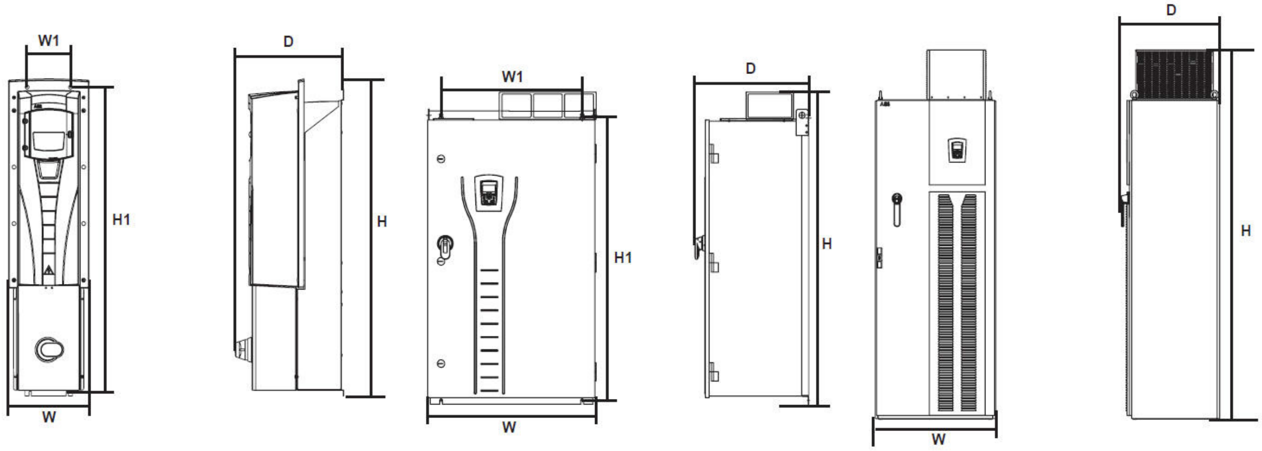
Floor Mount (PX1-8)

Dimension Reference	UL Type / NEMA 1 Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type / NEMA 1 Dimensions and Weights mm kg [inches] [lbs]				
	H1	W1	Mouting Hardware	Height (H)	Weight (W)	Depth (D)	Weight	Dimension Drawing
PX1-1	712 [28]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	729 [28.7]	198 7.8	283 11.2	15 33	3AUA000008216 Sheet 1
PX1-2	812 [32]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	829 [32.6]	198 [7.8]	295 [11.6]	19 [42]	3AUA000008218 Sheet 1
PX1-3	983 [38.7]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1013 [39.9]	260 [10.2]	304 [11.9]	34 [75]	3AUA000008220 Sheet 1
PX1-4	1117 [44]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1147 [45.2]	260 [10.2]	332 [13.1]	43 [95]	3AUA000008221 Sheet 1
PX1-5	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1212 [47.7]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	121 [267]	3AUA000021148 Sheet 1
PX1-6	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1212 [47.7]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	163 [359]	3AUA000021148 Sheet 1
PX1-8[1]	Free Standing		Ø16 [Ø0.63]	2125 [83.7]	806 [31.7]	659 [25.9]	360 [794]	3AUA000021152 Sheet 1

1. See page *3-31* for mounting dimension details and additional free space recommendations.

Note: Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Dimensions: ACH550-PxR UL Type / NEMA 12



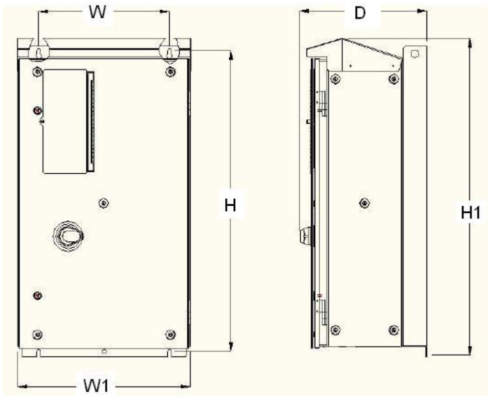
Wall Mount (PX12-1 - PX12-4) *Wall Mount (PX12-5 - PX12-6)* *Floor Mount (PX12-8)*

Dimension Reference	UL Type / NEMA 12 Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type / NEMA 12 Dimensions and Weights mm kg [inches] [lbs]				
	H1	**W1**	**Mouting Hardware**	**Height (H)**	**Weight (W)**	**Depth (D)**	**Weight**	**Drawing Dimension**
PX12-1	712 [28]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	744 [29.3]	221 [8.7]	283 [11.2]	17 [37]	3AUA0000008216 Sheet 2
PX12-2	812 [32]	98 [3.9]	M6 [0.25]	844 [33.2]	221 [8.7]	295 [11.6]	21 [46]	3AUA0000008218 Sheet 2
PX12-3	983 [38.7]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1030 [40.6]	267 [10.5]	304 [11.9]	36 [79]	3AUA0000008220 Sheet 2
PX12-4	1117 [44]	160 [6.3]	M6 [0.25]	1163 [45.8]	267 [10.5]	332 [13.1]	45 [99]	3AUA0000008221 Sheet 2
PX12-5	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1380 [54.3]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	121 [267]	3AUA0000021149 Sheet 1
PX12-6	1175 [46.3]	600 [23.6]	M10 [0.375]	1380 [54.3]	713 [28.1]	483 [19]	163 [359]	3AUA0000021149 Sheet 1
PX12-8[1]	Free Standing		Ø16 [Ø0.63	2377 [93.6]	806 [31.7]	659 [25.9]	380 [838]	3AUA0000021153 Sheet 1

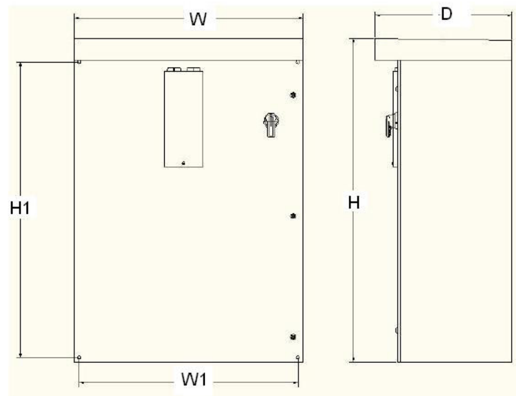
1. See page 3-31 for mounting dimension details and additional free space recommendations.

Note: Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

Dimensions: ACH550-PxR UL Type / NEMA 3R



Wall Mount (PX3R-1 - PX3R-4)



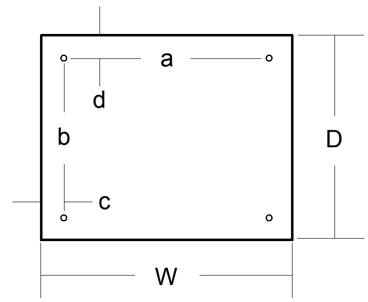
Wall Mount (PX3R-5 - PX3R-6)

Dimension Reference	UL Type / NEMA 3R Mounting Dimensions mm [inches]			UL Type / NEMA 3R Dimensions and Weights mm kg [inches] [lbs]				
	H1	**W1**	**Mouting Hardware**	**Height (H)**	**Weight (W)**	**Depth (D)**	**Weight**	**Drawing Dimension**
PX3R-1	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	865 [34]	452 [17.8]	343 [13.5]	58 [128]	3AUA0000016377 Sheet 1
PX3R-2	810 [31.9]	320 [12.6]	M10 [0.375]	865 [34]	452 [17.8]	343 [13.5]	61 [134]	3AUA0000016377 Sheet 1
PX3R-3	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	968 [38.1]	530 [20.9]	389 [15.3]	80 [176]	3AUA0000016380 Sheet 1
PX3R-4	918 [36.1]	400 [15.7]	M10 [0.375]	968 [38.1]	530 [20.9]	389 [15.3]	88 [194]	3AUA0000016380 Sheet 1
PX3R-5	876 [34.5]	724 [28.5]	M10 [0.375]	991 [39]	762 [30]	394 [15.5]	92.3 [203]	3AUA0000060123 Sheet 2
PX3R-6	1181 [46.5]	876 [34.5]	M10 [0.375]	1295 [51]	914 [36]	546 [21.5]	179.1 [395]	3AUA0000060124 Sheet 2

Note: UL Type 3R, PX3R-1...PX3R-4 enclosures are designed to be mounted on a wall. Mounting these 3R enclosures on an open rack system requires the use of the supplied 3R enclosure back plates to maintain 3R integrity.

Note: Keep a minimum of 50 mm (2") of free space on each side and 200 mm (8") of free space above and below all units from non-heat producing sources. Double these distances from heat producing sources.

***UL Type / NEMA 1 & 12**, Floor mount enclosure mounting dimensions*

UL Type/ NEMA 1 & 12 – Dimensions for each Frame Size			
Ref.	**R7 & R8**		**Top View**
	mm	**in**	
W	806	31.7	
D	659	25.9	
a	675	26.6	
b	474.5	18.7	
c	61	2.4	
d	65.5	2.6	
Mounting Hardware			
	11 mm	13/32	

Additional free space recommendations

In addition to the free space requirements for cooling shown in the ACH550-UH User's Manual (*Cooling* on page *1-318*), allow:

- 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of UL Type/NEMA 1&12 floor mount enclosures – room for the cabinet door to swing open.
- 305 mm (12 in) above UL Type 12/NEMA 12 floor mount enclosures – room for fan replacement.

Degrees of protection

Available enclosures:

- UL Type 1 (NEMA 1 / IP 21) enclosure. The site must be free of airborne dust, corrosive gases or liquids, and conductive contaminants such as condensation, carbon dust, and metallic particles.
- UL Type 12 (NEMA 12 / IP 54) enclosure. This enclosure provides protection from airborne dust and light sprays or splashing water from all directions.
- UL Type 3R (NEMA 3R) enclosure. This enclosure provides protection from the ingress of water (rain, sleet, or snow). The external formation of ice does not damage this enclosure.

Plenum Rating: ACH550 drives have been evaluated in accordance with the requirements of UL508, meets all of the requirements for plenum rated drives, and is "Suitable for Installation in a Compartment Handling Conditioned Air".

Applicable standards

Drive compliance with the following standards is identified by the standards "marks" on the type code label.

Mark	Applicable Standards	
c UL us LISTED	UL 508C and C22.2 No. 14	UL Standard for Safety, Power Conversion Equipment, and CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment
UL	UL 508A	UL Standard for Safety, Industrial Control Panels
c UL	C22.2 No. 14	CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment

Compliance is valid with the following provisions:

- The motor and control cables are chosen as specified in this manual.
- The installation rules of this manual are followed.

Index

Refer to the ACH550-UH HVAC Drives (1…550 HP) User's Manual *Index* on page *1-332* for topics not listed here.

W

3AUA0000081823 REV F
Effective: 05/23/2018
Supersedes: 05/21/2017

ABB Inc.
16250 West Glendale Drive
New Berlin, WI 53151
USA

Telephone	+1 800 752-0696
Fax	+1 262 785-0397
Internet	www.abb.us/drives